

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01190422 4



TRÜBNER'S
ORIENTAL SERIES

Complete Work now Ready. Post 8vo. cloth, price 10s. 6d. each.

THE SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ.

Done into English by

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

The year A.D. 1010 saw the completion of the Sháhnáma, the great Persian epic. Its author, the poet Firdausi, spent over thirty laborious years in its composition, only to experience, when the task had been achieved, a heart-breaking disappointment well worthy of inclusion in any record of the calamities of authors. His work has survived the test of time, and by general consent is accounted to be one of the few great epics of the world. Geographically, and in some other respects, it may be said to stand half-way between the epics of Europe and those of India. In its own land it has no peer, while in construction and subject-matter it is unique. Other epics centre round some heroic character or incident to which all else is subservient. In the Sháhnáma there is no lack either of heroes or of incidents, but its real hero is the ancient Persian people, and its theme their whole surviving legendary history from the days of the First Man to the death of the last Sásánian Sháh in the middle of the seventh century of our era. It is the glory of the Persian race that they alone among all nations possess such a record, based as it is on their own traditions and set forth in the words of their greatest poet. In another sense, too, the Sháhnáma is unique. The authors of the other great epics tell us little or nothing of their own personalities or of their sources of information. Their works are fairy palaces suspended in mid air; we see the result, but know not how it was achieved. The author of the Sháhnáma takes us into his confidence from the first, so that in reading it we are let into the secret of epic-making, and can apply the knowledge thus gained to solve the problem of the construction of its great congeners. To the student of comparative mythology and folk-lore, to the lover of historic romance or romantic history, and to all that are fond of tales of high achievements and the deeds of heroes, the Sháhnáma is a storehouse of rich and abundant material. To set forth a complete presentment of it with the needful notes and elucidations is the object of the present translation, made from two of the best printed texts of the original—that of Vullers and Landauer, and that of Turner Macan.

THE
SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.,

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

*"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,
But storm and rain shall never mar what I
Have built—the palace of my poetry."*
FIRDAUSÍ.

VOL. IX

223697
3. 7. 28

LONDON:

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD

BROADWAY HOUSE: CARTER LANE, E.C.

1925

The rights of translation and of reproduction are reserved.

THE SHÁHNÁMA

VOL. IX.

CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

- Page ix, lines 1-3, *for* "v. xi. xii" *read* "vii, xiii, xv."
- Page 130, Col. 1, line 14 from bottom, *for* "xii" *read* "xv."
- Page 131, Col. 1, line 21, *for* "xii" *read* "xv."
- Pages 123-133, in the case of Roman numerals, *for* "vii" *read* "ix," *for* "viii" *read* "x" etc.
- Page 195, Col. 2, line 11, *delete first comma.*
- Page 196, Col. 1, line 11 from bottom, *delete* "Ahran."
- Page 216, Col. 2, after line 10 from bottom, *insert* "Reign of, 157, v, 281 *seq.* Note on, v, 281."
- Page 225, Col. 1, line 8 from bottom, *delete* "Bandwi."
- Page 240, Col. 2, line 13 from bottom, *before* "102" *insert* "i."
- Page 245, Col. 2, line 12, *for* "162" *read* "162."
- Page 251, Col. 1, line 11 from bottom, *after* "of" *insert comma.*
- Page 257, Col. 2, line 11, *before and after* "vitrified" *insert comma.*
- Page 268, Col. 2, line 15 from bottom, *after* "of" *insert comma.*
- Page 276, Col. 1, line 3 from bottom, *read* "Olympias."
- Page 279, Col. 2, line 5 from bottom, *for* "363" *read* "263."
- Page 289, Col. 1, line 25, *for* "140" *read* "140."
- Page 302, Col. 1, line 10 from bottom, *for* "85" *read* "25."
- Page 310, Col. 1, line 3, *for* "196" *read* "171."
- Page 311, Col. 2, line 15 from bottom, *after* "by" *insert* "viii, 190."
- Page 327, Col. 2, line 31 end, *add* "ix, 23."
- Page 328, Col. 1, line 26, *for* "205" *read* "105."
- Page 334, Col. 1, line 7, *for* "Northman" *read* "Northmen."
- Page 337, Col. 2, line 2 from bottom, *add* "viii, 108."
- Page 362, Col. 1, line 7 from bottom, *insert comma at end.*
- Page 363, Col. 1, line 25 end, *insert comma.*
- Page 366, Col. 1, line 23, *before* "137" *insert* "vii."
- Page 372, Col. 1, line 14, *delete* "vi."
- Page 385, Col. 1, line 23, *delete* "176."
- Page 386, Col. 2, line 10 from bottom, *after* "Khurásán," *insert* "176."
- Page 391, Col. 2, line 7 from bottom, *delete* "Yazdagird."

PREFATORY NOTE

The General Index at the end of this volume should be consulted in preference to the Indexes to the separate volumes of this work.—E.W.

CONTENTS

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| PREFATORY NOTE | PAGE v |
| ABBREVIATIONS | xi |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | xii |

THE SÁSĀNĪAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

KUBĀD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)—

SECT.

1. How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses 8
2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí 15
3. How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat 27
4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music 29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd 32
6. How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain 36

ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ—

1. How Ardshír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs 44
2. How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Pírúz Son of Khusrau 45

GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)—

1. How Guráz (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráz 51

PÚRÁNDUKHT—

1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pírúz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended 56

ĀZARMDUKHT—

SECT.

PAGE

1. How Āzarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died 59

FARRUKHZĀD—

1. How Farrukhzād ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave 61

YAZDAGIRD—

1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs 70
2. How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother 72
3. How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied 78
4. How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain 83
5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went to Khurásán 85
6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr 89
7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús 90
8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him 95
9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill 96
10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archmages counselled Máhwí to forbear 101
11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller 107
12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne 112
13. How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird, and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him 115
14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bízhan 118
15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma 121

| | |
|---|-----|
| INDEX | 123 |
| GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS | 135 |
| GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS | 139 |
| CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS | 177 |
| GENERAL INDEX | 191 |

ABBREVIATIONS

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| C.—Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma | |
| L.—Lumsden's | do. |
| P.—Mohl's | do. |
| T.—Tihrán | do. |
| V.—Vullers' | do. |

| | |
|------|---|
| BCM. | The Chahár Maqála (" Four Discourses ") of Nidhámí-i-'Arúdi-i-Samarqandí. Translated into English by Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B. |
| CTC. | Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis Classeni. |
| LEC. | The Lands of the Eastern Califate. By G. Le Strange. |
| NIN. | Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke. |
| NT. | Geschichte der Perser und Araber sur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von. Th. Nöldeke. |
| RM. | The Rauzat-us-safa ; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By Mirkhond. . . . Translated . . . by E. Rehatsek. |
| RSM. | The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A. |
| ZT. | Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid-Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg. |

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

á as in "water."

í as in "pique."

ú as in "rude."

a as in "servant."

i as in "sin."

u as in "foot."

ai as in "time."

au as in *ou* in "cloud."

g is always hard as in "give."

kh as *ch* in the German "buch,"

zh as *z* in "azure,"

IV

THE SĀSĀNĪAN DYNASTY

(Concluded)

XLIV

KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)

HE REIGNED SEVEN MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Kubád on his accession sends two chiefs to accuse of misgovernment the fallen and imprisoned Sháh, Khusrau Parwíz, who justifies himself at great length. His fall is made the subject of a lament by Bárbad, the minstrel, who afterwards mutilates himself. The chiefs, noticing symptoms of remorse in Kubád, insist upon the death of Khusrau Parwíz who is killed with all his other sons. Kubád falls in love with, and wishes to marry, Shírín, who poisons herself rather than consent, and Kubád himself is poisoned soon afterwards.

NOTE

The days of the reign of Kubád (Kobad II., Feb.-Sept., A.D. 628) were few and evil. Tradition already had prepared the ground for this in the unfavourable account given of his early years.¹ The murder of his father was followed by that of all his brothers, and by the tragic death of Shírín, while in addition to all these horrors a frightful pestilence broke out in his reign and the great mortality that ensued still further weakened the resources of an already almost exhausted country and helped to pave the way for the successful Arab invasion of a few years later on. Kubád is represented in the poem as a loutish, uneducated youth,² but even if his abilities had been great it is difficult to see how he could have extricated himself from the coil in which

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 390

² *Id.*

he found himself involved without mishap to himself or others. He owed his release from prison and perhaps his life to the very conspirators that subsequently demanded of him for their own security the death of his father. To have refused would have been fatal to himself, while in all probability his father and his brothers, with the exception of one who would have been made Sháh, would have perished all the same. It is inconceivable that the conspirators would have run the risk to themselves of restoring Khusrau Parwíz, with his black record of ingratitude as instanced by his treatment of Bandwí and Gustaham,¹ to his former position as ruler. With the exception of his infatuation for Shírín, which hardly can be regarded as historical, Kubád throughout his short reign was the victim of circumstances.

§§ 1 and 2. Kharrád, son of Barzín, was one of the most trusted ministers of Khusrau Parwíz and planned the assassination of Bahrám Chúbína.² According to Tabarí he fell at the battle of Dhú Kár.³

As the epoch of the Sásánian Dynasty draws to an end through scenes of deepening tragedy the legitimist leanings of the tradition seem to become more and more pronounced and we have an instance here. It is hardly to be supposed, historically speaking, that formal charges of misgovernment were drawn up against, and as formally answered by, Khusrau Parwíz, but rather that someone, desirous of vindicating that Sháh's memory and conversant with the circumstances of the time, soon after his death drew up the charges and the replies thereto. Versions of them are given in both the Arabic and Persian Tabarí and elsewhere. Four of the charges are found in both the Tabarís as well as in the Sháh-náma.⁴ They are:—

1. The murder by Khusrau Parwíz of his father Hurmuzd.
2. The illegitimate accumulation of treasure as a result of the financial oppression of the people.
3. The harsh treatment of the royal princes.
4. The refusal to restore the True Cross.

To these the Arabic Tabarí adds:—

1. The general ill-treatment of all prisoners.
2. Enforced recruiting for the royal Haram even of women already married.

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 354 *seq.* ² *Id.* p. 331 *seq.* ³ *Id.* p. 190.

⁴ NT, 363 *seq.* ZT, ii., 334 *seq.*

3. The keeping of the troops for a long period absent from home.

The Persian Tabarí adds :—

1. The imprisonment of the troops defeated by the Arabs at Dhú Kár and by Heraclius. •
2. The exactions of arrears of tribute for the previous twenty or thirty years.
3. The attempt to slay the youthful Yazdagird (afterwards the last Sásánian Sháh).
4. The deposition of Nu'mán, prince of Híra.¹
5. The mutilation and subsequent execution of Mardán-sháh.²

In the Arabic Tabarí eight charges are made against Khusrau Parwíz two of which—those relating to the royal Haram and the refusal to restore the “True Cross”—are left unanswered.

In the Persian Tabarí eleven charges are formulated to each of which in the same order an answer is made. Some of the charges, however, must be regarded as later additions while that relating to Nu'mán is not likely to have suggested itself to a Persian and must come from an Arab source. In the Sháhnáma there are eight charges, all of which are more or less answered, but not in the same order as they are preferred, but in the following :—1, 6, 7, 8, 2, 5, 3, 4. Thus Khusrau Parwíz replies to the most serious accusations—those of offences against persons—first. The Sháhnáma agrees most closely with the Arabic Tabarí, supplies the missing answer with regard to the “True Cross,” but does not deal with the *gravamen* of the royal Haram question, as that particular charge is not one of those mentioned in the poem.

Galínúsh subsequently served in the war against the Arabs, fought at the Battle of the Bridge, and was perhaps slain at Kádisiya.³

§ 5. Indignant legitimate tradition is naturally very wroth with Mihr Hurmuzd, the murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, whom it describes as the lowest of the low and vilest of the vile. According to Tabarí, however, Mihr Hurmuzd was the son of Mardánsháh, the governor of Nínruz and one of the most obedient and faithful of Khusrau Parwíz' officials. In the Persian Tabarí's version of the Romance of Bahrám

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 190.

² See p. 6.

³ NT, p. 365 note. RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., pp. 95, 116.

Chúbína that hero's brother, Yalán-sína in the Sháhnáma, is called Mardánsháh. Yalán-sína is always represented as being one of Bahrán Chúbína's most loyal adherents just as the other brother, Gurdwí, was a firm supporter of Khusrau Parwíz, while their sister Gurdya held an intermediate position, faithful to Bahrán Chúbína, but opposing his kingly ambition in every way in her power. Later on when married to Gustaham, the maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, she agreed, on condition that she should become the Sháh's wife and that a full amnesty should be given to all her adherents, to murder her husband and did so. There would be nothing strange therefore in Mardánsháh, if identical with Yalán-sína, becoming reconciled to, and receiving high office from, Khusrau Parwíz. He would serve one master as faithfully as he served the other. In the circumstances the strange thing would have been for the treacherous Sháh not to have taken the first convenient occasion against him. According to the story the Sháh, two years before his deposition, consulted the astrologers who informed him that his death would come from Nímruz. He therefore began to suspect and summoned Mardánsháh, but finding no pretext for putting him to death, as he was perfectly loyal and withal an aged man, determined merely to cut off his right hand and make him a large present of money as compensation. The sentence was carried out. Mardánsháh regarded such a mutilation as worse than death and, when shortly afterwards the Sháh was good enough to send and express his regret for what had occurred, asked the Sháh to grant him a boon. The Sháh swore to do so, on which Mardánsháh requested that his head should be struck off in order to wipe out the disgrace put upon him. The Sháh, bound by his oath, felt himself obliged to consent and the execution took place accordingly. The Shah wished to make Mardánsháh's son governor of Nímruz, but he refused and withdrew from the army.¹ He joined the conspiracy against Khusrau Parwíz² and by avenging his father on the Sháh justified the prediction of the astrologers.

The account given by Theophanes of the last days of the Sháh is different. As a general rule it is not prudent to put faith in stories of what occurred in Oriental palaces or prisons, but owing to the special circumstances of the case his information may be good in this instance, as it appears to be

¹ NT, p. 379.

ZT, ii., 330.

² See Vol. viii., p. 196.

based on letters written by Heraclius. After the capture of Khusrau Parwíz by the conspirators, he was bound and confined in the "House of Darkness," which he had himself built as a stronghold for his treasures. Here he was sparingly fed on bread and water for, said Shírwí: "Let him eat the gold that he has vainly amassed, and for whose sake he has starved many, and made the world itself a desert." Shírwí also sent satraps to revile and spit upon him, had his son Mardásas, whom he had wished to crown, slain before his eyes, and all his other sons as well, sent his enemies to beat and spit upon him, and, after five days of such treatment, had him put to death with arrows. Shírwí then wrote to Heraclius to announce the death of the detested Khusrau Parwíz, arranged terms of peace, released all the captives, and restored the "True Cross."¹ With regard to these latter statements of Theophanes it should be observed that peace was not concluded, and the "True Cross" restored, till after the death of Shírwí.²

According to Tabarí Kubád had Mihr Hurmuzd put to death.³

§ 6. The association of Khusrau Parwíz and Shírín began, it would seem,⁴ before his accession to the throne, and he reigned for thirty-eight years. If Shírwí really wished to marry Shírín it must have been for political motives and because she had been so much in his father's confidence and might furnish useful information. For a son to marry his father's wives was, according to Persian ideas, quite the correct procedure in the circumstances.

Kubád is said to have been bitterly reproached by his two sisters, Púrándukht and Ázarmdukht, for his share in the deaths of his father and brothers, and to have suffered much from sickness and remorse. He died at Dastagird, but from what cause is uncertain.⁵ The plague was very virulent at the time. Poison was often made to account for what was really due to disease.

¹ CTC, i., 502. ² NT, p. 392 and *note*. ³ *Id.* p. 382.

⁴ See vol. viii., p. 383. ⁵ NT, p. 384 and *notes*.

§ 1

*How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will,
and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and
Excuses*

Now when Shírwí sat on the goodly throne,
And donned the royal crown so much desired,
The leaders of the Íránians each drew near
To proffer him the homage due to kings,
Exclaiming : “ Worshipful and honoured Sháh !
Know, God gave thee the crown, and now thou sittest
Securely on the throne of ivory,
And may thy sons and scions have the world.”

Kubád replied : “ Be ever conquering
And happy. Never will we practise ill.
How good is justice with benevolence !
The world will we keep peaceful and cut off
The works of Áhriman by every right,
Ancestral precedent that greateneth
The Glory of our Faith. I will dispatch
A message to my sire and tell him all.
He is in evil odour in the world
Through his ill deeds : let him excuse his faults
To God and turn to custom and the way.
If he shall heed me he will not resent
My conduct. Then will I devote myself
To state-affairs and strive to compass justice
Both publicly and privily, do good
Where good is due, and break no poor man’s heart.
I need two honest men of goodly speech,
Whose memories are charged with ancient lore.”

He asked the assembly : “ Whom shall I employ ?
Who is most shrewd and honest in Írán ? ”

The warriors all suggested by their looks
Two men of lore if they should give consent.
Kubád perceived whom the Íránians
Agreed to choose : one of them was Ashtád,
The other was Kharrád, son of Barzín,
The old—two sages eloquent and heedful.
Kubád addressed them thus : “ O ye wise men,
Ye chiefs experienced and veteran !
Deem not the conduct of the world too toilsome,
Because the Great by travail compass treasure.
It is for you now to approach the Sháh ;
Perchance through you he may conform himself.
Appeal to him by instance new or old
As there is need.”

With tears unwillingly
Those sages made them ready. When Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, and when Ashtád, who had
Gashasp for sire, had mounted on their steeds,
As bidden, Kubád said : “ Now with right good will
'Tis yours to take the road to Taisafún,¹
To carry to my glorious sire a message,
And bear it all in mind from first to last.
Say : ‘ 'Twas no fault of ours nor did the Íránians
Cause this, but having left the way of Faith
Thou hast thyself incurred God's chastisement,
For, first, no son legitimate will shed
His sire's blood though impure or give assent
Thereto and fill the hearts of upright folk
With pain. Again, thy treasures fill the world,
And thine exactions reach all provinces,
While, thirdly, many horsemen brave and famed
Within Írán who gladdened there have left
Son, country, and their own pure kith and kin,

¹ Couplet omitted.

Have parted, this to Chín and that to Rúm,
 And now are scattered o'er each march and land.
 Again, when Cæsar, who had done and borne
 So much for thee, had given thee a host
 And daughter too with treasure and much else,
 Desired of thee the Cross of Christ for Rúm,
 So that his land might be revived thereby,
 How did the Cross of Jesus profit so
 Thy treasures when complaisance on thy part
 Would have made Cæsar glad ? But thou didst not
 Restore it, hadst not wit enough for that,
 Or one to guide thee to humanity.
 Again, thy greed was such that wisdom's eye
 Was all obscured in thee, and thou didst seize
 The chattels of the poor whose curses brought
 Ill on thy head. Thou slewest thy mother's brothers,¹
 Two loyal men who gave thy throne a lustre.
 Moreover thou hadst sixteen sons whose days
 And nights were passed in prison while no chief
 Could sleep secure from thee but hid in fear.²
 Know, that which hath befall'n thee is from God ;
 Reflect on thy foul deeds. As for myself,
 I am but as the instrument in all
 This wrong, am but the heading of the tale.
 By God, 'twas not my fault, no aim of mine
 To wreck the Sháh's throne ! Now for all seek grace,
 And say so to these chieftains of Írán ;
 Turn from ill deeds to God—the Guide to good—
 Who may abate the woes that thou hast brought
 Upon thyself.' ”

On hearing this the twain
 Departed with their hearts all seared and sore
 Till, sorrowful and weeping, they arrived
 At Taisafún and in that city sought

¹ Bandwí and Gustaham.

² This sentence comes at the end of the speech in the text.

The palace of Márúsipand for there
 The exalted king resided. Galínúsh
 Sat at the palace-gate : thou wouldst have said :—
 “ Earth is convulsed before him ! ” He was armed
 In helm and breastplate, all the Arab steeds
 Wore bards, and all his soldiers were drawn up,
 Equipped, and sword in hand. He grasped a mace
 Of steel, his heart all fire and storm. Now when
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, and when Ashtád,
 Son of Gashasp, those sages twain, dismounted,
 He rose forthwith, rejoiced to look on them,
 And gave them place befitting, hailing them
 As famous chiefs. The eloquent Kharrád
 First laved his tongue in valour and then said
 To Galínúsh : “ Kubád the glorious
 Hath donned in peace the Kaian crown. Írán,
 Túrán and Rúm have tidings that Shírwí¹
 Is seated on the throne of king of kings.
 Why this cuirass and helm and massive mace ?
 Who is thine enemy ? ”

Said Galínúsh :—

“ O veteran ! may all thy doings prosper.
 Thou art concerned about my tender frame
 Because I am in iron garniture.
 I bless thee for thy kindness ; thou deservest
 That I shall sprinkle jewels over thee.
 Thy words are naught but good, and may the sun
 Be thine associate in the world. Declare
 Why thou hast come, then look for my reply.”

He thus gave answer : “ Glorious Kubád
 Commissioned me to bear Khusrau Parwíz
 A message and if now thou wilt ask audience²
 I will deliver what the world-lord said—

¹ That being the name by which he had been generally known, his real name (Kubád) having been kept secret. See Vol. viii., pp. 371, 416.

² Reading with P.

That monarch of the flock."

Said Galínúsh :—

" Who can remember words so well as thou,
O worshipful ? Yet nathless Sháh Kubád
Gave me full many a counsel touching this,
And charged me, saying : ' Let none have by day
Or night an audience of Khusrau Parwíz
Unless thou hearest what the messenger
Hath got to say in Persian new or old.' "

Ashtád said : " I hold not my message secret,
O fortunate ! It is : ' The sword is fruiting,
And nuzzling princes' heads.' In this regard
Now ask for audience of Khusrau Parwíz
That we may tell the message of the Sháh."

This hearing Galínúsh arose, made fast
His mail, went to the Sháh with folded arms,
As servants should, and said thus : " Live for ever,
O Sháh ! May evil never vex thy heart.
There cometh by Ashtád and by Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, a message from the Sháh
From court."

Khusrau Parwíz laughed out and said :—
" Speak wiser words for if he be the king
Then what am I, and why am I within
This narrow prison, and why need'st thou ask
That I shall grant an audience unto any,
Be their words false or true ? "

So Galínúsh

Returned to those two warriors, reported
The answer of the paladin, and said :—
" Now go with folded arms, declare your message,
And hearken his reply."

Those sages twain
Of honest speech inswathed their visages
In sashes brought from Chín and, when they saw
The Sháh, did reverence and waited long

What while he sat upon a lofty throne
 Adorned with effigies of sheep and wolves,
 Impleached with gold and gems, with under him
 A couch of yellow broidery. He leaned
 On cushions hued like lapis-lazuli,
 Held a fine quince and drowsed there all amort.
 When he beheld those chiefs supreme in wisdom
 He roused himself and secretly invoked
 God's help. He laid that fine quince on the cushions
 That he might welcome those two wayfarers.¹
 The quince slipped from the cushions, rolled unbruised
 Upon the couch and thence from throne to floor.
 Ashtád ran, took it up, wiped off the dust,
 And laid the quince upon his head. The world-lord
 Turned from Ashtád that he might neither see
 Nor scent the quince. They set it on the throne,
 And stood themselves. The matter of the quince²
 Perturbed Khusrau Parwíz who boded ill,
 Looked up to heaven, and said : " O truthful Judge!
 Who can establish one whom Thou o'erthrowest,
 Who join what Thou hast broken ? When bright
 fortune

Departeth from a race it bringeth sorrow
 Because the day of joy is passed away."

Then to Ashtád : " Now for thine ambassage
 From mine unnatural child of ill repute,
 And from that handful of conspirators,
 My hateful and black-hearted enemies.
 Malignant fools are they and in their folly
 Most wretched. Fortune will desert our race ;
 None will rejoice again ; the crown and throne
 Will pass to those unfit ; this royal Tree
 Will be destroyed ; the Base will be exalted ;
 The spirits of the Great grow sorrowful.

¹ ' ces deux esclaves.' Mohl.

² Reading with P.

The majesty will bide not with our sons,
 Or with our kindred or posterity ;
 Their friends all be their chiefest enemies,
 Revilers and destroyers of the race.
 This quince hath made the secret evident ;
 The throne of king of kings will bear no fruit.
 Now tell to me the words that thou hast heard :
 I count his less than water in the stream."

Then those two men released their tongues to speak,
 And told all that Kubád, his son, had said,
 Not keeping e'en a whisper back from him.
 The king of kings, when he had heard the message,
 Writhed with distress and heaved a deep, cold sigh.
 Then said he to those chiefs : " Hear my response,
 And bear it to the young prince, every word.
 Say : ' Quit thine own misdeeds ere blaming others'.
 What thou hast uttered are thy words of thine ?
 A murrain on the prompter !¹ Speak not so
 As to rejoice thy foe with thy fool's talk,
 And let him learn that thou hast not the wisdom
 To furnish speech with knowledge from thy brains.
 If thy trust is in words that profit not
 Thou mak'st default in soul and wisdom too.
 He that shall call thee wicked, then acknowledge
 Thee to be world-lord, should not sit before thee,
 And order matters whether great or small.
 Think not in future of such messages
 Or thou wilt cause thy foemen to rejoice.
 My state hath been appointed me by God ;
 My hopes are set upon the other world,
 And thou by these thy charges which are lies
 Wilt gain no glory in the nobles' eyes.' "

¹ Reading with P. and T,

§ 2

How Khusrāu Parwīz answered Shīrwī

“ Now will I make full answer that thou mayst
Repeat my words in public. They will serve
As my memorial when I am gone—
A truthful statement of my case—and thou
Wilt know, when I reveal my grief and travail,
That all my treasures were derived from toil.
Thou speakest in the first place of Hurmuzd,
His anger with me, and those bygone days :
My father’s wrath against us was aroused
By slanderer’s words and thus confusion came.
When I had learned what occupied his thoughts
I left Írán by night, avoiding roads.
He sought my death by poison ; I perceived
No antidote but flight and so I fled,
And was not taken in the net of bale.
I heard that ill had come upon the Sháh,
And quitted Barda’ when the news arrived.
That knave Bahrám Chúbína with his troops
Opposed us on the battlefield. I fled
From him too on the day of fight that I
Might fall not in his clutches. Afterwards
I came a second time and bravely fought,
My troublous fortune passed away and all
The realm that I had lost returned to me.
My contest with him was no brief affair ;
The whole world were spectators of the strife.
By the command of God who multiplieth
His benefits on us, and is the Guide
In good and ill, Írán and Turkistán¹

¹ Túrán in the text.

C. 2032

Submitted and Bahrám Chúbína's plans
Were foiled. Released from war with him I hasted,
First, to take vengeance for my father's death.
Bandwí and Gustaham, my mother's brothers,
Men that had not a peer in any land,
Had risked their lives for me and were all mine
In love as well as kinship, but there were
My father's death and mine own grief thereat ;
I was not sluggish to avenge his blood.
I lopped Bandwí both hand and foot for he
Had made the Sháh's place dark, while Gustaham,
Who disappeared and sought some distant nook,
Was slain all unawares by my command :
Those murderers' lives and aims all came to naught.
Next, as to what thou said'st of thine own case,
Of thine own strait confinement and affairs ;
It was to keep my sons from evil deeds
That would recoil upon themselves. Ye were
Not straitly bound in prison, not misprized,
And had no harm to fear. I did not then
Treat you with scorn but held my treasury
At your disposal, acting as the Sháhs
Had done before, not idly or without
A precedent. Chase, minstrelsy, and polo—
All that befitteth chiefs —were yours at will,
With hawks and cheetahs, jewels and dínárs.
Your so called prison was a palace where
Ye lived in joy. I dreaded thee moreover
Through what the readers of the stars had said.
That was the cause of thine imprisonment
That thou mightst do us naught of injury—
The very injury that thou art doing.
I never parted with thy horoscope
Till I had sealed and given it to Shírín.
When I had reigned for six and thirty years,
And thou past doubt amidst such pleasant days

Gav'st all the matter to the wind, although
 Much time had passed o'er us, there came to thee
 A letter out of Hindústán but not
 Without my cognizance. The chief of Rájas
 Sent us a letter, jewels, divers stuffs,
 An Indian scimitar, white elephant,
 And all that I could hope for in the world,
 And with the scimitar was gold brocade
 With all varieties of gems uncut.
 To thee the letter was on painted silk ;
 So when I saw the Indian script I called
 An Indian scribe, a fluent, heedful speaker,
 Who when he read the Indian Rája's words
 Wept for the letter ran : ' Live joyfully
 For thou art worthy both of joy and realm,
 And on the day of Dai in month Ázar
 Thou wilt be king and ruler of the world.
 Thy sire will reign for eight and thirty years,
 For so the stars ordain. Good times will shine
 Upon thee ; thou wilt don the crown of greatness.'
 These words have been fulfilled to me to-day,
 But we should wash not from our hearts affection.
 I was aware that fortune had decreed
 That when thy throne had gained its brilliancy
 Mine only portion would be toil and pain,
 And that my bright day would be turned to gloom ;
 But as I gave, had Faith, made friends, and loved
 I did not lour by reason of that letter.
 I gave it, having read it, to Shírín,
 And pondered much upon it. In her keeping
 Are both the letter and the horoscope,
 And no one great or small is ware thereof.
 If thou wouldst see it make request of her ;
 Thou haply mayst regard it more or less.
 I wot that seeing it thou wilt repent,
 And seek to heal the past. For what thou said'st

C. 2033

Of bonds and of imprisonments, and how
 We have done others hurt, 'tis this world's way,
 And that of former chiefs and kings of kings,
 And if thou know'st it not speak with an archmage ;
 He will enlighten thee thereon and tell thee :—
 ' 'Tis ill to keep God's enemy alive.'

Those that were in our prison were mere dívs
 Complained of by the righteous. Neither bloodshed
 Nor utter harshness ever was our trade.

I shut up criminals and did not hold
 Of small account wrongs done by them to others ;
 But now I hear that thou hast freed these men—
 Men worse than dragons —and for this thou art
 A sinner guilty both in word and deed
 In God's sight. Now that thou art lord be prudent,
 And if thou know'st not how consult the wise.
 Forgive not those that vex thee though thou hopest
 For wealth through them, and what can better bonds
 For one in whom thou seest naught but harm ?
 In talking of my wealth thou hast not shown
 Good sense and wisdom. We have never asked
 For more than toll and tax. When these were paid
 If any were still rich, though men might say
 That they were foes and miscreants of the seed
 Of Áhriman, we thought of God and passed
 Such matters lightly by. From Him I had
 The crown and throne, and they have cost me dear.
 The Maker of the world, the righteous Judge,
 Hath willed this change of fortune. In the world
 His will is paramount, so when He would
 Our minishment we seek not for addition.
 We sought to please our Judge, but by our toils
 Have not evaded His apportionment,
 And when He asketh me I will tell all.
 That Questioner is wiser than thou art,
 And one more potent in all good and ill.

The miscreants that stand before thee now
 Are not thy friends or kin, and what they say
 Of me that also will they say of thee
 Before thy foes. They are but slaves of gold
 And silver : thou wilt find in them no helper.
 They have possessed thy heart and there instilled
 Each fault of mine. Such words as these are not
 In thy philosophy and will not profit
 Those miscreants' minds, but I have uttered them
 For my foes' sake that they who read this letter,
 Writ in the ancient tongue, may know that lies
 Lack lustre even from the mouths of Sháhs.
 'Twill be too a memorial in the world,
 A consolation to the man of wisdom,
 And after our decease whoe'er shall read
 These words of ours will learn our policy.
 I gathered armies from Bartás and Chín,
 And everywhere appointed generals,
 Then made attacks upon mine enemies
 Till none dared raise his head. When they were
 scattered
 Our treasuries were all filled. The whole land toiled
 For us, and from the sea so many gems
 Were brought us that the shipmen grew awearry.
 Plain, sea, and mountain, all were mine. Now when
 The treasury of drachms had been expended
 The coffers were refilled with new dínárs,
 With precious stones and royal jewelry,
 As well as clothes and implements of war,
 And when our crown was twenty-six years old
 Our treasuries were rich with many gems.
 I struck a new die for my drachms and turned
 To joy and merriment. That year when I
 Had ta'en account I found the total sum
 Ten million of dínárs. Paidáwasís,¹

¹ See Vol. vii., p. 95 *note*.

In Persian reckoning, I spent and squandered.
 Each purse contained twelve thousand in *dínárs*,
 And those thus spent were royal, while besides
 The tribute and *dínárs* from *Hindústán*,
 The realm of *Rúm* and land of sorcerers ;
 Besides from every province gifts and tribute
 From all the sovereigns and potentates ;
 Besides New Year and Autumn offerings,
 The gifts of horses and of fair-faced slaves ;
 Besides cuirasses, helmets, axes, swords,
 Which every one sent to us liberally ;
 Besides musk, camphor, sables, beaver-skins,
 Red weasels' and white wolves', our subjects all
 Set suchlike loads upon their beasts and sought
 Our court in haste ; none was recalcitrant.
 Abundant toil of all sorts have we spent
 To amass a treasure—one additional
 To those known as *Khuzrá* and as '*Arús*,¹
 Reserved by me against an evil day.
 We long discussed what name the hoard should have,
 And in the end we called it *Bád Áwar*.²
 Thus in my six and twentieth year of reign
 Heaven till the eight and thirtieth favoured me ;
 My chieftains were all safe, my foes all quaked,
 And now I hear that thou art sovereign—
 An evil juncture this for all the world,
 Which reft of pleasure must perforce be mute.
 Thou wilt make earth calamitous, fulfilled
 With suffering and profitless. Moreover,
 Those same injurious persons that surround thee,
 And are the Light³ of thy dark nights, will give
 Thy throne up to the wind that thou mayst not
 Enjoy the world. Were there with thee a sage,
 So that thy darkened mind might be illumed,
 Thou wouldst not do amiss in giving gifts

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 406.² *Id.*³ *Urmuzd* in text.

So that thy wealth might reach the poor. My son,
 Whose days are few, whose wisdom is but scant !
 Solicitude will rob thy soul of joy.
 This know, that these our treasures are thy stay ;
 The opportunity is in thy grasp.
 They are the appanage of royalty ;
 A world that is all moneyless is lost.
 A pauper Sháh will be unjust, and he
 Whose hand is empty hath no strength or worth.
 Without the means of largess he by all
 Will be declared a fraud and not a Sháh.
 Moreover, if thy riches reach thy foes,
 And all the idols come to Brahmans' hands,
 The worshippers will turn from God, thy name
 And fame be spurned. If thou art treasureless
 Thou wilt not have an army, and thy subjects
 Will hail thee not as Sháh. The dog is good
 At begging bread, but if thou fillest him
 He threateneth thy life. Again, thou said'st
 About my strategy that I have stationed
 The troops along the roads, and blamest me
 Through ignorance, not knowing gain from loss.
 The answer is that by my toil I gathered
 My splendid treasures, captured foreign cities,
 And shattered all my foes that we might sit
 Without vexation, toil, or injury
 In peace upon the pleasant throne. I scattered
 My horse about the frontier, and (to show
 The difference 'twixt the worthless and the worthy)
 When thou recall'st the troops from every side
 The foe will see the road clear, for Írán
 Is like a garden in the jocund Spring,
 Whose happy blossoms never fail to flower,
 A garden of pomegranate and narcissus,
 Of apples and of quince ; but when the orchard
 Becometh void of men the enemy

Will root up all the marjoram and snap
 All branches of pomegranate and of quince.
 Írán's walls are its troops and gear of war,
 Its thorns all arrows on its battlements,
 And if in wantonness thou flingest down
 The garden-wall the garden is as waste,
 As sea or upland. Cast not down its wall
 Or thou wilt break the Íránians' hearts and backs,
 For then will raid and ravage, horsemen's shouts,
 And all the incidents of war ensue.
 Expose not thou our children, wives, and land
 To trouble : let but one such year elapse,
 And sages will describe thee as a fool.
 Now I have heard that thou dost give high place
 To men unworthy. Know that Núshírwán,
 Son of Kubád,¹ recorded in his Letter
 Of Counsel that whoc'er doth give his arms
 To foes doth give himself to slaughtering,
 Since, when he asketh back those arms for use,
 The enemy will fight.² As for the message
 Of Cæsar, which hath made thee call me heartless,
 And self-willed, thou recallest not the facts ;
 Thy words were prompted by some counsellor.
 As for my tyranny and his good faith,
 Canst thou discern good faith from tyranny ?
 Receive mine answer, thou of little wit !
 But let me say withal, as is but right,
 Thou art the plaintiff and the witness too—
 A thing no man of wisdom would allow.
 When Cæsar washed off from his face the dust
 Of bale he chose me as his son-in-law
 For valour's sake. Whoever walketh not
 The earth for ill, and hath some share of wisdom
 Within him, knoweth that Bahráw Chúbína
 Began the feud and that the Íránians

¹ Reading with P. and T.² See Vol. viii., p. 27.

Took sides with him. The Rúmans did not triumph
 O'er him ; the drifting sand can not bind fast
 The mountain ! But in that fight God vouchsafed
 To aid me, and the armies of the world
 Were naught to me. The Íránians have heard
 Of those events, and thou shouldst hear from them.
 As for myself, I did whate'er I could,
 Upon the day of fight, for Niyátús
 With kindness and with magnanimity,
 But have not reckoned that day's recompense,
 And Farrukhzád will tell thee just the same :
 Look not upon the world with boyish eyes.
 Gashasp, who was our treasurer, can tell,
 And that good archimage, our minister,
 That I bestowed upon the Rúman troops
 A hundred thousand purses from our treasures.
 I gave to Niyátús a thousand nuggets,
 With earrings and red gold. Each nugget's weight
 Was as a thousand treasury-miskáls
 I reckoned. I bestowed on him withal
 Fine watered pearls that experts had found flawless,
 And every one worth thirty thousand drachms
 To jewellers, and five score noble steeds,
 Selected from my stables—fifty saddled,
 The others very choice, housed in brocade,
 Mates for the wind upon the waste. I sent
 All these to Cæsar with my thanks withal.
 For what thou said'st about the Cross of Christ,
 That bit of old wood flung among my treasures—
 A matter of no loss or gain to me—
 Thou hast been listening to some Christian's talk.
 I mused that one like Cæsar, great and mighty,
 Surrounded as he is by learned men—
 Philosophers and potentates and priests—
 Should call one that was executed God !
 While as for this dry, rotten wood, if this

Mere useless Cross were God 'twould be Urmuzd,
 Whose name we give to every month's first day,
 And would have vanished from our treasury
 As Christ himself departed from the world.
 Again for what thou said'st : ' Make thine excuse,
 Amend thy conduct and ensue God's path,'
 I answer : ' May the two hands of Kubád,
 His feet and lips and tongue rot ! It was God
 Who placed the crown upon my head : I took,
 And revelled in the gift. I have returned it
 Since He demanded it. What next I wonder ?
 To Him will I confess, not to a boy
 Scarce able to distinguish good and ill.'
 All that God doth is welcome unto me
 Though I have seen much woe and bitterness.
 For eight and thirty years have I been Sháh,
 And none among the kings hath been my peer.
 He that bestowed this world on me may give
 Another but will have no thanks of mine !
 I will pronounce a blessing on the realm : —
 ' May earth be ever teeming with the wise.'
 So long as God shall help and succour us
 None will dare curse."

Then said he to Kharrád :—
 " O Memory of the great ones of the world !
 Say to that foolish and impetuous boy :—
 ' The lustre of our countenance is dimmed :
 Farewell to thee for ever. As for me,
 May all our converse be henceforth with sages.'
 As for yourselves, illustrious messengers,
 Ye Persians eloquent and eminent !
 To both of you I also bid farewell.
 Say nothing but the words that ye have heard.
 I give my blessing to the world at large,
 Which we have looked on as a passing thing.
 All mother-born must die—whome'er thou hast

In mind—Khusrau Parwíz back to Kubád,
 So too Húshang, Jamshíd, and Tahmúras—
 To all the world the founts of fear and hope—
 Whom div and beast acknowledged, passed and died
 When their day ended. Farídún, the blest,
 Who banned ill, close or open, from the world,
 And stayed Zahhák the Arab's hand from evil,
 Scaped not by bravery the clutch of fate.
 So was it with Árish whose arrow's flight
 Was one farsang;¹ victorious Káran,
 The capturer of cities; Kai Kubád,
 Who having come from Mount Alburz became
 Through manhood world-lord over all the folk,
 And built himself a world-famed house of crystal,²
 Adorned with lustrous pearls and gates of gems.³
 So was it with Káús, that man of might,
 Who took the world by skill and policy,
 He that adventured toward the sky above,
 Unwitting of the processes of time;
 So too with Siyáwush, that lion famed,
 Who slew two tigers in his youthful days,⁴
 And built Gang-dizh⁵ with toil but gat therefrom
 No treasure. Where are now Afrásiyáb,
 The Turkman king, whose semblance e'en in dream
 None seeth; where Rustam, Zál, Asfandiyár,
 Whose fame is their memorial with us;
 Gúdarz and his choice sons, three score and ten,
 Those cavaliers upon the riding-ground,
 And lions of the fray; where Kai Khusrau,
 The noble lion-man who in the fight
 Made lions prisoners; and Sháh Gushtásp,
 The convert to 'The Good Faith,' he by whom

¹ Much further according to the legend. See Vol. v., p. 12.

² This is attributed to Kai Káús elsewhere. See Vol. ii., pp. 81, 101.

³ This line occurs three couplets too low in C.

⁴ This is not mentioned elsewhere in the poem.

⁵ See Vol. ii., pp. 189, 279.

C. 2039

Grace was renewed ; where went renowned Sikandar,
 Who overturned the world, and where Jámásp,
 Who shone in astrologic lore more brightly
 Than Sol or Venus ? Where is that famed Sháh,
 Bahrán Gúr, matchless in his strength and courage ?
 No Sháh was like him in munificence ;
 The turning heaven dared not to touch his head.
 Where is that Sháh, my grandsire, bright of soul
 Who ruled the world as Kisrá Núshírwán ?
 Where are the seven and forty world-lords ?¹ Gone
 Is all their work, gone are the Great and Wise,
 The warrior-horsemen and the men of lore,
 These passing those in prowess and those these
 In years ? They all have left this spacious world,
 Left palace, hall, and riding-ground. Midst Sháhs,
 Though some were older far, I had no peer.
 I walked the world for good and ill, and held
 The evil day aloof. 'Twas mine to traverse
 Full many a ruggéd path and sweep away
 Full many a foe. My treasures fill all lands ;
 Where earth and water are my toil is seen.
 When with me too the world shall cease, and all
 The nobles' hopes grow dim, with my son also
 The throne will not abide, for he will quit it,
 And all his fortune end. What time the angel
 That taketh souls approacheth I shall say :—
 ' Take my soul gently.' I will clear my heart
 By penitence, and freedom from offence
 Shall be my breastplate. Well have men of wisdom,
 Good, veteran, learned, declared : ' If wakeful fortune
 Decline one must expect fears manifold,
 And he whose day of greatness hath gone by

¹ Khusrau Parwíz was only the forty-third Sháh. Perhaps some, who never became Sháhs, such as Siyáwush and Asfandiyár, are included, or it may be that the author of this defence (see p. 4) wrote from his own point of view, not that of the supposed speaker.

Is foolish if he asketh its return.
 This is my message to the world, to mean
 And mighty too : ere long the Sháh and all
 His famous troops will fall to slaughtering
 Each other and fling fire on field and fell ;
 Then sires will fall by sons and sons by sires ;
 Our enemies, the people that discoursed
 Of evil deeds and chilling words, will pay
 The smart when we are gone and not for long
 Enjoy the world. Since rule and greatness end
 With me what reck if Lion or another
 Shall have the sway ? ”

Ashtád and brave Kharrád,
 Son of Barzín, those sages, when they heard
 The message of that leader, were heart-pierced,
 And smote their heads. Both sorrowed for their
 words ;

They buffeted their faces, rent their robes
 In grief, and scattered dust upon their heads.
 Those ancients fared forth from his presence, weeping,
 In anguish, with their hearts all arrow-points.
 With furrowed faces and in sore distress
 They went before Shírwí and every whit
 To that man brainless and incompetent
 Detailed the message that the Sháh had sent.

C. 2040

§ 3

*How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the
 Chiefs were displeased thereat*

Shírwí wept bitterly on hearing this ;
 His heart quaked for the crown and throne, and when
 The company dispersed that had dismayed him

With foul words clamouring for his father's blood,
 And burning the youth's heart, he left the throne
 Of kingship, clasped with honoured hands his head,
 And wept blood on his breast. News of that weeping
 And of the lamentation of the king,
 Came to the host and all were in dismay.
 They met, discussed Khusrau Parwíz, and cried :—
 " If he shall sit upon the throne again
 He will disgrace the captains of the host."

Whenas the sun rose o'er the darksome hills
 The malcontents awoke and went to court.
 The Sháh, on hearing of it, took his seat
 Upon the throne, and those of high degree,
 Akin or alien, approached the presence.
 They took their seats with scowls but no one spoke.
 The king said : " Gibbeting is the desert
 Of him that mourneth not my father's woes.
 I call such misbegotten and a knave.
 Let none depend on such because that man
 Is rottener than a rotten willow-tree."

He gat this answer from the men in fault :—
 " Call whosoever saith : ' I serve two Sháhs '
 A fool at heart and vile whate'er his rank."

Shírwí rejoined : " For Sháhs no wealth no troops !
 For one month we will utter pleasant words,
 And give no hint of duress to my sire ;
 He may make statements that will gladden us
 Because his treasures are in every coast."

C. 2041

On hearing this they rose to seek their homes.
 Then Sháh Shírwí gave orders to the cooks :—
 " Let nothing be denied Khusrau Parwíz :
 Serve up his food upon a golden service,
 And let the food itself be rich and grateful."

The servers brought it but he would not eat
 The viands that were proffered, hot or cold.
 Shírín's hand brought to him all that he ate

Because she sorrowed with him in his grief.
 She was his sole good friend and soothed his woes
 Both day and night, shared all his hopes and fears,
 And quaked for him like willow in the wind.
 A month passed and meanwhile Khusrau Parwíz
 Was full of pain and anguish night and day,
 His faults and crimes recalled to memory,
 And little relish of that life had he.

§ 4

*How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own
 Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music*

Now list the lamentation of Bárbad,¹
 And grow forgetful of the world at large.
 On hearing that the Sháh, not by advice
 And 'gainst his will, no longer filled the throne,
 That "men are seeking how to murder him ;
 The soldiers are renouncing fealty,"
 Bárbad came from Chahram to Taisafún
 With tearful eyes and heart o'ercharged ; he came
 To that abode and saw the Sháh whereat
 His tulip-cheeks became like fenugreek.
 He bode awhile in presence of the Sháh,
 Then went with wailing to the audience-hall.
 His love flamed in his heart, his heart and soul
 Burned in his anguish for Khusrau Parwiz ;
 His eyes rained like a cloud in Spring and made
 His bosom as the margent of the sea.
 He fashioned him a dirge upon the harp,
 And to that dirge he sang a mournful plaint.

¹ For the story of Bárbad see Vol. viii., p. 396 *seq.*

With visage wan and heart fulfilled with grief
He thus lamented in the olden tongue :—

“ O Sháh ! O noble chieftain ! O Khusrau !
O great ! O strong ! O hero ne’er cast down !
Where are thy mastery and greatness now,
Where all thy Grace, thy fortune, and thy crown ?

“ Where that imperial circlet, towering height ?
Where are thine armlets and thine ivory throne ?
Where all thy manliness, thy Grace, and might,
Who ’neath thy wings hadst this world for thine
own ?

C. 2042 “ Oh ! whither are thy dames and minstrels gone,
Gate, audience-hall, and leaders of thy day,
The diadem and Káwa’s gonfalon,
And all the blue-steel falchions, where are they ?

“ Where are the head, the crown that loved it well—
Mate of the earrings and the throne of gold ?
Where are Shabdíz, his stirrups and his sell—
The steed that ’neath thee ever caracol’d ?

“ Where are thy helmet, head, and habergeon
All golden and compacted gem to gem,
Thy cavaliers in gold caparison,
Whose swords made enemies the sheaths for them ?

“ Where all the camels for thy progresses,
The golden litters and attendance rife,
Led steeds, white elephants, and dromedaries ?
Have one and all grown hopeless of thy life ?

“ Where are thy fluent tongue and courteous,
 Thy heart, thy purpose, and thine ardent soul ?
 Why reft of all art thou abandoned thus ?
 Hast read of such a day in any roll ?

“ Oh ! trust not to this world whose remedy
 Is weaker than its bane. ’Twas thy desire
 To have a son to aid and succour thee :
 Now through the son the gyves are on the sire !

“ It is by sons that kings obtain their might,
 And are unblemished by time’s travailings ;
 Yet ever as his sons increased in height
 Both Grace and vigour failed the king of kings.

“ None that shall lend an ear while men recall
 The story of Khusrau Parwíz must dare
 To trust the world. Account as ruined all
 Írán and as the pards’ and lions’ lair.

“ Of the Sásánian race the Sháh was head—
 One peerless in the sight of crown and state :
 The foeman’s wishes are accomplished,
 And, like Írán, the race is desolate.

“ No man possessed a larger host than he,
 Yet who had cause for justice to beseech ?
 The great protector brought the misery,
 And now the wolves are making for the breach !

“ ‘ O Sháh devoid of shame ! ’ thus tell Shírwí,
 ‘ Such conduct is not worthy of this court.
 Count not upon thy troops’ fidelity
 When war is rife on all sides.’ God support

“ Thy soul, my master ! and it is my prayer
 That He thy foemen’s heads may headlong fling.
 By God and by thy life, my king ! I swear
 By New Year’s Day, by sun, and jocund Spring,

“ If e’er this hand of mine again shall turn
 To harping may no blessing light on me ;
 Mine instruments of music will I burn
 That I may ne’er behold thine enemy.”

He cut four fingers off and grasped the stumps
 Within his other palm. Returning home
 He kindled fire and burned his instruments,
 While those about Kubád both day and night
 At all that might befall them quaked with fright.

§ 5

*How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of
 Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr
 Hurmuzd*

- C. 2043 Shírwí, a timid, inexperienced youth,
 Found that the throne beneath him was a snare,
 While readers of mankind saw that ’twas time
 For men of might. Those that had done the ill,
 And had produced that coil, went from the hall
 Of audience to the presence of Kubád
 To mind him of their infamous designs :—
 “ We said before and now we say again
 Thy thoughts are not on government alone.
 There are two Sháhs now seated in one room,
 One on the throne and one on its degree,

And when relations grow `twixt sire and son
 They will behead the servants one and all.
 It may not be, so speak of it no more."

Shírwí was frightened and he played poltroon
 Because in their hands he was as a slave.
 He answered : " None will bring him to the toils
 Except a man whose name is infamous.
 Ye must go homeward and advise thereon.
 Inquire : ' What man is there that will abate
 Our troubles secretly ? ' "

The Sháh's¹ ill-wishers

Sought for a murderer to murder him
 By stealth, but none possessed the pluck or courage
 To shed the blood of such a king and hang
 A mountain round his own neck. Everywhere
 The Sháh's foes sought until they met with one
 Blue-eyed, pale-checked, his body parched and hairy,
 With lips of lapis-lazuli, with feet
 All dust, and belly ravenous ; the head
 Of that ill-doer was bare. None knew his name
 Midst high and low. This villain (may he never
 See jocund Paradise !) sought Farrukhzád,
 And undertook the deed. " This strife is mine,"
 He said. " If ye will make it worth my while
 This is my quarry."

" Go and do it then
 " If thou art able," Farrukhzád replied.
 " Moreover open not thy lips herein.
 I have a purse full of dínárs for thee,
 And I will look upon thee as my son."

He gave the man a dagger keen and bright,
 And then the murderer set forth in haste.
 The miscreant, when he approached the Sháh,
 Saw him upon the throne, a slave attending.
 Khusrau Parwíz quaked when he saw that man,

C. 2044

¹ Khusrau Parwíz.

And shed tears from his eyelids on his cheeks
 Because his heart bare witness that the day
 Of heaviness was near. He cried : " O wretch !
 What is thy name ? Thy mother needs must wail
 thee."

The man replied : " They call me Mihr Hurmuzd,
 A stranger here with neither friend nor mate."

Thus said Khusrau Parwíz : " My time hath come,
 And by the hand of an unworthy foe,
 Whose face is not a man's, whose love none seeketh."

He bade a boy attending him : " Go fetch,
 My little guide ! an ewer, water, musk,
 And ambergris, with cleaner, fairer robes."

The boy-slave heard, unwitting what was meant,
 And so the little servant went away,
 And brought a golden ewer to the Sháh
 As well as garments and a bowl of water,
 Whereon Khusrau Parwíz made haste to go,
 Gazed on the sacred twigs and muttered prayers :
 It was no time for words or private talk.
 The Sháh put on the garments brought, he made
 Beneath his breath confession of his faults,
 And wrapped a new simarre about his head
 In order not to see his murderer's face.
 Then Mihr Hurmuzd, the dagger in his hand,
 Made fast the door and coming quickly raised
 The great king's robe and pierced his liverstead.

Such is the process of this whirling world,
 From thee its secret keeping closely furled !
 The blameless speaker and the boastful see
 That all its doings are but vanity,
 For be thou wealthy or in evil case
 This Wayside Inn is no abiding-place ;
 Yet be offenceless and ensue right ways
 If thou desirest to receive just praise.

When tidings reached the highways and bázárs :—

"Khusrau Parwíz was slaughtered thus," his foes
 Went to the palace-prison of the sad,
 Where fifteen of his noble sons were bound,
 And slew them there, though innocent, what time
 The fortune of the Sháh was overthrown.
 Shírwí, the world-lord, dared say naught and hid
 His grief though he wept sorely at the news,
 And afterwards sent twenty of his guards
 To keep his brothers' wives and children safe
 Now that the Shah had been thus done to death.

C. 2045

So passed that reign and mighty host away,
 Its majesty, its manhood, and its sway
 Such as no kings of kings possessed before,
 Or heard of from the men renowned of yore.
 It booteth nothing what the wise man saith
 When once his head is in the dragon's breath.
 Call this world "crocodile" for it doth gnaw
 The prey that it hath taken with its claw.
 The work of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz is done ;
 His famous hoards and throne and host are gone.
 To put one's trust in this world is to be
 In quest of dates upon a willow-tree.
 Why err in such a fashion from the way
 Alike by darksome night and shining day ?
 Whate'er thy gains let them suffice thee still
 As thou art fain to save thy soul from ill,
 And in thy day of strength hold thyself weak ;
 For kindly impulses and justice seek,
 And be intent on good. For what is thine
 To give or spend do as thou dost incline ;
 All else is pain and toil. How goodlier
 Than we are friends whose faithfulness is clear !
 Such faithfulness of friends is greatly dear.

§ 6

*How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín
killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain*

Since I have ended with Khusrau Parwíz
I speak next of Shírwí and of Shírín.

As soon as three and fifty days had passed
Since that whereon that glorious Sháh was slain
Shírwí dispatched Shírín a messenger
To say : “Thou wicked, potent sorceress,
Learned but in necromancy and black arts !
In all Írán thou art the guiltiest.
By necromancy didst thou gain the Sháh,
And by thy craft thou bringest down the moon.
Quake, guilty one ! and come to me. Abide not
Thus in thy palace, joyful and secure.”

Shírín raged at his message and abuse
So foul and senseless. Thus she said : “God grant
That parricides possess not Grace or presence.
I will not see the wretch e’en from afar
At funeral or feast.”

That mournful dame

Sent for a scribe and had a document
Drawn in the olden tongue, instructing him
Regarding her last wishes and estate.
She kept a little poison in a pyx ;
She could not well procure it in the city.
She kept it on her, sewed a winding-sheet
To wrap her form—that cypress of the garden—
And then returned this answer to Shírwí :—
“Exalted Sháh, the wearer of the crown !
Now perish all thy words and perish too
The villain’s heart and spirit that hath heard

Of witchcraft save by name and joyed therein.
 Had Sháh Khusrau Parwíz been one to cheer
 His soul with sorcery there would have been
 A sorceress within his bower, and she
 Had seen his face.¹ He kept me for his pleasure,
 And when the dawn was peeping he was wont
 To call me from the golden bower and joy
 At sight of me. Shame on thee for such words !
 Such knavish talk becometh not a king.
 Remember God, the Giver of all good,
 And utter not such words in others' hearing."

They brought the answer to the Sháh. Shírwí
 Raged 'gainst the guiltless dame² and said : "Thou
 needs

Must come. None is blood-thirstier than thou.
 Come and behold my crown's top. If it be
 Magnifical then do it reverence."

Shírín, on hearing this, was full of pain ;
 She writhed ; her cheeks grew wan. She thus
 replied :—

"I will not come to thee save in the presence
 Of those wise men that are about thy court,
 Men of experience and clerkly skill."

Shírwí dispatched and summoned fifty men
 Both wise and old, then sent one to Shírín,
 To say : "Arise and come. Enough of talk."

Thereat she robed herself in blue and black,
 And drew anear the Sháh, approached apace
 The Rosary of Revellers³—the spot
 Wherein those fluent Persians were—and sat
 Behind the great king's curtain as became

¹ Reading with P.

² So far as the charge of witchcraft was concerned. Shírín (Vol. viii., p. 389) had murdered Maryam, Kubád's mother.

³ "elle alla droit à la salle de fête de Schadegân." Mohl or, more strictly, Barbier de Meynard, who completed the translation from §4 to the end of the poem.

The virtuous. He sent to her to say :—

“ Two months¹ of mourning for Khusráu Parwíz
Are o’er. Now be my wife that thou mayst take
Thy pleasure and avoid a mean estate.

I will maintain thee as my father did,
And e’en with more respect and tenderness.”

Shírín replied : “ Let me be righted first,
And then my life shall be at thy dispose.
I will not hesitate in answering
The hest and purpose of thy glorious heart.”

C. 2047 Shírwí agreed to that fair dame’s request,
Whereat the noble lady raised her voice
Behind the royal curtains, saying : “ O Sháh !
Be happy and victorious. Thou said’st
That I was a bad woman and a witch,
Remote from purity and rectitude.”

Shírwí replied : “ ’Twas so, but generous folk
Do not take dudgeon at mere hastiness.”

Shírín addressed the other Persians present
Within the Rosary of Revellers,
And asked : “ What have ye seen in me of ill,
Guile, folly, and dark ways ? For many a year
I was the mistress of Írán and helped
The Brave in everything. I ne’er ensued
Aught but the right ; fraud and deceit I banned.
Through my word many were made governors,
And took their portions of the world full oft.
Who hath beheld my shadow in Írán
Away from home ? If any one hath marked
My shadow, crown, and state let such declare
What he hath seen or heard and by his answer
Reveal the truth.”

The magnates in attendance
All spake her fair. “ In all the world,” they said,
“ She hath no peer in public and in private.”

¹ Reading with P.

Shírín proceeded thus : “ Ye lords and chiefs
 Both veteran and redoubted ! three things make
 The worth of women that bedeck the throne
 Of greatness : one is modesty and wealth
 Wherewith her husband may adorn his house ;
 The next is bearing blessed sons, that she
 May e’en exceed her spouse in happiness ;
 The third is having beauty and fine form,
 Joined with the love of a sequestered life.
 When I was mated to Khusrau Parwíz,
 And entered on seclusion, he had come
 Weak and dispirited from Rúm to live
 Within our land, but after reached such power
 As none had heard of or had looked upon.
 Moreover I have had four sons by him
 To his great joy—Nastúr, Shahryár, Farúd,
 And Mardánsháh, blue heaven’s coronal.
 Jamshíd and Farídún had not such sons ;
 May my tongue perish if I lie herein !
 Their bodies all are now beneath the dust,
 Their spirits roaming in pure Paradise.”

Unveiling then her lovely countenance,
 And musky hair, “ There is my face,” she added,
 “ Such as it is. If there be falsehood show it.
 My hair was all my hidden excellence,
 For none on earth e’er used to look thereon.
 What I display is all my sorcery,
 Not necromancy, fraud, and evil bent.”

None had beheld her hair before, no chief
 Had heard thereof. The elders were astound,
 And their mouths watered. When Shírwí beheld
 The visage of Shírín his spirit flew
 Unmarked away from him. Her face so dazed him
 That love of her filled all his heart. He cried : --
 “ I want none but thyself. If I have thee
 For wife Írán can give me nothing more.

I will not go from thy commands, but limn
My loyalty to thee upon mine eyes."

The lady of the lovely face replied :—

" I still need somewhat of the Íránian king.
I have two wants if thou wilt bid me speak,
And may thy king of kingship last for ever."

Shírwí replied : " My soul is thine, thy wish,
Whate'er it be, is granted."

Said Shírín :—

" All treasures laid up by me in this land
Thou shalt assign me as mine own before
This noble company and write thyself
Upon this roll that thou renoucest all,
Both small and great."

Shírwí made haste to do
Her bidding. Having gained her wish she quitted
The Rosary of Revellers, the chiefs
And noble Persians, went home, freed her slaves,
And made them happy with that wealth of hers
Whereof she gave a part to mendicants,
And to her family a larger share.
She gave too somewhat to the Fanes of Fire,
The feasts of New Year's Day and Mihr and Sada,
To ruined homes and caravansarais
Then turned to lions' lairs. All this she gave
As offerings from Khusrau Parwíz, the world-lord,
And joyed his soul thereby. She sought the garden
And taking off her veil sat unadorned
Upon the ground and summoning her folk
Assigned with courtesy a place to each,
Then cried thus loudly : " Hear, ye unaggrieved !
For none will ever see my face again.
Fear ye the Judge of those that seek for justice,
The Lighter of the sun and moon and stars,
And speak but truth ; deceit is not for sages.
Since first I came before Khusrau Parwíz,

First made mine entry to his golden bower,
 And was chief wife and Glory of the Sháh,
 Hath any fault at all appeared in me ?
 There is no need to speak to save my face :
 What booteth that to woman in her need ? ”

All rose to make reply : “ Famed dame of dames, C. 2049
 So eloquent and wise and bright of soul !
 By God ! none ever saw thee, ever heard
 Thy voice behind the curtains. Verily
 Thy like hath sat not on the goodly throne
 Since Sháh Húshang.”

Then all the servitors,
 Slaves emulous and vigilant of heart,
 Exclaimed : “ Exalted lady praised in Chín,
 In Rúm and in Taráz ! who would presume
 To speak aught ill of thee ? Could evil-doing
 Befit that face of thine ? ”

Thus said Shírín :—
 “ This reprobate, whom heaven above will curse,
 Slew his own sire to compass crown and throne,
 And may he never more see fortune’s face !
 Hath he himself shut death out by a wall
 Who lightly recked thus of a father’s blood ?
 He sent a message to me that bedimmed
 Mine own shrewd soul. I answered : ‘ While I live
 My heart shall serve my Maker.’ I declared
 My purpose fully, fearful of my foe :
 He may defame me publicly when dead.
 Ye are free agents and my slaves no longer.”

They wept much at her words and furthermore
 Consumed with anguish for Khusrau Parwíz.
 Informants went before the Sháh and told
 What they had heard about that guiltless dame.
 He asked : “ Hath that good lady further wishes ? ”

She sent to say : “ I have one wish, no more :
 I fain would ope the late Sháh’s charnel-house ;

I have a great desire to look on him."

Shírwí replied : " So do, 'tis natural."

The keeper oped the door. That pious lady

Began her wailing, went and laid her face

Upon the visage of Khusrau Parwíz,

Spake of the past and took the mortal bane :¹

She sent the dust up from her own sweet life.

She sat beside the Sháh with visage veiled,

Clad in a single camphor-scented robe ;

She set her back against the wall and died ;

She died and won the plaudits of the world.

Shírwí fell sick when he had heard the news,

For such a spectacle affrighted him.

He bade construct another sepulchre,

And make her diadem of musk and camphor.

C. 2050 He shut the old Sháh's charnel. Soon they gave

Shírwí the bane ; the world had had its fill

Of Sháhs ! Thus luckless both in birth and death

He left the throne of kingship to his son.

One reigneth seven months and in the eighth

Doth don the camphor crown ! Of earth's good things

To have possession of the throne is best,

Of evils life cut short is vilest.

¹ Cf. p. 36.

XLV

ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ

HE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Ardshír's accession is well received by the people. He makes Pírúz, son of Khusrau, the captain of the host. Guráz, on the pretext of avenging Khusrau Parwíz, but really with the intention of seizing the kingship for himself, schemes to bring about the death of the Sháh who is murdered at a banquet by Pírúz.

NOTE

Ardshír (Artaxerxes III., September, A.D. 628—April, A.D. 630) was, according to Tabarí, only seven years old at his accession. By some accounts he was only one year old at the time.¹ He was of course a mere puppet in the hands of the nobles. The "True Cross," if the date of its elevation at Jerusalem—Sept. 14th, A.D. 629—be correct, must have been restored during his reign.²

§ 1. The Arabic Tabarí says that the realm was administered by Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp (Míhr 'Hasis in the Persian version), the High Steward, who had charge of the Sháh's person. This may account for his being made out to be a regicide in the Sháhnáma. He really seems to have been a well-intentioned man who did his best in very difficult circumstances. At all events, according to the Persian Tabarí, Shahrbaráz, after taking possession of Ctesiphon, slew him and other nobles on the pretext of avenging the death of Khusrau Parwíz.

¹ NT, p. 386. ZT, ii., 347. ² NT, p. 392 note.

§ 2. It appears that Shahrbaráz (Guráz) was not consulted when Ardshir was raised to the throne, and he made this an excuse for taking violent measures. The occasion was a favourable one for an ambitious general in command of an army. Moreover, he had an understanding, confirmed by matrimonial alliances, with Heraclius, who no doubt promised to recognise him if he became Sháh. He accordingly marched upon Ctesiphon with 6,000 or, according to another account, 60,000 troops. The High Steward made an attempt at resistance, but Shahrbaráz with the connivance of the captain of the guard and other chiefs was successful and the usual scenes of outrage and massacre ensued.¹

§ 1

How Ardshír, Son of Shirwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs

Now as the next confronting me I voice
The reign of Sháh Ardshír, I have no choice.

When Sháh Ardshír sat on the throne both young
And old flocked to him from Írán, for many
Were chiefs grown old, to hear what he would say.²
The young Ardshír then loosed his tongue and thus
He spake : “ Ye well-tried warriors ! may one,
Whoe’er he be, that sitteth on the seat
Of sovereignty possess an open mind,
And worship God. We will ensue the course
Of former Sháhs, ensue too Grace and Faith.
May we remember God who giveth good,
May all our acts be just ! I will advance
The pious and make tyrants bleed. I trust
The army to Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
Who loveth equity and loyal lieges.

¹ For the above see *Id.*, p. 386 and notes. ZT, ii., 347. RSM, p. 541

² Couplet omitted.

They for their part with such a paladin
Still will be happy and serene of soul."

Full many were contented with his speech ;
A peaceful ruler was the wish of each.

§ 2

*How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and
how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Pírúz, Son of
Khusrau*

Then tidings reached Guráz, who had involved
Khusrau Parwíz in sorrow and distress,
And he dispatched from Rúm a man to say :—
"The crown of vile Shírwí is in the dust.
Hell take his soul and be his charnel-house
O'ertuned ! Who ever knew a lofty cypress
Wrecked in the garden by the grass, and one
Like to Khusrau Parwíz, whose peer as king
Time's eye and heart perceive not, who bestowed
My greatness on me, and I have not turned
From his behest ? Now fate dethroneth him,
And fortune's face is utterly averse ;
The circling heaven is his foe and maketh
His portion to be hidden in the earth ;
The sun and moon amerce him of his sway,
And take the crown and throne from such a king,
Bestow the sovereignty upon Shírwí,
And give up all Írán to wretchedness !
When he passed and Ardshír assumed the crown
Both young and old rejoiced in him, but I,
If I have any portion in Írán,
Will suffer not our country's air to breathe

C. 2051

Upon him. Have I not received the news
 Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz wrecked by the words
 Of one of evil mark ? I will not have
 A king like this one though the age be Sháhless,
 For there is much contention in his head,
 And he adviseth with another host.
 Now will I come in force with chosen chiefs
 Of Rúm and of Írán, and we shall see
 What sort of Head that is to whom such schemes
 Appeal. I will uproot him so that never
 Shall he name kingship more."

He sent a runner
 To seek the ancients of the Íránian host,
 And strove in other fashion to advance
 His ill designs by writing to Pírúz,
 Son of Khusrau, thus : " The Sásánians' fortune
 Is louring and we need a world-aspirant
 To gird himself for action. Haply thou
 Art ware of what to do and how to take
 The needful steps, wilt seek for many helpers,
 Both young and old, wilt clear away Ardshír,
 And afterwards attain thy whole desire,
 Be safe and well contented ; but if thou
 Reveal this plot, and feed the sword of war
 With blood, I will lead forth such hosts from Rúm
 That I shall make the world dark in thine eyes.
 Heed well my words, and mayst thou think no scorn
 Of mine intent ; thou must not fall through folly.
 Oh ! pass not from the throne of majesty
 To underneath the dust. Repentance then
 Will not avail thee when in wreak my sword
 Is reaping heads."

Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 When he had read that letter and perceived
 The whole intendment of that self-willed man,
 Much pondered on the matter and consulted

The ancient magnates, saying : " This affair
Hath come upon me unawares and like
A revelation ! "

This was their reply : --

" Famed and redoubted chieftain ! if our Sháh
Shall perish we shall rightly perish too
For such a crime. Let not Guráz' words move thee
To perpetrate such ill, but take occasion
For doing good. Write him a fitting answer,
And wake him from his dream. Say : ' Thwart not
thou

God's purposes ; give not the Dív a way
To thine own heart. Reflect upon the case
Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz and all the wrong
That led to his undoing, for what time
Thou didst depose him the Sásánian fortune
Went at one blow, and when Shírwí ascended
The royal throne and girt his kingly loins
Folk hoped such days as when Khusrau Parwíz
Was Sháh whose wits were keen in all regards,
And if the world became what it became,
And gat no profit from the state of things,
It was because the world dealt foolishly,
And by one stroke lost its advantages.
Now that Ardshír, succeeding to Kubád,
Is seated as the Sháh upon the throne,
The world rejoicing in his majesty,
And earth and time exulting in his Grace,
Why should the world, now tranquil, be convulsed
By pain and war ? Knock not at evils' door ;
Those that slay blameless kings will prosper not.
In this strife circling heaven must not raise
Írán in dust. I fear that God will end
The Íránians' term for ills more heinous still.' "

Pírúz, on this wise counselled, wrote Guráz—
That villain of vile race (may none like him

Be ever chief !) —a profitable letter,
 And thou hadst said that one had got his heart
 Between the shears when he had read those words.
 In fierce wrath with Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 He gathered all his baggage and commanded
 The host to march forth plainwards. At the news
 Pírúz dispatched a cameleer to go
 In all haste to Tukhár to summon him,
 Informing him at large of the affair,
 Of what Guráz was doing and the strife
 About the imperial throne. Then from Tukhár
 This answer reached Pírúz, son of Khusrau :—
 “ Risk not the blood of the Íránian chiefs,
 O noble man ! but hear what saith Guráz.
 Since thou hast written on such wise perchance
 He may not come to fight with thee.”

C. 2053

Now when

Pírúz, son of Khusrau, had seen that letter
 His heart had no repose from evil thoughts,
 But gloomed with thinking how to harm the Sháh,
 Whose wont it was to summon him, for he
 Was an observant man and eloquent,
 And served as minister and treasurer.
 He came one dark night for an audience,
 And found the wine bright and the welcome warm.
 Ardshír was seated in his palace-hall
 In company with many young and old,
 And when Pírúz, son of Khusrau, came raised,
 Thou wouldst have said, his head to heaven, called
 For harp, and all the hall was filled with music.
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, when midnight came,
 Had drunk one man¹ of wine while the companions
 Of Sháh Ardshír were all bemused ; no minstrel
 Was left that kept his wits. The miscreant
 Dismissed the company : he and the Sháh

¹ See Vol. i., p. 290 *note*.

Alone remained. That man of outrage rose,
Laid hand upon the Sháh's lips unawares,
And held it there until Ardshír was dead.
The palace filled with scimitars and arrows.
All there—ambitious youths and warriors—
Were fautors of Pírúz, son of Khusrau.
Upon this manner ceased Ardshír to be
When he had had six months of sovereignty.

XLVI

GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)

HE REIGNED FIFTY DAYS

ARGUMENT

Guráz, hearing of Ardshír's death, marches on Taisafún and urged on by his younger, though dissuaded by his elder son, usurps the throne. His rule described. A plot is formed against him and he is slain while returning from the chase. The throne remains vacant for a while.

NOTE

(*Cf.* note to previous reign. Guráz (Shahr-Barz, April 27th—June 9th, A.D. 630) reigned for forty days.¹ He was one of the three chief generals employed by Khusrau Parwíz in his long war against the Eastern Roman Empire. His real name, according to Tabarí, was Farruhán. This in Pahlaví would be Farrukhán, which by a misreading has become Faráyín in the Sháhnáma. Shahrbaráz (Shahrguráz, or Shahrwaráz) is, says Tabarí, a title. Firdausí uses the shortened form Guráz, which means "boar," because it is more convenient metrically. The title may have been appropriate enough. In the Sháhnáma the general is split up into two personalities—Guráz or Faráyín, the usurper, and Shahránguráz, the avenger of the breach made by the upstart in the sacred line of Sásánian succession.² In Tabarí the leader of the revolt is a native of Istakhr named Pustfar-rukh.³ Shahránguráz in the Sháhnáma is also of the same city.

¹ NT, p. 390 and *note*. ² *Id.* pp. 292 and *note*, 388 and *note*. ³ *Id.*

§ 1

How Guráz (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrán-guráz

Pírúz, son of Khusrau, dispatched a post,
 And letter too, in secret to Guráz,
 Whose sombre soul, what time the messenger
 Arrived, grew like the sun, and from those parts
 He led forth such an army that the way
 Was barred to fly and emmet. Like the wind
 He sped to Taisafún, his soldiers' hands
 All had been bathed in blood. When he arrived
 The chiefs went out to welcome him, but none
 Among the troops dared breathe for they were few. C. 2054
 Guráz, on entering the city, stayed not
 For minister and counsellor but chose
 A void place, and the magnates privily
 Conferred with him. Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 Set loose his tongue and said : " Famed paladin !
 Whom hast thou chosen to be king of kings,
 And illustrate the crown of majesty ? "

The warrior Guráz made answer thus :—

" I have not any secrets from Írán.
 To-morrow look ye out for some new Sháh
 To sit like some new moon upon the throne."

Since knowledge is the glory of a man
 Walk not, if thou canst help it, foolishly.
 He that hath wisdom speaketh goodly words,
 And as it groweth he deserteth ill.

It is the best of man's accomplishments,
 The world's endeavour and the way of God.
 Of things that grace one not there is no need
 To speak at large for he will foolishly
 Disgrace himself howe'er he may exalt
 The case in point. When wisdom hath deserted
 The head, and shame the eye, fame and disgrace,
 And cold and hot, are one—no terror this
 To any coward whether quick or dead.
 Make, if thou canst, all good thy business
 Because the world abideth not with any.
 Let all thy usance be humanity,
 Munificence and uprightness thy Faith.

When Faráyín assumed the royal crown
 He uttered what was in his mind and said :—
 “ Let me assume the kingship for a while,
 And sit upon the throne of gold in joy.
 Far better scatter wealth and be exalted
 Than purchase sixty years of servitude.
 Thus will I sit a while in sovereignty,
 Arrayed in satin¹ and in painted silk,
 And after me my son shall take my throne,
 Assume this royal crown, be king as was
 His sire, and be exalted and renowned.
 Whoe'er shall minister to our delight
 Shall be a happy man among mankind.
 In feast-time we will drink with joyful hearts,
 In war-time we will hunt our enemies.”

His elder son said privily to him :—
 “ Who of us, father ! ever wore the crown ?
 Feel not secure, take means to compass wealth ;
 Thou wast the world's protector ; keep to that.
 If any member of the royal race
 Shalt come thou wilt not long be here ; thy heart
 Will keep of kingship only grief and pain ;

¹ Or “ beaver-skins.”

Thou wilt be wretched, destitute, and wan."

Then said the younger son : " Thou hast become
Crowned in the world and hast both troops and
treasures

Befitting royalty, but treasureless

Wilt have to labour still. What ancestor

Of Farídún, who had Abtín to sire,

E'er wore the crown ? Hold fast the world by courage
And treasure. Nobody is born a king."¹

The younger's words pleased Faráyín the best,
Who bade his elder son : " Be not so raw."

He laid out in the royal offices

The muster-roll and called all troops to court.

He gave drachms night and day and many robes

Of honour ill-deserved. Within two weeks

Of all the treasury of Sháh Ardshír

Remained not what would buy an arrow's plume !

Whene'er Guráz would go forth to the pleasance

The lights were torches made of ambergris,

Four score before and four score after him :

Behind them came his friends and partisans.

Of gold and silver were the goblets all,

The golden gem-encrusted.² 'Twas his use

To feast all night. The nobles' hearts were full

Of vengeance on him. 'Twas his wont to roam

A-nights the gardens and the riding-ground.

Save but to sleep and wake, to eat and plunder.

That slight, weak-witted one knew naught. He went

Drunk ever to repose and with a sash

From Chín about his head. The troops were all

Vexed to the heart at him while all the province

Was full of turmoil and distress. He lost

All trace of generosity and grew

Unjust, unfortunate, and good for naught.

The world was wrecked by his iniquity,

¹ But *cf.* Vol. vi., p. 320.

² The above couplets transposed.

And at his handling people smote their heads.
 He shed the blood of innocents until
 The troops grew wroth with him. He used to shut
 His eyes for gold and would have sold the world
 To win *dínárs*. Folk cursed him. All desired
 His death and meeting privily discussed
 His deeds. *Hurmuzd Shahránguráz*, a horseman
 Redoubted of the city of *Istakhr*—
 The glory of the chieftains—thus addressed
 One night the *Íránians* secretly : “ Ye chiefs !
 The time of *Faráyín* is proving grievous ;
 He holdeth all the chiefs in light esteem.
 Why have your brains and hearts become thus
 straitened ?

Through him all eyes are tearful, livers charged
 With blood. Is no physician to be found ?
 He is not royal or *Sásánian* ;
 Why gird the loins before him ? Of a truth
 Your hearts have flown out of your breasts or else
 Your pluck hath disappeared ! ”

The folk replied :—

“ Since there was no one left fit for the throne
 None is inspired by jealousy to take
 This base-born’s heart away ; but we adopt
 Thy counsel. Tell us from thy stores of lore
 How to release *Írán* from this insane
 And hot-brained *Sháh* ill both in word and deed.
 May he be never blessed ! ”

Shahránguráz

Replied : “ The *Íránians* have suffered long.
 If ye will harm me not but play the Persian
 E’en now by holy God’s aid will I bring him
 Down from his throne to dust.”

He gat this answer :—

“ May no harm come to thee ! All we the host
 To-day are thy supporters and thy stronghold

If ill herefrom befall thee."

Hearing this

That royal warrior sought how to set
 Hands on the worthless Sháh. Now he one day
 Took order and departed from the city
 To hunt, and of the Íránians a troop
 Of lords and lieges fared, escorting him.
 He urged his courser on and rode about
 As 'twere Ázargashasp, the cavaliers
 Encircling him and beating up the game.
 Now at what time they turned back city-wards
 Shahránguráz looked at the hapless Sháh
 With boldness, chose an arrow from his quiver,
 One that was straight and had a point of steel,
 And urged his black steed while the host looked on.
 He stretched the bow and drew it out at whiles
 To chest or head, then notched, as if in sport,
 An arrow on the string and drew the bow
 Till it concealed the point, and loosed his thumb.
 Forthwith the shaft struck on the monarch's back,
 Who dropped his whip. The arrow was all blood
 Up to the feathers and the iron head
 Protruded from his navel. All the troops
 Unsheathed and all that night while dust-clouds rose
 They plied their swords and knew not whom they
 fought,
 But took and gave back blows and cursed or blessed
 That deed. Now when the yellow Veil appeared,
 So that the world seemed like a leopard's back,
 There was a multitude of slain and maimed,
 And cavaliers and leaders were astound.
 That great host was dispersed like timid sheep
 When they perceive a wolf. Long they remained
 Without a king : none cared to claim the crown.
 For long they sought and sought in vain to trace
 Some royal scion of the noble race.

XLVII

PÚRÁNDUKHT

SHE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

NOTE

Púrándukht (Puranducht, summer A.D. 630—autumn A.D. 631), reigned, according to Tabarí, for one year and four months. Her name, it appears, should be spelt with a B, not with a P. She is said to have restored the “True Cross,” but it seems more probable that this was done in the reign of Ardshír. She made the leader of the successful conspiracy against Shahrbaráz her prime minister.¹ She was the first historical female Sháh and it was in allusion to her reign and that of her sister Ázarmdukht that the distich is quoted in Mír Khánd :—

“No dignity remains in a household
In which the hens are crowing like cocks.”²

§ 1

*How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pírúz,
Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended*

’Tis but crude policy when women rule,
But yet there was a lady—Púrándukht—
Surviving of the lineage of Sásán,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 390 *seq.* and *notes*, ZT, ii., 349.

² RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., p. 101.

And well read in the royal volume : her
 They seated on the throne of sovereignty,
 The Great strewed jewels over her, and then
 She spake upon this wise : “ I will not have
 The people scattered,¹ and I will enrich
 The poor with treasure that they may not bide
 In their distress. God grant that in the world
 There may be none aggrieved because his pain
 Is my calamity. I will expel
 Foes from the realm and walk in royal ways.”

She made search for Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 Who was delated by an alien,
 Whereat she chose some warriors from the host
 Who brought Pírúz before her. She exclaimed :—
 “ Foul-purposed miscreant !² thou shalt receive,
 As infamous, the guerdon for thy deeds.”

She bade bring from the stalls a colt unbroken,
 And bound, firm as a rock, Pírúz thereto
 Without a saddle and with yoke on neck.
 The vengeful lady had that untamed steed
 Brought to the riding-ground and thither sent,
 With lassos coiled up in their saddle-straps,
 A band of warriors to urge the colt
 To utmost speed, to strive from time to time
 To throw Pírúz and ever roll itself
 Upon the ground. That colt won much applause
 Until with skin in shreds and dripping blood
 Pírúz gave up the ghost right wretchedly.
 Why having done wrong seekest thou for justice ?
 Nay, ill for ill ; that is the course of right.

C. 2058

Púrándukht ruled the world with gentleness ;
 No wind from heaven blew upon the dust,
 But when six months had passed beneath her sway
 The circle of her life bent suddenly ;
 For one week she was ailing, then expired,

¹ Through misgovernment.² One couplet omitted

And took away with her a fair renown.

Such is the process of the turning sky,
So potent while so impotent are we !

If thine be opulence or poverty,
If life affordeth gain or loss to thee,

If thou shalt win what thou desirest so,
Or disappointed be in wretchedness,

And whether thou be one of wealth or woe,
Both woe and wealth will pass away no less.

Reign as a Sháh a thousand years, five score,
For sixty years or thirty, ten or four,

It cometh to one thing, when all is done,
If thou hadst many years or barely one.

Oh ! may thine actions thine own comrades be,
For they in every place will succour thee.

Let go thy clutch upon this Wayside Inn

Because a goodlier place is thine to win.

If thine endeavour be to learning given

Thou wilt by knowledge roam revolving heaven.

XLVIII

ÁZARMDUKHT

SHE REIGNED FOUR MONTHS

NOTE

Before Ázarmdukht (Azermidocht, end of A.D. 631—beginning of A.D. 632) came to the throne there seems to have been a short interval during which a distant scion of the royal House, who took the name of Píruz, ruled for less than a month. The chief noble of the time, who was governor of Khurásán, wished to make Ázarmdukht his wife on which she had him privately executed. This noble's son was the Rustam that fought and fell at Kádísíya some years later. On hearing of his father's fate Rustam, who was in temporary authority in Khurásán, marched with a great army against Ázarmdukht, overthrew her and put her to death after she had reigned six months. Her name probably means "modest girl."¹

§ 1

How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died

There was another dame hight Ázarmdukht,
Who had fruition of the crown of greatness.
She came, sat down upon the royal throne,
And made herself the mistress of the world.
Her first words were : " O sages, veterans,
And masters of affairs ! be just in all,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 393 and notes, ZT, ii, 350 *seq.*

And follow precedent, for ye hereafter
Must make the bricks your pillow. I will foster
The loyal liege, assist him with dinárs,
And if he erreth be longsuffering ;
But him that is disloyal and deserteth
The way of wisdom and of precedent
Will I suspend in shame upon the gibbet,
Be he an Arab, Rúman cavalier,
Or Persian thane."

C. 2059

She filled the throne four months,
But with the fifth disaster came thereto,
For she too died, the throne had not a Sháh,
But was the plaything of the ill-disposed.
With the revolving sky 'tis everything
To be all vengeful with its fosterling.

XLIX

FARRUKHZĀD

HE REIGNED ONE MONTH

NOTE

Between, and even earlier than, the death of Āzarmdukht and the accession of Yazdagird III., the order of the dynastic succession becomes very confused. The names of the Sháhs vary in the different lists. The reason is that it was a period of great internal unrest and various aspirants to the throne held contemporaneously some short-lived authority in different provinces of the empire. One of these princes, Farrukhzád (Farrukhzád-Khusrau) has received the honour of being included in the list of the Sháhs as recorded in the Sháhnáma. Two accounts of the length of his reign are given in Tabarí. According to one, it lasted for six months, according to the other, for a year. Both agree that he did not die a natural death, and one of them states that his death was instigated by the adherents of Yazdagird.¹

§ 1

*How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was
slain by a Slave*

Then from Jahram they summoned Farrukhzád,
And seated him upon the throne of kingship.
There with a pious soul he praised the Maker,

¹ NT, p. 397 and note. Cf. RSM, p. 544.

And said : “ Son of the kings of kings am I,
 And would have naught but quiet in the world.
 The mischief-maker shall not be exalted
 While I am Sháh, but him that from his heart
 Ensueeth right, and is not mischievous,
 Will I hold dear as my pure soul, and seek not
 To harm the harmless. Him that beareth toil
 On our behalf we will reward with treasure.
 We will hold dear all friends and raise the fame
 Of chieftains everywhere, but all my subjects,
 Both friends and enemies, are safe with me.”

The troops all blessed him : “ Ne’er may earth and
 time

Lack thee.” Yet when his throne was one month old
 The head of all his fortune came to dust.
 He had a slave, a cypress-tree in stature,
 Fair, lusty, and well-liking. That knave’s name
 Was Siyah Chashm.¹ May heaven ne’er bring his
 like !

The Sháh too had a handmaid whom he loved.
 She chanced on Siyah Chashm all unawares
 One day, who sent to say : “ If thou wilt meet me
 At such a place thou shalt have endless gifts,
 And I will deck thy crown with jewelry.”

The handmaid heard, made no reply, but went
 And told the thing to Farrukhzád who raged,
 And could not eat or sleep in his concern.
 He put the feet of Siyah Chashm in fetters,
 And cast him into prison. When the knave
 Had been confined awhile the Sháh released him,
 For many pled for him. The slave returned
 To serve the Sháh and cut his lifetime short,
 For just as such a bad malignant slave
 Would do he sought revenge upon the Sháh,
 And seizing on a time when Farrukhzád

¹ Black-eyed.

Reposed himself put poison in the wine.
The Sháh drank, lived one week, and all that heard
About his fate lamented him. The kingship
Was in extremities and foes appeared
On every side. The throne of king of kings,
Through these ill doings of the Íránians,
Was overturned.

Of such a fashion are
Time's revolutions ! Let it be thy care
To gather for thyself therefrom thy share.
Eat what thou hast and trust the morrow not,
For it may hold for thee a different lot :
To give to others it may take from thee.
Thou callest this a world and verily
It doth whirl ! So enjoy thine own, let go
The surplusage that thou hast toiled for so
To other folk but never to thy foe,
Else whensoever thy day is overpast
Thy hoards will be as is the desert-blast,
Thy treasures all become thine enemy's ;
So give away to set thy mind at ease.

L

YAZDAGIRD

HE REIGNED TWENTY YEARS

ARGUMENT

Yazdagird becomes Sháh. The country is invaded by the Arabs. He sends Rustam, the captain of the host, to oppose them. Rustam takes a despondent view of the situation, and after some attempt at negotiations is defeated by the Arabs at Kádisiya and slain. The war continues, and Yazdagird withdraws to Khurásán to get help from Máhwí of Súr, the governor. Máhwí plots with Bízhan, a Turkish prince, against Yazdagird, who is betrayed in battle and takes refuge in a mill, where he is slain by the miller at the bidding of Máhwí. Máhwí assumes the crown, makes war on Bízhan, is taken prisoner, and put to death. The poem ends with a brief passage, in which Firdausí gives some account of the completion of his undertaking, of help afforded him and of discouragements undergone, and concludes with a well founded assurance of his own future fame.

NOTE

Yazdagird (Isdegird III., A.D. 632-652 or 653) has given his name to a chronological era which still obtains among the Parsís. It dates from June 16th, A.D. 632. He was the son of Sháhryár, son of Khusrau Parwíz, and was an infant at the time when that Sháh and his sons were put to death after the accession of Shírwí (Kubád;¹) On that occasion he was taken for safety to Istakhr. Tabarí says that he was

¹ See p. 34, 35.

murdered at the age of twenty-eight after a reign of twenty years. He was therefore only eight years old when a party among the nobles set him up as a puppet king at Istakhr (Persepolis), the old seat of empire, Ctesiphon at that time being in the hands of a rival claimant of the throne. In the contention that followed Yazdagird was successful, and in the course of A.D. 633 he became recognised as sole Sháh, the administration remaining in the hands of the chiefs.¹ He had succeeded to a heritage of woe. His empire was ill-prepared for the troubles that were in store for it. Exhausted by long wars, torn by domestic dissensions, and lately devastated by plague, it had to confront a new and vigorous organization inspired by religious enthusiasm and impelled thereby to extend its borders on every side. Had Yazdagird been a born leader of men and come to the throne in the prime of life, he might for the time at least have been successful, but in the circumstances, and taking into consideration what we can gather as to his own character, we can now see how hopeless from the outset his prospects were. Students of Persian, however, have probably reason to feel grateful to his reign, for even though we put aside as unsatisfactory what tradition tells us on the subject, a reasonable presumption remains that with the return of settled government to a distracted country there was a revival of interest in the story of the Íránian race and its heroes, and that compilations were then made from which we still though indirectly benefit.²

§§ 2-11. The following is intended to supplement Firdausi's inadequate account of the Arab conquest of the Sásánian empire. He appears to assign it to the last years of Yazdagird's then nominal sovereignty. From time immemorial the Íránians and Semites had been at enmity.³ In Íránian legend this feeling had found expression in the story of the wicked Sháh Zahhák, who, though originally an Aryan myth,⁴ came to be regarded in succeeding ages as an earthly king with his seat at Babylon. When, later still, the Íránians again felt the weight of Semitic oppression, he was turned into an Arab.⁵ Although during Sásánian times the semi-independent kingdom of Híra served to some extent as a buffer-state between the Persian empire and the wilder Arab

¹ NT, p. 397 *seq.* and *notes.*

⁴ *Id.* p. 7.

² Cf. Vol. i., p. 67.

³ *Id.* pp. 54, 135, 141.

⁵ *Id.* p. 10.

tribes there was always the liability of raids and the danger was much increased when Khusrau Parwíz was so unwise as to put an end to the long-standing dynasty of the princes of Híra and appointed a governor of his own in their stead.¹ In his reign too had occurred the disastrous battle of Dhú Kár, in which the smallness of the forces engaged were out of all proportion to the importance of the result. The Arabs celebrated their victory with songs of triumph.² With that inspiring memory and revelation of Persian weakness, with the prospect of rich spoil to be won, and a nation of infidels to be converted, it is not surprising that hostilities should break out between the young and vigorous and the old and enfeebled empire. Muhammad himself, tradition tells us, addressed a threatening letter to Khusrau Parwíz, who tore it up, and the Prophet, on hearing of this, said: "He has rent his own realm."³ Muhammad died in June, A.D. 632—the month of the child Yazdagird's accession. Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa, being apprised by an Arab chieftain, who had embraced Islam, of the state of the Persian empire, sent his great general, Khálid, to begin hostilities. Khálid was very successful in numerous engagements, and temporarily the whole tract bordering the western bank of the Euphrates from the Roman frontier almost to the Persian Gulf came into the hands of the Arabs. Khálid made Híra his headquarters, and was preparing to attack Ctesiphon and invade Írán when he was recalled by Abú Bakr to take command of the forces destined for the Syrian campaign. "This is 'Umar's doing," said Khálid. "He does not want to see me conquer 'Irák."⁴ The departure of Khálid was the Persians' opportunity. Encouraged by Rustam, who under Yazdagird had become commander-in-chief, the inhabitants of the conquered region rose against the Arabs but unsuccessfully. At this juncture Abú Bakr died and was succeeded by 'Umar, who began his reign by giving Abú 'Ubaida the chief command in Syria in the place of Khálid. Then, it is said, he appealed publicly to the Faithful to volunteer for the invasion of Persia and for two days in vain, the supersession of Khálid having caused great indignation. It may, however, have been thought that the acquisition of so much fertile territory and the consequent proximity to the Persian

¹ Vol. viii., p. 190.

² NT, p. 342.

³ ZT, ii., 325.

⁴ Id. iii., 348.

capital, were a sufficient achievement for the time being. Nevertheless, on the third day, when 'Umar made his appeal, Abú 'Ubaida (not Khálid's successor) offered himself and Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, followed suit. A thousand others imitated their example. 'Umar gave Abú 'Ubaida the chief command as he had been the first to volunteer. The Persians in the meantime had withdrawn to Ctesiphon, whence Rustam dispatched a force, which had with it the flag of Káwa,¹ to watch the enemy. Abú 'Ubaida, who was very inferior in numbers, threw a bridge across the Euphrates, attacked the Persians, was defeated and slain. This battle is known as "The Battle of the Bridge," and took place in November, A.D. 634. An attack, however, by the Persians on Híra failed, and the Arabs raided the Persian settlement of Baghdád (not of course the well-known city of that name²) where twice a year a fair was held. 'Umar appointed Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, to succeed Abú 'Ubaida, and both sides made efforts to reinforce their respective armies. The Persian adherents west of the Euphrates again rose. Rustam crossed the river with a great host, and advanced to Kádisiya where the Arabs had concentrated. The battle that ensued is said to have lasted four days with varying fortune till a dust-storm turned the scale in favour of the Arabs. The slaughter was very great and so was the spoil. 'Umar forbade the Arabs to make any further advance for the present, but as the situation of their camp proved to be very unhealthy he directed Sa'ad to choose a more suitable site, whereupon Sa'ad founded Kúfa. Thenceforth the whole of the region west of the Euphrates was lost to the Persians. To secure the lower course of the Euphrates and Tigris 'Umar also founded Basra, west of the Shatt-al-Arab. The battle of Kádisiya seems to have been fought A.D. 636-7, but the chronology of the period is somewhat uncertain. Then came a considerable pause in the Arab advance. The Arabs seem to have spent the interval well in securing what they had gained while the Persians on the other hand appear to have been paralysed by their misfortunes. At all events, when the invasion was resumed and Sa'ad, crossing the Euphrates, marched on Ctesiphon, no resistance was offered and Yazdagird, who had lingered there too late to secure the removal of most of his treasures, fled with his court to Hulwán.³ His example of flight seems

¹ Vol. i., p. 154 *seq.* ² See Vol. vi., p. 254. ³ See Vol. vii., p. 187.

to have been followed by a majority of the inhabitants. The Arabs came in for an immense booty according to Oriental accounts. If, however, we take into consideration the domestic troubles of the years preceding Yazdagird's accession, and what must have been the financial needs of the short-lived Sháhs of that period, we are justified in suspecting that the amount of precious metals and of the more portable forms of wealth generally was not so great as has been affirmed. Sa'ad, when he had established himself in the Persian capital, asked permission of 'Umar to pursue Yazdagird who had gathered a considerable army under the command of a Mihrán¹ at Jalúlá in the neighbourhood of Hulwán. 'Umar refused to allow Sa'ad to go in person and instructed him to send instead Háshim who was either his brother or his nephew. Háshim was much inferior in point of numbers, and it was six months before he brought the Persians to a decisive engagement. He then won a complete victory, and followed up his success at Jalúlá by the capture of Hulwán. Yazdagird fled to Rai and 'Umar, content for the moment with what had been achieved, forbade any further advance. The next stage of the Arab conquest was made outside the sphere of Sa'ad's authority, who sent, however, by 'Umar's command troops to assist. In the north Mesopotamia, and in the south Khúzistán, were invaded and annexed. A raid was made also across the Persian Gulf from Bahrain into Párs, but without lasting results, as the Arab forces got into difficulties and had to be rescued by an expedition sent for the purpose from Basra. About A.D. 640 in consequence, it is said, of complaints made by the people of Kúfa, 'Umar recalled Sa'ad and Yazdagird seized the opportunity to make a supreme effort to recover his lost possessions. A large army, summoned from the yet unconquered provinces of the empire, was concentrated at Nahávand, some fifty miles south of Hamadán, and placed under a Persian general named Pírúzán. On this 'Umar ordered Nu'mán, who was in command in Khúzistán, to gather all available forces from the regions already annexed and march against the enemy. Nu'mán, who was greatly inferior in point of numbers, found the Persians strongly encamped at Nahávand and tried in vain to bring on a general engagement. In the end he managed to effect his purpose by means of a stratagem. He broke up

¹ See *id.* p. 185.

his camp and made a hasty retreat. Píruzán went in pursuit, on which Nu'mán turned upon him and won what the Arabs call "The Victory of Victories" (A.D. 611-2). Píruzán was taken prisoner and slain, and Nu'mán himself fell in the fight. This was the last effort of the Persians at a national resistance. Henceforth their opposition was merely provincial or local, and wholly ineffective. One after another the remaining provinces of the Sásánian empire were overrun by the Arabs and permanently annexed, while Yazdagird, who had fled from Rai after the disaster of Nahávand, remained a fugitive till his death some ten years later.

§ 2. In Tabarí Rustam's father is called Farrukh-Hurmuzd, the governor of Khurásán, who was slain, it is said, by Ázarm-dukht and avenged by his son.¹ Khurásán probably formed part of the satrapy of Nínruz, one of the four into which Núshírwán divided his empire.² Tradition makes the governors of that satrapy, and their sons play a very important part during the last few years of the Sásánian dynasty.³ The position of commander-in-chief held by Rustam at the battle of Kádisiya, probably indicates that he had been instrumental in bringing about the elevation of Yazdagird to the throne.⁴

Rustam's brother was named Farrukhzád.

§ 3. Mughíra, son of Shu'ba, was one of the companions of Muhammad, and played a prominent role in the affairs of the time. He went on a similar embassy to the Persians before the battle of Nahávand.⁵ He was governor for a time at Basra,⁶ Mecca,⁷ and Kúfa, where he died in A.D. 670.⁸

§ 4. Sa'ad took no personal part in the battle of Kádisiya. He was suffering from sores at the time and had to content himself with merely directing operations.⁹ Consequently he did not slay Rustam in single combat as Firdausí states. When the dust-storm came on the fourth day of the battle, Rustam was seated under an awning erected on the bank of the canal of Kádisiya and surrounded by the camels that carried his treasure. The awning was blown into the water, and Rustam took shelter among them. In the confusion caused by the storm, the Arabs broke the Persian centre. One of them, named Hilál, striking in the darkness at random among the camels, happened to hit the one under which

¹ p. 59. ² See Vol. vii., p. 214.

³ pp. 5, 6, 59, 87, 95 *seq.*

⁴ NT, p. 397 *note*. NIN, p. 13.

⁵ ZT, iii., 474. ⁶ *Id.* 404.

⁷ *Id.* iv., 2.

⁸ *Id.* 16.

⁹ *Id.* iii., 398.

Rustam was seated, and cut the cord that secured its load of treasure which fell on Rustam's head. Though injured, he made an attempt to swim across the canal, but was caught by Hilál and slain.¹

§§ 9-11. There is a general agreement in Persian tradition that Yazdigird did not die a natural death. The scene of it is mostly laid at Marv, and the most popular version associates it with a mill. Firdausí's story evidently has been worked up as the appeals addressed to Máhwí show. The villain's guilt too is more emphasized, and he is made more directly responsible for the tragedy. Elsewhere the miller murders the Sháh for mere greed. Marv appears to be a likely place for Yazdagird to have chosen to reside in, as he could easily escape thence across the Oxus in case of need. In some accounts he does cross and negotiates to little purpose with the Turks, but is brought back across the river for the final scene. What the truth of the matter was seems to be quite uncertain.

§ 14. According to the account in the Persian Tabarí, Máhwí, after the death of Yazdagird, remained at Marv till he was compelled to leave owing to the approach of the Arabs, when he fled across the Oxus and took refuge with the Turks.² Their Khán is the Bízhan of the Sháhnáma.

§ 1

How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs

When Farrukhzád departed Yazdagird
 Became the Sháh upon the day of Ard
 In month Sapandármad. What said the man
 Brave, eloquent but weary of life's span?
 "Would that my mother had not brought me forth,
 High heaven not turned o'er me!
 The days of greatness and the days of want

¹ *Id.* 396.

² ZT, iii., 505.

For all soon cease to be.
 Time, as thou lookest, passeth ; none can take
 Arms to contend with it,
 So furnish forth the board and drain the cup,
 And sad talk intermit.
 What though thou ride high heaven yet bricks will
 prove

 Thy pillow at the last ;
 If thou be king what of the end ? First throne,
 But what when life hath past ?
 Let not thy heart be troubled, trust not much
 High heaven as thy support ;
 It acteth as it willeth ; elephant
 And lion are its sport.
 'Twill outlast thee, its tale is long ; be not
 With pride of life o'erflown ;
 Thou canst not better Farídún or be
 Parwíz¹ with crown and throne.²

C. 2061

From those exalt seven planets do thou well
 Consider what to Yazdagird befell.”
 When he sat happy on the throne of kingship,
 And placed upon his head the crown of might,
 He said : “ By process of the turning sky
 I am the true-born son of Núshírwán.
 Mine is the sway from sire to sire and mine
 Are Virgo, Sol, and Pisces. I will seek
 For greatness, wisdom, hardihood, contention,
 And manliness, for life and fortune stay
 With none, nor treasure, kingship, crown, and throne.
 Fame will abide for aye but not desire ;
 Put off desire then and exalt thy fame.
 It is by fame that man shall live for ever
 While his dead body lieth in the dust.
 How good are Faith and justice in a Sháh !
 The times are full of blessings on his fame.

¹ Khusrau Parwíz.² Couplet omitted.

I purpose while I live to pluck up ill,
Both root and branch."

The chiefs applauded him,
And hailed him as the monarch of the earth,
And thus it was, till sixteen years had sped,
That sun and moon revolved above his head.

§ 2

How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother

It was so that 'Umar, the famous Arab,
Commander of the Faithful,¹ he whose sword
Turned day to night, the man approved by God,
Who hath no equal, sent the chosen Sa'ad,
Son of Wakkás, with troops against the Sháh.
When Arab fortune worsted Persian,
And the Sásánians' fortune had grown dark,
The world had had full measure of its Sháhs;
Gold was not seen, the mite was manifest,
Good turned to evil, evil turned to good,
The path lay Hellward, not to Paradise,
The wheel of circling heaven was changed and cut
All kindness for the Persians clean away.
The slave must do the almighty Maker's will,
And bear what He inflicteth. Save with Him
There is no life or joy.

When Yazdagird
Learned what had chanced he gathered troops on all
sides,
C. 2062 And bade Hurmuzd's son lead them forth. His name

¹ He assumed this title.

Was Rustam. He was wary, wise, a warrior
And potentate, a reader of the stars,
Exceeding shrewd and all attent to hear
The archimages' words. He marched away
With all the noble, those that were alert
And brave, and after thirty months they sought
To fight at Kádisiya. Being learned
In heaven's lore as an astrologer,
And one both just and good, he said : " No time
Is this to fight, the river of the Sháhs
Will flow not in this bed," and so he took
His astrolabe, observed the stars and smote
His head because it was a day of bale,
Then wrote in grief and told his brother all,
First offering praise to God who had ordained
His good and evil fortune, and proceeded :—
" Well may the revolutions of the sky
Fill the observer with disquietude !
I am the guiltiest person of the time,
And therefore have been caught by Áhriman,
Because the kingship passeth from this House ;
No season this of conquest and the Grace !
From the fourth heaven Sol is looking down
To hasten to the fight of mighty men.
Both Mars and Venus bode mishap to us,
And none can 'scape high heaven. Mercury
And Saturn are opposed, the former too
Hath entered Gemini. Such is the case,
A great event is toward, and my heart
Is weary of its life. I can discern
All that will be but fain would hold my peace.
When I agnized this secret of the sky—
That it assigneth us but grievous travail—
I wept right sorely for the Íránians,
And burned for the Sásánians. Woe is me
For head and crown, for state and throne, and woe

For majesty, for fortune, and for Grace
 Because hereafter will defeat betide them
 From the Arabians, the stars not turn
 Save to our hurt, and for four hundred years
 None of our royal race will rule the world !
 An envoy from our foemen came to me,
 And divers parleyings followed. ' We,' they said,
 ' Will give up to the Sháh the tract between
 The river-bank and Kádisiya ; ye
 Shall grant us access to some trading centre
 That we may sell and buy ; we will not ask
 For more hereafter ; we will pay large dues,
 And will not seek the chieftains' diadems,
 But will obey withal the king of kings,
 And render hostages at his demand.'
 Such is the talk. No action hath ensued,
 But still the stars are adverse. Long will be
 The strife. Fierce Lions will be slain by hundreds.
 The chieftains that are with me in the war—
 Galbwí of Tabaristán and Armaní,
 Who do the deeds of Áhriman in fight,
 Mahwí, he of Súrán, and other chiefs,
 Who wield the heavy mace and battle-ax—
 Heed not our foes proposals but observe :—
 ' Who are these haughty folk and what do they
 Both in Írán and in Mázandarán ?
 For road and territory, weal and woe,
 We must employ the mace and scimitar ;
 We will exert ourselves, quit us like men,
 And make the world both dark and strait to them.'
 None of them knoweth circling heaven's design,
 And how its aspect hath been changed to us.
 On reading this take measures with the chiefs,
 Make preparations and lead forth the host,
 Collect the treasures, handmaids, and state-robes,
 Then hasten Ázar Ábádagán—

The dwelling of the Mighty and the Free.
Whatever herds of horses thou mayst have
Send to the treasurer of Ázargashasp.
If soldiers seek thee from Zábulistán,
Or from Írán, imploring thy protection,
Receive and treat with kindness their excuses
In view of what the turning sky is doing—
The cause of joy and terror to us all,
At whiles exalting and at whiles abasing.
Let mother know my words for of a truth
She will not look upon my face again.
Greet her from us and counsel her at large
Not to be troubled here below. If any
Shall bring bad news of me be not too downcast,
For know that in this Wayside Hostelry
He that amasseth treasure by his toil
Will find his toil more than such worldly treasure,
And that another will enjoy the fruit.
What need was there for so much toil and greed ?
Desire is lessened not by having more.
At all times worship God and purge thy heart
Of all affection for this Wayside Inn
Because our fortune is in straits, the king
Will see me not again. Do thou and all
Our House, both old and young, unceasingly
Praise God and pray the Maker, for with this
My host I am in stress, in travail, grief,
And bitter fortune, and shall not escape
At last. May this sweet country of Írán
Be in prosperity ! Whenas the world
Is straitened to the king hold treasure, life,
And person of small worth, for of that race
So famed and honoured there is no one left
Save that exalted one. Watch over him
By day and night till I have fought the Arabs.
Be not remiss in toil for he is now

All that we have to look to in this world,
 And the Sásánians' memorial,
 For no one will behold that House again.
 Woe for the head and crown, for seal and right
 Since royal throne will go adown the blast !
 Fare well, be not concerned, and ever be
 Before the world-lord, and if ill betide him
 First give thine own head to the scimitar
 Ungrudgingly. When pulpit fronteth throne,
 And when Abú Bakr and 'Umar shall be
 As household words, our long toils will be lost,
 And long will be the fall before the rise.
 Thou wilt not see throne, diadem, or state :
 The stars award the Arabs everything.¹
 There will not be throne, crown, or golden boot,
 Or gem, or coronet or flaunting flag.
 One man will toil, another will enjoy ;
 None will give heed to justice or to bounty.²
 Then warriors will be men that fight afoot
 While horsemen will be mocked and flouted at ;
 The warlike husbandman will be despised,
 High birth and majesty will bear no fruit ;
 Then men will rob each other, none will know
 A blessing from a curse, and secret dealing
 Prevail o'er open, while the hearts of men
 Will turn to flint, sire will be foe to son,
 And son will scheme 'gainst sire ; a worthless slave
 Will be the king, high birth and majesty
 Will count for nothing ; no one will be loyal.
 There will be tyranny of soul and tongue.
 A mongrel race -Íránian, Turkman, Arab—
 Will come to be and talk in gibberish.³
 They will collect all treasures 'neath their skirts,
 Toil and resign the product to their foes.

¹ Two couplets omitted. ² Three couplets omitted.

³ See Vol. i., p. 34.

Grief, travail, bitterness will thus prevail
As joy did in Bahrá'm Gúr's days ; feasts, song,
Race and renown will cease ; men will set traps,
Will seek their profit in another's loss,
And make their pretext Faith ; no difference
Will be 'twixt Spring and Winter ;¹ there will be
No wine at feasts ; they will not recognise
Degree and place but live on barley-bread,
And dress in wool. When much time hath passed
thus

None will regard the noble Persian stock.
They will be shedding blood for lucre's sake,
An evil age will be inaugurate.
My heart is full, my face is wan, my mouth
Is parched, my lips are filled with sighs to think
That after I—the paladin—have gone
Sásánian fortune shall become thus dark ;
So faithless hath revolving heaven grown,
Ta'en umbrage, and withdrawn from us its love !
If with my lance I strike a brazen mountain
I pierce it, being brazen-bodied too,
But now my shafts with steel-transfixing heads
Are impotent with men that wear no mail !
My sword, which felled the necks of elephants
And lions at a blow, can not cut through
An Arab skin ! My knowledge bringeth loss
On loss upon me. Would that I possessed not
This wisdom since it causeth me to know
Of this ill day ! The chiefs that are with me
From Kádisiya are both hardy men
And hostile to the Arabs. They expect
That this brake will be filled, that earth will run
Like the Jíhún, with our foes' blood. None knoweth
The secret of the skies and that this strife

¹ Muhammadan years being lunar the months are associated with
no particular season.

Can not be quickly ended ; but when fortune
 Departeth from a race what profit cometh
 Of travail and of fight ? Be prosperous,
 My brother ! May the Sháh's heart joy in thee
 Because this Kádisíya is my charnel,
 My breastplate is my shroud, my helmet blood :
 Such is the secret of the lofty sky.
 Bind not thine own heart to my griefs but keep
 Thine eyes upon the Sháh, and sacrifice
 Thyself for him in fight, because the day
 Of Áhriman is coming on apace
 When circling heaven will show us enmity."

When he had sealed the letter he said thus :—
 " My blessing be upon the messenger
 That shall convey this letter to my brother,
 And tell him not what I have said, but other ! "

§ 3

*How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how
 he replied*

C. 2066 He sent a messenger in swiftness like
 The flash and thunder-clap to Sa'ad. They wrote,
 In apprehension yet not in despair,
 A letter on white silk and thus endorsed :—
 " This from the paladin of paladins—
 The warlike Rustam, son of Hurmuzdsháh¹—
 To Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, the prudent, wise,
 And circumspect, who hath come forth to fight."

It thus began : " We still must fear the World-lord,
 The Holy, who sustaineth turning heaven,

¹ Cf. Mardánsháh as a proper name and p. 59.

Whose rule is justice and beneficence.
May blessings from Him rest upon the king,
The lustre of the signet, crown, and throne,
The lord of sword, of diadem and lasso,
Whose Grace restraineth Áhriman in bonds.
A hateful matter hath occurred to us
In these uncalled for labours and this strife.
Reply to me and say who is your king,
Who thou art, what thy rule and custom are,
And whose assistance is it that ye seek
With unmailed soldiery and unmailed chief ?
Fed up with bread thou art still ravenous ;
Thou hast no elephants, no throne, no baggage.
Enough for thee to live within Írán,
For crown and signet are another man's,
Who hath Grace, elephants, and crown and throne—
A famous Sháh of lengthy lineage.
No throned king hath such stature or the moon
In heaven such aspect. When enthroned he sitteth
With smiles that make his silvern teeth appear ;
His gifts would purchase Arabs in the gross,
And not impoverish his treasury.
His dogs, his hawks, and cheetahs are twelve thousand,
And they are decked with golden bells and varvels.
The whole waste of the wielders of the spear
Could find not in a year from end to end
Enough to feed his cheetahs and his hounds
When he is hunting on the plain. The Arabs,
From drinking camels' milk and eating lizards,
Have reached a pitch whereat the Persian throne
Is coveted ! Shame, shame on circling heaven !
Ye have no veneration in your eyes,
Or, in your wisdom, love or reverence.
With such a visage and such tastes and ways
Is thy heart set upon the crown and throne ?
If thou art seeking power within thy means,

C. 2067
 And art not merely speaking words in jest,
 Dispatch to us some man of goodly speech,
 Send some brave veteran and man of lore,
 That he may tell me thine intent and who
 Doth lead thee to attempt the royal throne.
 Then will I send a horseman to the Sháh
 To ask of him whatever thou wilt ask,
 But seek not with so great a king to fight,
 For shame at last will come upon thy face.
 His grandsire was the world-lord Núshírwán,
 Whose justice made the agéd young again.
 His fathers have been Sháhs, and he is king ;
 The age remembereth none like to him.
 Fill not the world with curses on thyself,
 Misprize not thine own precedents. Regard
 This letter of advice and bar not thou
 Thine eyes and ears to wisdom." When the letter
 Was sealed he gave it to high-born Pírúz,
 Son of Shápúr. To Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,
 This paladin and magnates from Írán,
 Of ardent soul, went whelmed in iron, silver,
 And gold, with golden shields and golden girdles.
 On hearing, Sa'ad, that noble man, set forth,
 Swift as the flying dust, to meet Pírúz
 With troops, forthwith dismounted and inquired
 About the army and its paladin,
 About the Sháh, his minister and host,
 The watchful leader and his provinces.
 He spread his cloak beneath Pírúz and said :—
 " We hold the sword and spear to be our mates :
 Brave warriors make no mention of brocade,
 Of gold and silver or of food and slumber.
 Ye have no part in manhood but are like
 To women with your colours, scents, and forms.
 Your prowess is in donning broidery,
 Adorning roofs and decorating doors."

Pirúz then gave the letter and told Sa'ad
The words of Rustam. Sa'ad heard, read, and
wondered.

He wrote an answer back in Arabic,
Announcing good and ill. He wrote there first
The name of God and of His messenger,
Muhammad, who directeth to the truth.
He spake of Jins and men, of what the Prophet,
The Háshimite,¹ had said, the Unity
Of God, of the Kurán, of promise, warning,
Of menace and of novel usages,
Of liquid pitch, of fire, and icy cold,
Of Paradise, its streams of milk and wine,
Of camphor and of musk, of bubbling springs,
Of wine and honey and the trees of heaven.²
Then : " If the Sháh accepteth the true Faith
He will obtain both worlds with joy and kingship,
And have withal the carrings and the crown,
Perpetual beauty and prosperity.
His intercessor there will be Muhammad,
His form like pure rose-water. In as much
As Paradise will be thy recompense
We must not plant thorns in the garth of bale.
The personality of Yazdagird,
This spacious world, such gardens, riding-grounds,
And halls and palaces with all the thrones
And crowns, the festivals and revelries,
Are less worth than one hair of an Hourí.
In this our Wayside Hostelry thine eyes
Are dazed by crown and treasure, and thou trustest
Too much in ivory throne, in wealth, and signet,
In fortune and in crown. Why be concerned
About a world when one draught of cold water
Out-prizeth it ? Whoever cometh forth

C. 2068

¹ Háshim was the great-grandfather of Muhammad.

² This is taken from the Kurán. Cf. Vol. i., p. 99.

To fight with me will see a narrow grave,
 And Hell, naught else ; but Paradise is his
 If he believeth. Mark how he should fare.
 He still will choose the one and shun the other
 As every wise man knoweth."

Then he set
 The Arab seal thereon and praised Muhammad,
 The messenger of Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,
 Went with all speed to Rustam. Now what time
 Shu'ba Mughíra went forth from the chiefs
 To journey to the paladin, a noble,
 One of the Iránians, came in from the way
 Before the captain of the host, and said :—
 " A messenger hath come—a weak, old man—
 Without a horse or weapons and ill-clad,
 With thin sword slung about his neck and shirt
 All plainly tattered."

Rustam thus apprised
 Prepared a tent-enclosure of brocade.
 They laid a carpet of gold thread of Chín ;
 The soldiery turned out like ants and locusts.
 They set a golden ante-throne whereon
 The captain of the host assumed his seat
 With eight score warriors attending him—
 Horsemen and lions on the day of battle —
 With crowns, with violet robes, and golden boots,
 With torques and earrings, while the tent-enclosure
 Was royally adorned. Shu'ba Mughíra,
 On coming to the tent-enclosure, walked not
 Upon the cloth but humbly on the ground,
 And used his scimitar as walking-stick.
 He sat upon the dust without a look
 At any—captain of the host or chief.
 Then Rustam said to him : " May thy soul joy,
 And by its knowledge make thy body strong."

Shu'ba Mughíra said : " If thou, good sir !

Acceptest the true Faith, peace unto thee."

Now Rustam, hearing this, was vexed and frowned.
He took and gave the letter to a reader.

C. 2069

That learned man told him what was writ, and Rustam
Made answer: "Tell him: 'Thou art neither king
Nor an aspirant to the diadem,

But thou hast seen my fortune in eclipse,¹

And so thy heart ambitioneth my throne.

The case is one of moment to the wise,

But thou hast not considered it. If Sa'ad

Had the Sásánian throne I well might share

His feasts and fights, but since the faithless stars

Bode ill, what shall I say? This is the day

Of bale. If for my guide I take Muhammad,

And this new Faith for old, all will go wrong

Beneath this crook-backed sky, and all go hard

With us.' But as for thee, depart in peace;

The day of battle is no time for words.

Tell Sa'ad: 'To die with honour is a thing

Far better for me than crude parleying."

§ 4

*How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and
was slain*

Shu'ba Mughíra went his way, and Rustam

Bade to array the host and sound the trumpet.

From all sides troops assembled, clouds of dust

Arose, and din that deafed the sharpest ears.

"The steely lance-heads mid the murky reek
Are," thou hadst said, "stars mid night's azure
gloom,"

¹ Reading with P.

While spears ne'er ceased to smite on glittering helms.
The strife endured three days, till water failed
The Íránians, and their warriors' hands and steeds
Became unfit for combat. Rustam's lips
Grew as the dust with drought, his tongue was split,
And men and horses batten on moist clay,
So grievous was the stress !

Shouts rose like thunder
From Rustam and from Sa'ad as they advanced,
Each from his post. Each left his army's centre,
And drew off from the field. Departing thus
They came beneath a steep-up eminence,
And there those chieftains twain assailed each other
Revengefully upon that scene of strife
Till Rustam, roaring like a thunder-clap,
Smote with his sword Sa'ad's charger on the head,
Smote the swift charger which came headlong down,
And brave Sa'ad was unhorsed. Then Rustam reared
Aloft a trenchant blade to show to him
The Day of Doom, and was in mind to strike
His head off, but by reason of the dust
Raised by the troops they could not see each other.
Then Rustam lighted from his steed and saddle
Of leopard-skin and fastened to his belt
His charger's reins but, while dust blinded him,
Sa'ad hurried up and smote him with the sword
Upon his helm whence blood ran down his face,
And while his eyes were blinded by the gore
The aspiring Arab gained the upper hand,
Again smote Rustam on the head and neck,
And flung his warrior-body on the dust.
None in the two hosts were aware thereof,
Or whither those two paladins had gone,
But searched until they found the scene of strife.
The Íránians, when they spied their paladin
Slashed by the scimitar from head to foot,

Fled. Many a chieftain perished in the press,
 And many failed for thirst upon the saddle.
 The world had had full measure of the Sháhs.
 The host fared to the monarch of Írán,
 And hastened on the way both day and night.
 When Rustam had been slain in fight, and when
 The chiefs' heads were all turned, the Muslim host
 Sped like a savage lion in pursuit.¹
 At that time Yazdagird was at Baghdád ;
 To him the troops came flocking and announced
 That Rustam was no more, and that the sea
 Was dry with grief, that many men had fallen,
 And that the rest had fled the battlefield.
 The hosts, both Persian and Arabian,
 Reached Karkh, and Farrukhzád, son of Hormuzd,
 Wroth and with tearful eyes came from the Arwand,
 Arrived at Karkh, fell on the enemy,
 And not an Arab warrior survived.
 The Persians marched out from Baghdád intent
 To meet the foe, and bloody was the event.

§ 5

*How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went
 to Khurásán*

When Farrukhzád had gone back to the Sháh,
 All over dust and in his fighting-gear,
 He lighted from his charger, did obeisance,

¹ The French version of the rest of this section is as follows :—
 " Yezdegird était à Bagdad lorsque ses troupes affluèrent autour
 de lui. Farrukhzad, fils d'Hormuzd, furieux et répandant des
 larmes, traversa le Tigre, entra dans Kerkh et livra un assaut
 terrible qui ne laissa vivant aucun des guerriers armés de lances.
 Les troupes sortirent aussitôt de Bagdad et allèrent chercher le
 combat dans la plaine ; mais lorsque la poussière de la lutte se fut
 dissipée, les Iraniens étaient en fuite."

Blood in his eyes and anguish in his heart,
 And said to Yazdagird : " Why weep so much ?
 Is it to wash the throne of kings with tears ?
 Thou only of the royal race art left
 To wear the crown and sit upon the throne.
 One, with a hundred thousand enemies,
 How canst thou battle when exposed to all ?
 Betake thee to the forest of Nárwan ;
 The folk will gather to thee there and thence,
 Like valiant Farídún, do thou renew
 The fight like fire."

The king of kings gave ear.
 New thoughts occurred. Upon the morrow's morn
 He sat upon his throne, assumed the crown,
 Held an assembly with his men of lore,
 The magnates and shrewd-hearted archimages,
 And said : " What seemeth good to you herein ?
 What precedents recall ye from the past ?
 Saith Farrukhzád to me : ' Depart and take
 Thy followers to the forest of Nárwan :
 The people of Ámul, are servitors,
 The people of Sarí all slaves, to thee,
 And, when thy troops are many, come again
 With puissance to battle with the Brave.'
 Do ye approve ? "

They all of them exclaimed :—
 " That is the course."

The king of kings rejoined :—
 " It is not well. I purpose otherwise.
 Shall I desert the chieftains of Írán,
 And this great host, our country, throne, and crown
 To save myself ? That were not majesty,
 Or manliness or policy. To fight
 The foe is better for me than disgrace.
 The leopard spake a saw in this regard :—
 ' Whene'er the time of stress shall come on thee

Turn not in folly from thine enemy.'

For just as subjects should obey their king
In good and ill so he must not desert them
In their distress and go off to his treasures."

The great men blessed him, saying: "Crown
and signet

Exist for ends like these. Think what thy will
And wishes are, and what assurances
Thou wouldst of us."

The Sháh thus answered them:—

"Anxiety is ruin to the heart.

Our best course is to go to Khurásán
Where we shall feel secure from strife with foes,
For there we are possessed of many troops,
And valiant paladins. The Turkish chiefs
And Khán of Chín will come and do us homage
While I will make the union stronger still
By marriage with the daughter of Faghfúr.
A great host will arrive to succour us,
The magnates of Túrán and mighty men.
There is the warden of the marches too,
Máhwí, with horsemen, elephants, and wealth
Of all kinds. He is our chief governor,
The highest of the guardians of our coasts.
I raised him when he was a vagabond,
A minstrel and a braggart, giving him,
Though worthless, name and worth, men, government,
Lands, elephants. Base though he be and vile
Still his advancement hath been at my court.
Now I have heard an archmage quote this saw:—
'Of one whom thou hast wrongly harmed beware:
Of one made rich by thee thy hopes are fair.'
I never injured him in aught, and he
Will 'venge me on my foe."

C. 2072

But Farrukhzád

Smote his two hands together and exclaimed:—

“ O Sháh who fearest God ! put little trust
 In those of evil bent. In this regard
 There is a modern saw which runneth thus :—
 ‘ Howe’er on birth thou practise witchery,
 And strivest such an one from rust to free,
 Since the All-giver framed him thus to be
 To loose God’s bonds thou wilt not find a key.’ ”

“ O mighty, raging Lion ! ” said the Sháh,
 “ To make this trial will work me no hurt.”

He stayed that night and, when the morning broke,
 Those noble men set forth and left Baghdád
 For Khurásán, and took their travail lightly.
 The chieftains of Írán all sorrowful
 Accompanied their Sháh, that noble man,
 And called down blessings on him, saying : “ May
 time,
 And earth, ne’er lack thee.”

From the host rose wails
 For grief and at the going of the king,
 And all the Íránian thanes—the warriors’ stay—
 Drew near to him with outeries and in tears,
 And said to him : “ O Sháh ! we are thy slaves
 With souls and bodies filled with love for thee.
 We all will go with thee to learn how fortune
 Will sport with our king’s life, for if we lose
 Our Sháh how can our hearts find joy in home,
 And country ? We will quit our settlements,
 Our children, and our wealth to share thy toils.
 We care not for our lives without thy throne :
 May fortune ne’er abandon thee.”¹

C. 2073

With eyes
 All tears the king of kings said to those nobles :—
 “ Be ever more intent in praising God.
 It may be I shall look on you again,
 And that our sorrows and distress will cease.

¹ Three couplets omitted.

Ye all are my true helpers and the heirlooms
 Left by my sires. I would not have you harmed :
 Share not mine ills then. We will mark the intent
 Of circling heaven, its progress, and to whom
 It showeth love. Resign yourself thereto :
 None can evade its secret purposes."

Then said he to the merchantmen of Chín :—
 " Make no long tarrying here, else will the Arabs
 Convert your quest of gain to loss."

They parted

With pain and trouble, sorrow, care, and wailing.
 So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, led forth
 The troops and called the veterans of Írán,
 And then the Sháh set out with wail and woe.
 The leader led the van. Stage after stage
 He marched to Rai and tarried there for wine,
 And minstrelsy, thence went he to Gurgán,
 Like wind, and stayed one se'nnight sad or glad.
 Departing thence toward Bust he set his face
 With wrinkled cheeks and body in ill case.

§ 6

How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr

The world-lord, resolute to go to Marv,
 Wrote to Máhwí of Súr, the governor,
 In rage and pain, in tears and hope deferred,
 And calling an experienced scribe poured forth
 His heart, and it was full. He first praised God,
 The all-wise Lord, the Fosterer, the Master
 Of circling Mars and Sol, of elephant
 And ant, at will creating out of naught,
 And needing no instructor, then proceeded :—

C. 2071 “What hath befallen us ! And gone are all
 This kingship’s hue and perfume. Rustam’s death
 Upon the battlefield and by the hand
 Of one whose name is Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,
 A landless, low-born, witless, aimless man,
 Hath straitened all the world to us through sorrow.
 Now that Sa’ad’s army is at Taisafún,
 With woods and foot-hills fronting them, array
 Thy host to fight with his and summon all
 Thy troops to that same end.¹ Lo ! I will follow
 Behind my letter swiftly as the wind,
 And give thee what I purpose in my mind.”²

§ 7

How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús

He wrote moreover to the folk of Tús,
 With full heart and with face like sandarac,
 First offering his praises to the Judge
 “From whom are fortune, strength, and excellence,
 Grace, triumph, throne, and diadem of kingship.
 From foot of ant to soaring eagle’s plume,
 From elephant on land to crocodile
 In water, all are faithful, do His will,
 And draw no breath unless by His command.
 This from the world’s Sháh, mighty Yazdagird,
 Son³ of a famous king and valorous,
 Victorious leader of the Íránian host,
 Who guardeth his domain, desireth more,
 And cometh of a great, God-fearing race
 That thank their stars that they possess the crown.

¹ Three couplets omitted. ² Two couplets omitted.

³ Reading with P.

Have peopled earth and made crown, throne, and
signet

Resplendent, to his marchlords with their thrones
And treasures, Grace, high-bearing, crowns and host
At Shamírán, Rúína,¹ and Mount Ráda,
Kalát and elsewhere. May the Fosterer
Watch over us and keep you from the seath
Of evil hap. In sooth the chiefs have heard,
For it hath been an ensign in the world,
That in regard to warfare, valour, birth,
Our hearts are full of kindness, love, and justice.
High birth especially constraineth us—
The Sháhs—to let our toils exceed our treasures
On your behalf. What time Bahrám Chúbína,
That malcontent, grew noted and rejected
Our rule and diadem ye all abandoned
Your marches, spacious cities, pleasancess,
Your parks and palaces, and in that case,
In terror of disaster, made your homes
On dale and lofty height. If God almighty
Shall grant me strength and fortune favour us
I will repay your good deeds lavishly,
And pray to Him who watcheth o'er the world.
In sooth ye must have heard of what the stars
Have brought upon our head by these vile Snakes
With looks like Áhriman, who lack all knowledge,
Shame, fame, and treasure, fortune and descent,
And fain would let the world go to the winds.
It is the compass of the lofty sky
That tribulation shall befall this realm
By these vile miscreants, these Raven-heads,²
Devoid of sense and knowledge, fame and shame.
These greedy men, who covet diadems,

C. 2075

¹ "Rouïndiz." Mohl.

² The Persians translated "'Aráb" by "Zágh" (raven) and applied the expression to those hated enemies.

Have fixed their eyes upon this royal state,
 And Núshírwán once dreamed that this our throne
 Would lose its brilliant lustre. He beheld
 A hundred thousand Arabs—raging camels
 With bits¹ snapped—seeking how to cross the Arwand,
 And bring destruction on our fields and fells,
 Saw that both Fire and Fane of Fire would perish,
 The light of New Year end and Sada feast,
 That in Írán and Babylon dark smoke
 Would rise from tilth and crop to Saturn's sphere,
 While on the world-king's hall the battlements
 Would tumble to the ground.² The dream is now
 Fulfilled and heaven's favour fain to quit us.
 Those that we value most will be misprized,
 The base will be set up on high by fortune,
 Ill scattered through the world, mishap apert
 And good concealed. In all the provinces
 Some tyrant, some obscene calamity,
 And signs of dark night's coming will appear,
 Our glorious fortune be cut off from us.
 Now as our counsellors and paladins—
 Men of pure rede—advise we purpose going
 To Khurásán and to its warlike marchlords.
 Because now of the governor of Tús
 Have I led here the elephants and drums,
 And we shall see how fortune will make bonds
 Of our frail knots. I am girt up for battle
 That I may meet the Arabs face to face,
 While Farrukhzád—my very veins and skin,
 And my firm friend—is now at Altúníya,
 Intent on fight, and host confronteth host,
 While Kashmígán, that warrior's son, hath reached
 Our court and spoken well and loyally.

¹ Properly the piece of wood passed through a perforation made in the nostrils of a camel to guide it by.

² See Vol. viii., p. 66.

I heard what he could tell about these marches,
Their heights and depths, their caves, retreats, the
hold

Upon Mount Gumbadán and Jarmana,
The fort of Lázhawardí for our stores,
Spots such as Ál, Makhzúm, and waste of Gil :
He kindly opened all his heart to me.
My host for battle is too numerous
To tarry long within these narrow holds.
We have held council ; all the paladins
Attended ; we debated and resolved
To take with us crown, throne, and seal and
signet,

All garments of Kashmír and Rúm and Chin,
Such goods as we can gather from Kibchák
And from Kírwán, all that we have in hand
Of clothes and carpets, articles of gold,
With gems uncut and all that most we prize,
And provand and equipment for the future.
Of oxen forty thousand will drag loads
Of unthrashed corn and after these will come
Twelve thousand asses drawing loads of dates
For us. A trusty archimage will bring
Pistachios, millet, and pomegranate-juice.
Attending on the outcome they will send
Thereafter many asses' loads of salt,
And add a thousand camels' loads of millet,
Fat from the tails of sheep and butter-skins.
A thousand Bactrian camels will bring dates,
Another thousand sugar, as their loads.
Twelve thousand also will bring drums of honey.
All these will come at one time to the holds.
Besides all these my servants will bring in
Some forty thousand salted carcasses,
And of black naphtha in the next two months
Three hundred camel-loads. An archimage

With escort will arrive from¹ Shamírán,
 And from Mount Ráda while, in sight of all
 The elders and the wise, the mountain-chiefs,
 Sent by the marchlords, will convey whate'er
 Is needed to the gates and give the list
 To our own treasurer, and if the Great
 Among the folk will but restrain themselves
 They will in sooth receive no injury
 Among the valleys and the lofty hills
 From Arab or from Turkman. Help from you
 In these our strenuous times will aid us much.
 Our minister, that wise and holy man,
 Will now give orders to our treasurer
 To send five robes of Persian make to all
 That toil for us and, when those toils are over,
 A splendid turban of gold broidery.
 In these our present troubles each shall have
 Two score drachms from our treasures, afterwards,
 For service rendered, for each drachm three-score,
 Each worth more than ten dāngs,² and he will read
 This legend : ' In the name of holy God,
 The Object of our reverence, hopes, and fears,'
 Upon one side. The other side will bear
 Our face and crown, the legend : ' Through our love
 The earth becometh fruitful.' These have been
 Prepared for New Year's Day, the nobles' eyes
 Fulfilled with wealth. God's blessing on the man
 Whose faults are few and who forgetteth not
 Our diadem."

The Sháh when he had sealed
 The letter sent it to the army-chiefs.
 With this king's missive in his hand there came
 A horseman of high fortune and high aim.

¹ Reading with P.

² The dāng properly was a quarter of a drachm.

§ 8

*How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr
met him*

Thence they conveyed the drums and came to Tús
From Nishápúr. Máhwí of Súr had news : —
“ The Sháh is on the road to Dahistán,”
And went to meet him with a mighty power,
All spearmen and in coats of mail, and when
The Glory of the royal state appeared,
The flag of majesty and such a host,
Alighted from his steed forthwith and paid
His duty to the king of kings, walked softly
Upon the burning dust and from his eyes
Shed tears of reverence. He kissed the ground,
Prolonging his obeisance. All his troops
Acclaimed the Sháh and touched earth with their
heads,
While Farrukhzád enranked his powers when he
Beheld the visage of Máhwí of Súr
By whom his heart was joyed and whom he coun-
selled
At large : “ This Sháh of royal race do I
Commit to thee to serve him, suffering not
The blast to blow on him, and none save thee
To earn his thanks. I must depart to Rai,
Uncertain whether I shall see again
The royal crown for 'gainst these Arab spearmen
Full many such as I have died in battle.
There was not one within the world like Rustam,
The horseman, never hath the ear of sage
Heard tell of such, yet by a Raven-head¹

C. 2078

¹ See p. 91. *note*.

Was he cut off, so adverse was our day !
 God grant to him a place among the Just,
 And give the swarthy Ravens to our spears !

Máhwí replied : “ O paladin ! the Sháh
 Is eye and soul to me. I undertake
 In thy place to defend thy king, thy Heaven.”

So Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd, departed
 To Rai as bidden by the Sháh. The sky
 Revolved awhile with matters in this stay,
 And all love passed from that malignant's brain,
 And none dared go to battle with the Arabs
 Because the azure sky was helping them ;
 The visage of the monarch of Írán
 Grew wrinkled ; the foe's deeds made strait his heart.
 Máhwí saw that the Sháh was at a stay,
 And driven on by fortune helplessly,
 Ambitioned speedily the throne and changed
 In policy, in manners, and dispose,
 Then for a season he began to affect
 Ill health and barely showed the Sháh respect.

§ 9

How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill

There was a paladin, a Turk by race,
 A man of influence and named Bízhan ;
 He dwelt within the coasts of Samarkand
 Where he had many kin. Ill-starred Mahwí,
 Becoming self-assertive, wrote to him : —
 “ Thou prosperous scion of the paladins !

A strife hath risen that will bring thee profit :
 The Sháh is of all places here at Marv
 And with no troops ! His head and crown and state,
 Wealth, throne, and host, are thine if thou wilt come.
 Recall the vengeance owing to thy sires,
 And give this unjust race its just reward."

Bízhan, considering the letter, saw
 That insolent Máhwí would win the world,
 Then spake thus to his minister : " Thou chief
 Of upright men ! what sayest thou to this ?
 If I lead forth a host to aid Máhwí
 'Twill be my ruin here."¹

The minister
 Replied : " O lion-hearted warrior !
 'Twere shame to help Máhwí and then withdraw.
 Command Barsám to set forth with a host
 To aid upon this scene of strife. The sage
 Will term thee daft to go and fight in person
 At the insistence of this man of Súr."

Bízhan replied : " 'Tis well, I will not go
 Myself."

He therefore bade Barsám to lead
 Ten thousand valiant cavaliers and swordsmen
 To Marv with all the implements of war
 If haply he might take the Sháh. That host
 Went like a flying pheasant from Bukhára
 To Marv within one week. One night at cock-crow
 The sound of tymbals went up from the plain.
 How could the king of kings suspect Mahwí
 Of Súr to be his enemy ? Shouts rose.
 A cavalier reached Yazdagird at dawn
 To say : " Máhwí saith thus : ' A host of Turks
 Hath come. What is the bidding of the Sháh ?
 The Khán and the Faghfúr of Chín command :
 Earth is not able to support their host ! ' "

¹ Two couplets omitted.

The Sháh wroth donned his mail. The armies ranged.¹

He formed his troops to right and left, and all
Advanced to battle. Spear in hand he held
The centre, and the whole world was bedimmed
With flying dust. He saw how lustily
The Turks engaged, unsheathed his sword, and came,
As 'twere an elephant before his troops.
Earth Nile-wise flowed. Like thundering cloud he
charged,

But not a warrior supported him ;
All turned their backs upon that man of name,
And left him mid the horsemen of the foe.
The world's king, when Máhwí withdrew, perceived
The practice hid till then – the intent and plan
To capture him – yet played the man in fight,
Displaying valour, strength, and warriorship,
Slew many at the centre, but at length
Fled in despair, with falchion of Kábul
In hand, pursued by many Turks. He sped
Like lightning mid night's gloom and spied a mill
On the canal of Zark². Alighting there
The world's king lay in hiding from his foes
Within the mill. The horsemen searched for him ;
All Zark was hue and cry. The Sháh abandoned
His gold-trapped steed, his mace, and scimitar
With golden sheath. The Turks with loud shouts
sought him,

Excited by that steed and equipage.
The Sháh within the mill-house lurked in hay.
With this false Hostel thus it ever is :
The ascent is lofty and profound the abyss.
With Yazdagird, while fortune slumbered not,
A throne enskied³ by heaven was his lot,
And now it was a mill ! Excess of sweet

¹ Couplet omitted.

² See LEC, p. 400.

³ Reading with T.

Bred bane for him and, if thou art discreet,
 Affect not this world for its end is ill.
 Whiles a tame serpent to the touch it still
 At whiles will bite, and hot that bite will be.
 Why then affect this cozening hostelry
 While like a drum the signal to be gone
 Thou hearest, bidding : “ Bind the baggage on,
 And for sole throne the grave’s floor look upon ? ”

With mouth untasting and with tearful eyes
 The Sháh abode until the sun arose,
 And then the miller oped the mill-house door.
 He bore a truss of grass upon his back.
 A low-born-man was he, by name Khusrau,
 Poor, foolish, unrespected, purposeless.
 He lived upon the profits of his mill,
 Which gave him full employment. He beheld
 A warrior, like a lofty cypress, sitting
 In dolour on the ground with kingly crown
 Upon his head and with brocade of Rúm
 Bright on his breast ; his eyes a stag’s, his chest
 And neck a lion’s ; of beholding him
 The eye ne’er tired. He was unique in form ;
 Wore golden boots ; his sleeves were fringed with
 pearls
 And gold. Khusrau looked, stood astound, and
 called

On God, then said : “ O man of sunlike mien !
 Say in what sort thou camest to this mill ?
 Why didst thou take it for thy resting-place
 Full as it is of wheat and dust and hay ?
 Who art thou with such form, such Grace and looks ?
 Sure, heaven never saw the like of thee ! ”

The Sháh replied : “ I am Íránian-born,
 In flight before the army of Túrán.”

The miller said, abashed : “ I have no comrade
 Save penury, but still, if barley-bread,

With some poor cresses from the river-bank,
Will serve thee I will bring them ; naught have I
Besides : a man so straitened well may wail."

Through stress of fight the Sháh had rested not,
Or eaten, for three days and so replied :—
" Bring what thou hast, that and the sacred twigs
Will serve my turn."

C. 2081

The poor and lowly miller
Brought him the cresses and the barley-bread,
Made haste to fetch the sacred twigs and, reaching
The toll-house¹ on the way, crossed to the chief
Of Zark to make request for them. Máhwí
Had sent men on all sides to find the Sháh,
And so the chieftain asked the miller : " Friend !
For whom need'st thou the sacred twigs ? "

Khusrau

Replied : " There is a warrior at the mill,
And seated on the hay, a cypress slim
In height, a sun in looks, a man of Grace,
With eyebrows arched and melancholy eyes :
His mouth is full of sighs, his soul is sad.
I set stale fare before him—barley-bread,
Such as I eat myself—but he is fain
To take the sacred twigs while muttering grace.²
Thou well mayst muse at him."

The chief rejoined :—

" Go and inform Máhwí of Súr hereof,
For that foul miscreant must not reveal
His proper bent when he shall hear of this."³

Forthwith he charged a trusty man to take

¹ The toll-house was at the ford or ferry. The same word might also mean a place of worship and accordingly Mohl or rather his successor (see p. 37 *note*) translates :—" Il se rendit au lieu où était l'oratoire et fit prévenir aussitôt le chef de Zark qu'on lui demandait le Barsom."

² See Vol. i., p. 80 *s.v.* *Báj*.

³ *I.e.* if subsequently he should learn that we knew and did not tell him.

The miller to Máhwí who asked of him,
Then anxious for himself ; “ For whom didst thou
Require the sacred twigs ? Tell me the truth.”

The miller all a-tremble made reply :—
“ I had been out to fetch a load and flung
The mill-door open roughly, when know this :
The sun was in mine eyes, but his are like
Those of a startled fawn ; his locks are dark
As the third watch of night ; his breath suggesteth
Musk, and his face embellisheth his crown.
One that hath never seen the Grace of God
Should take the mill-house key. His diadem
Is full of uncut jewels, and his breast
Bright with brocade of Rúm. The mill hath grown
As ’twere a sun through him, and yet his food
Is barley-bread, his seat upon the hay !
‘ Spring,’ thou wouldst say, ‘ in Paradise is he :
No thane e’er set so tall a cypress-tree.’ ”

§ 10

*How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and
how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear*

Now when Máhwí had taken thought he knew :—
“ ’Tis none but Yazdagird ! ” and bade the miller :—
“ Hasten and cut off his head forthwith or I
Will cut thine own off presently and leave
None of thy stock alive.”

C. 2082

The chiefs, the nobles,
And mighty men heard this and all the assembly
Were filled with wrath at him ; their tongues were
charged

With words, their eyes with tears. An archimage,
 By name Rádwí, whose mind wore wisdom's bridle,
 Said to Máhwí: "O thou malignant one!
 Why hath the Dív confused thine eyes? This know:
 The royal and prophetic offices
 Are two gems set within one finger-ring.
 To break one is to trample life and wisdom
 Beneath thy feet. Reflect upon thy words,
 And then forbear. Be not the Maker's foe.
 First will disaster come on thee herefrom,
 Then thou wilt leave a seed-plot for thy child,
 With fruit of colocynth and leafage blood.
 Ere long thou wilt behold thy head abased;
 Thy villainy will be exposed; thy sons
 Will reap what thou hast sown. This deed of thine
 Will wreck the Faith of God, and crown and throne
 Will curse thee."

Then a devotee devout,
 Who never put his hand forth to injustice,
 By name Hurmuzd, son of Kharrád, a man
 Who rested in the Faith, said to Máhwí:—
 "O thou oppressor! quit not thus the way
 Of holy God. I see thy heart and sense
 Bedimmed. We see thy breast a tomb. Though
 strong
 Thou hast no brain; thy mind is weak; thou seekest
 The smoke and not the fire. I see that thou
 Wouldst have the malediction of the world,
 And, when thou quit'st it, travail, smart, and anguish.
 Now will thy lifetime prove a wretched one,
 And fire thy dwelling-place when thou departest."

He sat. Shahrán rose and addressed Máhwí:—
 "Why this audacity? Thou hast opposed
 The king of kings and cottoned with the Khán
 And the Faghfúr. Full many of this race
 Have proved of no account yet men ne'er hasted

To slay them. Shed not, as thou art a slave,
The blood of Sháhs because thou wilt be cursed
Till Doomsday."

This he said, and sat down weeping
In anguish with heart full and eyes all gall.
Then Mihr-i-Núsh stood forth in deep distress,
With lamentation, and addressed Máhwí :—

" O evil man of evil race, who art
Not well advised or just ! a crocodile
Respecteth royal blood, a leopard finding
A slain king doth not rend him. O thou worse
In love and instinct than the beasts of prey !
Thou covetest the Sháh's crown ! When Jamshíd
Was slaughtered by Zahhák did that affect
Heaven's will ? Nay, when Zahhák had won the earth
Abtín appeared, the glorious Farídún
Was born, the fashion of the world was changed,
And thou hast heard what tyrannous Zahhák
Brought on himself as sequel of his crimes,
For though he lived above a thousand years
Still in the end the avenger came to him.
Then, secondly, when Túr, the exalted one,
Afflicted by his longing for Írán,
Slew in his folly virtuous Íraj,
On whom the very dust looked pityingly,
Dispatched him¹ to the hero Farídún,
And gave the world to sorrow, Minúchihir,
One of the race, appeared and undid all
Those bonds. When, thirdly, princely Siyáwush
Went forth to war, albeit reluctantly,
Afrásiyáb, inspired by Garsíwaz,
Washed shame and honour from his mind and wits,
And slew the youthful and right royal prince,
So that the world became his enemy.
Sprung from that prince the world-lord Kai Khusrau

C. 2083

¹ His head, according to the story. See Vol. i., p. 202.

Came and filled all the world with hubbub, clave
 Asunder with his scimitar his grandsire,¹
 And frayed all those that else had sought revenge.
 The fourth count is the feud against Arjâsp,
 The slayer of Luhrâsp. Asfandiyâr
 Went forth to fight with him and took swift wreak.
 Fifth, is the vengeance ta'en for Sháh Hurmuzd.
 Khusrau Parwîz, whenas he felt confirmed
 In heart and power, dealt in the way we know
 Both with Bandwî and Gustaham. The sky,
 Which then revolved, revolveth still.² Forgetting
 What they had done for him, when his sire's blood
 And love and family appealed to him,
 He in his day of strength abated theirs.³
 One may not scorn the occasion of revenge,
 For such a time will quickly come to thee,
 And thou wilt suffer for thine evil thoughts,
 Thy son will reap what thou hast sown, and fate
 Will not rest long from vengeance ; so refrain
 From all this treasure-hoard, this heritage
 Of crown and precious things. Thou art revolting
 Because the Dív enjoineeth, and abjuring
 The way of God. The Dív, as thou wilt learn,
 Is tempting thee with things not for thine honour.
 Burn not thy soul and body in Hell-fire ;
 Dim not this world-illuming crown but gather
 Thy scattered troops ; recant what thou hast said ;
 Go ask the Sháh to pardon thee and when
 Thou seest him renew thy fealty.
 From there prepare to battle with the foe ;
 Be instant both in counsel and excuse,
 For not to hearken to the words of sages
 Will mark thee out as evil in both worlds.
 Men bring to naught things done a day too late.

¹ Afrâsiyâb, whose daughter Farangís married Siyâwush.

² *I.e.* history repeats itself.

³ Vol. viii., pp. 354, 358.

Wilt thou treat Yazdagird, the king of kings,
 Worse than malignant Turks, for in the fray
 He is a lion, on the throne a Sháh
 As bright as sun and moon, a memory
 Of the Sásánians ? None is girdle-girt
 Like him. From sire to sire his ancestors
 Were mighty men and compassers of wisdom
 From Núshírwán, the Sháh, back to Ardshír,
 While, seventh backward from Ardshír, Sásán,
 The world-lord, had the crown,¹ for God entrusted
 To him the Kaian crown, and all the kings
 Were of that glorious race. Now many a man
 Hath been thy better, but they ne'er conceived
 Designs like these. As for Bahrám Chúbína,
 Three hundred thousand skilful cavaliers
 On barded steeds fled at one shaft of his,²
 And left the field of fight to him ; but when
 His heart grew weary of the race of Sháhs
 The head of his resplendent fortune fell.
 So Faráyín, who sought the throne of kings
 Unworthily and bathed his hands in blood,
 Was in like manner miserably slain :
 This age endureth not such mockeries.
 Fear Him, the Lord, the Maker of the world,
 For He created throne and crown and signet.
 Defame not thine own person wantonly
 Because ere long such things will rise against thee.
 Know that whoever speaketh not the truth
 To thee is thy soul's foe. Now thou art sick
 While I am as the leech, a leech that wailleth,

¹ *De jure not de facto.* The first Sásán, here referred to, was the son of Dárá and after his father's overthrow by Sikandar took refuge in obscurity. Several generations later a descendant of his of the same name became the father of Ardshír Pápakán—the founder of the Sásánian Dynasty. The Sásánians, naturally sought to connect themselves with the old line of the Persian monarchy, with the Achaemenids in history and with the Kaianians in legend. Cf. Vol. vi., p. 199.

² See Vol. viii., p. 126.

And sheddeth drops of blood. Thou art thyself
 Less than the slave of slaves. Be not ambitious
 In thy heart's thoughts. Leave strife to holy God,
 And seek in honour's way the throne of greatness."

The shepherd-born¹ had set his heart upon
 The throne: the archimages' rede was hard.
 So hath it ever been; 'tis no new thing:
 The flouts of fortune are past reckoning,
 Exalting to the sky above this one,
 And making that vile, wretched, and undone,
 Not leagued with that, on war with this not bent,
 But void of wit, shame, Faith, and precedent.

C. 2085 The archimages all, till the world gloomed and moon
 Succeeded sun, warned that vindictive man,
 Who was not one hair better for their talk,
 And said when night came: "Ye must leave me now
 O sages! I will ponder this to-night,
 And take all kinds of wisdom to my breast.
 We will call twenty wise men from the host
 That we may need not to deplore this ill."

The prudent archimages went their ways,
 The men of war arrived. Máhwí held session
 With his confederates² and said: "What think ye
 Herein? If Yazdagird remain alive
 Troops will collect to him from every side;
 My secret purposes have been exposed,
 And all, both great and small, have heard thereof!
 My life will end through his hostility,
 And neither folk nor field and fell be left."

A wise man said: "Thou shouldest not have acted
 At first so. If the monarch of Írán
 Be ill-disposed toward thee then past doubt
 Ill will befall thee from him, yet 'tis ill
 To shed his blood for then God will avenge him.
 To left and right are cares and pains of all kinds:

¹ *I.e.* Máhwí. *Cf.* p. 87.

² Reading with P.

Consider how thou need'st must act herein."

Máhwí's son said to him : " Well counselled sire !
 Since thou hast made the Sháh thine enemy
 Be rid of him ; troops from Máchin and Chín
 Will come to him and earth grow strait for us.
 Hold this no trifle. Since thou hast prevailed
 Tempt not the maws of lions. Thou and all
 Thy host will be uprooted from the world
 If standard-wise the Sháh's skirt be unfurl'd."

§ 11

How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller

Thereat the shameless, infamous Máhwí
 Turned fiercely to the miller, saying : " Up !
 Take cavaliers and shed my foeman's blood."

The miller, hearing, knew not what to do,
 But when at night the moon assumed her throne
 Departed mill-ward to the Sháh and when
 He left the court-gate of Máhwí his eyes
 Were charged with tear-drops and his heart was full.
 Forthwith Máhwí dispatched some cavaliers
 To follow swift as smoke, instructing them :---
 " See that ye sully not the crown and earrings,
 The signet and the royal robes with blood,
 And strip the Sháh when lifeless."

With his eyes
 All tearful and cheeks yellow as the sun
 The miller went, exclaiming : " Judge almighty,
 Who art above the processes of time !
 Wring presently his heart and soul for this
 Abhorred behest !"

With heart all shame and qualm,

With wetted cheeks and tongue all charged with dust,
 He reached the Sháh and drawing nigh with caution,
 As one would speak a secret in the ear,
 Stabbed with a dirk his middle. At the blow
 The Sháh cried : " Ah ! " Then tumbled head and
 crown,

And barley-bread before him, to the dust !
 He that abideth when he might depart
 From this world hath no wisdom in his heart,
 And wisdom is not in the turning sky,
 Whose love is as its stress and enmity.
 'Tis well to look not on the world and so
 From these its doings love and wrath not know.
 The planets weary of their fosterlings,

And guiltless folk like Yazdagird are slain ;
 None else hath perished thus of all the kings,

Nor of his host a plier of the rein.
 The horsemen of accursed Máhwí, on seeing
 That royal Tree thus laid to rest afar
 From palace and his scenes of ease, drew near,
 Gazed, one and all, upon his face, removed
 His cincture, violet robe, and coronet,
 His torque and golden boots, and left him there
 In miserable case upon the ground—
 The monarch of Írán flung on the dust,
 Blood-boltered, with gashed side !¹ Those emissaries,
 When they arose, all framed their tongues to curse :—
 " Oh ! may Máhwí himself fare, prostrate thus,
 All gory on earth's face."

They told Máhwí :—

" The exalted Sháh hath passed away from throne,
 From battle and delights," and he commanded
 To take, when it was night, the monarch's corpse,
 And fling it in the stream. The miller took
 The body of the Sháh forth from the mill,

¹ Reading the couplet that follows here two couplets lower.

And flung it (mark the horror !) in the water,¹
And there it floated with a bobbing head !²

When it was day and people went abroad
Two men of worship visited the spot.
One of these men austere and sober reached
The river-bank and, when he saw the corpse
All naked in the water, hurried back
In consternation to the monastery,
And told the other monks what he had seen : --
" The Sháh, the master of the world, is drowned,
And naked in the water-way of Zark ! "

Then many of those holy men —the chief
And others of all ranks—set forth. A cry
Of anguish rose from them : " O noble man,
And royal crown-possessor ! none e'er saw
The wearer of it in such plight as this,
Or ever heard before the time of Christ
A case like this king's through his wicked slave,
This misbegotten dog, this reprobate,
Who fawned upon his master till ill came ;
Máhwí's just portion is to be accursed.
Woe for the head and crown, the height and mien !
Woe for the breast and arms, the hands and mace !
Woe for the last descendant of Ardshír !
Woe for that cavalier so young and goodly !
Strong wast thou ; thou hadst wisdom in thy soul,
And thou hast gone to bear the news hereof
To Núshírwán that, though thy face was moonlike,
And though thou wast a king and soughtest crowns,
Yet in the mill they pierced thy liverstead,
And flung thy naked body in the stream ! " ³

Four of the monks went stripped into the water,
Seized the bare body of the youthful king.

¹ Thus, if we interpret the passage by strict Zoroastrian principles, polluting one of the elements and adding sacrilege to regicide, but *cf.* Vol. iv., p. 129.

² Couplet omitted.

³ Three couplets omitted.

That grandson of the world-lord Núshírwán,
 And drew it to the bank while young and old
 Lamented greatly. They prepared for him
 Within the garth a charnel-house and raised
 Its summit to the clouds. They sealed his wound
 With gum, with pitch, with camphor, and with musk,
 And then arrayed him in brocade of gold,
 With fine Egyptian linen underneath,
 And dark-blue Russian cloth o'er all. They decked
 His place of rest with wine and gum and camphor,
 With musk and with rose-water.

When the form
 Was hidden of that noble Cypress-tree
 What said that honoured thane of Marv ? " In secret
 A guerdon waiteth him that after travail
 Departeth with good conscience from the world."

Another said : " Though man may laugh, yet know
 That he is of the sufferers, for he
 Will find the falseness of the turning sky,
 Which will reveal to him both rise and fall."

Another said : " Call not him one of wit
 That serveth his own form with princes' blood,
 And seeketh wealth, despite of infamy,
 With soul unfearful of an evil end."

Another said : " Since the Sháh's lips are closed
 I see not crown or royal seat or signet,
 Or courtiers or a realm or diadem,
 Or throne or helmet, and if these possess
 No moment in themselves why this expense
 Of toil and time ? "

" Thy good report, I see,"
 Another said, " will win thee worthy praise.
 Thou in the garth of Paradise didst set
 A cypress : now thy soul beholdeth it."

Another said : " God took thy soul and gave
 Thy body to the care of the devout.

Hereby thy soul is profited, hereby
Will harm betide the foe. The Sháh hath now
His work in Paradise ; his foeman's soul
Is on the road to Hell."

Another said :—

" Wise, knowledge-loving Sháh sprung from Ardshír !
Thou reapest now the crop that thou didst sow :
The lamp of sovereignty is still alight."

Another said : " Though thou'rt asleep, young king!
Thy spirit is awake. Thy lips are mute,
And with full many a groan thy spirit passed
And left thy body free. Thy work is done :
Thy soul is busy now. Thy foeman's head
Is on the stake. Although thy tongue is tied
Thy spirit speaketh, and thy soul is purged
Although thy form is pierced, while if thy hand
Have dropped the reins thy spirit still will wield
The spear in battle."

Said another one :—

" O famous warrior ! thou hast departed
With thine own works as guide. Thy royal seat
Is now in Paradise ; this earth of bale
Is now another's share."

" The man that slew
One such as thee," another said, " will look
Upon harsh days anon."

The prelate said :—

" Thy slaves are we and laud thy holy soul.
Be this, thy charnel, as a garth all tulips,
This bier thine upland and thy plain of joy."

They spake, took up the bier and carried it
From waste to mausoleum. Thither came
The hapless Sháh, crown, throne, and casque at end.
O man of many years, whose words still run !

Turn from the path of greed, break off thy strain.
What shall we say hereof ? Was justice done,

Or vengeance by the seven planets ta'en,
 On Yazdagird ? The sage, if unresolved
 Upon the point, could make me no reply,
 Or if he spake 'twould be in words involved
 That keep the answer still a mystery.
 If thou hast means, good man ! indulge thy heart ;
 Trust not to what the morrow promiseth,
 Because the world and thou perforce must part,
 And time accounteth for thine every breath ;
 Thou shouldest sow not any save good seed
 In what remaineth of thy mortal strife ;
 Control the door of appetite and greed ;
 He that provided will provide through life,
 And life itself will but produce for thee
 Fair fame and happiness, good friend ! Then still
 With all thy might eschew iniquity,
 For from a wise man should proceed no ill.
 Bring wine ; our day is nearly o'er and hence
 We must away, for what hath been will be.
 Had I incomings balancing expense
 Then time would be a brother unto me.
 The hail this year like death on me hath come,
 Though death itself were better than the hail,
 And heaven's lofty, far-extending dome
 Hath caused my fuel, wheat, and sheep to fail.

§ 12

*How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies¹ of
 Yazdagird and ascended the Throne*

One came and told Máhwí of Súr : " The world-lord
 Is hidden in the dust. The prelates, priests,

¹ " Slaying " in the text.

And monks of Rúm— all those of life austere,
Both young and old, throughout that march and
land—

Went wailing, took his body from the stream,
And made for him within the garth a charnel—
A great one, higher than the mountain-slopes.”¹

Máhwí, that luckless wretch, exclaimed : “ Írán
Had ne’er before affinity with Rúm.”

He sent and slew the builders of that charnel,
With those that mourned, and gave that march to
spoil,

Such was his will and worth ! Thereafter he
Made search throughout the world and found not one
Of that great stock. He had a crown and signet,
The Sháh’s crewhile, and to that shepherd-born
The throne appealed. He called his intimates,
Announced the purpose that he had at heart,
And told his minister : “ Experienced man !
The day of strife and battle is upon us.
I have no treasure, fame or lineage,
And may but give my head up to the winds.
The name that is upon my signet-ring
Is Yazdagird : my scimitar hath failed
To make men yield to me. Throughout Írán
Men are his slaves although his kin is scattered.
The sages do not hail me as the Sháh,
The soldiers do not recognise my seal.
My machinations tended otherwise.
Oh ! wherefore did I shed the world-king’s blood ?
All night am I sore-troubled in my thoughts :
The World-lord knoweth how it is with me.”

The counsellor replied : “ The thing is done,
And common talk. Act for thine own behoof,
For thou hast burst thy belt. The Sháh is dust
Within the charnel ; dust hath healed his soul.

C. 2090

¹ Reading with P.

Call round thee all the world-experienced men,
 And set thy tongue to words of pleasantness.
 Say thus : ' The Sháh gave me the crown and signet
 As emblems of authority, perceiving
 The coming of an army from the Turks,
 Called me at dead of night, and said : " When bruit
 Of war ariseth who can say which side
 The dust will be, so take this crown and ring,
 For they may help thee on the day of battle.
 I have one daughter only left to me :
 In truth she is in hiding from the Arabs.
 Hereafter yield not to the foe my throne,
 And by these tokens walk thou in my steps."
 I have then from the Sháh as legacy
 This crown and in accord to his behest
 Am sitting on the throne.' By this device
 Give thou thine acts a gloss for who will know
 The truth from falsehood ? "

" Good ! " exclaimed Máhwí,
 " Thou art a minister—a peerless one ! "

He summoned all the captains of the host,
 And spake at large to them to that effect.
 They knew : " It is not true, and well it were
 To cut his head off for his shamelessness."

A paladin observed : " 'Tis thy concern
 If what thou sayest be the truth or not."

He heard and sat him down upon the throne,
 By his deceit gat hold of Khurásán,
 Distributed the earth among his chiefs,
 And said : " I am the world's king with the signet."

He called his kin and said the same at large ;
 He took the whole earth as it were a gift ;
 The stars were in amaze at him. He chose
 The vicious as accorded to his nature,
 Debased the sages and made everywhere
 Chiefs of the bad. The head of right was humbled,

And knavery on all sides manifest.
 He gave his elder son Balkh and Harát,
 And sent troops to each quarter. As his host
 And treasures grew the heart of that ingrate
 Was gratified. He gave his troops rewards
 And put them in good case ; he filled the heads
 Of his own kith and kin with vapourings.
 Then with his troops and valiant warriors,
 Preceded by the scouts and Garsiyún—
 A veteran chief—they marched upon Bukhárá,
 Intent on war, for “ Chách and Samarkand
 Are ours,” Máhwí said, “ and they must be made
 The captives of this crown and seal, for so
 Did Yazdagird, king of the world, command—
 Chief of the planets seven. With the sword
 Will I take vengeance on Bízhan by whom
 The fortune of earth’s king was turned to gloom.”

C. 2091

§ 13

*How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and
 of Máhwí of Súr’s Accession to the Throne, led
 forth the Host to fight with him*

In time news reached Bízhan : “ Máhwí hath seized
 The throne of might and everywhere imposeth
 His seal and signet ; earth accepteth him,
 And now with warlike troops his face is turned
 Toward the Jíhún for battle.”

“ Who bestowed
 The signet on him ? ” asked Bízhan, and one
 Acquainted him with all : “ When thou didst reach
 The desert of Farab, and fortune’s lips
 Were closed to good and ill, there parted hence

To him a force of haughty cavaliers
 In quest of fame, for he had said : ‘ If thou
 Wilt send me troops I will dispatch to thee
 By privy pact the crown of king of kings
 With golden throne and signet. In the world
 The sovereignty is fitly thine.’ Thy troops
 Went hence in haste and found the Sháh at Marv.
 They compassed him about. The Íránians fled.
 When that wise king was left alone he feared
 That ill might come upon him from the host.
 There was a certain mill upon the ford,
 And thither went the Sháh, a sun in Grace.
 Máhwí of Súr heard of him, sent and slew him,
 And through the royal signet gained the world
 When he had slain his master. Now the more part
 Of praise and blame in this affair is thine,
 Thine were the valiant horsemen and the strife.”

Barsám said thus : “ O king ! what time¹ I took
 A mounted force from Chách² Máhwí had said
 To thee : ‘ The golden throne of Yazdagird,
 His armlets set with gems, his crown withal
 And treasure, will I send to Balkh. The throne
 And crown within the world must needs be thine.’
 I fought three days at Marv. When on the fourth
 The world’s light shone I battled furiously,
 For I was pressed. Tyrannical Máhwí
 Displayed his back. The Íránian king of kings,
 Abandoned, like a furious lion charged
 My troops and slaughtered many of my chiefs,
 But, when he had no comrades left, he too
 Displayed his back ; but how that master-slayer,
 That faithless slave, put him to death I know not.
 Thus with no toil Máhwí obtained and used
 His master’s treasures. Then the miscreant,
 Becoming dazed by so much wealth, appeared,

¹ Reading with P. ² Couplet omitted.

Thou mightest say, as if he ne'er had seen me !
 Although my troops remained two months at Marv
 He gave us no kind look but put to death,
 And privily, his lord, so great a king,
 The lustre of the world, a cavalier
 That 'raiseth o'er the orbit of the moon
 His head amidst the host ' thou wouldst have said.
 No Turk encountered and escaped his mace :
 He broke our nobles' hearts. I have not seen
 Such breastplate, hand, and mace. Máhwí thus
 furnished
 Seized on the realm in this unholy wise.
 Now that the foe in arms invadeth thee
 Thou and thine army must be up and doing.
 Let not weeds blossom in the royal garden
 Or it will be forgotten."

Hearing this,
 Bízhan raged much at having helped to dim
 The fortune of the Sháh, then bade assemble
 His host of Turks, his horsemen of the day
 Of battle, sped forth from Káchár Báshí,
 And lost no time upon the road. Whenas
 He drew anear Bukhárá all the waste
 Was covered with his troops to whom he said :--
 " Haste not and let Máhwí be first to lead
 His host across the water¹ to contend
 With me. Perchance on him I may avenge
 The Sháh."

He asked thereafter : " Did the king
 Leave no availful child ? Had he no brother ?
 In the default of sons had he no daughter,
 Whom we might carry with us and assist,
 And take full satisfaction of Máhwí ? "

Barsám replied : " My lord ! this race's day
 Is passed ; the Arabs hold those provinces :

¹ The Oxus.

No Sháh is left or worshipper of Fire."

Bízhan, on hearing this, resumed his march,
Astound at this world's doings. Scouts announced :—
"A host hath come and campeth at Baigand.
They crossed in boats, their dust obscured the sun."

Bízhan, the chief, led on his troops to war,
And when Máhwí of Súr beheld them thou
Hadst said : "His soul took flight." He was in
dudgeon

At all those breastplates, helmets, shields of Chín,
At all those maces, spears, and battle-axes
Of Chách. The air grew dark and earth was lost
To sight therein as he arrayed his host.

§ 14

*How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of
Bízhan*

Bízhan, when he had drawn up his array,
Prepared an ambush for the Íránians ;
Máhwí knew of it and with loud exclaims
Departed from among his troops. Bízhan
Looked forth, beheld the flag, and knew : "Máhwí
Is minded to take flight," and bade Barsám :—
"Lead from the central host what troops thou hast,
And draw toward one side ; we must not let
Máhwí decline the battle and haste thus
Jihún-wards. Speed and keep him well in sight,
For we must deal with him in other wise."

Barsám of Chín observed the flag and drew
His troops apart until with frowning face,
And malisons upon his lips, he reached
The desert of Farab, there found Máhwí,

And, with his weight upon the stirrups, charged ;
 Then, closing face to face, he plied his sword,
 Displaying valour, seized his foeman's belt,
 Unseated him and dashed him to the ground,
 Alighted, bound his hands, and then remounting
 Drove him along in front. With that came up
 Barsám's own comrades, and the bruit of him
 Filled all the plain. They said : " O chief ! Máhwí
 Should be beheaded on the way."

He answered :—

" Not so ; Bízhan as yet is not informed
 About the capture."

Presently Bízhan

Gat news : " That ill-conditioned slave is taken,"
 Heard and grew glad of heart. He hugged himself,
 And thus released from care roared lion-like.
 Then many valiant Turks came and discussed
 The fashion of the slaying of Máhwí.
 All that they recognised as of his court
 They put to death—a countless multitude.
 They looted all the baggage and dragged off
 Máhwí stripped bare of all. The guilty wretch
 Lost all his wits when he beheld Bízhan,
 Was as a soulless body with affright,
 And strewed upon his head the unstable sand.
 Bízhan said : " O thou miscreant ! may none have
 A slave like thee ! Why didst thou put to death
 That righteous Sháh, the lord of victory
 And throne, and by ancestral right both Sháh
 And king, the memory of Núshírwán ? "
 Máhwí made answer thus : " The evil-doer
 Can look for naught but slaying and reproach.
 Now smite my neck for wrong done and fling down
 My head in presence of this company."

C. 2094

The other gave reply : " I will so act
 That I shall banish vengeance from my heart,"

Struck off Máhwí's hand with the scimitar,
And said : " This hand hath not a peer in crime."

The hand thus lopped, he said : " Cut off his feet
That he may not escape," and further bade :—
Cut off his nose and ears, let him be placed
Upon a horse out on the burning sand
Until he sleepeth in his shame."

They bound him
From head to foot with cords, the clarions sounded,
A herald went the circuit of the host,
And, as he passed the entry of the tents,
Made proclamation : " Slaves that slay your masters !
Indulge no foolish thoughts, and may all those
Without compunction for a monarch's life
Be as Máhwí and never see the throne."

There was a prince, by name Guráz, at once
The glory and the pleasure of Máhwí.
He was the governor of Marv what time
Máhwí died wretchedly. As eldest son
He was his father's lustre, who had made
A crown of gold for him. When fortune loured
Upon Máhwí the horsemen rode to Marv
From all sides. Tumult spread. The war-cry rose,
And strife and turmoil filled the land. Guráz
Was slain mid those dark doings, and the day
Of all his race was done. He had three sons
Among his troops, three favourite sons possessed
Of crown and throne. A lofty pyre was kindled,
And he and his three sons were burned thereon.
None of the seed remained or if some did
Men harried them. The chieftains cursed that race,
All vengeful for the slaughter of the Sháh :—
" May it be cursed and may there never fail
A man to curse it as it hath deserved."

Bízhan, the Turk, too was an evil-doer.
His own time came, his wisdom was estranged,

And I have heard that he grew mad at last,
 And was so till he slew himself. Well done,
 Thou still revolving, crook-backed sky ! Since then
 Hath been the epoch of 'Umar, made known
 The Faith, and to a pulpit changed the throne.

§ 15

Account of the Completion of the Sháh-náma

When five and sixty years had passed me by
 I viewed my task with more anxiety,
 And as my yearning to achieve it grew
 My fortune's star receded from my view.
 Persians well read and men of high degree
 Wrote all my work out and would take no fee.
 I over-looked from far, and thou hadst said
 That they had rather handselled me instead !
 Naught but their praises had I for my part,
 And while they praised I had a broken heart.
 The mouths of their old money-bags were tied,
 Whereat mine ardent heart was mortified.
 Of famous nobles of this town 'Alí,
 The Dílamite,¹ most shared the work with me,
 For he, a man of ardent temper made,
 Through kindness of soul forwent no aid.
 Husain, son of Kutíb, a Persian lord,
 Asked me for naught without its due reward,
 But furnished gold and silver, clothes and meat,
 And found me ways and means, and wings and feet.
 As for taxation, naught thereof know I ;
 All at mine ease in mine own quilt I lie.

¹ In Vol. i., p. 35, the names are given according to the reading of BCM.

What time my years attained to ten times seven
And one my poetry surmounted heaven.
For five and thirty years I bore much pain
Here in this Wayside Inn in quest of gain,
But all the five and thirty years thus past
Naught helped ; they gave my travail to the blast,
And my hopes too have gone for evermore
Now that mine age all but hath reached fourseore.
I end the story of Sháh Yazdagird,
And in Sapandármad, the day of Ard,
And year four hundred of Muhammad's Flight,
The last words of this royal book I write.
For ever flourishing be Sháh Mahmúd,
His head still green, his heart with joy imbued.
I have so lauded him that publicly
And privily my words will never die.
Of praises from the Great I had much store ;
The praises that I give to him are more.
May he, the man of wisdom, live for aye,
His doings turn to his content always.
This tale of sixty thousand couplets I
Have left to him by way of memory.
My life from days of youth to eld hath sped
In talk and hearkening what others said.
When this, my famous tale, was done at last
O'er all the realm my reputation past.
All men of prudence, rede, and Faith will give
Applause to me when I have ceased to live,
Yet live I shall ; the seed of words have I
Flung broad-cast and henceforth I shall not die.

The Sháhnáma of Firdausí is ended.

INDEX

This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Roman numerals.

A

- ABBREVIATIONS, list of, xi
 Abtín, father of Farídún, 53, 103
 Abú Bakr, Khalífa, 76
 begins war with Persian Empire, 66
 Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 66
 supersedes Khálid in Syria, 66
 Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 67
 made commander in Persian campaign, 67
 slain, 67
 Afrásiyáb, ruler of Túrán, 25, 103
 Áhriman, the Evil Principle, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91
 Ál, place, 93
 Alburz, Mount, 25
 'Alí, the Dīlamite, friend of Firdausí, 121
 Altúniya, place, 92
 Ámul, city in Mázandarán, 86
 Apologue, 86
 Apothegms, 87, 88, 110
 Arab, Arabs, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92, 94, *seq.*, 114, 117
 invasion of Írán by, 3, 65 *seq.*
 steeds, 11
 tribes, 65
 triumph of, over Dhú Kár, 66
 chieftain, incites Abú Bakr to invade Persia, 66
 concentrate at Kádísya, 67
 Arab, Arabs, booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), 68
 annex Mesopotamia, 68
 Khuzistán, 68
 = 'Umar, 72
 seal, 82
 = Sa'ad, 84
 defeated, 85
 Núshírwán's dream of, 92
 Arabian, Arabians, 74, 85
 Arabic, 81
 Archmages, viii
 Ard, day, 70, 122
 Ardshír Pápakán, first Sásanian Sháh, 105, 109, 111
 Ardshír, son of Shírwí, Sháh, vii, 43 *seq.*
 makes Pírúz general, 44
 entertains Pírúz at feast, 48
 death of, 49
 treasury of, squandered by Guráz, 53
 Árish, famous Íránian archer, 25
 Arjásp, king of Túrán, 104
 Armaní, Íránian chief, 74
 'Arús, treasure, 20
 Arwand (Tigris), river, 85, 92
 Asfandiyár, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, 25, 26 *note*, 104
 Ashtád, Íránian chief, 11 *seq.*
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, 9
 and Kharrád parley with Galínúsh, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12
 report to Shírwí, 27
 Astrolabe, 73

Astrologer, 73
 Āzar, month and day, 17
 Āzar, Ābādagān (Āzargashasp
q.v.), 74
 Āzargashasp, spirit of the light-
 ning, 55
 temple of (Āzar Ābādagān)
 at Shíz (Takht-i-Salai-
 mán) in Āzarbáiján, 75
 Āzarmdukht, Sháh, viii, 56, 59,
 69
 reproaches Kubád, 7
 end of, 59, 60

B

BABYLON, 65, 92
 Zahhák, king of, 65
 Bactrian, camels, 93
 Bád Āwar, treasure, 20
 Baghdád, Persian settlement of,
 67
 raided by Arabs, 67
 Baghdád, city (*Cf.* Vol. viii, p.
 109 *note*), 88
 Yazdagird quits, 88
 Bahrain, group of islands in
 Persian Gulf, 68
 Bahrám Chúbína, Íránian hero,
 6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105
 assassination of, referred
 to, 4
 Romance of, 5
 Bahrám Gúr, Sháh, 26, 77
 Baigand, city and fortress
 between Bukhárá and
 Oxus,
 Máhwí encamps at, 118
 Balkh, city, 116
 bestowed by Máhwí on his
 son, 115
 Bandwí, maternal uncle of Khus-
 rau Parwíz 4
 execution of, referred to, 4,
 16, 104
 Bárbad, minstrel, vii, 29 and
 note
 visits Khusrau Parwíz in
 prison, 29
 lament of, 30

Barda', city on the borders of
 Āzarbáiján and Armenia,
 15
 Barsám, general of Bízhan 97,
 117
 marches on Marv, 97, 116
 Máhwí's conduct to, 117
 pursues and overtakes
 Máhwí, 118
 captures Máhwí, 119
 Bartás, region in Turkistán, 19
 Barzín, father of Kharrád, 4, 9,
 12, 27
 Basra (Bassora), city on the
 Shatt-el-Arab, 68, 69
 founded by 'Umar, 67
 Battle of the Bridge, 5, 67
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, viii, 70,
 96
 Máhwí writes to, 96
 consults his minister, 97
 sends troops to Marv, 97
 Máhwí makes war on, 115
 marches against Máhwí, 117
 lays ambush for Máhwí, 118
 sends Barsám in pursuit of
 Máhwí, 118
 hears of Máhwí's capture,
 119
 puts Máhwí to death, 120
 goes mad and kills himself,
 120, 121

Brahman, 21
 Bridge, Battle of the, 5, 67
 Bukhárá, city on the Zarafshán
 river in the province of
 Sughd, 97, 115, 117
 Bust, city in Sístán, 89

C

CÆSAR, 10, 23
 letter of, about the True
 Cross referred to, 22
 Chách (Táshkand), city in Túrán,
 115, 116
 battle-axes of, 118
 Chahram (Jahram), city in Párs
 29, 61

Chín country (often=Túrán), 10,
10, 41, 107, 118
sashes from, 12, 53
gold thread of, 82
Khán of, 87
merchantmen of, 89
shields of, 118

Christ, 24, 109

Cross of, 23

Christian, 23

Commander of the Faithful, 72

'Umar, the first, 72 and *note*

Contents Table of, vii

Cross, the true, 4, 5, 10, 24

restoration of, 7, 56

of Christ, 23

Elevation of, 43

Crystal, House of, 25 and *note*

Ctesiphon (Taisafún *q.v.*), 65
seq.

taken by Shahrbaráz, 43, 44

Sa'ad, 67

booty found at, 68

D

DAHISTÁN, town, also district
north of the Atrak, 95

Dai, day, 17

Dáng, coin, 94 and *note*

Darkness, House of, 7

Dastagird, city, 7

Dhú Kár, Battle of, 4, 5, 66

Dilamite, 'Alí the, friend of Fir-
dausi, 121

Dív, dívs, 18, 25

=Áhriman, 47, 102, 104

E

EGYPTIAN, 110

linen, 110

F

FAGHFÚR of Chín, 87, 97, 102

Faithful, Commander of the, 72

'Umar, the first, 72 and *note*

Farab (Firabr), town on the
Oxus opposite to Ámwí,
desert of, 115, 118

Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz *q.v.*),
Sháh, vii, 50, 53, 105

accession-speech of, 52

counselled by his eldest son,
52

counselled by his youngest
son, 53

misrule of, 53

plot against, 54

Farídún, Sháh, 25, 39, 53, 71,
86, 103

Farruhán (Farrukhán). *See* Far-
áyín.

Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See* Far-
áyín.

Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd
q.v.), father of Rustam, 69

Farrukhzád, Sháh, viii, 61 *seq.*,
70

Siyah Chashm and, 62

poisons, 63

Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd,
brother of Rustam, and
favourite of Khusrau Par-
wíz, 23, 87, 92, 95

bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to
murder Khusrau Parwíz,
33

defeats the Arabs, 85

counsels Yazdagird, 86, 87

leads the host to Khurásán,
89

entrusts Yazdagird to

Máhwí, 95

goes to Rai, 96

Farúd, son of Shírin and Khusrau
Parwíz, 39

Firdausí, 69

account of Arab conquest
by, supplemented, 65

Yazdagird's death, 70,
107

reflections on, 108,

111

on completion of Sháhnáma,

121

friends and assistants of, 121

exempt from taxation, 121

- Firdausí, time spent on Sháh-náma, by, 122
 praise of Sultán Mahmúd, by, 122
 Flight of Muhammad, referred to, 122
 Ford and toll-house of Zark, 100 and *note*, 116

G

- GALBWÍ, Íránian chief, 74
 Galínúsh, Persian general, 5, 11, 12
 parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, 11
 Gang-dizh, stronghold, 25
 Garsiwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, 103
 Garsiyún, Íránian chief, 115
 Gashasp, father of Ashtád *q.v.*, 11
 Gemini, constellation, 73
 Gil (Gíl, Gílán ?), district on south-west coast of Caspian, 93
 Glory. *See* Grace.
 Grace or Glory, the divine, 8, 26, 30, 31, 41, 44, 47, 73, 74, 79, 90, 91, 95, 99, 100, 101, 116
 Gúdarz, Íránian hero, 25
 seventy sons of, 25
 Gumbadán, Mount, 93
 stronghold on, 93
 Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín *q.v.*) general of Khusrau Parwíz and Sháh, vii, 44
 rebellion of, 45
 message of, 45
 writes to Pírúz, 46
 Pírúz writes to, 47
 account of, 50
 meaning of, 50
 dual personality of, 50
 marches on Taisafún, 51
 confers with Íránian mag-nates, 51
 misrule of, 53
 conspiracy against, 54
 goes hunting, 55

- Guráz, end of, 55
 Guráz, son of Máhwí, referred to, 107, 115
 governor of Marv, 120
 put to death with his sons, 120
 Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 6
 Gurdya, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 6
 Gurgán, province on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 89
 Gushtásp, Sháh, 25
 Gustaham, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 6
 assassination of, referred to, 16, 104

H

- HAMADÁN, city in 'Irák 'Ajamí, 68
 Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, 4, 5
 Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, 115
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, 115
 Háshim, Arab general, 68
 sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68
 wins battle of Jalúlá, 68
 takes Hulwán, 68
 Háshimite = Muhammad, 81 and *note*
 Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor, 5, 7
 Shírwi's letter to, 7
 alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, 44
 Hilál, Arab, 69
 slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, 70
 Hindústán, 17, 20
 Híra, city, west of the Euphrates near Nedjef, 5, 66
 kingdom of, 65
 abolished by Khusrau Parwíz, 66
 attacked by Persians, 67

Hcūri, 81
 House of Darkness, 7
 Crystal, 25 and *note*
 Hulwán, town on the border of
 'Írák 'Ajamí, west of Kir-
 mānsháh
 Yazdagird retires to, 67
 taken by Hāshim, 68
 Hurmuzd, son of Núshírwán,
 Sháh, 4, 15, 104
 Hurmuzd (Hurmuzdsháh, Far-
 ruk-h-Hurmuzd *q.v.*),
 father of Rustam, 72, 78
 85, 89, 96
 Hurmuzd Shahránguráz (Shah-
 ránguráz *q.v.*), 54
 Hurmuzd, devotee, 102
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-
 dagird, 102
 Husain, friend of Firdausí, 121
 Húshang, Sháh, 25, 41

I

INDIAN, scimitar, 17
 script, 17
 scribe, 17
 Íraj, son of Farídún, 103
 'Írák, 66
 Írán, vii, viii, 9 *seq.*, 15, 21, 22,
 31, 36, 38, 39, 44, 45, 51,
 66, 74, 75, 79, 85, 86, 88,
 92, 96, 103, 106, 108, 113
 Íránian, Íránians, viii, 22, 23,
 40, 47, 48, 63, 73, 76, 88,
 90, 116
 homage Shírwí, 8
 choose two chiefs to visit
 Khusrau Parwíz in prison,
 9
 plot against Guráz, 54
 go hunting with Guráz, 55
 race, 65
 enmity of, with Semite,
 65
 announces arrival of Shu'ba
 Mughíra to Rustam, 82
 defeat of, at Kádísíya, 84
 retreat to Yazdagird, 85
 —born, 99

Íránians, defeat of, at Marv, 116
 ambushed, 118
 Istākhr (Persepolis), 50, 54
 Yazdagird taken to, 64
 made Sháh at, 65

J

JAHRAM. *See* Chahram.
 Jalúlá, 68
 Jámásp, minister of Gushtásp, 26
 Jamshíd Sháh, 25, 39, 103
 Jarmana, place, 93
 Jerusalem, 43
 Elevation of the True Cross
 at, 43
 Jesus, 10
 Jihún (Oxus), river, 77, 115, 118
 Jins, 81

K

KÁBUL, city
 falchion of, 98
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, 117
 Kádísíya, town west of Euph-
 rates and near
 Nedjef, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78
 Battle of, 5, 67, 69
 date of, 67
 canal of, 69
 Rustam advances to, 73
 Kaian, crown, 11, 105
 Kai Káuś, Sháh, 25
 Kai Khusrau, Sháh, 25, 103
 Kai Kubád, Sháh, 25
 Kalát, stronghold, 91
 Káran, Íránian hero, 25
 Karkh, a suburb of Baghdád, 85
 Arab defeat at, 85
 Kashmigán, son of Farrukhzád,
 92
 Káwa, the smith, 30
 flag of, 30, 67
 Khálid, Arab general, 66
 begins hostilities against
 Persian Empire, 66
 recalled to lead Syrian cam-
 paign, 66

- Khán of Chín, 87, 102
= Bízhan, 97
- Kharrád, son of Barzín, Íránian minister, 4, 11, 12, 24
end of, 4
chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisé fun, 9
Ashtád and, parley with Galinúsh, 11
visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12
report to Shirwí, 27
- Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, 102
- Khurásán, province in north-eastern Írán, viii, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
Máhwí becomes master of, 114
- Khusrau Parwíz, Sháh, vii, 4 *seq.*, 11, 12, 25, 26 *note*, 30, 31, 33 *seq.*, 38 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*
charges against, 4, 5, 9, 10
reply of, to charges, 5, 14 *seq.*
Haram of, 4, 5
last days *cf.* Theophanes' account of, 6
Shirwí's treatment of, 7
sons of, executed, 7, 35
Shírín and, 7
imprisoned at Taisafún, 9
companioned by Shírín, 29
Bárbad visits, 29
laments over, 30
steed of, 30
son of, 31
referred to, 33 and *note*
kingdom of Hira abolished by, 66
Muhammad's letter to, 66
- Khusrau, father of Pírúz, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
- Khusrau, a miller, viii, 99. *See* Miller.
- Khúzistán (Susiana), province at head of Persian Gulf
annexed by Arabs, 68
- Khuzrá, treasure, 20
- Kibchák, region east of the Jaxartes and north of Táshkand, 93
- Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes ?), 93
- Kisrá Núshírwán. *See* Núshírwán.
- Kubád, son of Pírúz, Sháh, 22, 25
- Kubád (Shírwí *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 3, 4, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64
tragic reign of, 3
pestilence during, 3
boorishness of, 3
difficult situation of, 3
reproached by his sisters, 7
- Kúfa, city, west of Euphrates and north of Nedjef, 68, 69
founded by Sa'ad, 67
- Kurán, 81
quoted, 81 and *note*
- Kutíb, father of Husain, 121

L

- Lázhawardí fort, 93
- Luhrásp, Sháh, 104

M

- MÁCHFN (China), 107
- Mahmúd, Sultán, praise of 122
- Makhzúm, place, 93
- Máhwí, Persian chief, viii, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 *seq.* 118
described, 87
- Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird, 95
accepts charge of Yazdagird, 96
becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, 96
writes to Bízhan, 96, 116
betrays Yazdagird, 97, 98, 116, 117
quest of, for Yazdagird, 100
has tidings of Yazdagird, 101
consults his warriors, 106
son of, counsels, 107

- Máhwí, son of, receives Balkh and Harát, 115
 governor of Marv, 120
 put to death with his sons, 120
 sends miller to slay Yazdagird, 107, 116
 troops after miller with instructions, 107
 troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, 108
 hears of death of Yazdagird, 108
 bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, 108
 slays monks, 113
 consults his intimates and minister, 113
 advised by his minister, 113
 claims the throne on false pretences, 114
 becomes master of Khurásán, 114
 evil rule of, 114
 makes war on Bízhan, 115
 conduct of, to Barsám, 117
 crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, 118
 flees, 118
 overtaken by Barsám, 118
 captured by Barsám, 119
 put to death by Bízhan, 120
- Marchlords, viii
- Mardánsháh (Yalán-sína *q.v.*), 5, 6
 son of, 5, 6
 conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6
 mutilation and execution of, 6
- Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
- Mardásas (Mardánsháh *q.v.*), 7
 execution of, 7
- Mars, planet, 73, 89
- Márúspand, palace, 11
- Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistan, 70, 89, 116, 117
- Marv, traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, 70
 Yazdagird at, 97, 116
 thane of, 110
 apothegm of, 110
 conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, 117
 Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, 120
- Mázandarán, region between Alburz range and Caspian, 74
- Mecca, city, 69
- Mercury, planet, 73
- Mesopotamia,
 annexed by Arabs, 68
- Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírwi, in Arabic Tabarí, 43
 put to death, 43
- Míhr, feast, 40
- Míhr 'Hasis, minister of Ardshír, son of Shírwi, in Persian Tabarí, 43
 put to death, 43
- Míhr Hurmuzd, murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 34
 account of, 5
 referred to, 6, 33
 conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6
 put to death, 7
 described, 33
- Míhr-i-Núsh, 103
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 103
- Mill, viii, 98, 116
- Miller, viii, 70
 Yazdagird and, 99
 informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, 100
 informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, 101
 bidden to slay Yazdagird, 107
 bidden to fling corpse into stream, 108
- Minúchihr, Sháh, 103
- Mír Khánd, distich of, quoted, 56
- Monks, 109
 find Yazdagird, 109

Monks, lament over and entomb
 Yazdagird, 109 *seq.*
 sentences of, over Yazdagird, 110
 slain by Máhwí, 113
 Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. *See*
 Shu'ba Mughíra, 69
 Muhammad, the Prophet, 69, 81
seq.
 letter of, to Khusrau Parwiz, 66
 Flight of, referred to, 122
 Muslim, 85

N

NAHÁVAND, city, south of Hamadán, 68, 69
 Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, 68
 Battle of, 69
 Nárwan, forest of, 86
 Nastúr, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
 Nile, 98
 Nímruz*, 5, 6
 satrapy of, 69
 Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, 95
 Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 23
 Note on Pronunciation, xii
 Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, 5
 Nu'mán, Arab general, 68
 sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, 68
 defeats Píruzán at Nahávand, 68
 slain, 69
 Núshírwán, Sháh, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
 Letter of Counsel of, 22
 division of Empire by, 69
 dream of, 92

O

OMEN of the quince, 13, 14
 Oxus (Jihún), river
 referred to, 117 and *note*, 118

P

PAHLAVÍ, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, 50
 Paidáwasís, Persian coin=five dínárs, 19
 Párs (Persis, Farsistán), country on eastern shore of Persian Gulf, 68
 Parsís, 64
 Parwíz. *See* Khusrau Parwíz.
 Persepolis (Istakhr), 65
 Persia, 66
 Persian, Persians, 5, 7, 20, 37, 40, 54, 60, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72, 77, 79, 85, 121
 ideas on marriage, 7
 language, 12, 65
 =Ashtád and Kharrád, 24
 exonerate Shírín, 38
 empire, 65, 66
 Gulf, 66, 68
 win "The Battle of the Bridge," 67
 fail in attack on Híra, 67
 defeat of, at Kádísíya, 67, 84
 Jalúlá, 68
 Nahávand, 69
 Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy to, 69
 robes, 94
 transcribe Sháhnáma for Firdausí, 121
 Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, 3, 7
 Píruz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírwí, vii
 appointed general, 44

*See p. 333 *note*.

Pírúz, letter of Guráz to, 46
 takes counsel, 46
 writes to Guráz, 47
 Guráz marches against, 48
 appeals to Tukhár, 48
 feasts with Ardshír, 48
 informs Guráz of the death
 of Ardshír, 51
 put to death, 57
 Pírúz, Íránian prince, 59
 Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Íránian
 noble
 takes Rustam's letter to
 Sa'ad, 80, 81
 Pírúzán, Persian general,
 commands Persian forces at
 Nahávand, 68
 slain, 69
 Pisces, constellation, 71
 Plague. *See* Pestilence.
 Pronunciation, Note on, xii
 Púrándukht, Sháh, vii, 56
 reproaches Kubád, 7
 makes Shahránguráz prime
 minister, 56
 True Cross and, 56
 Pusfarrukh, 50

Q

QUINCE, omen of the, 13, 14

R

RÁDA, Mount, 91, 94
 Rádwi, archimage
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-
 dagird, 102
 Rai, city and district near Tih-
 rán, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96
 Rája, 17
 letter of, 17
 put in charge of Shírín, 17
 Raven, Raven-head, 91 and *note*,
 95 *note*, 96
 Revellers Rosary of 38, 40
 Roman, 50, 66
 Rosary of Revellers, 38, 40
 Rúina, place, 91

Rúm, Eastern Roman Empire,
 10, 11, 20, 39, 41, 45, 46,
 113
 brocade of, 99, 101
 monks of, slain by Máhwí,
 113
 Rúman, Rúmans, 23, 60
 Russian, cloth, 110
 Rustam, son of Zál, Íránian hero,
 25
 Rustam, Persian commander
 in chief under Yazdagird
 III., viii, 66, 67, 69, 73,
 81 *seq.*, 90, 95
 overthrows Ázarmdukht, 59
 advances to Kádisiya, 67,
 73
 end of, 69
 finds evil aspects in the stars,
 73
 writes to his brother, 73
 hears of Shu'ba Mughíra's
 arrival, 82

S

SA'AD, son of Wakkás, Arab
 general, viii, 67, 68, 82
seq., 90
 succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, 67
 at Kádisiya, 67, 69
 founds Kúfa, 67
 takes Ctesiphon, 67
 recalled, 68
 sent by 'Umar to invade
 Írán, 72
 letter of Rustam to, 78
 taken by Pírúz 80, 81
 Sada, feast, 40, 92
 Samarkand, city in Turkistán,
 96, 115
 Sapandármad, month, 70, 122
 Sarí, city in Mázandarán, 86
 Sásán, son of Dárá, 105 and *note*
 lineage of 56, 105
 Sásánian, Sásánians, 4, 5, 46,
 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76,
 77, 83, 105
 Dynasty, 4

- Sásánian, Empire, conquered by the Arabs, 65 *seq.*
- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's four, 69
- Saturn, planet, 73
- sphere of, 92
- Seasons, confusion of the, 77 *note*
- Semite, race, enmity of, with Íránians, 65
- Shabdíz, steed of Khusrau Parwíz, 30
- Sháhnáma, viii, 4 *seq.*, 43, 50, 61, 70
- completion of, Firdausí on, 121
- length of, 122
- date when completed, 122
- Shahrán, 102
- pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 102
- Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, Guráz *q.v.*), vii, 50
- heads conspiracy against Guráz, 54
- Shahrbaráz (Guráz *q.v.*), Íránian general, 43, 50
- rebellion of, 43, 44
- alliance of, with Heraclius, 44
- Shahr-Barz. *See* Shahrbaráz.
- Shahguráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahrwaráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahryár, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
- father of Yazdagird, 64
- Shamífrán, stronghold north of Harát (?), 91, 94
- Shápúr, father of Pírúz, 80
- Shatt-al-Arab, the combined streams of the Tigris and Euphrates, 67
- Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 28, 36
- Khusrau Parwíz and, 7
- has charge of Shírwi's horoscope, 16
- Raja's letter, 17
- companions Khusrau Parwíz in prison, 29
- reproached and summoned by Shírwi, 36
- Shírín, makes her will, 36
- goes to Court, 37
- justifies herself, 38, 40
- sons of, 39
- unveils to the Court, 39
- Shírwi falls in love with, 39
- makes request of Shírwi, 40, 41
- goes home, 40
- distributes her wealth, 40
- frees her slaves, 41
- poisons herself, 42
- Shírwi (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64
- treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, 7
- writes to Heraclius, 7
- horoscope of, 16
- kept by Shírín, 16
- Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, 27
- reproaches and summons Shírín, 36, 37
- falls in love with Shírín, 39
- grants Shírín's requests, 40, 42
- poisoned, 42
- son of, 42
- length of reign of, 42
- Shu'ba Mughíra, companion of the Prophet, 69, 83
- embassy of, 69, 82
- Sikandar (Alexander the Great), Sháh, 26
- Siyah Chasm, slave of Farrukhzád, 62
- handmaid of Farrukhzád and, 62
- imprisoned, 62
- released, 62
- poisons Farrukhzád, 63
- Siyáwush, son of Kai Káuś, 25
- and *note*, 26 *note*, 103
- Snakes = Arabs, 91
- Súr, Súrán, city near Ispahán, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
- Syrian, 66

T

- TABARÍ, historian, 4, 59, 61, 64, 69
 Arabic, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
 Persian, 4, 5, 43, 70
 Tabaristán (Mázandarán), 74
 Table of Contents, vii
 Talmúras, Sháh, 25
 Taisafún (Ctesiphon), city on left bank of Tigris, 9, 10, 90
 Khusrau Parwíz imprisoned at, 9
 Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwíz at, 29
 Taráz, city north-east of Táshkand, 41
 Taxation, Firdaus's exemption from, 121
 Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwíz by, 6
 Tigris, river, 67
 Toll-house and ford of Zark, 100 and *note*, 116
 Tukhár, Íránian general, refuses to help Pírúz against Guráz, 48
 Túr, son of Farídún, 103
 Túrán, 11, 89, 99
 Turk, Turks, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114, 117, 120
 Turkish, 87
 Turkistán, 15
 Turkman, Turkmen, 25, 76, 94 king = Afrásiyáb, 25
 Tús, city in Khurásán, viii, 90, 95
 governor of, 92

U

- 'UMAR, Khalífa, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121
 founds Basra, 67
 sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, 68
 Sa'ad to invade Írán, 72
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 24

V

- VENUS, planet, 26, 73
 Victory of Victories, The, 69
 Virgo, constellation, 71

W

- WAKKÁS, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*, viii, 72, 78, 82, 90

Y

- YALÁN-SÍNA (Mardánsháh *q.v.*), 6
 Yazdagird, Sháh, viii, 5, 51, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122
 Era of, 64
 taken for safety to Istakhr, 64
 age of, at accession, 65
 difficult position of, 65
 historical importance of reign of, 65
 flight of, from Ctesiphon, 67
 Hulwán, 68
 last attempt of, to recover his empire, 68
 concentrates his forces at Nahávand, 68
 defeated and a fugitive, 69
 death of, referred to, 69
 host returns to, after Kád-isiya, 85
 hears of Rustam's death, 85
 quits Baghdád, 88
 makes for Marv, 89
 entrusted to Máhwí by Farrukhzád, 95, 99
 at Marv, 97, 116
 hears of the coming of the Turks, 97
 betrayed by Máhwí, 98
 defeated, 98, 116

Yazdagird, miller and, 99 *seq.*
 described, 99, 101
 Máhwí bids miller slay, 107,
 116
 slain, stripped and flung into
 stream, 108, 109 and *note*
 corpse of, recovered, lam-
 ented over and entombed,
 109 *seq.*
 Firdausí on, 111

Z

ZÁBULISTÁN, 75*
 Zahhák, Sháh, 25, 65, 103

Zahhák, an Aryan myth, 65
 king of Babylon, 65
 an Arab, 65
 Zál, son of Sám and father of
 Rustam, 25
 Zark, town south-east of Marv,
 98
 canal of, 98
 corpse of Yazdagird flung
 into, 109
 recovered from, 109
 ford and toll-house of, 100
 and *note*
 chief of, 109
 hears from miller about
 Yazdagird, 109

*See p. 333 *note*.

GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

| | |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| C.—Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma | |
| L.—Lumsden's | Do. |
| P.—Mohl's | do. |
| T.—Tihrán | do. |
| V.—Vullers' | do. |

- AM. The Voiage and Travayle of Sir John Maundeville, Knight
. . . Edited . . . by John Ashton.
- AS. The Sháh Námeḥ of . . Firdausí. Translated and
abridged. . . . By James Atkinson Esq.
- BAG. A History of Ancient Geography. By E. H. Bunbury
F.R.G.S.
- BAN. A Plain and Literal Translation of the Arabian Nights'
Entertainments. . . . By Richard F. Burton.
- BBR. Buddhist Records of the Western World. Translated
from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629). By
Samuel Beal.
- BCM. The Chahár Maqála (" Four Discourses ") of Nidhámí-i-
'Arúdí-i-Samarquandí. Translated into English by
Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
- BGDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire.
By Edward Gibbon. Edited by J. B. Bury, M.A.
- BHA. The History of Alexander the Great, being the Syriac
Version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes. Edited . . . with
an English Translation and Notes, by Ernest A. Wallis
Budge, M.A.
- BLEA. The Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great, being a
Series of Translations of the Ethiopic Histories of
Alexander. . . . By E. A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
- BLHP. A Literary History of Persia. By Edward G. Browne,
M.A.
- BLRE. History of the Lower Roman Empire. By J. B. Bury.
- BPB. Photius: Bibliotheca. Ex Recensione Immanuelis Bek-
keri.
- CIG. Corpus Inscriptionum Graecarum.
- CTC. Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis
Classeni.
- DAA. Arriani Anabasis . . . F. Dübner.
- DAI. Arriani Indica . . . F. Dübner.
- DEI. J. Darmesteter, Études Iraniennes.

- DFKHP. History of the Parsis. By Dcsabhai Framji Karaka, C.S.I.
- DHA. The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor Max Duncker. By the late Evelyn Abbot, M.A.
- DZA. Professor Darmesteter's Trans. of the *Zandavasta* in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts¹ and pages.
- EHI. The History of India as told by its own Historians. By Sir H. M. Elliot, K.C.B.
- EP. Eastern Persia, an Account of the Journeys of the Persian Boundary Commission, 1870-71-72.
- GDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon, Esq. With Notes by Dean Milman and M. Guizot. Edited, with additional Notes, by William Smith, L.L.D.
- GH. The Land of the Hittites. . . . By John Garstang, D.Sc.
- GHP. Histoire des Perses par le Comte de Gobineau.
- GIP. Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie.
- GKS. Kleine Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.
- GYZ. Geiger: Das Yátkár-i Zarírán und sein Verhältniss zum Sáhname. Sitzungsberichte der philosophisch-philologischen und historischen Classe der k.b. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München. 1890. Bd. II. Heft I. p. 43.
- HAP. History of Art in Persia from the French of Georges Perrot and Charles Chipiez.
- HB. The Country of Balochistan. . . . By A. W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.
- HEP. Essays on the Sacred Language, Writing and Religion of the Parsis. By Martin Haug, Ph. D. Edited and enlarged by E. W. West, Ph. D.
- HIE. The Indian Empire. By W. W. Hunter, C.S.I., C.I.E., L.L.D.
- HLP. The Legend of Perseus. By E. S. Hartland.
- HQC. Q. Curtius Rufus . . . ed. Edmundus Hedicke.
- HRVP. Veterum Persarum . . . Religionis Historia. Ed. 2nd. By Thomas Hyde.
- HS. Syntagma Dissertationum quas olim auctor doctissimus Thomas Hyde S.T.P. separatim edidit.
- JFB. The earliest English version of the Fables of Bidpai . . . now again edited and induced by Joseph Jacobs.
- JP. Persia Past and Present, by Professor A. V. Williams Jackson.
- JRGS. The Journal of the Royal Geographical Society.
- JZ. Zoroaster. By A. V. Williams Jackson.
- KA. Asia. By A. H. Keane, F.R.G.S.
- KUR. Kitab-i-Yamini of Al Utbi. Translated by the Rev. James Reynolds, B.A.
- LAN. The Arabian Nights' Entertainments. A New Translation from the Arabic. . . . By Edward William Lane.
- LEC. The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate. By G. Le Strange.

¹The second edition of Part I. is referred to unless otherwise specified.

- LPC. A View of the History and Coinage of the Parthians. By John Lindsay, Esq.
- MA. Alexandre le Grand . . . Par Paul Meyer.
- MACA. Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian. . . . By J. W. M'Crinde, M.A.
- MCI. The Invasion of India by Alexander the Great. . . . By J. W. M'Crinde, M.A. . . . New Edition.
- MF. Reliqua Arriani et Scriptorum de rebus Alexandri M. Fragmenta collegit . . . Carolus Müller.
- MGN. Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan, etc. By Colonel C. M. MacGregor, C.S.I., C.I.E.
- MHP. History of Persia. By Sir John Malcolm, G.C.B.
- MLM. The Life of Muhammad. By William Muir, Esq.
- MM. Maçoudi : Les Prairies d'Or. Texte et traduction par C Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille.
- MPC. Pseudo-Callisthenes, primum edidit Carolus Mullerus.
- MSJP. A Second Journey through Persia, etc. By James Morier Esq.
- MZA. Rev. L. H. Mills' Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Part and pages.
- NAR. Beiträge zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans, von Prof. Dr. Th. Nöldeke in Denkschriften der . . . Akademie der Wissenschaften . . . Wien, 1890.
- NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.
- NK. Geschichte des Artachšir i Pâpakân aus dem Pellewi übersetzt . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- NPS. Nöldeke : Persische Studien. II. Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. CXXVI. Band.
- NSEH. Sketches from Eastern History. By Theodor Nöldeke. English Translation.
- NT. Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- OHS. The History of the Saracens. By Simon Ockley. Fourth Edition.
- RFGM. The Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RH. The History of Herodotus. . . . By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RK. The Koran translated from the Arabic. By J. M. Rodwell. Second Edition.
- RM. (*In Vols. III and IV*) The Mahābhārata translated into English Prose (*by Kisari Mohan Ganguli*). Published by Pratāpa Chandra Rāi, C.I.E.
(*Elsewhere*) The Rauzat-us-safa ; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By . . . Mirkhond . . . Translated by E. Rehatsek.
- RP. (*In Vols. I and V*) Records of the Past. First Series.
(*Elsewhere*) Professor Rawlinson's Parthia in the Story of the Nations' Series.

- RPNS. Records of the Past. Second Series.
- RSM. The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- SAC. The Chronology of Ancient Nations . . . of Albírúni . . . translated . . . by Dr. C. Edward Sachau.
- SHC. The " Higher Criticism " and the Verdict of the Monuments. By the Rev. A. H. Sayce.
- SK. The Koran . . . Translated . . . by George Sale, Gent.
- SM. History of the Early Kings of Persia . . . Translated from the original . . . Persian of Mirkhond . . . by David Shea.
- SP. The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea . . . Translated from the Greek and annotated by Wilfrid H. Schoff, A.M.
- STD. The Dabistán . . . Translated . . . by David Shea and Anthony Troyer.
- WLS. In the Land of the Lion and Sun . . . By C. J. Wills, M.D.
- WPR. The Pársí Religion. By John Wilson.
- WPT. Dr. E. W. West's Trans. of the Pahlaví Texts in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts and pages.
- YMP. The Book of Sir Marco Polo . . . newly translated. . . . By Colonel Henry Yule, C.B.
- ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg.

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | VOLUME I | Vol. I PAGE |
|---|----------|----------------|
| PREFACE | | vii |
| INTRODUCTION | | |
| CHAPTER I.—LAND AND PEOPLE | | 3 |
| CHAPTER II.—POET AND POEM | | 23 |
| CHAPTER III.—TEXT AND TRANSLATION | | 76 |
| LIST OF PREVIOUS TRANSLATORS | | 87 |
| ANCIENT PERSIAN CALENDAR | | 88 |
| GENEALOGICAL TABLES | | 90 |
| ABBREVIATIONS | | 93 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | | 95 |

THE SHÁHNÁMA

THE PRELUDE—

SECT.

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. Invocation | 100 |
| 2. Discourse in Praise of Wisdom | 101 |
| 3. Of the Making of the World | 102 |
| 4. Of the Nature of Man | 104 |
| 5. Of the Nature of the Sun | 105 |
| 6. Of the Nature of the Moon. | 105 |
| 7. In Praise of the Prophet and his Companions | 106 |
| 8. On the Compilation of the Sháhnáma | 108 |
| 9. Of the Poet Dakíkí | 109 |
| 10. How the present Book was begun | 109 |
| 11. In Praise of Abú Mansúr, Son of Muhammad | 110 |
| 12. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd | 112 |

THE BEGINNING OF THE HISTORY: THE PISHDÁDIAN DYNASTY

GAIÚMART—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. The Greatness of Gaiúmart and the Envy of Áhriman | 118 |
| 2. How Siyámak was slain by the Dív | 120 |
| 3. How Húshang and Gaiúmart went to fight the Black Dív | 121 |

HÚSHANG—

VOL. I

SECT.

PAGE

1. The Accession of Húshang and his civilising Arts . . . 122
2. How the Feast of Sada was founded . . . 123

TAHMÚRAS—

1. Tahmúras ascends the Throne, invents new Arts, subdues the Dívs, and dies . . . 126

JAMSHÍD—

1. The Greatness and Fall of Jamshíd . . . 131
2. The Story of Zakhák and his Father . . . 135
3. How Iblís turned Cook . . . 137
4. How the Fortunes of Jamshíd went to Wrack . . . 139

ZAHHÁK—

1. The evil Customs of Zakhák and the Device of Irmá'il and Karmá'il . . . 145
2. How Zakhák saw Farídún in a Dream . . . 147
3. The Birth of Farídún . . . 150
4. How Farídún questioned his Mother about his Origin . . . 152
5. The Story of Zakhák and Káwa the Smith . . . 154
6. How Farídún went to Battle with Zakhák . . . 159
7. How Farídún saw the Sisters of Jamshíd . . . 161
8. The Story of Farídún and the Minister of Zakhák . . . 164
9. How Farídún bound Zakhák . . . 166

FARÍDÚN—

1. How Farídún ascended the Throne . . . 174
2. How Farídún sent Jandal to Yaman . . . 177
3. How the King of Yaman answered Jandal . . . 181
4. How the Sons of Farídún went to the King of Yaman . . . 183
5. How Sarv proved the Sons of Farídún by Sorcery . . . 184
6. How Farídún made Trial of his Sons . . . 186
7. How Farídún divided the World among his Sons . . . 189
8. How Salm grew envious of Íraj . . . 189
9. How Salm and Túr sent a Message to Farídún . . . 191
10. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . . . 193
11. How Íraj went to his Brothers . . . 197
12. How Íraj was slain by his Brothers . . . 199
13. How Farídún received Tidings of the Murder of Íraj . . . 202
14. How a Daughter was born to Íraj . . . 205
15. The Birth of Minúchihr . . . 206
16. How Salm and Túr had Tidings of Minúchihr . . . 208
17. How Farídún received his Sons' Message . . . 209
18. How Farídún made Answer to his Sons . . . 211
19. How Farídún sent Minúchihr to fight Túr and Salm . . . 215
20. How Minúchihr attacked the Host of Túr . . . 218

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

141

FARÍDÚN (*continued*)

VOL. I.

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 21. How Túr was slain by Minúchihr | 220 |
| 22. How Minúchihr wrote to announce his Victory to Farídún | 221 |
| 23. How Káran took the Castle of the Aláns | 223 |
| 24. How Kákwí, the Grandson of Zahhák, attacked the Írániáns | 225 |
| 25. How Salm fled and was slain by Minúchihr | 227 |
| 26. How the Head of Salm was sent to Farídún | 229 |
| 27. The Death of Farídún | 232 |

MINÚCHIHHR —

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Minúchihr ascended the Throne and made an Oration | 237 |
| 2. The Birth of Zál | 239 |
| 3. How Sám had a Dream touching the Case of his Son | 243 |
| 4. How Minúchihr took Knowledge of the Case of Sám and Zál | 248 |
| 5. How Zál went back to Zábulistán | 251 |
| 6. How Sám gave the Kingdom to Zál | 253 |
| 7. How Zál visited Mihráb of Kábul | 256 |
| 8. How Rúdába took Counsel with her Damsels | 259 |
| 9. How Rúdába's Damsels went to see Zál | 263 |
| 10. How the Damsels returned to Rúdába | 267 |
| 11. How Zál went to Rúdába | 270 |
| 12. How Zál consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Rúdába | 273 |
| 13. How Zál wrote to Sám to explain the Case | 275 |
| 14. How Sám consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Zál | 278 |
| 15. How Síndukht heard of the Case of Rúdába | 280 |
| 16. How Mihráb was made aware of his Daughter's Case | 284 |
| 17. How Minúchihr heard of the Case of Zál and Rúdába | 288 |
| 18. How Sám came to Minúchihr | 289 |
| 19. How Sám went to fight Mihráb | 292 |
| 20. How Zál went on a Mission to Minúchihr | 295 |
| 21. How Mihráb was wroth with Síndukht | 299 |
| 22. How Sám comforted Síndukht | 301 |
| 23. How Zál came to Minúchihr with Sám's Letter | 306 |
| 24. How the Archimages questioned Zál | 308 |
| 25. How Zál answered the Archimages | 309 |
| 26. How Zál displayed his Accomplishment before Minúchihr | 311 |
| 27. Minúchihr's Answer to Sám's Letter | 314 |
| 28. How Zál came to Sám | 316 |
| 29. The Story of the Birth of Rustam | 320 |
| 30. How Sám came to see Rustam | 324 |
| 31. How Rustam slew the White Elephant | 327 |

| MINÚCHIHHR (<i>continued</i>) | | Vol. I. |
|---------------------------------|--|---------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 32. | How Rustam went to Mount Sipand | 330 |
| 33. | How Rustam wrote a Letter announcing his Victory to Zál | 332 |
| 34. | The Letter of Zál to Sám | 334 |
| 35. | Minúchihr's last Counsels to his Son | 335 |
| NAUDAR— | | |
| 1. | How Naudar succeeded to the Throne. | 339 |
| 2. | How Pashang heard of the Death of Minúchihr | 342 |
| 3. | How Afrásiyáb came to the Land of Írán | 345 |
| 4. | How Bármán and Kubád fought together and how Kubád was slain | 346 |
| 5. | How Afrásiyáb fought with Naudar the second Time | 350 |
| 6. | How Naudar fought with Afrásiyáb the third Time | 352 |
| 7. | How Naudar was taken by Afrásiyáb | 355 |
| 8. | How Wisa found his Son that had been slain | 356 |
| 9. | How Shamásás and Khazarwán invaded Zábú- listán | 358 |
| 10. | How Zál came to help Míhráb | 359 |
| 11. | How Naudar was slain by Afrásiyáb | 362 |
| 12. | How Zál had Tidings of the Death of Naudar | 364 |
| 13. | How Ighríras was slain by his Brother. | 367 |
| ZAV— | | |
| 1. | Zav is elected Sháh | 370 |
| GARSHÁSP— | | |
| 1. | How Garshásp succeeded to the Throne and died, and how Afrásiyáb invaded Írán | 374 |
| 2. | How Rustam caught Rakhsh | 378 |
| 3. | How Zál led the Host against Afrásiyáb | 381 |
| 4. | How Rustam brought Kai Kubád from Mount Alburz | 382 |
| INDEX | | 389 |

VOLUME II

| | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|------|
| GENEALOGICAL TABLES | 3 |
| ABBREVIATIONS. | 5 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | 6 |

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY

KAI KUBÁD—

| SECT. | | PAGE |
|-------|---|------|
| 1. | How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred against Túrán | 11 |
| 2. | How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb | 13 |
| 3. | How Afrásiyáb came to his Father | 16 |
| 4. | How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace | 18 |
| 5. | How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Párs | 22 |

KAI KÁÚS—

VOL. II

PART I. THE WAR WITH MÁZANDARÁN—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 1. The Prelude | 29 |
| 2. How Káús sat upon the Throne and was tempted to invade Mázandarán. | 30 |
| 3. How Zál gave Counsel to Káús | 36 |
| 4. How Káús went to Mázandarán. | 38 |
| 5. The Message of Kai Káús to Zál and Rustam | 42 |

THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM—

| | |
|--|----|
| 6. The First Course. How Rakhsh fought with a Lion | 44 |
| 7. The Second Course. How Rustam found a Spring | 46 |
| 8. The Third Course. How Rustam fought with a Dragon | 48 |
| 9. The Fourth Course. How Rustam slew a Witch . | 50 |
| 10. The Fifth Course. How Rustam took Úlád cap- tive | 52 |
| 11. The Sixth Course. How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang | 57 |
| 12. The Seventh Course. How Rustam slew the White Dív | 59 |
| 13. How Káús wrote to the King of Mázandarán | 63 |
| 14. How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázandarán | 66 |
| 15. How Káús fought with the King of Mázandarán . | 70 |
| 16. How Káús returned to the Land of Írán and fare- welled Rustam | 76 |

PART II. THE DOINGS OF KAI KÁÚS IN THE LAND
OF BARBARISTÁN AND OTHER TALES—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Kai Káús warred with the King of Hámá- varán | 82 |
| 2. How Káús asked to Wife Súdába, the Daughter of the King of Hámávarán | 86 |
| 3. How the King of Hámávarán made Káús Prisoner | 88 |
| 4. How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Írán | 91 |
| 5. How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hám- ávarán | 93 |
| 6. How Rustam fought with Three Kings and deliv- ered Káús | 95 |
| 7. How Káús sent a Message to Afrásiyáb | 98 |
| 8. How Káús ordered the World | 101 |
| 9. How Káús beguiled by Iblís ascended the Sky . | 102 |
| 10. How Rustam brought back Káús | 104 |

THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 11. How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb | 107 |
| 12. How Rustam fought with the Túránians | 111 |

KAI KÁÚS—

PART II. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS

(continued)—

| SECT. | VOL. II | PAGE |
|---|---------|------|
| 13. How Pílsam fought with the Íránians . . . | 112 | 112 |
| 14. How Afrásiyáb fled from the Battlefield . . . | 116 | 116 |

PART III. SUHRÁB—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. The Prelude | 119 |
| 2. How Rustam went to the Chace. | 120 |
| 3. How Rustam came to the City of Samangán | 122 |
| 4. How Tahmína, the Daughter of the King of Samangán, came to Rustam | 123 |
| 5. The Birth of Suhráb. | 126 |
| 6. How Suhráb chose his Charger | 127 |
| 7. How Afrásiyáb sent Bármán and Húmán to Suhráb | 129 |
| 8. How Suhráb came to White Castle | 131 |
| 9. How Suhráb fought with Gurdáfríd | 132 |
| 10. The Letter of Gazdaham to Káús | 136 |
| 11. How Suhráb took White Castle | 137 |
| 12. How Káús wrote to Rustam and summoned him from Zábulistán | 138 |
| 13. How Káús was wroth with Rustam | 142 |
| 14. How Káús and Rustam led forth the Host | 148 |
| 15. How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm | 149 |
| 16. How Suhráb asked Hajír the Names of the Chieft of Írán | 152 |
| 17. How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káús | 159 |
| 18. How Rustam fought with Suhráb | 162 |
| 19. How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp. | 165 |
| 20. How Suhráb overthrew Rustam. | 168 |
| 21. How Suhráb was slain by Rustam | 172 |
| 22. How Rustam asked Káús for an Elixir. | 177 |
| 23. How Rustam lamented for Suhráb | 179 |
| 24. How Rustam returned to Zábulistán | 182 |
| 25. How Suhráb's Mother received the Tidings of his Death | 184 |

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. The Prelude | 191 |
| 2. The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush | 193 |
| 3. The Birth of Siyáwush | 195 |
| 4. How Siyáwush arrived from Zábulistán | 197 |
| 5. The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush. | 199 |
| 6. How Súdába fell in Love with Siyáwush | 200 |
| 7. How Siyáwush visited Súdába | 202 |
| 8. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time | 206 |
| 9. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time | 210 |
| 10. How Súdába beguiled Káús | 211 |
| 11. How Súdába and a Sorceress devised a Scheme | 214 |
| 12. How Káús inquired into the Matter of the Babes | 215 |
| 13. How Siyáwush passed through the Fire | 218 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

145

KAI KÁÚS—

| PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (<i>continued</i>)— | | Vol. II |
|--|--|---------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 14. | How Siyáwush begged Súdába's Life of his Father | 222 |
| 15. | How Káuś heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb | 224 |
| 16. | How Siyáwush led forth the Host | 226 |
| 17. | The Letter of Siyáwush to Kai Káuś | 229 |
| 18. | The Answer of Kai Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush | 230 |
| 19. | How Afrásiyáb had a Dreám and was afraid | 232 |
| 20. | How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream | 234 |
| 21. | How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles | 235 |
| 22. | How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush | 238 |
| 23. | How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb | 239 |
| 24. | How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káuś | 242 |
| 25. | How Rustam gave the Message to Káuś | 243 |
| 26. | How Káuś sent Rustam to Sístán | 246 |
| 27. | The Answer of Káuś to the Letter of Siyáwush | 247 |
| 28. | How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahrám and Zanga | 249 |
| 29. | How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb | 252 |
| 30. | How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush | 255 |
| 31. | How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahrám | 257 |
| 32. | The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb | 261 |
| 33. | How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrásiyáb | 263 |
| 34. | How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase | 267 |
| 35. | How Pírán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush | 268 |
| 36. | How Pírán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís | 270 |
| 37. | How Pírán spake with Afrásiyáb | 272 |
| 38. | The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush | 274 |
| 39. | How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush | 276 |
| 40. | How Siyáwush built Gang-dizh | 279 |
| 41. | How Siyáwush discoursed with Pírán about the Future | 282 |
| 42. | How Afrásiyáb sent Pírán into the Provinces | 285 |
| 43. | How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird | 285 |
| 44. | How Pírán visited Siyáwushgird | 287 |
| 45. | How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush | 289 |
| 46. | The Birth of Farúd, the Son of Siyáwush | 291 |
| 47. | How Siyáwush played at Polo | 292 |
| 48. | How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb | 296 |
| 49. | How Garsíwáz returned to Siyáwush | 301 |
| 50. | The Letter of Siyáwush to Afrásiyáb | 306 |
| 51. | How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush | 307 |
| 52. | How Siyáwush had a Dream | 308 |
| 53. | The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís | 310 |
| 54. | How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb | 312 |
| 55. | How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb | 317 |
| 56. | How Siyáwush was slain by Gurwí | 320 |
| 57. | How Pírán saved Farangís | 323 |

KAI KÁÚS—

| PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (<i>continued</i>)— | | VOL. II |
|--|--|---------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 58. | The Birth of Kai Khusrau | 325 |
| 59. | How Pírán entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds | 328 |
| 60. | How Pírán brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb | 330 |
| 61. | How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird | 333 |
| PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN— | | |
| 1. | Firdausí's Lament over his old Age | 336 |
| 2. | How Káús heard of the Case of Siyáwush | 337 |
| 3. | How Rustam came to Káús | 338 |
| 4. | How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host | 340 |
| 5. | How Farámarz slew Warázád | 341 |
| 6. | How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam | 344 |
| 7. | How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son | 348 |
| 8. | How Pilsam was slain by Rustam | 350 |
| 9. | How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam | 353 |
| 10. | How Afrásiyáb sent Khusrau to Khutan | 355 |
| 11. | How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years | 357 |
| 12. | How Zawára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyáwush | 359 |
| 13. | How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán | 360 |
| 14. | How Rustam returned to Írán | 361 |
| 15. | How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau | 363 |
| 16. | How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau | 365 |
| 17. | The Finding of Kai Khusrau | 369 |
| 18. | How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird | 373 |
| 19. | How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád | 374 |
| 20. | How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán | 377 |
| 21. | How Kulbád and Nastíhan fled from Gív | 378 |
| 22. | How Pírán pursued Kai Khusrau | 380 |
| 23. | How Pírán contended with Gív | 382 |
| 24. | How Pírán was taken by Gív | 385 |
| 25. | How Farangís delivered Pírán from Gív | 386 |
| 26. | How Afrásiyáb found Pírán on the Way | 388 |
| 27. | How Gív disputed with the Toll-man | 390 |
| 28. | How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jíhún | 392 |
| 29. | How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán | 394 |
| 30. | How Kai Khusrau came to Káús | 397 |
| 31. | How Tús refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau | 399 |
| 32. | How Gúdarz was wroth with Tús | 402 |
| 33. | How Gudarz and Tús went before Káús on the Matter of the Kingship | 403 |
| 34. | How Tús and Farámarz went to the Castle of Bahman and came back foiled | 405 |
| 35. | How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman and took it | 406 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

147

KAI KÁÚS—

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH, *etc.* (continued)—

VOL. II

SECT. PAGE

36. How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph 409

37. How Káús set Khusrau upon the Throne of King-
ship 411

INDEX 413

VOLUME III

ABBREVIATIONS. PAGE
3

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION 4

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART I. HOW KAI KHUSRAU, TO AVENGE SIYÁWUSH, SENT A HOST AGAINST TÚRÁN—

| | | |
|-------|---|----|
| SECT. | | |
| 1. | The Prelude | 15 |
| 2. | How the Nobles did Homage to Kai Khusrau | 17 |
| 3. | How Kai Khusrau made a Progress through his Realm | 19 |
| 4. | How Kai Khusrau swore to Kai Káús to take Vengeance on Afrásiyáb | 20 |
| 5. | How Kai Khusrau numbered the Paladins | 24 |
| 6. | How Kai Khusrau bestowed Treasures on the Paladins | 26 |
| 7. | How Kai Khusrau sent Rustam to the Land of Hind | 30 |
| 8. | How Kai Khusrau reviewed the Host | 31 |

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH—

| | | |
|-----|---|----|
| 9. | The Prelude | 37 |
| 10. | How Tús went to Turkistán | 38 |
| 11. | How Farúd heard of the Coming of Tús | 41 |
| 12. | How Farúd and Tukhár went to view the Host | 44 |
| 13. | How Bahrám came to Farúd upon the Mountain | 47 |
| 14. | How Bahrám went back to Tús | 51 |
| 15. | How Rívníz was slain by Farúd | 52 |
| 16. | How Zarásp was slain by Farúd | 53 |
| 17. | How Tús fought with Farúd | 54 |
| 18. | How Gív fought with Farúd | 57 |
| 19. | How Bízhan fought with Farúd | 61 |
| 20. | How Farúd was slain | 62 |
| 21. | How Jaríra slew herself | 66 |
| 22. | How Tús led the Host to the Kása Rúd, and how Paláshán was slain by Bízhan | 68 |
| 23. | How the Íránians suffered in a Snowstorm | 71 |
| 24. | How Bahrám captured Kabúda | 73 |
| 25. | How the Íránians fought with Tazháv | 75 |
| 26. | How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of Tús and his Host | 78 |

KAI KHUSRAU—

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

VOL. III

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 27. How Pírán made a Night-attack on the Íránians . | 80 |
| 28. How Kai Khusrau recalled Tús | 84 |
| 29. How Faríburz asked a Truce of Pírán | 87 |
| 30. How the Íránians were defeated by the Turkmans . | 89 |
| 31. How Bahrám returned to look for his Whip upon the Battlefield | 95 |
| 32. How Bahrám was slain by Tazháv | 98 |
| 33. How Gív slew Tazháv in revenge for Bahrám . | 101 |
| 34. How the Íránians went back to Khusrau | 104 |

PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. The Prelude | 110 |
| 2. How Khusrau reviled Tús | 111 |
| 3. How Khusrau pardoned the Íránians | 113 |
| 4. How Khusrau sent Tús to Túrán | 115 |
| 5. The Message of Pírán to the Army of Írán . . . | 117 |
| 6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Army to Pírán | 118 |
| 7. How Tús slew Arzhang | 119 |
| 8. How Húmán fought with Tús | 120 |
| 9. How the Íránians and Túránians fought the second Time | 125 |
| 10. How the Túránians used Sorcery against the Host of Írán | 128 |
| 11. How the Íránians retreated to Mount Hamáwan . | 131 |
| 12. How the Host of Túrán beleaguered Mount Hamáwan | 132 |
| 13. How Pírán went in Pursuit of the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan | 137 |
| 14. How the Íránians made a Night-attack | 139 |
| 15. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of his Host . . | 142 |
| 16. How Faríburz asked to Wife Farangís, the Mother of Kai Khusrau | 146 |
| 17. How Tús saw Siyáwush in a Dream | 149 |
| 18. How Afrásiyáb sent the Khán and Kámús to help Pírán | 151 |
| 19. How the Khán of Chín came to Hamáwan . . . | 153 |
| 20. How the Íránians took Counsel how to act . . | 155 |
| 21. How Gúdarz had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam | 156 |
| 22. How the Khán of Chín went to reconnoitre the Army of Írán | 160 |
| 23. How Faríburz reached Mount Hamáwan . . . | 163 |
| 24. How Pírán took Counsel with the Khán of Chín . | 164 |
| 25. How Gív and Tús fought with Kámús | 168 |
| 26. The Coming of Rustam | 170 |
| 27. How the Íránians and Túránians arrayed their Hosts | 174 |
| 28. How Rustam fought with Ashkabús | 179 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

149

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN *(continued)*— Vol. III

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 29. How Pírán held Convulsæ concerning the Coming of Rustam | 182 |
| 30. How the Íránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array | 185 |
| 31. How Alwá was slain by Kámús | 187 |
| 32. How Kámús was slain by Rustam | 188 |

PART III. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND THE KHÁN OF CHÍN—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How the Khán of Chín had Tidings of the Slaying of Kámús | 192 |
| 2. How Chingish fared with Rustam | 194 |
| 3. How the Khán of Chín sent Húmán to Rustam | 196 |
| 4. How Pírán took Counsel with Húmán and the Khán | 199 |
| 5. How Pírán came to Rustam | 201 |
| 6. How the Túránians took Counsel for Battle with the Íránians | 206 |
| 7. How Rustam harangued his Troops | 211 |
| 8. How the Íránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array | 215 |
| 9. How Rustam reproached Pírán | 217 |
| 10. How the Battle was joined | 219 |
| 11. How Shangul fought with Rustam and fled | 221 |
| 12. How Rustam fought with Sáwa | 223 |
| 13. How Rustam slew Gahár of Gahán | 224 |
| 14. How the Khán was taken Prisoner | 227 |
| 15. How the Host of the Túránians was defeated | 230 |
| 16. How Rustam divided the Spoil | 232 |
| 17. How Rustam wrote a Letter to Kai Khusrau | 237 |
| 18. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Rustam's Letter | 239 |
| 19. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Case of his Army | 241 |
| 20. How Rustam fought with Káfúr the Man-eater | 243 |
| 21. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam | 249 |
| 22. Afrásiyáb's Letter to Púládward | 254 |
| 23. How Púládward fought with Gív and Tús | 257 |
| 24. How Rustam fought with Púládward | 259 |
| 25. The Wrestling of Rustam and Púládward | 262 |
| 26. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam | 265 |
| 27. How Rustam returned to the Court of the Sháh | 267 |
| 28. How Rustam went back to Sístán | 269 |

PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM WITH THE DÍV AKWÁN—

| | |
|----------------------|-----|
| 1. Prelude | 272 |
|----------------------|-----|

KAI KHUSRAU—

Vol. III

PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM, *etc.* (*continued*)—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 2. How Khusrau summoned Rustam to fight the Dív Akwán | 273 |
| 3. How Rustam went in Quest of the Dív. | 275 |
| 4. How the Dív Akwán flung Rustam into the Sea | 276 |
| 5. How Afrásiyáb came to inspect his Steeds, and how Rustam slew the Dív Akwán. | 279 |
| 6. How Rustam went back to the Land of Írán. | 281 |

PART V. THE STORY OF BÍZHAN AND MANÍZHA—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. The Prelude | 287 |
| 2. How the Irmánians appealed to Khusrau | 289 |
| 3. How Bízhan went to fight the wild Boars | 292 |
| 4. How Gurgín beguiled Bízhan | 294 |
| 5. How Bízhan went to see Manízha, Daughter of Afrásiyáb | 296 |
| 6. How Bízhan went to the Tent of Manízha | 298 |
| 7. How Manízha carried off Bízhan to her Palace | 299 |
| 8. How Garsíwaz brought Bízhan before Afrásiyáb | 301 |
| 9. How Pírán begged Bízhan's Life from Afrásiyáb | 305 |
| 10. How Afrásiyáb put Bízhan in Ward | 309 |
| 11. How Gurgín returned to Írán and lied about Bízhan | 310 |
| 12. How Gív brought Gurgín before Khusrau | 315 |
| 13. How Kai Khusrau saw Bízhan in the Cup that showed the World | 318 |
| 14. How Khusrau wrote a Letter to Rustam | 319 |
| 15. How Gív bore the Letter of Kai Khusrau to Rustam | 321 |
| 16. How Rustam made a Feast for Gív | 324 |
| 17. How Rustam came to Khusrau | 326 |
| 18. How Kai Khusrau held Feast with the Paladins | 329 |
| 19. How Rustam made Petition for Gurgín to the Sháh | 331 |
| 20. How Rustam equipped his Escort | 333 |
| 21. How Rustam went to the City of Khutan to Pírán | 334 |
| 22. How Manízha came before Rustam | 337 |
| 23. How Bízhan heard of the Coming of Rustam | 340 |
| 24. How Rustam took Bízhan out of the Pit | 344 |
| 25. How Rustam attacked the Palace of Afrásiyáb by Night | 347 |
| 26. How Afrásiyáb went to fight with Rustam | 349 |
| 27. How Afrásiyáb was defeated by the Íránians | 351 |
| 28. How Rustam returned to Kai Khusrau | 353 |
| 29. How Kai Khusrau made a Feast. | 355 |
| INDEX | 359 |

VOLUME IV

| | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|------|
| ABBREVIATIONS. | 3 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | 4 |

KAI KHUSRAU (*continued*)

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. The Prelude | 9 |
| 2. How Afrásiyáb called together his Host | 10 |
| 3. How Kai Khusráu sent Gúdarz to fight the Túr- ánians | 12 |
| 4. How Gív was made the Bearer of Overtures from Gúdarz to Pírán | 16 |
| 5. How Gív visited Pírán at Wísagird | 19 |
| 6. The Arraying of the Hosts. | 22 |
| 7. How Bízhan went to Gív to urge him to fight | 26 |
| 8. How Húmán asked Pírán for Leave to fight | 29 |
| 9. How Húmán challenged Ruhhám | 31 |
| 10. How Húmán challenged Fariburz | 34 |
| 11. How Húmán challenged Gúdarz. | 35 |
| 12. How Bízhan heard of the Doings of Húmán. | 39 |
| 13. How Gív gave the Mail of Siyáwush to Bízhan | 44 |
| 14. How Húmán came to battle with Bízhan | 47 |
| 15. How Húmán was slain by Bízhan | 49 |
| 16. How Nastíhan made a Night-attack and was slain | 53 |
| 17. How Gúdarz asked aid of Khusráu | 56 |
| 18. The Answer of Khusráu to the letter of Gúdarz | 58 |
| 19. How Khusráu arrayed the Host. | 61 |
| 20. How Pírán wrote to Gúdarz Son of Kishwád. | 63 |
| 21. The Answer of Gúdarz to the Letter of Pírán. | 68 |
| 22. How Pírán asked Succour from Afrásiyáb | 75 |
| 23. The Answer of Afrásiyáb to the Letter of Pírán | 78 |
| 24. How the Íránians and Túránians fought a pitched Battle | 81 |
| 25. How Gív fought with Pírán and how Gív's Horse jibbed | 84 |
| 26. How Gúdarz and Pírán arranged a Battle of Eleven Rukhs | 88 |
| 27. How Pírán harangued his Men of Name | 93 |
| 28. How Gúdarz and Pírán chose the Warriors for the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs | 95 |
| 29. How Fariburz fought with Kulbád | 99 |
| 30. How Gív fought with Gurwí | 99 |
| 31. How Guráza fought with Siyámak | 100 |
| 32. How Furúhil fought with Zangula | 101 |
| 33. How Ruhhám fought with Bármán | 102 |
| 34. How Bízhan fought with Rúín | 102 |
| 35. How Hajír fought with Sipahram | 103 |
| 36. How Gurgín fought with Andarímán | 104 |
| 37. How Barta fought with Kuhram | 105 |
| 38. How Zanga, Son of Sháwarán, fought with Akhást | 105 |
| 39. How Gúdarz fought with Pírán | 106 |

KAI KHUSRAU—

VOL. IV

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS (*continued*)—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 40. How Gúdarz returned to the Warriors of Írán | 109 |
| 41. How Lahhák and Farshíward bewailed Pírán | 112 |
| 42. How Lahhák and Farshíward took the Road to Túrán | 115 |
| 43. How Gustaham pursued Lahhák and Farshíward | 117 |
| 44. How Bízhan followed after Gustaham | 119 |
| 45. How Lahhák and Farshíward were slain by Gustaham | 121 |
| 46. How Bízhan beheld Gustaham in the Mead | 123 |
| 47. How Kai Khusráu built a Charnel-house for Pírán and for the other Chiefs of Túrán, and how he slew Gurwí the Son of Zira | 126 |
| 48. How the Túránians asked Quarter of Kai Khusráu | 129 |
| 49. How Bízhan returned with Gustaham | 132 |

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR OF KAI KHUSRAU WITH

AFRÁSIYÁB—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd | 139 |
| 2. How Kai Khusráu arrayed his Host against Afrásiyáb | 145 |
| 3. How Afrásiyáb heard that Pírán was slain and that Kai Khusráu had arrayed his Host | 150 |
| 4. How Kai Khusráu had Tidings that Afrásiyáb advanced to fight with him | 157 |
| 5. How Shída came before his Father Afrásiyáb | 158 |
| 6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Embassy to Kai Khusráu | 161 |
| 7. How Kai Khusráu sent an Answer to Afrásiyáb | 168 |
| 8. How Kai Khusráu fought with Shída the Son of Afrásiyáb | 171 |
| 9. How Shída was slain by Khusráu | 175 |
| 10. How the Battle was joined between the Hosts | 177 |
| 11. How Afrásiyáb fled | 183 |
| 12. How Kai Khusráu announced his Victory to Káuś | 185 |
| 13. How Afrásiyáb went to Gang-bihisht | 186 |
| 14. How Khusráu crossed the Jihún | 187 |
| 15. How Kai Khusráu fought with Afrásiyáb the second Time | 190 |
| 16. How Afrásiyáb took Refuge in Gang-bihisht | 193 |
| 17. The Letter of Afrásiyáb to the Faghfúr of Chín | 196 |
| 18. How Kai Khusráu arrived before Gang-bihisht | 198 |
| 19. How Jahn came to Kai Khusráu with an Embassy from Afrásiyáb | 200 |
| 20. How Kai Khusráu made Answer to Jahn | 204 |
| 21. How Kai Khusráu fought with Afrásiyáb and took Gang-bihisht | 207 |
| 22. How Afrásiyáb fled from Gang-bihisht | 211 |
| 23. How Kai Khusráu gave Quarter to the Family of Afrásiyáb | 212 |

KAI KHUSRAU —

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, ETC. (*continued*) Vol. IV

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 24. How Kai Khusrau exhorted the Íránians | 216 |
| 25. How Kai Khusrau wrote a Letter with the News of his Victory to Kai Káuś | 217 |
| 26. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of the Coming of Afrásiyáb with the Host of the Faghfúr | 219 |
| 27. The Message of Afrásiyáb to Kai Khusrau | 221 |
| 28. How the Íránians and Túránians fought | 223 |
| 29. How Afrásiyáb made a Night-attack upon Kai Khusrau and was defeated | 224 |
| 30. How the Faghfúr of Chín sent an Envoy to Kai Khusrau | 229 |
| 31. How Afrásiyáb crossed the Sea | 230 |
| 32. How Kai Khusrau sent the Prisoners and Treasure to Káuś with a Letter | 232 |
| 33. The Answer of Sháh Káuś to the Letter of Khusrau | 237 |
| 34. The Embassy of Kai Khusrau to the Faghfúr of Chín and the King of Makrán | 238 |
| 35. How Kai Khusrau fought with the King of Makrán and how the King of Makrán was slain | 241 |
| 36. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Sea | 245 |
| 37. How Kai Khusrau reached Gang-dizh | 247 |
| 38. How Kai Khusrau returned from Gang-dizh to Siyáwushgird | 250 |
| 39. How Kai Khusrau returned from Túrán to the Land of Írán | 254 |
| 40. How Kai Khusrau returned to his Grandsire | 256 |
| 41. How Afrásiyáb was captured by Húm of the Race of Farídún | 259 |
| 42. How Afrásiyáb escaped from Húm | 261 |
| 43. How Káuś and Khusrau came to Húm | 264 |
| 44. How Afrásiyáb was taken the second Time and how he and Garsíwaz were slain | 266 |
| 45. How Káuś and Khusrau returned to Párs | 269 |
| 46. The Death of Kai Káuś | 270 |
| 47. How Kai Khusrau fell into Melancholy | 272 |
| 48. How the Nobles inquired why Khusrau had closed his Court | 275 |
| 49. How the Íránians summoned Zál and Rustam | 277 |
| 50. How Kai Khusrau saw Surúsh in a Dream | 280 |
| 51. How Zál admonished Kai Khusrau | 282 |
| 52. How Kai Khusrau answered Zál | 284 |
| 53. How Zál rebuked Kai Khusrau | 286 |
| 54. How Kai Khusrau answered and how Zál excused himself | 288 |
| 55. How Kai Khusrau gave his last Charge to the Íránians | 291 |
| 56. How Kai Khusrau appointed Gúdarz to be his Mandatarý | 294 |

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, *etc.* (*continued*)—

VOL. IV

| SECT. | PAGE. |
|---|-------|
| 57. How Zál asked of Kai Khusrau a Patent for Rustam | 296 |
| 58. How Kai Kausrau gave a Patent to Gív | 298 |
| 59. How Kai Khusrau gave a Patent to Tús | 299 |
| 60. How Kai Khusrau gave the Kingship to Luhrásp. | 300 |
| 61. How Kai Khusrau farewelled his Women | 304 |
| 62. How Kai Khusrau went to the Mountains and vanished in the Snow | 305 |
| 63. How the Paladins were lost in the Snow | 308 |
| 64. How Luhrásp had Tidings of the Disappearance of Kai Khusrau | 311 |

LUHRÁSP—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Luhrásp built a Fire-temple at Balkh | 316 |
| 2. How Gushtásp quitted Luhrásp in Wrath | 318 |
| 3. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír | 320 |
| 4. How Gushtásp set off for Rúm | 323 |
| 5. How Gushtásp arrived in Rúm | 324 |
| 6. How a Village-chief entertained Gushtásp | 327 |
| 7. The Story of Katáyún the Daughter of Cæsar | 329 |
| 8. How Cæsar gave Katáyún to Gushtásp | 331 |
| 9. How Mírín asked in Marriage Cæsar's second Daughter | 333 |
| 10. How Gushtásp slew the Wolf | 337 |
| 11. How Ahran asked Cæsar's third Daughter in Marriage | 342 |
| 12. How Gushtásp slew the Dragon and how Cæsar gave his Daughter to Ahran. | 346 |
| 13. How Gushtásp displayed his Prowess upon the Riding-ground | 349 |
| 14. How Cæsar wrote to Ilyás and demanded Tribute. | 352 |
| 15. How Gushtásp fought with Ilyás and slew him | 355 |
| 16. How Cæsar demanded from Luhrásp Tribute for Írán | 356 |
| 17. How Zarír carried a Message from Luhrásp to Cæsar | 359 |
| 18. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír to the Land of Írán and received the Throne from Luhrásp | 361 |

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| INDEX | 367 |
|-----------------|-----|

VOLUME V

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| ABBREVIATIONS. | PAGE 3 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | 5 |

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

GUSHTÁSP—

PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT AND THE WAR
WITH ARJÁSP—

| | |
|--|----|
| SECT. | |
| 1. How Firdausí saw Dakíkí in a Dream. | 30 |
| 2. How Luhrásp went to Balkh and Gushtásp sat upon the Throne | 31 |

GUSHTÁSP—

PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT, *etc.* (continued)—

VOL. V

SECT.

PAGE

| | |
|---|-----|
| 3. How Zarduhsht appeared and how Gushtásp accepted his Evangel | 33 |
| 4. How Gushtásp refused to Arjásp the Tribute for Írán | 35 |
| 5. How Arjásp wrote a Letter to Gushtásp | 37 |
| 6. How Arjásp sent Envoys to Gushtásp. | 40 |
| 7. How Zarír made Answer to Arjásp | 42 |
| 8. How the Envoys returned to Arjásp with the Letter of Gushtásp | 43 |
| 9. How Gushtásp assembled his Troops | 47 |
| 10. How Jámásp foretold the Issue of the Battle to Gushtásp | 48 |
| 11. How Gushtásp and Arjásp arrayed their Hosts | 54 |
| 12. The Beginning of the Battle between the Íránians and Túránians, and how Ardshír, Shírú, and Shídas were slain | 56 |
| 13. How Girámí, Jámásp's Son, and Nívzár were slain | 58 |
| 14. How Zarír, the Brother of Gushtásp, was slain by Bídírafsh | 61 |
| 15. How Asfandiyár heard of the Slaying of Zarír | 65 |
| 16. How Asfandiyár went to Battle with Arjásp | 66 |
| 17. How Nastúr and Asfandiyár slew Bídírafsh. | 69 |
| 18. How Arjásp fled from the Battle | 71 |
| 19. How the Turkmans received Quarter from Asfandiyár | 72 |
| 20. How Gushtásp returned to Balkh | 74 |
| 21. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár to all the Provinces, and how the Folk received from him the good Religion | 76 |
| 22. How Gurazm spake Evil of Asfandiyár | 78 |
| 23. How Jámásp came to Asfandiyár | 80 |
| 24. How Gushtásp imprisoned Asfandiyár. | 82 |
| 25. How Gushtásp went to Sístán and how Arjásp arrayed his Host the second Time. | 85 |
| 26. The Words of Dakíkí being ended, Firdausí resumeth, praising Sháh Mahmúd and criticising Dakíkí | 87 |
| 27. How the Host of Arjásp marched to Balkh and how Luhrásp was slain | 89 |
| 28. How Gushtásp heard of the Slaying of Luhrásp and led his Army toward Balkh | 93 |
| 29. How Gushtásp was put to Flight by Arjásp | 96 |
| 30. How Jámásp visited Asfandiyár. | 98 |
| 31. How Asfandiyár saw his Brother Farshíward | 103 |
| 32. How Asfandiyár came to the Mountain to Gushtásp | 106 |
| 33. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár the second Time to fight Arjásp | 114 |

GUSHTÁSP—

VOL. V

PART II. THE STORY OF THE SEVEN STAGES—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. The Praise of Mahmúd the great King. | 118 |

THE SEVEN STAGES OF ASFANDIYÁR—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 2. The First Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Wolves | 119 |
| 3. The Second Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Lions | 124 |
| 4. The Third Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Dragon | 125 |
| 5. The Fourth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Witch | 128 |
| 6. The Fifth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew the Símurgh | 131 |
| 7. The Sixth Stage: How Asfandiyár passed through the Snow | 134 |
| 8. The Seventh Stage: How Asfandiyár crossed the River and slew Gurgsár | 139 |
| 9. How Asfandiyár went to the Brazen Hold in the Guise of a Merchant | 143 |
| 10. How the Sisters of Asfandiyár recognised him | 147 |
| 11. How Bishútán assaulted the Brazen Hold | 150 |
| 12. How Asfandiyár slew Arjás | 152 |
| 13. How Asfandiyár slew Kuhram | 155 |
| 14. How Asfandiyár wrote a Letter to Gushtásp and his Answer | 159 |
| 15. How Asfandiyár returned to Gushtásp | 161 |

PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT WITH RUSTAM—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. How Asfandiyár ambitioned the Throne and how Gushtásp took Counsel with the Astrologers. | 167 |
| 2. How Asfandiyár demanded the Kingdom from his Father | 170 |
| 3. How Gushtásp answered his Son | 172 |
| 4. How Katáyún counselled Asfandiyár | 175 |
| 5. How Asfandiyár led a Host to Zábúl | 177 |
| 6. How Asfandiyár sent Bahman to Rustam | 179 |
| 7. How Bahman came to Zál. | 182 |
| 8. How Bahman gave a Message to Rustam | 184 |
| 9. How Rustam made Answer to Asfandiyár | 187 |
| 10. How Bahman returned | 190 |
| 11. The Meeting of Rustam and Asfandiyár | 192 |
| 12. How Asfandiyár summoned not Rustam to the Feast | 196 |
| 13. How Asfandiyár excused himself for not summoning Rustam to the Feast | 198 |
| 14. How Asfandiyár spake Shame of the Race of Rustam | 200 |

GUSHTÁSP—

Vol. V

PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT, *etc.* (*continued*)—

SECT

PAGE

15. How Rustam answered Asfandiyár, praising his
own Race and Deeds 202
16. How Asfandiyár boasted of his Ancestry 204
17. How Rustam vaunted his Valour 207
18. How Rustam drank wine with Asfandiyár 210
19. How Rustam returned to his Palace 215
20. How Zál counselled Rustam 218
21. How Rustam fought with Asfandiyár 222
22. How the Sons of Asfandiyár were slain by Zawára
and Farámarz 225
23. How Rustam fled to the Heights 229
24. How Rustam took Counsel with his Kin 234
25. How the Símurgh succoured Rustam 235
26. How Rustam went back to fight Asfandiyár. 240
27. How Rustam shot Asfandiyár in the Eyes with an
Arrow 243
28. How Asfandiyár told his last Wishes to Rustam. 247
29. How Bishútan bare the Coffin of Asfandiyár to
Gushtásp 251
30. How Rustam sent Bahman back to Írán 256

PART IV. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND SHAGHÁD

1. The Prelude 261
2. How Rustam went to Kábul on behalf of his
Brother Shaghád 263
3. How the King of Kábul dug Pits in the Hunting-
ground and how Rustam and Zawára fell
therein 268
4. How Rustam slew Shaghád and died 271
5. How Zál received News of the Slaying of Rustam
and Zawára, and how Farámarz brought their
Coffins and set them in the Charnel-house 273
6. How Farámarz led an Army to avenge Rustam and
slew the King of Kábul 276
7. How Rúdába lost her Wits through Mourning for
Rustam 278
8. How Gushtásp gave the Kingdom to Bahman and
died 279

BAHMAN, SON OF ASFANDIYÁR—

1. How Bahman sought Revenge for the Death of
Asfandiyár 283
2. How Bahman put Zál in Bonds 285
3. How Farámarz fought with Bahman and was put
to Death 287
4. How Bahman released Zál and returned to Írán 288
5. How Bahman married his own Daughter Humái
and appointed his Successor. 290

158 . GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

HUMÁI—

VOL. V

SECT.

PAGE

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Humái cast away her Son Dáráb on the River Farát in an Ark | 294 |
| 2. How the Launderer brought up Dáráb. | 296 |
| 3. How Dáráb questioned the Launderer's Wife about his Parentage, and how he fought against the Rúmans | 300 |
| 4. How Rashnawád learned the Case of Dáráb. | 302 |
| 5. How Dáráb fought against the Host of Rúm. | 305 |
| 6. How Humái recognised her Son. | 307 |
| 7. How Humái seated Dáráb upon the Throne. | 309 |
| INDEX | 313 |

VOLUME VI

| | |
|---|-----------|
| GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SÁSÁNIANS | PAGE 3 |
| ABBREVIATIONS. | 5 |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | 8 |

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

DÁRÁB—

| | |
|---|----|
| 1. How Dáráb built the City of Dárábgird | 20 |
| 2. How Dáráb defeated the Host of Shu'ib | 21 |
| 3. How Dáráb fought with Failakús and took to Wife his Daughter | 22 |
| 4. How Dáráb sent back the Daughter of Failakús to Rúm, and how Sikandar was born | 25 |

DÁRÁ, SON OF DÁRÁB—

| | |
|--|----|
| 1. How Dará harangued the Chiefs and took Order for the Realm | 34 |
| 2. The Death of Failakús and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne | 35 |
| 3. How Sikandar went as his own Ambassador to Dará | 38 |
| 4. How Dará fought with Sikandar and was worsted. | 42 |
| 5. How Dará fought with Sikandar the second Time. | 43 |
| 6. How Sikandar fought with Dará the third Time, and how Dará fled to Kirmán | 46 |
| 7. How Dará wrote to Sikandar to propose Peace | 49 |
| 8. How Dará was slain by his Ministers | 50 |
| 9. How Dará told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died | 52 |
| 10. How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Írán | 57 |

SIKANDAR—

| | |
|--|----|
| 1. How Sikandar sat upon the Throne of Írán | 85 |
| 2. How Sikandar wrote to Dilárái and Rúshanak, the Wife and Daughter of Dará, touching the Nuptials of Rúshanak. | 85 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

159

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 3. How Dilárái answered the Letter of Sikandar . . . | 87 |
| 4. How Sikandar sent his Mother, Náhíd, to fetch Rúshanak, and how he married her . . . | 89 |
| 5. How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how Mihrán interpreted it | 91 |
| 6. How Sikandar marched against Kaid of Hind and wrote a Letter to him | 98 |
| 7. How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar's Letter and announced the Sending of the Four Wonders | 99 |
| 8. How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the Four Wonders | 100 |
| 9. How Sikandar sent Ten Sages with a Letter to inspect the Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind . . . | 101 |
| 10. How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar | 103 |
| 11. How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent by Kaid of Hind | 104 |
| 12. How Sikandar led a Host against Fúr of Hind and wrote a Letter to him | 110 |
| 13. How Fúr answered the Letter of Sikandar | 111 |
| 14. How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fúr of Hind and made iron Steeds and Riders filled with Naphtha | 112 |
| 15. How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fúr, how Fúr was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar seated Sawurg upon the Throne of Fúr | 116 |
| 16. How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba | 119 |
| 17. How Sikandar led his Troops from Judda toward Misr | 121 |
| 18. Sikandar's Letter to Kaidáfa, Queen of Andalús, and her Answer | 123 |
| 19. How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalús and took the Hold of King Faryán | 124 |
| 20. How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Kaidáfa and was recognised by her | 127 |
| 21. How Kaidáfa counselled Sikandar | 132 |
| 22. How Tainúsh, the Son of Kaidáfá, was wroth with Sikandar, and how Sikandar took Precaution against him | 134 |
| 23. How Sikandar made a Compact with Kaidáfa and returned to his Troops. | 138 |
| 24. How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brahmans, inquired into their Mysteries, and received an Answer | 143 |

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

SECT.

PAGE

- | | | |
|-----|--|-----|
| 25. | How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonders | 147 |
| 26. | How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and was victorious | 149 |
| 27. | How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpái, how he fought and was victorious, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a Mountain, and was forewarned of his own Death | 150 |
| 28. | How Sikandar reached the City of Women, named Harúm, and saw Wonders there | 153 |
| 29. | How Sikandar went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life and spake with Birds and Isráfil | 159 |
| 30. | How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a Barrier against Yájúj and Májúj | 163 |
| 31. | How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was warned of his Death | 166 |
| 32. | How Sikandar marched his Army to Chín, carried his own Letter to Faghfúr, and returned to his Army with the Answer | 169 |
| 33. | How Sikandar returned from Chín, made War against the Sindians, and went to Yaman | 174 |
| 34. | How Sikandar marched toward Bábil and found the Treasure of Kai Khusrau in a City | 176 |
| 35. | How Sikandar went to the City of Bábil, wrote a Letter to Arastális, and received his Answer | 178 |
| 36. | Sikandar's Letter to his Mother | 181 |
| 37. | How Sikandar's Life ended and how they carried his Coffin to Iskandariya | 183 |
| 38. | How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar | 185 |
| 39. | How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him | 187 |
| 40. | Firdausí's Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God | 189 |

THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY

SECT.

- | | | |
|----|--|-----|
| 1. | The Praise of Mahmúd | 207 |
| 2. | The Tribal Kings | 210 |
| 3. | How Pápak saw Sásán in a Dream and gave him a Daughter in Marriage | 211 |
| 4. | How Ardshír Pápakán was born, and of his Case with Ardawán | 213 |
| 5. | How Ardawán's Slave-girl fell in Love with Ardshír and how he fled with her to Párs. | 217 |
| 6. | How Ardawán heard of the Flight of Ardshír with the Damsel and pursued them | 220 |
| 7. | How Ardawán wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshír | 223 |

| THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY (<i>continued</i>)— | | VOL. VI |
|---|--|---------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 8. | How Tabák helped Ardshír, fought with Bahman, and conquered him | 225 |
| 9. | How Ardawán led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshír and was slain | 227 |
| 10. | How Ardshír fought with the Kurds and was defeated | 230 |
| 11. | How Ardshír attacked the Kurds by Night and overthrew them | 232 |
| 12. | The Story of Haftwád and the Case of the Worm . | 232 |
| 13. | How Ardshír fought with Haftwád and was worsted | 236 |
| 14. | How Mihrak of Jahram sacked the Palace of Ardshír | 237 |
| 15. | How 'Ardshír heard about the Worm and made Shift to slay it | 239 |
| 16. | How Ardshír slew Haftwád | 244 |

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY

ARDSHÍR PÁPAKÁN—

| SECT. | | |
|-------|---|-----|
| 1. | How Ardshír Pápakán sat upon the Throne in Baghdád | 258 |
| 2. | The Case of Ardshír and the Daughter of Ardawán | 259 |
| 3. | How Shápúr was born to Ardshír by the Daughter of Ardawán, and how after seven Years Ardshír heard of his Son and acknowledged him. | 261 |
| 4. | How Ardshír, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent to Kaid of Hind, and Kaid's Reply | 266 |
| 5. | The Adventure of Shápúr with the Daughter of Mihrak, and his taking her to Wife | 268 |
| 6. | How Urmuzd was born to Shápúr by the Daughter of Mihrak | 271 |
| 7. | Of the Wisdom of Ardshír and his Method of administering the Realm | 273 |
| 8. | How Kharrád praised Ardshír | 284 |
| 9. | On the Faithlessness of Fortune. | 285 |
| 10. | How Ardshír charged Shápúr and died. | 286 |
| 11. | Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmúd, the great King | 291 |

SHÁPÚR, SON OF ARDShÍR—

| | | |
|----|--|-----|
| 1. | How Shápúr sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge to the Chieftains | 295 |
| 2. | How Shápúr fought with the Rúmans, how Bazánúsh, their General, was taken Prisoner, and how Cæsar made Peace with Shápúr | 296 |
| 3. | How Shápúr seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died | 299 |

| | |
|---|---------|
| URMUZD, SON OF SHÁPÚR— | VOL. VI |
| SECT. | PAGE |
| 1. How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly. | 302 |
| 2. How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahrám, charged him, and died | 303 |
| BAHRÁM, SON OF URMUZD— | |
| 1. How Bahrám succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died | 307 |
| BAHRÁM, SON OF BAHRÁM— | |
| 1. How Bahrám, Son of Bahrám, ascended the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died | 311 |
| BAHRÁM BAHRÁMIYÁN— | |
| 1. How Bahrám Bahrámiyán succeeded to the Throne and died four Months after | 313 |
| NARSÍ, SON OF BAHRÁM— | |
| 1. How Narsí succeeded to the Throne, counselled his Son, and died | 315 |
| URMUZD, SON OF NARSÍ— | |
| 1. How Urmuzd, Son of Narsí, ascended the Throne, and how his Life ended | 318 |
| SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAMED ZÚ'L AKTÁF— | |
| 1. How Shápúr, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty days after his Father's Death, and how he was crowned | 328 |
| 2. How Táír, the Arab, carried off the Daughter of Narsí and married her, how Shápúr went to Yaman to fight him, and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shápúr | 330 |
| 3. How Táír was bemused by his Daughter and how she came to Shápúr, who took the Hold and slew Táír | 333 |
| 4. How Shápúr went disguised as a Merchant to Rúm, how he was taken by Cæsar, and how Cæsar ravaged the Land of Írán | 335 |
| 5. How the Damsel took Measures to free Shápúr, and how he fled with her from Rúm | 339 |
| 6. How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing of Shápúr's Arrival, went to him with the Troops | 345 |
| 7. How Shápúr made a Night-attack, and how Cæsar was taken | 346 |
| 8. How Shápúr went to Rúm and fought with Yánus, Cæsar's Brother | 351 |
| 9. How the Rúmans placed Bazánúsh upon the Throne of Cæsar; his Letter to Shápúr and the Answer. | 353 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 163

SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, (*continued*)— VOL. VI

| <small>SECT.</small> | <small>PAGE</small> |
|--|---------------------|
| 10. How Bazánúsh went to Shápúr and made a Treaty of Peace | 355 |
| 11. How Mání, the Painter, came to Shápúr with Pretence of being a Prophet, and was slain | 358 |
| 12. How Shápúr made his Brother Ardshír Regent till his own Son should grow up, and how his Days ended | 360 |

ARDSHÍR, BROTHER OF SHÁPÚR—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Ardshír sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers | 363 |
|--|-----|

SHÁPÚR, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. How Shápúr, Son of Shápúr, sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers | 365 |
|---|-----|

BAHRÁM, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. How BahráM sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers | 368 |
|---|-----|

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPÚR—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers | 374 |
| 2. How BahráM Gúr, Son of Yazdagird, was born and sent to be brought up by Munzir, the Arab | 375 |
| 3. How BahráM went to the Chase with a Damsel and how he displayed his Accomplishment | 382 |
| 4. How BahráM showed his Accomplishment in the Chase before Munzir | 384 |
| 5. How BahráM came with Nu'mán to Yazdagird | 386 |
| 6. How Yazdagird put BahráM in Bonds, how he escaped by the good Offices of Tainúsh, and how he returned to Munzír | 389 |
| 7. How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the Spring of Sav and was killed by a Water-horse | 391 |
| 8. How the Íránians took Counsel and placed Khusrau upon the Throne | 394 |
| 9. How BahráM Gúr heard of the Death of his Father and invaded Írán | 395 |
| 10. How the Íránians heard of BahráM's Pillaging and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied | 397 |
| 11. How BahráM Gúr arrived at Jahram with the Host of Munzir, and how the Íránians went out to him | 400 |
| 12. How BahráM Gúr harangued the Íránians as to his Fitness to rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship if he would take the Crown from between the Lions | 402 |

164 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPÚR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 13. How Bahrám and Khusrau went to the Waste, and how Bahrám slew the Lions and took his Seat upon the Throne | 409 |
| INDEX | 413 |

VOLUME VII

| | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|-------|
| PREFATORY NOTE | v |
| ABBREVIATIONS. | xvi |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | xviii |

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

BAHRÁM GÚR—

SECT.

| | |
|---|----|
| 1. How Bahrám ascended the Throne, charged the Officers, and wrote Letters to all the Chiefs | 7 |
| 2. How Bahrám pardoned the Fault of the Íránians, farewelled Munzir and Nu'mán, and remitted the Íránians' Arrears of Taxes | 9 |
| 3. How Bahrám went to the House of Lambak, the Water-carrier, and became his Guest | 12 |
| 4. How Bahrám went to the House of Baráhám, the Jew, who treated him scurvily | 16 |
| 5. How Bahrám bestowed the Wealth of Baráhám upon Lambak | 19 |
| 6. How Bahrám slew Lions and forbade Wine-drinking | 21 |
| 7. The Story of the young Shoemaker and how Bahrám allowed Wine again. | 24 |
| 8. How Rúzbih, Bahrám's High Priest, ruined a Village by a Stratagem and restored it | 26 |
| 9. How Bahrám married a Country Miller's Daughters | 31 |
| 10. How Bahrám found the Treasures of Jamshíd and bestowed them upon the Poor | 34 |
| 11. How Bahrám, returning from Hunting, went to the House of a Merchant and departed displeased. | 39 |
| 12. How Bahrám slew a Dragon and went to a Yokel's House | 42 |
| 13. How Bahrám went to the Chase and espoused the Daughters of the Thane Barzín | 48 |
| 14. How Bahrám slew Lions, went to the House of a Jeweller, and married his Daughter. | 55 |
| 15. How Bahrám went to the Chase and passed the Night in the House of Farshíward | 67 |
| 16. How a Bramble-grubber revealed the Case of Farshíward, and how Bahrám bestowed that Householder's Wealth upon the Poor | 70 |

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 165

BAHRÁM GÚR (*continued*)—

VOL. VII

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 17. How Bahrám went to the Chase and slew Lions | 74 |
| 18. How Bahrám went to hunt the Onager, showed his Skill before the Princes, and returned to Baghdád and Istakhr | 80 |
| 19. How the Khán of Chín led forth a Host to war with Bahrám, and how the Íránians asked Quarter of the Khán and submitted to him | 84 |
| 20. How Bahrám attacked the Host of the Khán and took him | 89 |
| 21. How Bahrám took a Pledge from the Túránians, how he set up a Pillar to delimit the Realm, and placed Shahrá upon the Throne of Túrán | 90 |
| 22. How Bahrám wrote to announce his Victory to his Brother Narsí and returned to Írán | 92 |
| 23. How Bahrám wrote a Letter of Directions to his Officials | 96 |
| 24. How Bahrám called before him the Envoy of Cæsar, and how the Envoy questioned and answered the Archmages | 101 |
| 25. How Bahrám dismissed Cæsar's Envoy and charged his own Officials | 106 |
| 26. How Bahrám went with his own Letter to Shangul King of Hind | 109 |
| 27. How Shangul received the Letter from Bahrám and made Reply | 114 |
| 28. How Shangul prepared a Feast for Bahrám, and how Bahrám displayed his Prowess | 116 |
| 29. How Shangul suspected Bahrám and kept him from Írán | 118 |
| 30. How Bahrám fought with the Wolf at the Bidding of Shangul and slew it | 121 |
| 31. How Bahrám slew a Dragon | 124 |
| 32. How Shangul became troubled about Bahrám and gave a Daughter to him | 126 |
| 33. How Faghfúr of Chín wrote to Bahrám and how he replied | 129 |
| 34. How Bahrám fled from Hindústán to Írán with the Daughter of Shangul | 131 |
| 35. How Shangul followed Bahrám, learned who he was, and was reconciled to him | 135 |
| 36. How Shangul went back to Hind and Bahrám to Írán | 137 |
| 37. How Shangul with seven Kings visited Bahrám | 140 |
| 38. How Shangul returned to Hindústán, and how Bahrám remitted the Property-tax to the Land-owners | 144 |
| 39. How Bahrám summoned Gipsies from Hindústán | 148 |
| 40. How the Time of Bahrám came to an End | 150 |

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF BAHRÁM GÚR—

VOL. VII

SECT.

PAGE

1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and exhorted the Captains of the Host 154

HURMUZ —

1. How Hurmuz, Son of Yazdagird, ascended the Throne 157

PÍRÚZ—

1. How Pírúz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration 161
2. How Pírúz built the Cities of Pírúz-Rám and Bádán-Pírúz, and how he went to war with Túrán 163
3. The Letter of Khúshnawáz to Pírúz 165
4. How Pírúz fought with Khúshnawáz and was slain 167

BALÁSH—

1. How Balásh ascended the Throne and haranged the Íránians 171
2. How Súfaraí had Tidings of the Slaying of Pírúz, how he wrote a Letter to Khúshnawáz, and how Khúshnawáz replied 173
3. How Súfaraí fought with Khúshnawáz, and how Kubád was released from his Bondage 176

KUBÁD, SON OF PÍRÚZ—

1. How Kubád sat upon the Throne and made an Oration to the Íránians 188
2. How Súfaraí went to Shíráz, how the Íránians slandered him to Kubád, and how Kubád slew him 190
3. How the Íránians put Kubád in Bonds and committed him to Rizmihr, the Son of Súfaraí, and how Jámásp, the Brother of Kubád, was set upon the Throne 195
4. How Kubád escaped from Ward with Rizmihr, how he wedded the Daughter of a Thane, and how he took Refuge with the Haitálans 197
5. How Kubád returned from Haitál to Írán, how he had Tidings of the Birth of his Son, Núshírwán, and reascended the Throne 199
6. The Story of Kubád and Mazdak, and how Kubád adopted the Faith of Mazdak 201
7. How Núshírwán rejected the Faith of Mazdak and slew him and his Followers 205
8. How Kubád nominated Kisrá as Successor; and how the Great gave him the name of Núshírwán 209

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

VOL. VII

PART I. NÚSHÍRWÁN'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE
REALM, HIS WARS WITH FRONTIER-TRIBES
AND WITH RÚM, AND THE REVOLT OF
NÚSHZÁD—

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 1. The Prelude | 220 |
| 2. How NÚSHÍRWÁN ascended the Throne and made an Oration to the Íránians | 221 |
| 3. How NÚSHÍRWÁN divided his Realm into four Parts and wrote a Decree to his Officers on the Administration of Justice | 224 |
| 4. How NÚSHÍRWÁN required BÁBAK to muster the Host | 230 |
| 5. How NÚSHÍRWÁN harangued the Íránians, and how the Kings acknowledged his Supremacy. | 234 |
| 6. How NÚSHÍRWÁN went round his Empire and built a Wall in the Pass between ÍRÁN and TÚRÁN | 236 |
| 7. How NÚSHÍRWÁN chastised the Aláns and the Men of Balúch and GÍLÁN | 239 |
| 8. How Munzir, the Arab, came to NÚSHÍRWÁN for Succour against the Injustice of Cæsar | 244 |
| 9. The Letter of Sháh NÚSHÍRWÁN to Cæsar of RÚM | 247 |
| 10. How the Letter of NÚSHÍRWÁN reached Cæsar and how he replied | 248 |
| 11. How NÚSHÍRWÁN went to war with Cæsar | 249 |
| 12. How NÚSHÍRWÁN took divers Strongholds in his March to RÚM | 254 |
| 13. The Battle of NÚSHÍRWÁN with Farfúriyús, the Leader of Cæsar's Host, the Victory of NÚSHÍRWÁN, and his Capture of Kálíniyús and Antákiya | 255 |
| 14. How NÚSHÍRWÁN built the City of Zíb-i-Khusrau in the Likeness of Antákiya and settled the Rúman Captives therein | 259 |
| 15. How Cæsar wrote to NÚSHÍRWÁN and sent Tribute. | 261 |
| 16. The Birth of NÚSHZÁD, the Son of NÚSHÍRWÁN, by a Woman who was a Christian | 263 |
| 17. The Sickness of NÚSHÍRWÁN and the Sedition of NÚSHZÁD | 265 |
| 18. The Letter of NÚSHÍRWÁN to Rám Barzín, the Warden of the March of Madá'in, respecting the Taking of NÚSHZÁD | 267 |
| 19. How Rám Barzín fought with NÚSHZÁD, and how NÚSHZÁD was slain | 272 |

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR AND THE
SEVEN BANQUETS OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. How NÚSHÍRWÁN had a Dream and how BÚZURJMIHR interpreted it | 281 |
|---|-----|

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR, *etc.* (*continued*)—VOL. VII

| SECT. | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 2. The first Banquet of Núshírwán to the Sages, and the Counsels of Búzurjmihr | 287 |
| 3. The second Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 290 |
| 4. The third Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 296 |
| 5. The fourth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 301 |
| 6. The fifth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 304 |
| 7. The sixth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 307 |
| 8. The seventh Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages | 312 |

PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD AND OTHER MATTERS—

SECT.

| | |
|--|-----|
| 1. The Story of Mahbúd, the Wazír of Núshírwán, and how Mahbúd and his Sons were slain by the Sorcery of Zúrán and a Jew | 318 |
| 2. How the Sorcery of Zúrán and the Jew in the Matter of Mahbúd was discovered, and how both were slain by Command of Núshírwán | 323 |
| 3. In Praise of the Wisdom of Núshírwán, and how he built the City of Súrán | 326 |
| 4. The Story of the War of the Khán with Ghátkar, the Prince of the Haitálans, the Defeat of Ghátkar, and how they set Faghánish upon the Throne | 328 |
| 5. How Núshírwán had Tidings of the Battle of the Khán with the Haitálans and how he led a Host against the Khán | 333 |
| 6. How the Khán had Tidings of the Coming of the Host of Núshírwán to Gurgán and wrote a Letter in the Cause of Peace | 337 |
| 7. How Núshírwán answered the Letter of the Khán | 342 |
| 8. How the Khán bethought himself and wrote offering his Daughter in Marriage to Núshírwán | 345 |
| 9. How Núshírwán answered the Letter, and sent Mihrán Sitád to see and fetch the Daughter of the Khán | 349 |
| 10. How the Khán sent his Daughter, escorted by Mihrán, with a Letter and Treasures to Núshírwán | 354 |
| 11. How the Khán withdrew, and how Núshírwán marched from Gurgán to Taisafún | 358 |
| 12. Discourse on the Justice of Núshírwán and how Mortals had Peace under his Usages | 364 |

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

| | |
|--|----------|
| PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD, <i>etc.</i> (continued) | VOL. VII |
| SECT. | PAGE |
| 13. How Búzurjmíhr counselled Núshírwán and dis- coursed on good Deeds and Words. | 366 |

PART IV. THE INTRODUCTION OF THE GAME OF CHESS
INTO ÍRÁN. THE LEGEND OF THE INVEN-
TION OF THE GAME. THE DISCOVERY OF
THE BOOK OF KALÍLA AND DIMNA

| | |
|---|-----|
| 1. How the Rája of Hind sent the Game of Chess to Núshírwán | 384 |
| 2. How Búzurjmíhr invented Nard, and how Núshírwán sent it with a Letter to the Rája of Hind. | 389 |
| 3. The Story of Gav and Talhand, and the Invention of Chess | 394 |
| 4. How Núshírwán sent Barzwí, the Leech, to Hin- dústán to fetch a wondrous Drug, and how Barzwí brought back the Book of Kalíla and Dimna | 423 |
| INDEX | 433 |

VOL. VIII

| | |
|-----------------------|------|
| | PAGE |
| ABBREVIATIONS | xv |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | xvi |

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (continued)

NÚSHÍRWÁN (continued)—

PART V. THE FALL AND RESTORATION TO FAVOUR OF
BÚZURJMIHR, AND THE WISDOM OF NÚSH-
ÍRWÁN—

SECT.

| | |
|---|----|
| 1. How Núshírwán was wroth with Búzurjmíhr and ordered him to be put in Ward | 4 |
| 2. How the Ambassador of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with a locked Casket and how Búzurjmíhr was set at large to declare its Contents | 8 |
| 3. Discourse on the Responses of Núshírwán | 14 |
| 4. Núshírwán's Letter of Counsel to his Son Hurmuzd | 25 |
| 5. How an Archmage questioned Núshírwán and how he made Answer | 28 |

PART VI. THE SHÁH'S LAST YEARS—

| | |
|--|----|
| 1. How Núshírwán made ready to war against Cæsar | 43 |
| 2. How Núshírwán took the Stronghold of Sakíla and how a Shoemaker had Dealings with him. | 46 |
| 3. How the Envoys of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with Apologies and Presents. | 51 |
| 4. How Núshírwán chose Hurmuzd as his Successor. | 54 |

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART VI. THE SÍÁH'S LAST YEARS (*continued*) — VOL. VIII
 SECT. PAGE

5. How the Archimages questioned Hurmuzd and how he replied 57
6. How Núshírwán appointed Hurmuzd as his Successor and gave him parting Counsels 61
7. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmíhr interpreted it as signifying the Appearance of Muhammad 66

HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

1. The Prelude 77
2. How Hurmuzd ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs 78
3. How Hurmuzd slew Ízid Gashasp, Zarduhsht, Símáh Barzín, and Bahrám Ázarmihán, his Father's Ministers 81
4. How Hurmuzd turned from Tyranny to Justice 90
5. How Hosts gathered from all Sides against Hurmuzd, and how he took Counsel with his Wazírs 92
6. How Hurmuzd heard of Bahrám Chúbína and sent for him 96
7. How Bahrám Chúbína came to Hurmuzd and was made Captain of the Host 100
8. How Bahrám Chúbína went with twelve thousand Cavaliers to fight King Sáwa 106
9. How King Sáwa sent a Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer 113
10. How King Sáwa and Bahrám Chúbína set the Battle in Array against each other. 115
11. How King Sáwa sent another Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer 117
12. How Bahrám Chúbína had a Dream in the Night, how he gave Battle the next Morning, and how King Sáwa was slain 121
13. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Letter announcing his Victory, and the Head of King Sáwa, to Hurmuzd, and his Answer 129
14. How Bahrám Chúbína fought with Parmúda, Son of King Sáwa, and overcame him, and how Parmúda took Refuge in the Hold of Áwáza . . . 134
15. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Message to Parmúda and how Parmúda asked Quarter 138
16. How Bahrám Chúbína asked of Hurmuzd a War-rant to spare the Life of Parmúda and the Answer 141
17. How Hurmuzd's Letter, granting Quarter to Parmúda, reached Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína was wroth with Parmúda . . 143

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 171

| HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN (<i>continued</i>)— | | VOL. VIII |
|---|--|-----------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 18. | How Parmúda came before Hurmuzd with the Treasures sent by Bahrám Chúbína | 149 |
| 19. | How Hurmuzd heard of the Ill-doing of Bahrám Chúbína and made a Compact with the Khán | 151 |
| 20. | How Hurmuzd wrote a chiding Letter to Bahrám Chúbína and sent him a Distaff-case, Cotton, and Women's Raiment | 153 |
| 21. | How Bahrám Chúbína put on the Woman's Dress and showed himself therein to the Chiefs of the Host | 154 |
| 22. | How Bahrám Chúbína went to hunt and saw a Lady who foretold the Future to him | 156 |
| 23. | How Bahrám Chúbína assumed the royal Style and how Kharrád, Son of Barzín, and the Archscribe fled | 158 |
| 24. | How Hurmuzd received News of Bahrám Chúbína's Doings, and how Bahrám Chúbína sent a Frail of Swords to Hurmuzd | 160 |
| 25. | How Bahrám Chúbína made known to the Chiefs his Designs upon the Throne, and how his Sister Gurdya advised him | 163 |
| 26. | Bahrám Chúbína's Letter to the Khán and how he coined Money with the name of Khusrau Parwíz and sent it to Hurmuzd | 172 |
| 27. | How Bahrám Chúbína wrote to Hurmuzd and how Khusrau Parwíz fled from his Father | 173 |
| 28. | How Hurmuzd sent Ayín Gashasp with an Army to fight Bahrám Chúbína and how he was slain by his Comrade | 177 |
| 29. | How Hurmuzd grieved, refused Audience to the Íránians, and was blinded by Bandwí and Gustaham | 182 |
| 30. | How Khusrau Parwíz heard of the Blinding of Hurmuzd | 184 |
| KHUSRAU PARWÍZ— | | |
| 1. | The Prelude | 196 |
| 2. | How Khusrau Parwíz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration | 197 |
| 3. | How Khusrau Parwíz visited his Father and asked Forgiveness | 198 |
| 4. | How Bahrám Chúbína heard of the Blinding of Sháh Hurmuzd and how he led his Troops against Khusrau Parwíz | 200 |
| 5. | How Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbína met and parleyed | 204 |
| 6. | How Bahrám Chúbína and Khusrau Parwíz returned, how Gurdya advised Bahrám Chúbína, and how Khusrau Parwíz told his Purpose to the Íránians | 220 |

| KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (<i>continued</i>) — SECT. | VOL. VIII PAGE |
|--|-------------------|
| 7. How Bahrám Chúbína attacked the Army of Khusrau Parwíz by Night and how Khusrau Parwíz fled | 226 |
| 8. How Khusrau Parwíz went to his Sire and fled to Rúm, and how Hurmuzd was slain | 230 |
| 9. How Bahrám Chúbína sent Troops after Khusrau Parwíz and how Bandwí contrived to rescue him from their Hands. | 233 |
| 10. How Bahrám, the Son of Siyáwush, took Bandwí and carried him to Bahrám Chúbína | 237 |
| 11. How Bahrám Chúbína summoned the Magnates of Írán, how they discussed his Pretensions to the Kingdom, and how he acceded to the Throne | 239 |
| 12. How Bandwí plotted with Bahrám, the Son of Siyáwush, to slay Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bandwí fled from Bond | 245 |
| 13. How Khusrau Parwíz went toward Rúm by the Desert-route and how a Hermit told him of the Past and Future | 249 |
| 14. How a Cavalier of Cæsar came to Khusrau Parwíz and how he sent an Answer by Gustaham, Bálwí, Andiyán, Kharrád, Son of Barzín, and Shápúr to Cæsar. | 257 |
| 15. How Cæsar answered the Letter of Khusrau Parwíz | 260 |
| 16. How Cæsar wrote to Khusrau Parwíz, declining to help him, and his Answer | 261 |
| 17. How Cæsar wrote the second Time to Khusrau Parwíz about giving him Aid | 264 |
| 18. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Cæsar about the Alliance | 269 |
| 19. How Cæsar made a Talisman and deceived the Envoys of Khusrau Parwíz, and how Kharrád, Son of Barzín, solved the Mystery | 271 |
| 20. How Kharrád, Son of Barzín, expounded the Faith of the Indians and exhorted Cæsar | 275 |
| 21. How Cæsar sent a Host and his Daughter to Khusrau Parwíz. | 278 |
| 22. How Khusrau Parwíz led his Host to Ázar Ábádágán and how Bandwí met him on the Way | 281 |
| 23. How Bahrám Chúbína had Tidings of the Coming of Khusrau Parwíz and wrote a Letter to the Chiefs of Írán, and how the Letter fell into the Hands of Khusrau Parwíz and his Answer | 284 |
| 24. How Khusrau Parwíz fought with Bahrám Chúbína and how Kút, the Rúman, was slain | 288 |
| 25. How Khusrau Parwíz fought with Bahrám Chúbína the second Time, was defeated, and escaped from him by the Help of Surúsh. | 292 |

| KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (<i>continued</i>) | | VOL. VIII |
|-------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| SECT. | | PAGE |
| 26. | How Khusrau Parwíz fought the third Time with Bahrám Chúbína and defeated him | 300 |
| 27. | How Khusrau Parwíz sent an Army under Nastúh after Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína captured him and reached the Khán of Chín | 303 |
| 28. | How Khusrau Parwíz pillaged the Camp of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to Cæsar who answered it with a Robe of Honour and Gifts | 306 |
| 29. | How Niyátús was wroth with Bandwí and how Maryam made Peace between them | 309 |
| 30. | How Khusrau Parwíz gave Presents to Niyátús and the Rúmans, how he dismissed them to Rúm, and wrote Patents for the Nobles of Irán | 312 |
| 31. | Firdausí's Lament for the Death of his Son | 315 |
| 32. | The Story of Bahrám Chúbína and the Khán of Chín | 316 |
| 33. | How Makátúra was slain by Bahrám Chúbína | 320 |
| 34. | How the Lion-ape slew a Daughter of the Khán, how it was slain by Bahrám Chúbína, and how the Khán gave him a Daughter and the Kingdom of Chín | 322 |
| 35. | How Khusrau Parwíz heard of the Case of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to the Khán, and how he replied | 327 |
| 36. | How Khusrau Parwíz sent Kharrád, Son of Barzín, to the Khán and how he schemed to slay Bahrám Chúbína | 331 |
| 37. | How Bahrám Chúbína was slain by Kulún as Kharrád, Son of Barzín, had planned | 336 |
| 38. | How the Khán had Tidings of Bahrám Chúbína's Death and how he destroyed the House and Family of Kulún | 343 |
| 39. | How Khusrau Parwíz had Tidings of the Slaying of Bahrám Chúbína and honoured Kharrád, Son of Barzín | 345 |
| 40. | How the Khán sent his Brother to Gurdya, the Sister of Bahrám Chúbína, with a Letter touching her Brother's Death and asking her in Marriage as his Queen, and her Answer | 346 |
| 41. | How Gurdya consulted her Nobles and fled from Marv | 349 |
| 42. | How the Khán received Tidings of the Flight of Gurdya and how he sent Tuwurg with an Army after her, and how Gurdya slew Tuwurg | 351 |
| 43. | How Gurdya wrote to Gurdwí | 354 |
| 44. | How Khusrau Parwíz slew Bandwí | 354 |
| 45. | How Gustaham rebelled against Khusrau Parwíz and took Gurdya to Wife | 355 |

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 46. How Khusráu Parwíz took Counsel with Gurdwí concerning Gustaham and how Gurdya, prompted by Gurdwí, slew him | 358 |
| 47. How Gurdya wrote to Khusráu Parwíz and how he summoned and married her | 361 |
| 48. How Gurdya showed her Accomplishment before Khusráu Parwíz | 363 |
| 49. How Khusráu Parwíz sent an ill-disposed March-lord to Rai and how he oppressed the Folk there | 365 |
| 50. How Gurdya made Sport before Khusráu Parwíz and how he gave Rai to her | 367 |
| 51. How Khusráu Parwíz portioned out his Realm | 368 |
| 52. How Shírwí, the Son of Khusráu Parwíz, was born of Maryam with bad Auspices and how Khusráu Parwíz informed Cæsar | 371 |
| 53. How Cæsar wrote a Letter to Khusráu Parwíz, sent Gifts, and asked for the Cross of Christ | 374 |
| 54. How Khusráu Parwíz answered Cæsar's Letter and sent Gifts | 379 |

THE STORY OF KHUSRAU PARWÍZ AND SHÍRÍN—

| | |
|--|-----|
| 55. The Prelude | 382 |
| 56. How Khusráu Parwíz loved Shírín, how they parted, how he met her again while hunting and sent her to his Bower | 383 |
| 57. How the Nobles heard that Shírín had come to the Bower of Khusráu Parwíz and how they advised him and were satisfied with his Answer | 386 |
| 58. How Shírín murdered Maryam and Khusráu Parwíz put Shírwí in Bonds | 389 |
| 59. How Khusráu Parwíz made the Throne of Tákdís | 391 |
| 60. The Story of Sarkash and Bárbad, the Minstrel, and Khusráu Parwíz | 396 |
| 61. How Khusráu Parwíz built the Palace of Madá'in | 400 |
| 62. Discourse on the Splendour and Greatness of Khusráu Parwíz. | 405 |
| 63. How Khusráu Parwíz turned from Justice, how the Chiefs revolted, and how Guráz called in Cæsar | 407 |
| 64. How Cæsar withdrew through an Expedient of Khusráu Parwíz and how the Chiefs released Shírwí from Bonds | 409 |
| 65. How Khusráu Parwíz was taken and how Shírwí sent him to Taisafún | 418 |

| | |
|-----------------|-----|
| INDEX | 423 |
|-----------------|-----|

VOL. IX

| | PAGE |
|---------------------------------|------|
| PREFATORY NOTE | v |
| ABBREVIATIONS. | xi |
| NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION | xii |

THE SĀSĀNĪAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

KUBĀD (COMMONLY CALLED SHĪRWĪ)—

SECT.

1. How Shīrwī ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses 8
2. How Khusrau Parwīz answered Shīrwī 15
3. How Shīrwī grieved for Khusrau Parwīz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat 27
4. How Bārbad lamented Khusrau Parwīz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music 29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shīrwī the Death of Khusrau Parwīz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd 32
6. How Shīrwī asked Shīrīn in Marriage, how Shīrīn killed herself, and how Shīrwī was slain 36

ARDSHĪR, SON OF SHĪRWĪ—

1. How Ardshīr, Son of Shīrwī, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs 44
2. How Gurāz was displeased at Ardshīr being Shāh and how he caused Ardshīr to be slain by Pīrūz Son of Khusrau. 45

GURĀZ ALSO CALLED FARĀYĪN—

1. How Gurāz, (also called Faráyīn,) received News of the Slaying of Ardshīr, hastened to Īrān, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrāngurāz 51

PŪRĀNDUKHT—

1. How Pūrāndukht ascended the Throne and slew Pīrūz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended 56

ĀZARMDUKHT—

1. How Āzarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died 59

FARRUKHZĀD—

1. How Farrukhzād ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave 61

YAZDAGIRD—

VOL. IX

| SECT. | PAGE |
|---|------|
| 1. How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs | 70 |
| 2. How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Írán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother | 72 |
| 3. How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied | 78 |
| 4. How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain | 83 |
| 5. How Yazdagird consulted with the Íránians and went to Khurásán | 85 |
| 6. How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr | 89 |
| 7. How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús | 90 |
| 8. How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him | 95 |
| 9. How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill | 96 |
| 10. How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear | 101 |
| 11. How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller | 107 |
| 12. How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne. | 112 |
| 13. How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him | 115 |
| 14. How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bízhan | 118 |
| —15. Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma | 121 |

CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

VOLUME I.

- Page xii, line 21, *for* ' Evil ' *read* ' evil.'
- Page xiii, line 15, *for* ' Born ' *read* ' born.'
- Page 4, line 4, *delete* ' still.'
- Page 5, line 22, *after* ' camel ' *add* ' of which the red-haired variety was most esteemed.'
- Page 6, line 21, *for* ' Scythian ' *read* ' Elamitic.'
- Page 7, line 19, *for* ' was ' *read* ' became,' line 25 and elsewhere, *for* ' Tritá ' and ' Traitána ' *read* ' Trita ' and ' Traitana.'
- Page 9, line 10 and elsewhere, *for* ' Ázarbiján ' *read* ' Ázarbáiján.'
- Page 10, bottom. The date of the fall of Nineveh has lately been assigned to the year B.C. 612. See ' The Fall of Nineveh,' p. 9 *seq.* By C. J. Gadd.
reference number 2, *after* R *insert* P.
- Page 11, line 29 and elsewhere, *for* ' Hira and Anbar ' *read* ' Híra and Ambár.'
- Page 13, reference number 2, *for* ' NESH ' *read* ' NSEH.'
- Page 14, line 25, *for* ' Sámánides ' *read* ' Sámánids.'
- Page 17, *delete* lines 7-10.
reference number 1, *add* ' See too A. V. Williams Jackson,'
' From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam,'
Ch. v.'
- Page 19, line 19, *for* ' Sacaestan ' *read* ' Sacaestán.'
- reference number 3, *delete* ' iii.'
- Page 21, line 7 and elsewhere, *for* ' Nuh ' *read* ' Núh.'
- line 12, *for* ' appealed ' *read* ' turned.'
- Page 29, line 12 from bottom, *cf* LEC, pp. 206, 207 and *note*.
- Page 31, *delete* lines 13-16, and *read* ' that Fazl, son of Ahmad, is referred to on both occasions.'
- Page 33, line 23, *delete* full stop, *insert* comma, and *for* ' Such is not ' *read* ' not be in.'
- Page 34, five lines from bottom, *delete* ' While I sat looking on ' and *read* ' While I o'erlooked from far.'
- Page 37, line 22, *for* ' Arúdí *read* ' 'Arúdí.'
- Page 38, seven lines from bottom, *for* ' Bazh ' *read* ' Bázh.'
- six lines from bottom, *after* ' city ' *add* reference number 1.
at bottom *add* note ' The quarter in which Bázh was situated was known as Tabarán.'
- Page 39, bottom, reference number 1, *delete* ' §1 and 7 ' and *read* ' The too spiritual conception of the Deity in §1 and the references to 'Alí in §7.'

- Page 41, last line, for 'axe' read 'ax.'
- Page 43, note 2, for 'fakká' read 'fakká,' and for 'Cf.' read 'Cf.'
- Page 45, line 24, after 'indigo' add reference number 2.
 line five from bottom, after 'Cemetery' add reference number 3.
 at bottom add ' * Cf. *Encl. Brit.* (11th ed.), Vol. 11, p. 917, col. 2.
 * Professor A. V. Williams Jackson's suggestion that, as burial in the Muhammadan cemetery was refused, the corpse of Firdausí was reconveyed within the walls and buried in ground belonging to him, seems far from improbable. From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar Khayyám, p. 291.
- Page 50, line 7, for 'Ahriman' read 'Áhriman.'
- Page 51, line 23, add reference number 1.
 bottom, add ' * Thus Pírán (see p. 55) may represent Perun, the Slavonic god of thunder.'
- Page 61, line 3, delete 'which' and to end of sentence, and insert 'i.e. of Ázarghashap.'
- Page 62, bottom, after reference number 7 insert DZA, i, 209.
- Page 67, line 18, end, add 'bin.'
- Page 68, line 9, end add ' or identical with.'
 bottom, reference number 1, add NIN, 15.
- Page 69, bottom, for '108' read '107.'
- Page 71, line 19, after 'Oxus' insert 'Caspian.'
 line 20, after 'Dardanelles' insert 'Mediterranean.'
 bottom, reference number 6, after '80' add 'notes.'
- Page 73, line 8 from bottom, for 'land' read 'earth.'
 „ 7 „ after 'Sháhs' add reference number 1.
 „ 5 „ after 'canal' add reference number 2.
 bottom, add ' * Kai Kúbád. See Vol. ii, p. 22. * *Id.* 192.'
- Page 74, line 8, after 'tree' add reference number 1.
 bottom, add ' * *Cercis Siliquastum.*'
- Page 77, line 11, for 'the first half' read 'three-fifths.'
 line 8 from bottom, after 'repetitions' add reference number 1.
 bottom, add ' * These of course do not include the great duplications of tradition in the poem.'
- Page 82, line 11, for 'regarded' read 'looked upon.'
 line 25, after 'farr' add reference number 2.
 bottom, add ' * pp. 369, 370.'
- Page 83, line 18, before 'múbidán' insert—
 line 25, after 'subject' add reference number 2.
 bottom, add ' * The expression is used, however, of Bahrám Gúr (Vol. vii, p. 78) and of Núshírwán (viii, p. 14). It is also applied to non-Íránians, to Suhráb, who was opposing the Íránians (ii 145), Pírán (ii, 261, 275, 324, iii, 106), Pílsam (ii, 352), Tazháv, an Íránian deserter (iii, 28), Bazánúsh (vi, 297), and there are other instances.'
- Page 84, line 3, for 'camp enclosure' read 'camp-enclosure.'

- Page 85, line 20, *for* 'end' *read* 'beginning.'
- Page 87, bottom, *add* 'Rogers, The Shah-namah of Fardusi. Translated from the original Persian. 1909. (A version partly in verse and partly in epitomized prose.)
- Page 88, lines 11 and 27, *for* 'Ardibihisht' *read* 'Ardibihisht.'
 line 12 and bottom, *for* 'Sharivar' *read* 'Shahrivar.'
 lines 12 and 26, *for* 'Farvardín' *read* 'Farwardín.'
 line 17 and page 89, line 3, *for* 'Ádar' *read* 'Ázar.'
- Page 89, line 4, *for* 'Dín' *read* 'Dai.'
- Page 90, line 9, *for* '3 generations' *read* '4 generations' and *add at bottom*, 'See Vol. v. p. 203.'
for 'Barmaiún. Kataiún.' *read* 'Purmáya. Kaiánush.'
 15 *add as son to Minúchíhr* 'Zarasp.'
 17, *add as son to Tús* 'Zarasp.'
- Page 92, line 5 *add as descendant from Túr* 'Máh Áfríd, d.'
 line 10, *add as descendant of Wisa* 'Kurúkhán.'
 line 11, *for* 'Pírán' *read* 'Pírán=Gulshahr.'
 line 15, *to descendants of Afrásiyáb add* 'Manízha, d.= Bizhan'
and delete 'Rúin.'
 line 17, *for* 'Kurakhán' *read* 'Kurákhán.'
- Page 93, lines 20 and 22, *transpose* 'EP' and 'EHI.'
- Page 94, *delete lines* 4-5.
 bottom, *add* 'ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari. Traduite sur la version Persane d'Abou-'Ali Mo'hammed Bel'ami par M. Hermann Zotenberg.'
- Page 100, line 4, *for* 'Shaddad son of Ad' *read* 'Shaddád son of 'Ad.'
- Page 100, line 7, *for* 'Shaddad' *read* 'Shaddád.'
- Page 100, line 10, *for* 'Nasíru'd' *read* 'Násíru'd.'
- Page 104, after line 4 *insert*—
 'Thus is it now : what the world's end will be
 None knoweth openly or privily.'
- Page 106, line 12, *for* 'The' *read* 'In.'
- Page 108, line 15, *for* 'with' *read* 'to.'
- Page 112, line 2, *for* 'The' *read* 'In.'
 8 from bottom, *for* 'light' *read* 'blaze.'
- Page 113, line 7 and elsewhere, *for* 'Ind' *read* 'Hind.'
 line 19, end, *add full stop*.
- Page 117, line 2, *Delete* 'FOR.'
- Page 118, line 4, *for* 'mountain of the holy' *read* 'Mountain of the Holy.'
- Page 120, line 1, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain' and *delete* 'the Hand of.'
- Page 121, line 5, *for* 'Fight' *read* 'fight.'
- Page 126, line 5, *add* 'This is the first of many doublets in the poem.'
 line 16, *for* 'gold' *read* 'good.'
- Page 129, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'o' *read* 'of.'

- Page 130, line 11, *after 'gallery' insert . . .*
 line 23, *for 'have' read 'find,' and add to reference 4*
'WPT. i. 142.'
- Page 131, line 15, *for 'They' read 'they.'*
- Page 132, line 11, *add full stop at end.*
- Page 135, line 3, *for 'departed from' read 'abandoned.'*
 line 11 from bottom, end, *delete comma and insert full stop.*
- Page 138, line 8 from bottom, *delete 'thou my' and read 'any.'*
- Page 141, line 4 from bottom, *for 'light' read 'Grace.'*
- Page 142, line 5 from bottom, *for 'downstricken' read 'down-*
stricken.'
 line 4 from bottom, *for 'Áspikán' read 'Áspikán.'*
- Page 143, line 7, *for '1' read '2.'*
 15, *for '2' read '3.'*
 20, *for 'Baghdad' read 'Baghdád.'*
 25, *after 'Ispahán' add reference number 4.*
 31, *for reference number 3 read 5.*
 33, *for reference number 4 read 6.*
 bottom, *after reference 3 insert 'ZT, i, 117,' and for*
reference numbers 4 and 5 read 5 and 6.
- Page 145, line 25, *for 'Evil' read 'evil.'*
- Page 147, line 7, *for 'Kúrds' read 'Kurds.'*
- Page 161, line 6, *for 'Bait al' read 'Baitu'l.'*
- Page 171, line 2, *for 'HIS REIGN WAS' read 'HE REIGNED.'*
- Page 173, line 31, *for 'glory' read 'Glory.'*
- Page 174, *after line 21 add '§24. We have here another doublet.*
Cf. p. 290.'
- Page 175, line 13, *for 'He,' read 'Be.'*
- Page 181, line 13, *delete 'never' and insert it after 'children.'*
 2 from bottom, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 184, line 18, *for 'except' read 'unless.'*
- Page 189, line 4 from bottom, *for 'Envious' read 'envious.'*
- Page 199, line 7 from bottom, *for 'Slain' read 'slain.'*
- Page 201, note, line 4, *for 'Námáh' read 'Námah.'*
- Page 205, line 9, *for 'Born' read 'born.'*
- Page 207, line 13, *for 'Chach' read 'Chách.'*
- Page 208, line 12, *for 'wagons did they fill' read 'wains they*
filled.'
- Page 209, line 19, *for 'no longer harboureth' read 'hath ceased*
to harbour.'
 line 20, *for 'evident' read 'plain.'*
- Page 211, *delete line 2 and read 'With treasure and brocade,*
dínárs and gems.'
- Page 212, line 21, *for 'All' read 'all.'*
 line 7 from bottom, *for 'turquoise' read 'turquoise.'*
- Page 219, line 5 from bottom, *for 'a' read 'the' and after 'ball'*
add reference number 1.
 bottom, *insert 'See p. 79.'*
- Page 221, line 18, *for 'Announce' read 'announce.'*
 line 7, from bottom, *for 'he' read 'He.'*

- Page 224, line 11, *after* 'me' *insert* 'stay.'
- Page 224, line 12, 19 'Stop to draw breath' *read* 'To breathe.'
22, 19 'moralising' *read* 'moralling'
- Page 226, line 4, *delete* 'of our.'
- Page 227, line 21, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain' and *delete* 'the Hand of.'
- Page 228, line 9, *for* 'produce of it' *read* 'fruit thereof.'
- Page 230, line 9, *for* 'our avenging' *read* 'vengeful.'
- Page 236, *after* line 7 *insert* '§18. Cf. previous reign, §24.'
line 8, beginning, *insert* '§29.'
5 from bottom, beginning, *insert* '§31.'
- Page 237, bottom, note 1, *add* 'But cf. Vol. v. p. 30.'
- Page 250, side reference, *prefix* 'V.'
- Page 252, line 15, *for* 'Danbar' *read* 'Dambar.'
- Page 256, line 4, *for* 'Dunbar' *read* 'Dambar.'
- Page 275, line 3 from bottom, *for* 'Explain' *read* 'explain.'
- Page 280, line 9, and elsewhere, *for* 'Almighty' *read* 'almighty'
when not absolute.
- Page 284, line 1, *for* 'Aware' *read* 'aware.'
- Page 292, line 20, *for* 'War against' *read* 'fight.'
- Page 293, end of note, *add* '309.'
- Page 299, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'Wroth' *read* 'wroth.'
- Page 307, line 7 from bottom, *add* reference number 1 *after* 'lasso.'
- Page 325, line 11, *for* 'Sám' *read* 'Zál.'
- Page 337, line 2, *delete* 'FOR.'
- Page 338, line 6, *for* 'Yast' *read* 'Yasht,' and at bottom, note 1,
after 1 *insert* 'Cf. p. 59.'
- From 342, line 3 from bottom, *for* 'Knowhow' *read* 'Know
how.'
- Page 347, line 10, *for* 'lowered' *read* 'loured.'
- Page 351, side reference, *insert* 2.
4 lines from bottom, *insert* comma *after* 'throb.'
- Page 352, line 4, *delete* semicolon.
- Page 354, line 21, *for* 'Guzhdaham' *read* 'Gazhdaham.'
- Page 355, line 4 from bottom, *delete* comma at end.
- Page 358, line 6 and elsewhere, *for* 'Hirmund' *read* 'Hírmund.'
- Page 366, line 12, *delete* 'not.'
- Page 373, line 2, *for* 'HIS REIGN WAS' *read* 'HE REIGNED.'
- Page 378, line 7, *for* 'lance' *read* 'spear.'
- Page 380, line 6 from bottom, *after* 'harm' *add* reference number 1,
and at bottom add '1 Cf. BLHP, i, 452. Jackson,
"From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar
Khayyam," p. 119.'
- Page 381, line 4 from bottom, *for* 'plants' *read* 'plans.'

VOLUME II.

- Page v, line 13, end, *add* -
- Page ix, line 25, *delete* 'Kai.'
- Page 3, line, 12, *for* 'Katarún' *read* 'Katáyún.'

- Page 3, line 15, to children of Gushtásp *add* Farshidward, Shírú, and thirty-seven others (un-named), *for* 'Bishútán' *read* 'Bishútán *and for* 'Afrid' *read* 'Áfrid. bottom, *after* (20) *insert* =d. of Kaid.
- Page 5, line 20, *after* 'd'Or,' *add* full stop, *and for* 'texte' *read* 'Texte.'
- Page 6, heading, *for* 'NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION' *read* 'ABBREVIATIONS.'
- Page 18, line 4, *for* 'Kharzarwán' *read* 'Khazarwán.'
- Page 19, line 18, *for* 'Turkestán' *read* 'Turkistán.'
- Page 27, line 1, *delete* full stop *at end.*
 line 4 from bottom. 'There is actually a tribe existing to this day among the Elburz Mountains, or the fastnesses of ancient Hyrcania, which still bears the name Div Sapeed.' S. G. W. Benjamin, Persia and the Persians, p. 302.
- Page 29, note 1, *add* 'Vol. v, p. 116.'
- Page 61, line 9, *for* 'bears' *read* 'bear.'
- Page 69 line 20 *add* semicolon *at end.*
- Page 81, line 3 from bottom, *after* 'crystal' *insert reference number 9 and at bottom add* 'Ruins near Aivan-i-Kaif (Kai?) some forty miles South-east of Tihrán are still traditionally ascribed to Kai Káuś. See A. V. Williams Jackson. From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam, p. 123.'
- Page 89, line 25, end, *insert* comma.
 26 *after* 'Káuś' *insert* comma.
- Page 96, line 6 from bottom, *after* 'Zawára' *add reference number 1 and at bottom add* 'This is the first mention of Rustam's brother.'
- Page 97, line 5, *for* 'a Zam of' *read* 'Zam's stream with.'
 bottom, *delete* 'The name of a river' *and read* 'i.e. the Oxus.'
- Page 103, line 12, *for* 'What ever' *read* 'Whatever.'
- Page 118, bottom, *for* 'i, p. 236' *read* 'v, p. 30.'
- Page 119, bottom, *after* 'V' *insert* full stop.
- Page 121, line 21, *after* 'him' *insert reference number 1, and at bottom add* 'C. adds rightly :—
 They led him herdwads
 That they might have their portion from that steed ;
 As I have heard, he covered forty mares
 And one became with foal.
Cf. p. 128 and NIN, p. 45 note 1.'
- Page 157, line 7, *for* 'spoken' *read* 'unspoken.'
- Page 196, line 16, *for* 'heart and eyes' *read* 'Heart and Eyes.'
- Page 200, line 11, *for* 'she' *read* 'She.'
- Page 221, line 13, *for* 'unled' *read* 'unsoiled.'
- Page 224, end of last line, *insert reference number 1 and add at bottom* 'See pp. 38 seq., 88 seq.'
- Page 225, line 12, *for* 'All-righteous' *read* 'all-righteous.'
- Page 229, line 16, *for* 'Who' *read* 'who.' *and elsewhere.*

- Page 247, line 5 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' *when not absolute.*
- Page 252, line 4, for 'my' read 'mine.'
- Page 256, line 6 from bottom, for 'captisoned' read 'betrapped.'
- Page 257, line 2 from bottom, *delete full stop and insert comma at end.*
- Page 261, line 21 and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' *when not absolute.*
- Page 265, line 18, *delete comma at end.*
- Page 281, line 22, for 'Irán' read 'Túrán.'
- Page 285, line 1, for 'dressed' read 'drest.'
- Page 306, line 14, end, *insert semicolon.*
- Page 310, line 4 from bottom, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy.'
- Page 312, line 4 from bottom, after 'league' *insert comma.*
- Page 313, line 5 from bottom, end, *insert comma.*
4 from bottom after 'hearing' *insert comma.*
- Page 321, line 1, end, *add reference number 1.*
12, end, *add reference number 2.*
bottom, *insert* ' ¹ See p. 261. ² See p. 293.'
- Page 328, line 11, for 'Kalúr' read 'Kalú.'
- 5 from bottom, for 'blunt' read 'pointless.'
- 4 from bottom, for 'would go' read 'hunted,' and *insert full stop at end.*
- 3 from bottom, *delete* ' To hunt,' and for 'at' read 'At.'
- Page 341, line 8 from bottom, for 'Kawá' read 'Káwa.'
- Page 374, line 6 from bottom, end, *insert reference number 1.*
bottom, *insert* ' ¹ See p. 312.'
- Page 377, line 22, *insert reference number 1.*
bottom, *insert* ' ¹ See p. 273.'
- Page 384, line 7 from bottom, *delete comma and insert full stop at end.*
- Page 390, bottom, *delete " and insert " "*.
- Page 395, line 3, end, *insert reference number 1.*
bottom, *insert* ' See p. 363.'
- Page 412, last line, for 'toward' read 'tow'rd.'

VOLUME III.

- Page 3, line 24, end, *add* 'Kisari Mohan Ganguli and published by.'
- Page 14, line 30, end, *add reference number 5 and* 'The text also allows the view that Farúd dwelt on Mount Sapad. See Vol. v, p. 30.'
- Page 15, Note 1, end, *add* 'There was no difficulty in finding an additional rhyme without using 'Pashan.' 'Gashan' (much) rhymes with 'Pashan' in Vol. viii, p. 397 and note.
- Page 20, line 22, end, *add reference number 1, and at bottom* ' ¹ Cf. Vol. I, p. 61.'
- Page 36, line 8, for 'Tis' read 'Tis.'
- Page 45, line 23, for 'that' read 'thou.'

- Page 59, line 17 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
- Page 68, line 18, for 'stoneand' read 'stone and.'
- Page 83, note 2, end, add '(p. 10).'
- Page 84, line 7 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy' when not absolute.
- Page 102, line 22 for 'Omnipotent' read 'omnipotent.'
- Page 110, line 2 and elsewhere, for 'Who' read 'who.'
6, for 'Whom' read 'whom.'
- Page 130, line 11, add comma at end.
- Page 134, line 6, end, add !
line 15, end, add ''.
- Page 141, line 2 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' when not absolute.
- Page 148, note, for 'Pehlevan' read 'Pehlewan' and after 'donna' delete comma
- Page 151, line 4 from bottom, add full stop at end.
- Page 172, note, for 'Car' read 'car.'
- Page 191, line 12, for 'Abul' read 'Abu'l.'
- Page 194, line 8, for 'Khan' read 'Khân.'
- Page 213, line 22, for 'Oleader' read 'O leader.'
- Page 234, note, for 'Et' read 'et' and for 'comblan' read 'comblant.'
- Page 237, line 7, prefix ''.
- Page 241, line 22, delete 'far.'
- Page 251, note, for 'Sur' read 'sur.'
- Page 275, line 10, end, delete !
- Page 285, line 8 from bottom, for 'fraicheur' read 'fraîcheur.'
last line, add reference number 2.
- Page 287, side reference, for 'V. 1063' read 'V. 1065' and subsequent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1066,' 'V. 1067,' etc., up to page 305.
- Page 294, line 7, for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'
- Page 298, note, for 'La' read 'la.'
- Page 304, line 11, delete semicolon and insert comma.
- Page 305, line 25, add side reference 'V. 1086,' and read subsequent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1087,' 'V. 1088,' etc., up to page 356.
- Page 318, note, for 'Il' read 'il.'
- Page 328, line 12, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 348, line 15, add comma at end.

VOLUME IV.

- Page v, line 5, end, delete full stop and insert —
- Page ix, line 10, for 'wrath' read 'Wrath.'
- Page 8, line 10, end, add 'See Vol. vii, pp. 381, 422.'
- Page 31, line 6, delete comma and insert semicolon.
- Page 40, line 9, end, add reference number 1, and insert at bottom
' Cf. Vol. i, p. 386 and note.'

Page 85, note, *add reference number 1.*

Page 139, note 2, *add* 'It is interesting to find the dog appearing in the Fock of Tobit in which there are human elements. Cf. Vol. iii, p. 271 and *Encl. Brit.* 11th Ed., p. Tobit.'

Page 141, line 9, end, *delete* —

Page 143, line 6, from bottom, *insert comma at end.*

Page 144, line 8, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 150, line 8, *for* 'buffalos' *read* 'buffaloes.'

§3. There appears to be a doublet here as Afrásiyáb is first said to be beyond Jaz and then at Baigand, *i.e.*, in the neighbourhood first of the Jaxartes and then of the Oxus, but the context favours the latter position.

Page 155, line 10, *delete and insert* 'He ranged the army's centre and its wings.'

Page 250, line 1, *delete and insert* 'All filled with minstrelsy and harp and wine.'

bottom, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 259, line 7 from bottom, *delete* 'Barda', a cavern' *and insert* 'to Barda', one'

Page 262, note 2, *Add* 'The situation of Barda' would, however, make Lake Gokcha more appropriate. Cf. p. 259.'

Page 304, line 14, end, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 324, line 12 from bottom, *for* 'shore' *read* 'river', and at bottom *add note* '1 The Euphrates.'

Page 325, line 8 *after* 'city' *add reference number 1* and at bottom *add note* '1 Shúráb. Cf. Vol. vii, p. 254.'

Page 339, line 1, *for* 'sea' *read* 'river.'

Page 340, line 3, *for* 'sea' *read* 'stream.'

Page 344, line 16, *for* 'sea' *read* 'stream.'

25, *for* 'sea' *read* 'river.'

28, *for* 'sea' *read* 'stream.'

31, *for* 'sea' *read* 'stream.'

Page 340, line 18, end, *add reference number 1*, and at bottom *add note* '1 Cf. Vol. v, p. 233 note.'

VOLUME V.

Page 14, line 2 from bottom, end, *add reference number 11*, and at bottom '11 Spítáma seems to mean 'White.' See JZ, p. 13.'

Page 30, line 19, *for* 'Girdkuh' *read* 'Girdkúh.'

line 24, *add* 'It has been stated by an oriental authority that Dizh Gumbadán ('the Domed Fort') and Girdkúh were identical. See LEC, p. 365.'

Page 71, line 13, *for* 'his' *read* 'a.'

- Page 71, line 17, end, *add reference number 1 and at bottom '1 In Firdausi Nûsh Āzar is the son of Asfandiyār, but in Dakiki may of course be a brother and the one referred to above.'*
- Page 126, line 4, end, *add reference number 1 and at bottom '1 Cf. p. 233 note.'*
- Page 133, line 21, *for 'wisdon' read 'wisdom.'*
- Page 160, line 23, end, *add quotation mark.'*
- Page 161, last line, end, *insert full stop.*
- Page 214, line 14, end, *add quotation mark.'*
- Page 277, line 8, *insert full stop.*
6 from bottom, end, *insert semicolon.*
- Page 288, note 1, *add ' Cf. E.P. i, 256.'*

VOLUME VI.

- Page vi, line 3, *for 'Married' read 'married.'*
- Page ix, line 14, *for 'Rúmáns' read 'Rûmans.'*
- Page 3, line 8 from bottom, *delete 'Rustam.'*
7 from bottom, *for 'Chubína' read 'Chúbína.'*
4 from bottom, *for 'Shirwí' read 'Shírwí'*
- Page 6, line 21, *for 'Muller' read 'Müller.'*
- Page 15, line 10, *for 'legend' read 'Legend.'*
note 3, *add ' Cf. Vol. vii, p. 79.'*
- Page 17, line 1, *for 'Mukaffa' read 'Mukaffa''*
- Page 39, line 6 from bottom, end, *delete ? and insert !*
- Page 64, line 8, *for 'Ravi' read 'Rávi.'*
- Page 81, line 2, end, *insert hyphen.*
- Page 89, line 5, *for 'Married' read 'married.'*
- Page 98, line 14, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 133, line 4, end, *insert semicolon.*
- Page 135, line 12 from bottom, *read 'He must not privily devise.'*
10 from bottom, *for 'wise' read 'sage.'*
- Page 136, line 4, end, *insert !*
- Page 137, line 7, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 150, bottom line, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 154, line 13 from bottom, end, *insert full stop.*
- Page 161, line 20, end, *insert reference number 1.*
bottom, *insert note '1 Cf. Vol. i, pp. 118, 132.'*
- Page 207, line 7, *after 'above' insert ' (p. 195).'*
- Page 209, line 10, end, *insert reference number 2, and at bottom add note*
'2 Mohl, rightly according to Nöldeke (NIN, p. 26 and note), reads 'Sámánians' for 'Ashkánians.' The former claimed descent from Bahrám Chúbína.'
- Page 210, line 13 from bottom, end, *delete comma.*
- Page 212, note, *add ' Cf. p. 201.'*
- Page 231, line 4 from bottom, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 250, line 9 from bottom, *for 'Chubína' read 'Chúbína.'*
- Page 288, line 9, beginning, *delete ".*
- Page 291, line 10 from bottom, *after 'Oh' insert !*
- Page 292, line 1, end, *insert comma.*

- Page 296, line 9 from bottom, for 'Rāmāns' read 'Rīmāns.'
- Page 298, line 13 from bottom, for 'Pārs' read 'Pārs.'
- Page 304, bottom line, end, *insert* comma.
- Page 312, line 3, for 'respect' read 'respecteth' and for 'thou art' 'thou'rt.'
- Page 316, second note, *prefix* 2.
- Page 323, note, line 5 from bottom, end, *insert* comma.
- Page 327, line 7, for 'Ambar' read 'Ambār.'
- Page 327, line 8, for 'Abbasid' read 'Abbāsīd.'
- Page 330, note, for 'Shammas' read 'Shammās.'
- Page 372, line 2 from bottom, for 'the spring of' read 'a lake near.'
- bottom line, after 'birth-place' *add*, reference number 8, and at bottom *add* note 'The lake in question being the source of two rivers the expression 'Spring' used by Firdausī in connexion with it is not wholly inappropriate.'
- Page 376, line 7 from bottom, for 'great' read 'Great.'
- Page 387, line 12 from bottom, *prefix* ".
- Page 402, line 1, end, *insert* comma.

VOLUME VII.

- Page vii, line 4, for 'SASĀNĪAN' read 'SĀSĀNĪAN.'
- Page xi, line 13 from bottom, for 'Feasts' read 'Banquets.'
- Page 85, line 16 from bottom, *insert* comma at end.
- Page 85, line 17 from bottom, for 'Kharzarwān' read 'Khazarwān.'
- Page 95, line 18 end *delete* comma and *insert* semicolon.
- Page 106, line 15, after 'scabbards' *insert* comma.
- Page 110, line 15, for 'an as' read 'as an.'
- Page 118, line 11 from bottom, for 'Irān' read 'Īrān.'
- Page 155, line 9 from bottom, *delete* semicolon and *insert* comma.
- Page 156, line 6, after 'Hormisdas' *delete* comma and *insert* 'III.'
- Page 184, note, line 14 from bottom, after 'bunch' *delete* . and *insert* ?
- Page 185, bottom note, *prefix* 4.
- Page 207, heading, for 'KUBAD' read 'KUBĀD.'
- Page 209, line 2, after 'below' *insert* reference number 1, and at bottom *add* 'Cf. MHP, ii, 77, RH, Bk. iii, ch. 35 and note.'
- Page 209, line 3 from bottom, end, *delete* 1 and *insert* 2, and before note *delete* 1 and *insert* 2.
- Page 217, line 4 from bottom. Sura appears to be identical with Thapsacus of which Tīphsah (1 Kings, iv. 24) meaning probably 'ford' seems to have been the Hebrew form. The army of Cyrus the Younger in his expedition against his brother Artaxerxes II. (Mnemon) crossed the river there on foot. Xenophon, Anabasis, I, iv, 17.

- Page 227, line 5 from bottom, *after* 'crown' *insert* comma.
 Page 231, bottom line, *delete* full stop *and insert* comma.
 Page 239 and 247, heading, *read* 'NÜSHÍRWÂN.'
 Page 251, line 13 from bottom, *for* 'Garshasp' *read* 'Gashasp.'
 Page 263, line 6 from bottom, *delete* comma *and insert* semicolon.
 Page 275, bottom line, end, *insert* comma.
 Page 300, line 11, *insert* comma *after* 'For' *and* 'know.'
 Page 331, line 4, *delete* 'the' *and insert* 'from.'
 Page 348, line 20, *for* 'Sáhh' *read* 'Sháh.'
 Page 369, line 18, *for* 'frowning face' *read* 'looks afrown.'
 Page 395, line 10, *for* 'was' *read* 'were.'
 11, *for* 'were' *read* 'was.'
 Page 400, line 1, *for* 'crown' *read* 'treasure.'
 2, *for* 'treasure, *for* 'read' crown because.'
 Page 410, bottom line, *for* 'Almighty' *read* 'almighty.'

VOLUME VIII

- Page v, line 17, *for* 'answer' *read* 'Answer.'
 Page viii, line 13 from bottom, *add* 'to Caesar.'
 Page xv, line 20, *for* 'PCHAP' *read* 'HAP.'
 Page 72, line 21, *for* 'Khán's' *read* 'Khán's.'
 Page 91, note, *for* 'Parwiz' *read* 'Parwiz.'
 Page 122, line 14, *delete* first hyphen.
 Page 138, line 19, *delete* *id*.
 Page 143, line 10, *insert* comma *after* 'Letter' *and* 'Parmüda.'
 Page 147, line 11, *for* 'great' *read* 'Great.'
 Page 153, line 18, *delete* full stop *and insert* comma.
 Page 189, line 16, *for* 'Zab' *read* 'Záb.'
 Page 190, line 16, *for* 'Garabzin,' 'Galabzin' *read* 'Garábzin'
 'Galábzín'
 Page 191, line 12, according to Muir's 'The Life of Mohammad,'
 edited by T. H. Weir (1923), p. 431 *note*, the
 battle of Dhú Kár was fought A.D. 611.
 Page 192, note, *for* 'PCHAP' *read* 'HAP.'
 Page 205, line 6 from bottom, *after* 'take' *insert* reference number 1
 and at bottom add '1 See Vol. 5, p. 156 *note*.'
 Page 225, *justify* line 25.
 Page 265, line 22, *delete* full stop *and insert* comma.
 Page 270, line 5, *for* 'Luhrasp' *read* 'Luhrásp.'
 line 6, *for* 'Asfanfiyar' *read* 'Asfandiyár.'
 Page 272, line 1, *insert* comma *after* 'one.'
 Page 279, line 4 from bottom, *for* 'and readers of the stars' *read*
 'with the astrologers.'
 Page 285, line 5, *for* 'great' *read* 'Great.'
 Page 287, line 20, *for* 'achieved' *read* 'accomplished.'
 Page 313, line 21, end, *delete* full stop *and insert* comma.
 Page 317, line 2 from bottom, *delete* comma.
 Page 327, line 13, *for* 'brave' *read* 'Brave.'
 Page 328, bottom, *for* 'in haste' *read* 'with speed.'
 Page 343, bottom, *for* 'gory' *read* 'glory.'

Page 348, line 6 from bottom, *for* ' in a letter to the king.'
read ' to the monarch in a letter.'

Page 353, line 5, *for* ' If ' *read* ' It '

Page 362, line 11 from bottom, *delete* hyphen.

Page 374, line 8, *for* ' Ot ' *read* ' Of.'

Page 411, line 8, *for* ' the ' *read* ' thy.'

Page 421, line 12 from bottom, *for* ' Galínús ' *read* ' Galínúsh.'

GENERAL INDEX

This Index and the General Table of Contents in this volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Italics.

A

- AAISHMA DAÉVA, demon, iii., 272
 = Asmodeus probably, iii, 272
- Ábán, genius, iii, 287, 328
- 'Abbás, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
- 'Abbásid, 'Abbásids, Muhammadan dynasty, vi, 327
 rise of, i, 13
 fall of, i, 14
- Abbreviations, General List of, ix, 135
- Abdaas, bishop, vi, 372
- Abraham, patriarch, vi, 65
- Abtín (Áptya, Áthwya), mythical Iránian hero, husband of Farának and father of Farídún, ix, 53, 103
 legend of, i, 145
 Zakhák slays, i, 151, 153
 Farídún avenges, i, 170
 mythological origin of, i, 171, 172, 174
- Abú-'Alí Muhammad, Persian poet, Sháhnáma of, i, 69
- Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa (A.D. 632-4), i, 12, ix, 76
 begins war with Persian Empire, ix, 66
- Abú Dulaf, friend of Firdausí, i, 35
 assists Firdausí, i, 35
 reciter of the Sháhnáma, i, 39
- Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl bin Ahmad, minister of Mahmúd and perhaps a patron of Firdausí, i, 30, 100, iv, 141
 account of, i, 36
 disgrace of, may have affected Firdausí, i, 37
- Abú'l Fazl, minister under the Sámánids, father of Abú 'Alí al Bal'amí who translated Tabarí, vii, 430
 patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383
- Abú'l Kásim (Firdausí, *q.v.*), i, 24, 38, 99, 112, iv, 140, v, 89, 119, vi, 20, 207, viii, 28
- Abú'l Kásim of Gurgán, shaikh, iii, 191
 dream of, about Firdausí, iii, 191
- Abú' Muzaffar. *See* Nasr.
- Abú Mansúr bin Abdu'r Razzák, prince of Tús, i, 67 *seq.*, vi, 16
- Sháhnáma of, vi, 16
 probably compiled by Magi for, i, 69, viii, 71, 73
 importance of, for Firdausí, viii, 73.
- Abú Mansúr bin Muhammad, son of above (?), 139
 patron of Firdausí, i, 29, 110
 murdered, i, 29, 111
 praise of, i, 110
 advice of, to Firdausí, i, 111

- Abú Raihán Muhammad. *See* Albírúni.
- Abú Tálíb, uncle of Muhammad, i, 12
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 66
supersedes Khálid in Syria, ix, 66
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 67
made commander in Persian campaign, ix, 67
slain, ix, 67
- Accession of a Sháh, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Achaemenid, Achaemenids, the, first historical Persian dynasty, i, 64, v, 10, 281, vi, 194, 197, 198
- Achshunwar. *See* Akhshunwar.
- 'Ad, father of Shaddád, *q.v.*
Arab tribe, viii, 276
- 'Adan, seaport and territory in southern Arabia, vi, 386
- Ádar. *See* Ázar.
- Ádarbád, son of Mahraspand, Zoroastrian Saint, v, 16
note
ordeal of, v, 16 *note*
- Aden. *See* 'Adan.
- Adonis, iv, 315
- Ægean sea, vi, 204
- Afrásiyáb, son of Pashang, ruler of Túrán and one of the arch-enemies of Írán, 142-153, i, 42, 55, 72, ii, 11, 13, 14, 16 *seq.*, 20, 79, 81, 98 *seq.*, 118, 127, 149, 184, 189, 242 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 283, 286, 288, 322 *seq.*, 335, 347 *seq.*, 360 *seq.*, 369, 373, 380, 381, 386, 392 *seq.*, 401 *seq.*, iii, 8, 12, 13, 15, 23, 26, 27, 29, 40, 42, 47, 73, 76 *seq.*, 100, 108, 123, 134, 136, 143, 146, 152, 153, 164, 165, 170, 183, 185, 193, 200 *seq.*, 207 *seq.*, 211, 213, 218, 223, 228, 241, 260 *seq.*, 268, 271, 277 *seq.*, 285, 295, 298, 300, 320, 333, 337, 339, 340
- Afrásiyáb—*cont.*
seq., iv, 7, 8, 17, 19 *seq.*, 25, 29, 46, 56, 58 *seq.*, 65, 66, 70, 75, *seq.*, 83, 89, 93, 94, 96, 103, 108, 110, 113, 117, 128, 129, 145, 146, 150 *seq.*, 192 *seq.*, 235, 252, 253, 273, 287, 289, 294 v, 12, 13, 21, 44, 62, 176, 203, 208, vi, 15, 79, 177, 240 and *note*, vii, 330, 335, 337, 359, viii, 242, 300, 349, ix, 25, 103
one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
mythological origin of, i, 337
first mention of, in Sháh-náma, i, 342
advocates war with Naudar, i, 343
bidden by Pashang to invade Írán, i, 343
sends Shamásás and Khazarwán to invade Sístán, i, 345
marches to Dahistán, i, 346
writes to Pashang, i, 346
encourages Bármán to challenge the Íránians to single combat, i, 347
rewards Bármán, i, 348
fights with Naudar, i, 348 and *seq.*
encounters Káran, i, 350
victorious, i, 350, 352
beleaguers Naudar in Dahistán, i, 353
sends Kurúkhán to attack Párs, i, 353
takes Naudar and other chiefs prisoners, i, 355
hears of the death of Bármán and bids Wisa pursue Káran, i, 356
hears of the Turkman defeats, i, 362
sends for, and slays, Naudar, i, 362
spares the other captives at Ighrírás' request, i, 363

Afrásiyáb, imprisons the captives at Sarí, i, 363
 advances to Rai, i, 363
 wroth with, and slays, Igh-ríras, i, 367
 fights with Zál, i, 368
 Pashang's wrath with, i, 374
 invades Írán, i, 374 *seq.*, 381
 sends Kulún to intercept Rustam, i, 382
 fights with Arabs for Írán and takes it, ii, 92
 king of Túrán and Chín, ii, 69
 expelled from Írán by Kai Káuś and Rustam, ii, 101
 fights with the Seven Warriors, ii., 111 *seq.*
 nearly taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 14, 116, 354, iii, 242, 250 and *note*
 plot of, against Suhráb and Rustam, ii, 129
 gifts of, to Suhráb, ii, 130
 identical with Astyages in legend, ii, 191
 referred to, ii, 322, 347, 394, iii, 206, iv, 145, 150, 194
 invades Írán, ii, 224 *seq.*
 dream of, ii, 232, 243, 297, iv, 170, 267
 determines to sue for peace and sends hostages, ii, 235 *seq.*
 receives Zanga and consults Pírán, ii, 253 *seq.*
 sends Pírán to welcome Siyáwush, ii, 258
 plays at polo with Siyáwush, ii, 264
 marries Farangís to Siyáwush, ii, 275
 recalls Siyáwush, from Gang-dizh, ii, 285
 sends Garsiwaz to Siyáwushgird, ii, 289
 deceived by Garsiwaz respecting Siyáwush, ii, 296 *seq.*

Afrásiyáb, sends Garsiwaz to summon Siyáwush and Farangís to court, ii, 300 *seq.*
 attacks, takes, and has Siyáwush executed, ii, 314 *seq.*
 appealed to by Farangís, ii, 317
 ill-treatment of Farangís by, ii, 320, 322
 referred to, iv, 204
 appeal of Pírán to, ii, 324
 referred to, iv, 205
 spares Farangís, ii, 325, and her son Kai Khusrau, ii, 327
 interview of, with Kai Khusrau, ii, 332
 referred to, iv, 205
 sends Surkha against the Íránians, ii, 344
 marches to avenge Surkha, ii, 348
 fights with Tús, ii, 353
 rescue of, from Rustam by Húmán, ii, 354
 crosses the sea of Chín, ii, 356
 consults Pírán about Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
 returns, ii, 362
 vengeance of, on Írán, ii, 363
 pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 388 *seq.*
 disgraces Pírán, ii, 390
 turns back at the Jíhún, ii, 394
 Kai Khusrau's oath to take vengeance on, iii., 21
 hears of the approach of the Íránian host, iii, 71
 bids Pírán gather troops, iii, 71, 79
 numbers the host, iii, 79
 loss of kindred of, in battle, iii, 94
 rewards Pírán, iii, 106
 reinforces Pírán, iii, 118

- Afrásiyáb, announces to his chiefs the defeat of his host, iii, 242
 exhorted by his host to continue the war, iii, 243, 249
 makes his preparations, iii, 243, 250
 sends Farghár to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
 consults with Shída, iii, 250
 describes Rustam, iii, 251
 receives Farghár's report, iii, 253
 consults with Pírán, iii, 253
 bids Pírán continue the war, iii, 254
 sends Shída to summon Púládward, iii, 255
 consults Púládward, iii, 256
 interferes in the fight between Rustam and Púládward, iii, 263
 withdraws to Chín and Máchín, iii, 265
 goes in pursuit of Rustam and is defeated, iii, 280
 hears of the case of Bízhan and Manízha iii, 301
 consults Kurákhán, iii, 301
 sends Garsíwaz to search Manízha's palace, iii, 301
 sentences Bízhan to death, iii, 304
 respites Bízhan, iii, 308
 imprisons Bízhan, iii, 309
 disgraces Manízha, iii, 309
 escapes from Rustam, iii, 348
 bids Pírán prepare for war, iii, 349
 arrays the host against Rustam, iii, 350
 flees from Rustam, iii, 352
 goes to Khallukh, iv, 10
 addresses his nobles, iv, 10
 sends Shída to Kharazm, iv, 11.
 Pírán against Írán, iv, 11
 reinforcements and bids him break off negotiations with Gív, iv, 20
- Afrásiyáb, receives tidings from Pírán, iv, 77
 =king of Gang, iv, 134
 Kai Khusrau's great war with, 152, iv, 135 *seq.*
 encamped at Baigand (Kunduz), iv, 151
 hears ill tidings of Pírán and of the host, iv, 151
 distress of, iv, 152
 swears to be avenged on Kai Khusrau, iv, 152
 hears of the advance of Kai Khusrau, iv, 153
 harangues and equips his host, iv, 153
 patrols the Jíhún with boats, iv, 153
 holds a council, summons Kurákhán, and crosses the Jíhún, iv, 154
 sends Kurákhán with half the host to Bukhára, iv, 154
 marches to Ámwí, iv, 154
 encamps in Gilán, iv, 155
 arrays his host, iv, 155
 takes his post at the centre, iv, 155
 gives Shída command of the left wing, iv, 155
 sends Jahn to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155
 gives a grandson command of the right wing, iv, 156
 commands to Gurdgír, Nastúh, Ighrírás, and Garsíwaz, iv, 156
 proposes to invade Nímruz, iv, 156
 reviews the host and prepares to encounter Kai Khusrau, iv, 158
 urged by Shída not to delay the attack, iv, 159
 reply of, iv, 160
 wishes to meet Kai Khusrau in single combat, iv, 161
 sends Shída on an embassy to Kai Khusrau, iv, 161

Afrásiyáb, hears of Shída's death, iv, 176
 grief of, iv, 176
 commands in person against Kai Khusrau, iv, 179
 sends Jahn to the left, iv, 180
 reinforced by Garsíwaz, iv, 181
 forced by Garsíwaz and Jahn to quit the field, iv, 182
 returns to camp, iv, 183
 abandons his camp and recrosses the Jíhún, iv, 184
 joins forces with Kurákhán, iv, 186
 stays at Bukhárá, iv, 186
 withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 187
 reinforced by Kákula, iv, 188
 sends troops to Chách, iv, 188
 under Tawurg desertward, iv, 188
 marches to meet Kai Khusrau, iv, 190
 commands the centre, iv, 190
 hears of Kurákhán's defeat and return, iv, 193
 hears that Rustam is advancing, iv, 194
 fails in attempt to surprise Rustam and withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 194, *seq.*
 asks aid from the Faghfúr, iv, 196
 prepares Gang-bihisht for a siege, iv, 197
 besieged in Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
 offers terms of peace to Kai Khusrau, iv, 203
 rallies his troops at the storming of Gang-bihisht, iv, 209
 escapes, iv, 211
 gets possession of the treasures of Pirán, iv, 210

Afrásiyáb, arrays his host to fight with Kai Khusrau, iv, 220
 offers Kai Khusrau peace or single combat, iv, 221
 fights a general engagement against Kai Khusrau, iv, 223, 226
 defeated and escapes by flight, iv, 227
 army, of, surrenders to Kai Khusrau, iv, 228
 takes refuge at Gang-dizh, iv, 230
 captive kindred of, sent to Kai Káuś by Kai Khusrau, iv, 232
 Kai Káuś on, iv, 237
 Khusrau's inquiries concerning, iv, 247
 hears of Kai Khusrau's approach and quits Gang-dizh, iv, 248
 searched for by Kai Khusrau, iv, 248
 fears of the Íránians concerning, iv, 249
 Kai Khusrau takes counsel with Kai Káuś about, iv, 258
 wanderings and wretched plight of, iv, 259
 takes refuge in a cave near Barda', iv, 259
 lament of, overheard by Húm, iv, 260
 capture of, by Húm, iv, 261
 Darmesteter on, iv, 136
 pitied and unbound by Húm, iv, 262
 escapes into lake Urumiah, iv, 262 and *note*
 attracted by the voice of Garsíwaz, iv, 265
 holds converse with Garsíwaz, iv, 266
 recapture of, by Húm, iv, 266
 slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 268

- Afrásiyáb, daughter of = Farangís, iv, 304
 Khán of Chín descended from, vii, 334
 hoard of, viii, 148, 406
- Africa, vi, 30
- Áfrigh, king of Khárazm, ii, 190
- 'Afrít, genie, i, 42
- Agani, Sargon I. of, v, 293
- Age, old, Firdausí's lament over his, ii, 336
 Golden. *See* Golden.
- Aghraératha (Ighrírás, *q.v.*), iv, 137
- Aghrérad (Ighrírás, *q.v.*), i, 338
- Aghrírás. *See* Ighrírás.
- Agni, Vedic personification of fire, ii, 25
- Ahdnámak (Andarznámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257
- Ahmad, son of Ismá'íl, Sámánid, vii, 383
- Ahmad, son of Sahl, lord of Marv, v, 260, 261
- Ahmad, Fazl son of. *See* Ábú'l 'Abbás Fazl.
- Ahmad Hasan Maimandí, minister of Mahmúd, i, 32, 39, 45
- Ahmad ibn Muhammad, patron of Firdausí, i, 29
- Ahran, Rúman chief, 154, iv, 342 *seq.*, 353
 bidden by Caesar to slay the dragon of Mount Sakíla, iv, 342
 takes counsel with Mírín, iv, 342
 referred by Mírín to Hishwí, iv, 344
- Ahran, required by Gushtásp to furnish him with arms, iv, 345
 goes with Gushtásp and Hishwí to Mount Sakíla, iv, 346
- Hishwí and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 347
 gives gifts to Gushtásp, iv, 347
- Ahran, has the dead dragon conveyed to Caesar's court, iv, 348
 marries Caesar's third daughter, iv, 348
- Mírín and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
- Caesar's wrath with Mírín and, iv, 351
- Mírín and, send a scornful message to Caesar, iv, 353
 set to guard the baggage, iv, 355
- Áhriman, the Zoroastrian Evil Principle, sometimes used metaphorically, 139, i, 5, 6, 50, 134, 138, 159, 194, 205, 218, 236, 238, 241, 245, 287, 315, 360; ii, 34, 42, 43, 51, 53, 56, 78, 160, 208, 214, 217, 250, 260, 303, 315, 324, 358, 361, 374 *seq.*, 405 *seq.*; iii, 17, 123, 214, 228, 251, 266, 275, 277, 287, 293, 294, 300, 303, 304, 314, 316, 318, 338; iv, 23, 41 *seq.*, 45, 46, 89, 103, 124, 128, 130, 162, 163, 179, 206, 243, 272, 288, 342, 348, 352; v, 17, 33, 36, 45, 50, 90, 99, 103, 122, 123, 125, 147, 177, 198, 206, 246, 271, 276; vi, 106, 112, 206, 240, 281, 290, 299, 318, 384; vii, 89, 233, 265, 271, 290, 312, 323, 334, 359, 366, 367, 369; viii, 19, 21, 22, 86, 87, 176, 177, 198, 210, 219, 243, 293, 333, 364, 421; ix, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91
 envies Gaiúmart, i, 118
 son of (the Black Dív), i, 119
 Surúsh warns Gaiúmart against, i, 119
 ridden by Tahmúras, i, 125, 127
 =Zahhák, i, 162
 =Salm and Túr, i, 194

- Áhriman=Afrásiyáb, i, 366
 Faith of, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
 = idolater, viii, 54
 = Bandwi or Gustaham, viii, 89
 = Kharrád, son of Barzín, viii, 111
 = Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 295
 Ahuna Vairya, Zoroastrian sacred formula, v, 17
 Ahura Mazda (Urmuzd), the Zoroastrian Good Principle, i, 116, 235; ii, 2581; iv, 137
 Alhwáz, city and province (Khúzistán, Susiana), i, 280; vi, 35, 199, 298, 357; vii, 197, 198, 201, 214, 224; viii 400, 402
 Airán-végó (Írán-vej *q.v.*), ii, 189
 Akem Manau, Zoroastrian demon, iii, 271, 272
 =Akúmán=Akwán, iii 272
 assails Zarduhsht v, 17
 Akesines (Chináb), Indian river, vi, 31, 64
 Akhást, Túránian hero, 151; iv, 105
 chosen to fight with Zanga, iv, 97
 slain by Zanga, iv, 106
 Akhshunwar (Achshunwar), Haitálian king, vii, 160
 Akki, foster-father of Sargon I of Agani, v, 293
 Aknaton, Pharaoh (XVIII dynasty)
 lover of peace like Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371
 'Akr Babil, prison, viii, 194, 196
 Akúmán. *See* Akem Manau.
 Akwán, dív, 150, iii, 270 *seq.*, 280 *seq.*, 284, 309
 Story of, iii, 271
 Professor Nöldeke on the, iii, 271
 Firdausí on, iii, 273, 281
 boulder of, iii, 271, 276, 309, 343, 344, 347
 removed from pit's mouth by Rustam, iii, 345
 Akwán, appears in the form of an onager, iii, 273 *seq.*
 pursued by Rustam, iii, 275
 foils Rustam, iii, 276
 takes Rustam at a disadvantage, iii, 276
 offers Rustam a choice of deaths, iii, 277
 outwitted by Rustam, iii, 277
 slain by Rustam, iii, 281
 described by Rustam, iii, 282
 Ál, place, ix, 93
 Aláns (Alani), people, now the Ossetes of the Caucasus, 141, 167, i, 217; iv, 14, 60, 65, 301; vi, 395; viii, 369
 invade Írán, i, 19
 castle of the, i, 223
 taken by Káran, i, 223, *seq.*
 castellan of, duped by Káran, i, 224
 monarch of, vi, 395
 Núshirwán's dealings with, vii, 216, 239 *seq.*
 King of=Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 208, 209, 213
 Alár, a village in Ardshír-Khurra *q.v.*, vi, 205
 Albírúní, Abú Raihán Muhammad, Oriental author and chronologist (A.D. 973-1048), ii, 189
 account of Alfír (Gangdizh ?) by, ii, 190
 Alburz, mountain-range south of the Caspian, also mythical range (Hara-bere-zaiti) surrounding the earth, 142, i, 4, 71, 145, 158, 235, 248, 250, 277, 298, 351, 373; ii, 11, 23, 27, 79, 96, 144, 336, 401; iii, 120; iv, 136; v, 202; vii, 177; ix, 95
 Farídún taken by his mother to, i, 152
 Zál cast away, and found, upon, i, 241 *seq.*

- Alburz, Kai Kubád brought by Rustam from, i, 382 *seq.*
 Kai Káu's buildings on, ii, 81
- Aleppo (Chalybon - Beroea), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41
- Alexander I, king of Epirus
 Italian expedition of, vi, 12
 attributed to Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Alexander the Great (Sikandar *q.v.*), B.C. 356-323, son of Philip II of Macedon and his queen Olympias, i, 14, 49; ii, 8 *seq.*; iv, 314; v, 30; vi, 193, 194, 204, 252, 253, 373; vii, 383
 barrier of, i, 16; vi, 78
 legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78
 persecutor of Zoroastrianism, i, 15, 59, 61, 63, 338
 paternity of, i, 55 and *note*; vi, 16, 18
 one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
 said to have burnt the Zoroastrian scriptures, i, 63
 Zoroastrianism under, i, 63
 Era of, ii, 190
 accompanied by experts to the East, vi, 11
 Romance of, origin and growth of, vi, 12 *seq.*
 diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Syriac Christian Legend of, *See* Syriac.
- Muhammad's references to, in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
 Persian national hero, how he became, vi, 15
 cities founded by, vi, 13, 18
 name, Persian legend of his, vi, 19
- Aristotle, tutor of, vi, 29
 letter to, vi, 68
 correspondence about the succession with, vi, 81
- Alexander the Great, Roxana (Rúshanak) and, vi, 30, 32
 reign of, first years of, in history and romance, vi, 30
 Darius' banquet, his flight from, vi, 30
 his pursuit of, vi, 31
 murderers of, his treatment of them in history and romance, vi, 32, 33
 daughter of, marries, vi, 33
- Fakírs and, vi, 61
- Calanus and, vi, 61
- Porus and, historical account of, vi, 63
 camp of, his visit to, vi, 64
 iron steeds, his device of, vi, 64
 stature of, vi, 64
- Cleopis and, vi, 65
- Ammon, Oasis of, his visit to, vi, 65
- Candace (Kaidáfa) and, vi, 65 *seq.*
- Antigonus (Naitkún), assumes name of, vi, 66
- Plutarch's Life of, vi, 67
- Brahmans, visit of, to the, vi, 67
- Indus mistaken for the Nile by, vi, 68
- marvels of his return-journey, vi, 69
- admiral of (Nearchus), vi, 69
- Amazons and, vi, 12, 72
 legend of, vi, 72
- Gloom and Fount of Life, legend of his expedition to, in the Pseudo-Calisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
- Andreas, his cook, legend of, vi, 76
 in the Kurán, vi, 77
- Will of, vi, 81
 death of, vi, 82
 dispute over his place of interment, vi, 82
 corpse of, taken to Memphis, vi, 82

- Alexander, the Great, interred at
 Alexandria, vi, 82
 tomb of, vi, 82
 Mas'údí on, vi, 82
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
 wars on the death of, vi,
 197
- Alexander, son of Alexander the
 Great and Cleophis (?), vi,
 65
- Alexandria (Iskandariya *q.v.*),
 city and sea-port in
 Egypt, vi, 13, 15, 17, 83
 founded by Alexander the
 Great, vi, 13
 Pseudo-Callisthenes orig-
 inated at, vi, 13
 Alexander, the Great, buried
 at, vi, 82
 his tomb at, vi, 82
 Mas'údí on, vi, 82
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
- Alfír (Gangdizh ?), palace-fort-
 tress of the capital of
 Khárazm, ii, 190
- Al Hadr. *See* Hatra.
- 'Alí, husband of Fátima, daugh-
 ter of Muhammad, and
 fourth Khalífa (A.D. 656
 —661)
 Muhammad on, i, 12, 106
 cult of, i, 13
 known as "the Lion," i, 13,
 107
 assassination of, i, 13
 Firdausí's references to, i,
 24, 37, 40, 41, 106, 107;
 ii, 337 and *note*
- 'Alí, the Dílomite, friend and
 helper of Firdausí, i, 35;
 ix, 121
 transcriber of the Sháh-
 náma, i, 39
- Alif, terminal, Firdausí's use of,
 iii, 283
- Al Iskandarús. *See* Halai.
- Al Khidr (Khizr *q.v.*), the Green
 Prophet, vi, 78 and *note*
- Alkús, Túránian hero, ii, 114
- Alkús, fights with, and worsts,
 Zawára, ii, 115
 slain by Rustam, ii, 115
- Allah, Muhammadan name of
 the Deity, i, 50
- Al Mansúr, 'Abbásid Khalífa
 (A.D. 754-775), founder of
 Baghdád, vi, 254
- Almás, river, iii, 251
- Alp-Arselan (Arslán), Seljúk Sul-
 tán (A.D. 1063-1073), ii,
 219 *note*
- Alptigín, founder of the Ghazni-
 vid dynasty, i, 20
- Altúniya, place, ix, 92
- Alwá, Rustam's spear-bearer,
 slain by Kámús, 149,
 iii, 188
- Alwá, Íránian hero, probably
 identical with the above,
 v, 166
 slain by Núsh Ázar, v,
 226
- Amasis, viii, 193
- Amazons, their disputed visit to
 Alexander, the Great, vi,
 12, 72
 origin of, vi, 71
 described, vi, 153 *seq.*
- Sikandar's correspondence
 with, and visit to, vi, 153
seq.
- Ambár (Anbár, Pírúz - Shápúr),
 city on the left bank of
 the Euphrates some forty
 miles west of Baghdád,
 founded by Shápúr son of
 Urmuzd (Sapor II.) The
 word means "granaries."
 vi, 327; viii, 188
 foundation of, attributed to
 the Azdites, i, 11
- Ambassadors, instances of kings
 and chiefs going in person
 as ambassadors or spies,
 vi, 325
- Ambúh, place, iii, 41
- Amen-Ra, Egyptian god per-
 sonated by Nectanebus,
 vi, 16

- Ameshapentas, the, personifications of good qualities in Zoroastrian theology, iii, 271; v, 15 *seq.*
- Amida (Diyárbakr), city on the upper Tigris, vii, 187
- Amín, 'Abbásid Khalífa, (A.D. 809-813), i, 14
- Ammianus Marcellinus (4th century A.D.) Roman historian, v, 13
- Ammon, Oasis of, Alexander the Great's visit to, vi, 30, 65
- 'Ammúriya, Rúman stronghold in Asia Minor between Sívrí Hisár and Ak-Shahr probably representing the ancient Amorium but sometimes confounded with Angora (Angúriya) the ancient Ancyra further to the north-east, vi, 23 *note*, 89, viii, 46 (*Cf.* LEC. pp. 134, 153)
- Failakús marches from, against Dáráb, vi, 23
- Amorium. *See* 'Ammúriya.
- Amr, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
- Ámul, city in Mázandarán, i, 145, 177, 289, 298, 344, 366, 367; ii, 18, 104; v, 284; vii, 89, 237; viii, 355, 356, 358, 392; ix, 86
- Ámul. *See* Ámwí.
- Amulet, of Kai Khusrau, iv, 133 given by Zarduhsht to Asfandiyár, v, 130
- Ámwí (Ámul, Amúyah, now Charjúí), city on the left bank of the Oxus where crossed by the route from Marv to Bukhárá, iv, 11, 65, 154, 184, 206; vii, 91 and *note*, 331, 357, 359; viii, 354
- Ánábdeh, vi, 32
- Anæsthetics, employment of, i, 236, 321 *seq.*
- Anbár. *See* Ambár.
- Ancyra. *See* Ammúriya.
- Andalús (Land of the West *or* of the Vandals), Spain, 159, vi, 66, 122, 138 queen of (Kaidáfa *q.v.*), vi, 121 *seq.*
- Andamán, Íránian noble, viii, 202
- Andaráb, town in Afghánistán between Balkh and Kábul, iv, 65
- Andarímán, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 264; iv, 26; v, 29 fights with Gustaham, iv, 87 steed of, slain by Hajír, iv, 87 rescued by the Turkmans, iv, 87 chosen to fight with Gurgín, iv, 97 slain by Gurgín, iv, 104
- Andarímán (Vandaremaini), brother of Arjâsp, v, 12, 141, 155 commands one wing of the host, v, 46 executed by Asfandiyár, v, 158
- Andarznámak (Ahdnámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257
- Andív, country, viii, 313
- Andiyán, Íránian warrior, 172 viii, 225, 257, 259, 269, 293, 294, 296 deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 273
- Bahrám Chúbina writes to, viii, 285 receives Kirmán, viii, 313
- Andreantiscus, sea, vi, 77
- Andreas, Alexander the Great's cook, legend of, vi, 76 *seq.* in Kurán, vi, 77
- Androphagoi, the, iii, 191
- Anestres Castri=Núshírwán, vii, 383
- Angora. *See* 'Ammúriya.
- Angra Mainyu=Áhriman, ii, 28
- Animals, domestication of, i, 126
- Ant, the, Firdausí's plea for, i, 201 and *note*

- Antákiya (Antioch), city in Syria on the Orontes, 167, viii, 41
taken by Núshirwán, vii, 218, 258 *seq.*
- Antigonus (Naikún), name assumed by Alexander the Great in legend, vi, 66
- Antioch. *See* Antákiya.
New, vii, 218, 259
- Antiochus, Macedonian general, vi, 76
- Antiochus Sidetes, ii, 80, 81
- Aogemaide, Pahlaví treatise, iv, 130
- Antipater, regent in Macedonia for Alexander the Great, intrigued against by Olympias, vi, 82
- Aphrodite, goddess, iv, 315
- Apollo, god, and the Python, vi, 203
- Apologues, i, 242, 265, 285; iii, 332; iv, 18, 21, 28, 47; vi, 310; ix, 86
- Apothegms, i, 259, 260; ii, 157, 158, 170, 224, 254, 273, 298, 300, 313, 315, 330, 357, 383; iii, 53, 91, 96, 167, 188, 212, 260, 277, 301, 316, 341, 348, 350, 351; iv, 13, 32, 33, 38, 39, 59, 93, 108, 121, 131, 268; v, 78, 105, 168, 214, 242, 249, 250, 265; vi, 50, 303, 343; vii, 17, 18, 20, 42, 270, 277, 296, 301, 403; viii, 119, 166, 206, 215, 221, 235, 295; ix, 87, 88, 110
- Apprentice, a merchant's, entertains, and finds favour with, Bahrám Gúr, vii, 40 *seq.*
- Apries (Pharoah-Hophra, B.C. 589-570), vi, 16
- Apsheeron, peninsula on the western shore of the Caspian, i, 58, *note*
- Áptya. *See* Abtín.
- Arab, Arabs, 162, 163, ii, 79, 81, 99; iii, 14; iv, 14; v, 31; vi, 66, 171, 209, 254, 321 *seq.*, 377, 385, 396, 398, 402, 406; vii, 10, 107, 201, 219, 244, 245, 247; viii, 67, 94, 188, 190, 191, 208, 230, 241, 250, 251; ix, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92, 94 *seq.*, 114, 117
migration of, northward, i, 11
raids of, into Persian territory, i, 12; vi, 17, 21, 322
domination of, over Írán, i, 12 *seq.*
king=Mardás, i, 135
=Zahhák, i, 139, 275
rebellion of, against Kai Káuś, ii, 83
Afrásiyáb fights with, for Írán, ii, 92
Daráb demands tribute from vi, 22
steed, i, 243, 251, 290; vi, 380; viii, 126, 302; ix, 11
cymbal, vi, 244
invasion of, viii, 72, 93; ix, 3, 65 *seq.*
withdraw, viii, 96
sage, sages, vii, 406
quoted, vii, 277
tribes, ix, 65
triumph of, over Dhú Kár, ix, 66
chieftain, incites Abú Bakr to invade Persia, ix, 66
concentrate at Kádisiya, ix, 67
booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), ix, 68
annex Mesopotamia, ix, 68
Khúzistán, ix, 68
='Umar, ix, 72
seal, ix, 82
=Sa'ad, ix, 84
defeated, ix, 85
Núshirwán's dream of, viii, 66 *seq.*, ix, 92

- Arabia, ii, 100; vi, 70, 72, 206,
 322, 355; viii, 24 *note*
 trade of, ancient, i, 11
 Írán and, the portion of
 Íraj, i, 189
 Shápúr son of Urmuzd's
 expedition to, vi, 322
 Arabian, Arabians, vi, 378, 388,
 ix, 74, 85
 Faith, vi, 95
 Nights, i, 51; vi, 71, 78, 250;
 vii, 317
 provenance of, vi, 250;
 vii, 3
 quoted, vi, 73
 Arabic, language, i, 32; vi,
 147, 205; viii, 73; ix,
 81
 infrequent in Sháhnáma, i,
 47
 versions of Pahlaví texts, vi,
 255 *seq.*
 Fables of Bidpai (Kalíla and
 Dimna) translated into,
 vii, 382, 430
 Tabarí. *See* Tabarí.
 Arachosia, the district about
 Kandahar, vi, 32
 Aragán (Rámkubád), town, vii,
 188
 Aral Sea, i, 57 *note*; iii, 10
 Arar tree, vi, 19
 Aras (Araxes), river in Ázar-
 báiján, v, 13, 14
 confused with the Oxus, i,
 71, 370
 Árash, king of the Khúzians
 q.v., iv, 146, 148
 Árash, son of Kai Kubád. *See*
 Kai Árash.
 Árash, Ashkánian king, vi, 197,
 210
 Árash, Íránian chief, vi, 394
 Arash, city. *See* Hulwán.
 Arastális (Aristotle *q.v.*), 160,
 vi, 35
 counsels Sikandar, vi, 179
 sentences of, over the coffin
 of Sikandar, vi, 185
 Árasti, uncle of Zarduhsht (Zor-
 oaster), v, 17
 Araxes (Aras *q.v.*), battle of, viii,
 76
 Árayish-i-Rúm (Hierapolis), city
 in northern Syria, west
 of the Euphrates and
 north of Aleppo, vii, 217,
 218, 254; viii, 188
 taken by Núshírwán, vii,
 255
 Arba, river, viii, 194, 195
 Archer, iv, 179
 constellation, v, 86
 Archery, i, 263, 297, 312, 359;
 ii, 163, 266, 293, 328;
 iii, 53 *seq.*, 74, 93, 98 *seq.*,
 179 *seq.*, 246; iv, 38, 48,
 99, 101, 102, 104, 107, 122,
 179, 338; v, 111, 122,
 229, 239 *seq.*, 272; vi,
 379, 383 *seq.*; vii, 54,
 55, 80, 118, 122, 125
 Archimages, 141, 168, 170, 176
 Architect, Rúman, and Khusrau
 Parwíz, viii, 401 *seq.*
 Architecture, invention of, i,
 129, 133
 Archscribe, 171. *See* Ízid Gas-
 hasp and Mihrán.
 Ard, day, i, 88, *q.v.*, ii, 287; iv,
 252; vi, 298, 390 and
 note; vii, 112; ix, 70,
 122
 Sháhnáma finished on the
 day of, i, 24
 Ardabíl (Bádán - Pírúz *q.v.*), city
 in Ázarbáiján, ii, 336, 405,
 iv, 147, 188; vii, 89, 163,
 224; viii, 93, 99, 100,
 184, 226
 Ardawán, Bahráam, Artabanus
 III or IV, the last Ash-
 kánian (Parthian) king,
 160, 161, vi, 3, 205, 214
 seq., 254 *seq.*, viii, 214, 285
 Macrinus, his war and treaty
 with, i, 81
 effect of, on Persian coin-
 age, i, 81
 =Bahráam, vi, 197, 210
 status of, in Persian tradi-
 tion, vi, 201

- Ardawán, daughter of 161, vi, 202
 marries Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202, 229
 incited by her brother Bahman to poison Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259
 condemned to death, vi, 260
 saved by Ardshír Pápakán's minister, vi, 260
 gives birth to Shápúr, vi, 261
 restored to favour, vi, 265
 writes to Pápak, vi, 214
 summons Ardshír Pápakán to court, vi, 214
 receives gifts from Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215
 highly esteems Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215
 sons of, vi, 215, 255, 267
note
 their fate, vi, 228, 229 and *note*, 259
 disgraces Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 216
 Ardshír Pápakán intrigues with slave-girl of, 160, vi, 201, 217 *seq.*
 eldest son of, made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*
 consults the astrologers, vi, 218
 Ardshír Pápakán, vainly pursued by, vi, 221 *seq.*
 returns to Rai, vi, 223
 writes to his son about Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223
 Ardshír Pápakán marches against, vi, 227
 prepares to encounter Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
 defeated, captured by Khar-rád, and slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 228
 buried by Tabák, vi, 229
 palace of, at Rai spared (?) by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 229 and *note*
- Ardawán, secretary of, slain by Shápúr, vi, 256
 = Mihrak = Mithrak = Mádik (?), vi, 256
 Ardíbihisht, ameshaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286, 328
 month, i, 82; v, 16, 39, 92 *note*
 Ardshír, son of Bízhan, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Ardshír, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26, 51
 death of, foretold by Jám-ásp, v, 49
 slain, v, 57
 Ardshír, Iránian hero, perhaps the son of Bízhan, *supra*
 tells Nastúr where to find Zarír, v, 67
 takes Farámarz prisoner, v, 288
 Ardshír (Bahman *q.v.*), Sháh, vi, 213, 271 and *note*
 meaning of, v, 259 and *note*
 Ardshír (Artaxerxes II), brother of Shápúr, Sásanian Sháh, 163, vi, 3, 328
 Shápúr arranges for the succession with, vi, 360 *seq.*
 title of, vi, 364
 abdication of, vi, 364
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.*, Pírúz, vii, 179 *seq.*
 released by Khúshnawáz, vii, 180
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333, 337, 342
 discourse of, vii, 305
 questions Búzurjmihr, vii, 308
 Ardshír Khurra (Khurra - i - Ardshír), city, (Gúr or Júr, now Fírúzábád), and district in Párs, vi, 199, 205, 206, 229 and *note*, 231, 241, 245; vii, 206; viii, 251, 252, 412 and *note*

Ardshír Khurra, city, Ardshír Pápakán builds a Fire-temple in, vi, 230
 makes irrigation-works in, vi, 230
 meaning of, vi, 290 *note*
 Ardshír Pápakán (Artaxerxes I), Sháh and founder of the Sásánian dynasty, 160, 161; i, 42; ii, 10; v, 10; vi, 193, 209 *note*, 213 *seq.*, 294 *seq.*, 393, 397, 315, 322, 325, 405; vii, 79, 185, 212; viii, 191, 214, 222, 265, 270, 285, 392, 393; ix, 105, 109, 111
 Notes on, vi, 193 *seq.*, 254 *seq.*
 finds a new national dynasty, restores Zoroastrianism, and collects its scriptures, i, 62 *seq.*
 genealogical table of his descendants, vi, 3
 rise of, compared to that of Cyrus the Great, vi, 194
 Tabarí's account of, vi, 198
 legend of Cyrus the Great transferred to, vi, 195
 birth of, vi, 213
 summoned to court by Ardawán, vi, 214
 equipped by Pápak, vi, 214
 presents gifts to Ardawán, vi, 215
 Ardawán favours, vi, 215
 prowess of, in the chase, vi, 215
 disgraced, vi, 216
 writes to Pápak, vi, 216
 advised by Pápak, vi, 216
 intrigues with Gulnár, vi, 217 *seq.*
 hears from Gulnár of the presage of the astrologers, vi, 219
 flees with Gulnár to Párs, vi, 220 *seq.*
 followed by the divine Grace in the form of a mountain-sheep, i, 374; vi, 221 *seq.*

Ardshír Pápakán, adherents flock to, vi, 223
 addresses his supporters, vi, 224
 founds a city, vi, 202, 224
 receives promises of help, vi, 224
 joined by Tabák, vi, 225
 Tabák and, defeat Bahman, son of Ardawán, vi, 226
 marches from Párs against Ardawán, vi, 227
 defeats and slays Ardawán, vi, 228
 as recorded in Kárnámak, vi, 202
 gives the spoil to the troops, vi, 229
 spares (?) Ardawán's palace at Rai, vi, 229 and *note*
 Tabák counsels, vi, 229
 marriage of, with Ardawán's daughter, vi, 202, 229, 259
 returns to Párs, vi, 229
 builds Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi, 229 and *note*
 irrigation-works of, at Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi, 230
 war of, with the Kurds, vi, 196, 230 *seq.*
 and Haftwád, vi, 236 *seq.*
 message sent by arrow to, vi, 238
 worsted by Haftwád and entertained and counselled by two youths, vi, 239 *seq.*
 slays Mihrak, vi, 241
 marches to attack the Worm, vi, 241
 gives instructions to Shahr-gír, vi, 241
 stratagem of, against the Worm, vi, 242
 slays the Worm and its attendants, vi, 244
 summons Shahr-gír, vi, 244 and *note*
 takes Haftwád's stronghold, vi, 244

- Ardshír Pápakán, defeats and slays Haftwád and Sháh-wí, vi, 245
 carries off the spoil, vi, 245
 builds a Fire-temple, vi, 245
 rewards the two youths, vi, 245
 invasion of Kirmán by, vi, 205, 245
 goes to Taisafún, vi, 245
 principles of government of, vi, 250, 273 *seq.*, 286 *seq.*
 Reign of, 161, vi, 254 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 254
 length of, vi, 254
 Tabarí on, vi, 254
 coins of, vi, 256, 257, 265
 Shápúr crowned by, vi, 257
 cities of, vi, 257
 prophecy of, vi, 257
 enthroned at Baghdád, vi, 258
 title of King of kings of, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
 inaugural address of, vi, 258
 daughter of Ardawán and, stories of, vi, 255
 plot of, with her brother Bahman, to poison, vi, 259
 discovers plot against him, vi, 260
 consults his minister, vi, 260
 condemns the daughter of Ardawán to death, vi, 260
 minister of, saves daughter of Ardawán and mutilates himself, vi, 196, 261
 Shápúr, son of, born, vi, 261
 hears about Shápúr from his minister, vi, 262
 recognises and acknowledges Shápúr, vi, 264
 restores the daughter of Ardawán to favour, vi, 265
 rewards his minister, vi, 265
 makes a new coinage in honour of his minister, vi, 256, 265
 builds Jund-i-Shápúr, vi, 266
- Ardshír Pápakán, harassed by wars, consults Kaid, vi, 266
 wroth at Kaid's advice, vi, 267
 seeks in vain for the daughter of Míhrak, vi, 268
 referred to, vi, 270
 discovers Urmuzd, vi, 271
 counsels Urmuzd, vi, 280
 calls and counsels Shápúr, vi, 286 *seq.*
 Church and State, his views on, vi, 250 *seq.*, 286
 duration of his dynasty, vi, 252, 257, 289
 death of, vi, 291
 Balúchistán, his failure to conquer, vii, 242
 Nard, invention of, attributed to, vii, 382
 True Cross in treasury of, viii, 380
- Ardshír, son of Shirwí, Sháh, 175, ix, 43 *seq.*
 makes Pírúz general, ix, 44
 entertains Pírúz at feast, ix, 48
 death of, ix, 49
 treasury of, squandered by Guráz, ix, 53
- Aregat-aspa. *See* Arjásp.
- Aries, constellation, i, 88, 118, 310, 335; iii, 26, 38, 187, 318; iv, 24, 147, 158, 180; v, 39, 109, 118, 119, 126; viii, 342, 394
- Ariobarzanes, the murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Ariobarzanes, satrap, vi, 32 and *note*
- Árish, legendary Íránian archer, v, 62; vii, 234 and *note*; viii, 75, 219 and *note*; ix, 25
- Aristobulus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Aristotle (Arastálís *q.v.*), Greek philosopher (B.C. 384-322)

- Aristotle, Alexander the Great's
 tutor, vi, 29
 letter to, vi, 68
 correspondence with,
 about the succession, vi,
 81, 83
 silk-worm, his account of,
 vi, 204
- Arjásp, Túránian hero, ii, 264 ;
 iv, 26
- Arjásp (Arega^t-aspa), king of
 Túrán, 155, 156, i, 61 ;
 ii, 9, 29 ; iii, 109 ; v, 9,
 11 *seq.*, 20, 22, 24 *seq.*, 29,
 31, 51 *seq.*, 89, 98, 99, 107
seq., 116, 141, 142, 159,
 167, 171, 172, 180, 206 ;
 vii, 330, 335, 337, 359 ;
 viii, 95, 104, 148 ; ix, 104
 hoard of, viii, 148
 in receipt of tribute from
 Gushtásp, v, 32
 hears of Gushtásp's resolve
 not to pay tribute, sum-
 mons, and harangues his
 priests, v, 36
 sends Bídírafsh and Nám-
 khást to Gushtásp, v, 37,
 40
 receives Gushtásp's answer
 and calls out the host, v,
 45
 gives one wing to Kuhram,
 v, 46
 the other to Andarímán,
 v, 46
 the chief command to
 Gurgsár, v, 46
 banner to Bídírafsh, v, 46
 vanguard to Khashásh, v,
 46
 rear to Húshdív, v, 46
 marches against Írán, v, 46
 defeat of, foretold by Jám-
 ásp, v, 52
 gives one wing to Bídírafsh,
 v, 55
 the other to Gurgsár, v,
 56
 centre to Námkhást, v, 56
 takes the rear himself, v, 56
- Arjásp, gives Kuhram the com-
 mand in chief, v, 56
 thrice offers rewards to any
 that will fight Zarír, v, 61,
 62
 offer of, accepted by Bídí-
 rafsh, v, 62
 calls for Bídírafsh to fight
 Nastúr, v, 69
 fights with the Íránians, v,
 71
 defeat of, v, 72
 proclaimed by Gushtásp,
 v, 75
 hears of Asfandiyár's im-
 prisonment and of Gush-
 tásp's absence in Sístán,
 v, 86
 Summons his chiefs, v, 86
 sends Sitúh as spy to Írán,
 v, 86
 on receiving Sitúh's report
 calls out the host, v, 87
 sends Kuhram to attack
 Balkh, v, 90
 marches against Gushtásp,
 v, 94
 commands the centre, v,
 95
 defeats Gushtásp and be-
 leaguers him on a moun-
 tain, v, 96
 Asfandiyár's vow of, and
 prayer for, vengeance on,
 v, 103, 104
 hears of Asfandiyár's arrival,
 v, 108
 proposes to retreat, v, 108
 sends away the spoil of
 Balkh, v, 108
 five sons of, v, 108
 persuaded by Gurgsár to re-
 main and fight, v, 108, 109
 makes Gurgsár leader of the
 host, v, 109
 arrays the host, v, 109
 commands the centre, v, 109
 surveys the battlefield from
 a height, v, 110
 prepares for flight if needful,
 v, 110

- Arjásp, dismayed at Asfandiyár's prowess, reproaches Gurgsár v, 111
 hears of Gurgsár's capture and flees, v, 112
 entertains Asfandiyár disguised as a merchant, v, 145
 questions Asfandiyár, v, 146
 allows Asfandiyár to entertain the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
 prepares to attack Bishútan, v, 151
 bids Kuhram prepare for war, v, 151
 sends out Turkhán with troops to reconnoitre, v, 151
 hears from Kuhram that Asfandiyár has come, v, 152
 bids the Turkmans march out in force, v, 152
 palace of, attacked by Asfandiyár, v, 153
 arms and encounters Asfandiyár, v, 153, 154
 beheaded by Asfandiyár, v, 154
 palace of, fired and his women carried off by Asfandiyár, v, 154, 162,
 head of, thrown from the ramparts of the Brazen Hold, v, 157
 sons of, grieve for, v, 157
 Asfandiyár takes the treasure of, v, 161
 Khán of Chín descended from, vii, 334
- Arjuna, one of the five Pándavas (Indian mythology) iv, 138, 139
- Ark, 158
- Arman, Armenia or district in Ázarbáiján, vii, 263
- Armaní, Íránian chief, ix, 74
- Armenia (Arman, Irmán *q.v.*), country, iii, 12; vi, 202, 203; vii, 153, 224; viii, 93, 99, 184, 193, 202, 377
- Armenia, Roman, vii, 187
- Armenian, Armenians (Irmánians), iii, 286; viii, 188, 189, 195, 226, 248, 282
 version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14
 —like, viii, 254
 =Mausíl, viii, 293 and *note*
- Armin, son of Kai Kubád. *See* Kai Armin.
- Arnawáz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Faridún, and mother of Íraj, i, 142
 married to Zahhák, i, 146 *seq.*
 counsels Zahhák as to his dream, i, 148
 Faridún meets, i, 162
 Zahhák tries to kill, i, 167
 son of, by Faridún, i, 177
- Arnold, Mathew, his "Sohrab and Rustum," ii, 118
- Arrán, the modern Karabagh, the region between the Kur and Aras rivers, i, 9
- Arrian, Greek historian (A.D. 96-180), vi, 31, 68
Anabasis of, vi, 12
Indica of, vi, 12
 Caspian Gates of, vi, 32
 on the stature of Porus, vi, 64
 Ichthyophagi, vi, 69 *seq.*
 Alexander and the Amazons, vi, 72
 death of Alexander, vi, 82
- Arrow-shots, three famous, viii, 75
- Bahrám Chúbína's, viii, 126
- Arsaces, name of the founder and other kings of the Parthian (Ashkánian) dynasty, vi, 197
- Arsacid, Arsacids, dynastic title of the above, iii, 9; vi, 205, 255; vii, 156, 185, 212
 imperial system of, vi, 198
 some of, escape from Ardshír Pápakán to Armenia, vi, 203

- Aršac'id, rivalry of, with Sásánians, viii, 73
- Arsalás, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Arses, Sháh (B.C. 338-336) vi, 29
- Arslán Jázib, one of Mahmúd's generals, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
- Artabanus III (II according to some reckonings), Parthian king (A.D. 10-40), iii, 9, 10
- * Artabanus, son of above, iii, 9
- Artabanus, Persian captain of the guard *temp.* Xerxes, v, 282
- Rustam and, v, 282
- Artabanus III or IV (Ardawán *q.v.*), vi, 201
- Artang, the house of the heresiarch Mání, ii, 19 and *note*; vii, 355 and *note*; viii, 172 and *note*, 362 and *note*
- Artaxerxes Longimanus, Sháh, v, 281, 282
- Bahman and, v, 282
- Artaxerxes Mnemon, Sháh, i, 59
- Artaxerxes Ochus, Sháh (B.C. 359-338), vi, 18 *note*, 29
- Nectanebus II conquered by vi, 29
- murdered, vi, 29
- Artaxerxes I, Sásánian Sháh.
See Ardshír Pápakán.
- Artaxerxes II (Ardshír brother of Shápúr), Sásánian Sháh, vi, 363
- Arts, invention of the. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshíd.
- 'Arús, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*, ix, 20
- Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), ii, 392, 404; vi, 329; viii, 90; ix, 85, 92
- Faridún's crossing of the, i, 160
- Arzhang, a dív and commander of the troops of Mázan-darán, 143; ii, 43, 44, 56 *seq.*, 63, 64; v, 203
- Arzhang, put in charge of Kai Káu's and his troops when taken prisoners, ii, 41
slain by Rustam, ii, 57
- Arzhang, dungeon of, iii, 309
- Arzhang, Túránian hero, 148, iii, 76, 77
challenges the Íránians, iii, 119
slain, iii, 120
- Arzhang, Mání the heresiarch's house. *See* Artang.
- Aryan, Aryans, race, iii, 10 and *note*, iv, 137
- race, i, 7
- early seats of, i, 7
- meaning of, i, 7
- organization of, i, 7
- primitive religion of, i, 7
- belief in magic of, i, 8
- division of, i, 8
- India and Írán conquered by, i, 8
- Indian, their relations with the Íránians, i, 15
- Árzú, daughter of Sarv and wife of Salm, i, 188 and *note*
referred to, i, 178 *seq.*
- Árzú, daughter of Máhiyár the jeweller, vii, 59, 61
referred to, vii, 55, 56, 58
sings to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 60
- Bahrám Gúr woos and weds, vii, 61 *seq.*
meaning of, vii, 65 *note*
- Ascalon, city in Palestine, v, 292
- Asclepias acida*, plant. *See* Homa.
- Asfandiyár (Spento-data, Span-dát), mythical Íránian hero, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, and the rival in legend of Rustam, 155-157, i, 42, 55; ii, 29; v, 9, 10, 12, 24 *seq.*, 29, 30, 41 *seq.*, 45, 49, 69 *seq.*, 90 *seq.*, 258, 259, 261, 279, 281 *seq.*, 289, 290, 293; vi, 15, 49, 55, 200, 213, 224, 242, 251, 271; viii, 95, 104 and

Asfandiyār *cont.*

note, 171, 270, 332, 395
note; ix, 25, 26 *note*, 104
 invulnerability of, v, 19
 sisters of, 156, v, 20, 22
 carried off by the Turk-
 mans, v, 93, 100, 171
 rescued by, v, 153, 162
 lament over, v, 252 *seq.*
 marriage of, with Humái,
 v, 22, 77
 ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
 birth of, v, 32
 answers, in conjunction with
 Zarír and Jámásp, Ar-
 jás'p's letter, v, 42
 triumph of, over Arjás'p
 foretold by Jámásp, v, 52
 given command of one wing,
 v, 55
 addresses his five brothers,
 v, 65
 hears his father's offer of
 the crown and throne to
 the avenger of Zarír, v, 66
 slays Bídrafsh, v, 70
 presents the head of Bídraf-
 sh and the steed of Zarír
 to Gushtásp, v, 71
 divides the host, v, 71
 attacks, with Nastúr and
 Núsh Ázar, the Turkmans,
 v, 71
 grants quarter to the Turk-
 mans, v, 72
 made chief ruler of Írán
 under Gushtásp and sent
 by him to convert the
 world, v, 76
 rests from his labours, v, 77
 makes Farshíward gover-
 nor of Khurásán, v, 77
 reports the success of his
 administration to Gush-
 tásp, v, 77
 slandered by Gurazm, v, 78
 recalled to court, v, 80 *seq.*
 sons of, 157, v, 80, 81
 resigns his host to Bahman,
 v, 82
 arraigned by Gushtásp, v, 83

Asfandiyār, put in bonds, v,
 84
 sent to Gumbadán, v, 84
 solaced by Bahman and
 others, v, 85
 Jámásp advises Gushtásp
 to release, v, 97
 hears of arrival of Jámásp,
 v, 98, 99
 parley of, with Jámásp, v,
 99 *seq.*
 eight and thirty brothers
 of, v, 101, 103, 111, 160
 bids Jámásp send for black-
 smiths, v, 101
 breaks his bonds himself, v,
 102, 206
 calls for his steed and arms,
 v, 102
 sets off with Jámásp, Bah-
 man, and Núsh Ázar, v,
 103
 vow of, v, 103
 laments over Farshíward,
 v, 104
 prays that he may avenge
 Farshíward on Arjás'p, v,
 104
 shrouds Farshíward, v, 105
 sees and addresses the corpse
 of Gurazm, v, 105
 passes the Turkman trenches
 and defeats the outposts,
 v, 106
 interview of, with Gush-
 tásp, v, 106
 receives the promise of the
 crown and undertakes to
 deliver Gushtásp, v, 107
 arrays and leads the host,
 v, 109
 attacks the Turkmans, v,
 110
 defeats Kuhram, v, 110
 takes Gurgsár prisoner, v,
 111
 defeats Arjás'p, v, 112, 206
 grants quarter to the Turk-
 mans, v, 113
 distributes the spoil, v,
 114

- Asfandiyár, undertakes to rescue his sisters from the Turkmans, v, 115
 prepares to invade Túrán, v, 115
 Seven Stages (Haft Khwán) of, ii, 29; v, 27, 118, 119, 121, 135, 162; viii, 171
 Story of, 156, v, 116 *seq.*
 compared with Rustam's, v, 117
 rivalry in legend between Rustam and, v, 116
 quits Balkh and goes, with Gurgsár as guide, to Túrán, v, 120
 offers the kingdom of the Turkmans to Gurgsár in return for faithful service, v, 120
 questions Gurgsár, v, 120 *seq.*, 124, 125, 128, 131, 134, 139, 141
 during his adventures in the Seven Stages, leaves Bishútan in command, v, 122, 124, 126, 129, 132
note, 144
 praised by Bishútan and the host, v, 123, 125, 131, 133
 scythed chariot made by, v, 126
 revived by Bishútan after encountering the dragon, v, 127
 song of, v, 129
 amulet given to, by Zarduhsht, v, 130
 encourages the Íránians to persevere, v, 136
 prays for deliverance from the snow, v, 138
 leaves the baggage behind, v, 138
 reproaches Gurgsár for giving false information, v, 139, 140
 offers to make Gurgsár captain of the Brazen Hold if he will be a trusty guide, v, 140
- Asfandiyár, guided by Gurgsár crosses ford with host, v, 140
 cursed by Gurgsár, v, 141
 slays Gurgsár, v, 141
 surveys the Brazen Hold, v, 142
 captures, questions, and slays two Turkmans, v, 142
 Bishútan and, consult, v, 143
 stratagem of, to take the Brazen Hold, v, 116, 143
 disguised as a merchant, interviews Arjásp, v, 145
 assumes the name of Khar-rád, v, 146
 questioned by Arjásp, v, 146
 trades as a merchant in the Brazen Hold, v, 147
 meets his sisters, v, 147
 gives a banquet to the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
 surprises the Brazen Hold, v, 152 *seq.*
 provides for his sisters' safety, v, 153
 attacks the palace of Arjásp, v, 153
 encounters Arjásp, v, 154
 beheads Arjásp, v, 154
 fires Arjásp's palace, v, 154
 carries off the women, v, 154
 quits the Brazen Hold and leaves Sáwa in charge, v, 154
 joins Bishútan, v, 155
 pursues Kuhram to the Brazen Hold, v, 156
 encounters and takes Kuhram prisoner, v, 157
 grants no quarter to the Turkmans, v, 158
 puts to death Andarímán and Kuhram, v, 158
 announces his victory to Gushtásp, v, 159
 disposes of the spoil, v, 161

- Asfandiyár, carries off his sisters,
the womenfolk of Arjâsp,
and others from the
Brazen Hold, v, 162
sets fire to, and dismantles,
the Brazen Hold, v, 162
sends his sons homeward by
different routes, v, 162
returns himself by the Seven
Stages, v, 162
picks up his left baggage,
v, 162
hunts while waiting for his
sons, v, 162
rejoined by his sons, v, 163
welcome of, on his return
to Írán, v, 163
banquets with Gushtâsp, v,
164
fight of, with Rustam,
Story of, 156
recited by Nadr, son of
Hârith, at Mecca, v, 166
complains to his mother of
Gushtâsp's treatment of
him, v, 167
counselled by his mother,
v, 168, 175
fate of, foretold by Jámâsp,
v, 169
recounts his deeds before
Gushtâsp, v, 170
promised the throne by
Gushtâsp when he has
brought Rustam and his
kin in bonds to court, v,
173, 174
meets with an ill omen on
starting for Zâbulistân, v,
177
consults with Bishûtan, v,
178
sends Bahman on an em-
bassage, v, 179 *seq.*
message of, to Rustam, v,
179
receives Rustam's answer
from, and is wroth with,
Bahman, v, 191
converses of Rustam with
Bishûtan, v, 192
- Asfandiyár, goes attended to
meet Rustam, v, 192
parleys with Rustam, v,
192 *seq.*
declines Rustam's invita-
tion to visit him, v, 193
invites Rustam to a feast,
v, 195
repents of having invited
Rustam, v, 196
counselled by Bishûtan to
keep on friendly terms
with Rustam, v, 196, 217
does not summon Rustam
to the feast, v, 197
wrangles with Rustam, v,
198 *seq.*
does not assign Rustam his
proper seat at the feast,
v, 200
remonstrated with by Rus-
tam, v, 200
bids Bahman resign his own
seat to Rustam, v, 200
vilifies Zâl and Rustam, v,
201
recounts his lineage, v, 205
his exploits, v, 205
his capture of a hill-fort,
v, 206
tries a handgrip with Rus-
tam, v, 208
challenges Rustam, v, 209
astonished at Rustam's
prowess at the board, v,
210
declines Rustam's overtures,
v, 211 *seq.*
calls Zâbulistân "Babble-
stead," v, 216
parodies Rustam's address
to royal tent-enclosure,
v, 216
arms for fight with Rustam,
v, 223
refuses Rustam's sugges-
tion of a general engage-
ment, v, 224
informed by Bahman of the
slaying of Nûsh Ázar and
Mihr-i-Nûsh, v, 227

- Asfandiyár, enraged with Rustam, v, 228
 wounds Rustam and Rakhsh, v, 229
 jeers at Rustam, v, 229
 calls upon Rustam to surrender, v, 230
 returns to camp, laments for Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, and sends their corpses to Gushtásp with a message, v, 232
 converses with Bishútan of the fight with Rustam, v, 232, 240
 Símurgh instructs Rustam how to overcome, v, 237 *seq.*
 branch of tamarisk fatal to, v, 239 and *note*
 summoned by Rustam to fight and becomes despondent, v, 240
 Rustam's final effort for peace with, v. 241 *seq.*
 Bahman and Bishútan hear of the overthrow of, v, 244
 address of, to Bishútan, v, 245
 Rustam bewails, v, 246
 confides Bahman to Rustam, v, 248
 foretells evil for Rustam, v, 248
 gives his last charge to Bishútan, v, 249
 death of, v, 250
 Rustam laments over, v, 250
 corpse of, sent to Gushtásp by Rustam, v, 251
 funeral procession of, conducted by Bishútan, v, 251
 lamentations over, v, 252 *seq.*
 corpse of, displayed by Bishútan, v, 253
 Rustam writes to Gushtásp to excuse himself in the matter of, v, 256
 Xerxes and, v, 282
- Asfandiyár, Bahman on the vengeance due for, v, 283
 referred to, v, 288
- Asfandiyár-náma (Spand-dát-náma), v, 26, 27
- Ashemaogha, vii, 188
- Ashi Vanguhi, the genius of piety, iv, 137
- Ashk, presumed founder of the Ashkánian (Parthian) dynasty, vi, 197, 210
 meaning of, vi, 197
- Ashkabús, Túránian hero, 148, iii, 183, 186, 207, 268
 challenges the Íránians, iii, 179
 Ruhhám worsted by, iii, 179
 Rustam's fight with, iii, 109, 179 *seq.*
 referred to, viii, 75
 parleys with Rustam, iii, 180
 slain by Rustam, iii, 181
- Ashkánian, Ashkánians, race and dynasty, i, 49; iii, 9, 11; v, 10, 282; vi, 196, 209; viii, 214
 duration of rule, vi, 193
 times, Firdausí's lack of materials for, vi, 193
 surviving traditions of, transferred to other dynasties, vi, 194
 importance of, vi, 194
 genealogy, vi, 197
- Ashkash, Íránian hero, iii, 33, 34, 89, 347, 350, 352; iv, 13, 57, 61, 65
 Rustam and, go to rescue Bizhan, iii, 334
 conveys baggage toward Írán, iii, 346
 Kai Khusrau sends, to Kházasm, iv, 15
 Shída defeated by, iv, 60, 72
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145
 sent with a host to Zam, iv, 157
 pillage of Makrán by, stopped by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243

- Ashkash, appointed governor of Makran, iv, 244
 Kai Khusrau welcomed by, on his return from Gangdizh, iv, 251
 Ashtád, Iránian chief, ix, 11 *seq.*
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9
 and Kharrád parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12
 report to Shírwí, ix, 27
 Asia, iv, 315, v, 293, viii, 187
 Minor, vi, 30 ; viii, 193, 194
 Central, vi, 73
 Asmodeus, demon, iii, 272
 Asoka, Indian king (B.C. 264-228-7), i, 15
 Asp, as Persian termination, ii, 9
 Ássurbanipal, Assyrian king, and Khusrau Parwíz, reigns of compared, viii, 193
 Assyria, v, 292
 Assyrians, i, 10
 invasions of Írán by, i, 10
 Astawadh. *See* Haftwád.
 Astivihád, demon, iv, 137
 Astrolabe, i, 104, 188, 310 *note* ; ii, 215, 273 ; iv, 158, 297 ; vi, 376 ; vii, 353 ; ix, 73
 Astrologer, Astrologers, Astrology, i, 104, 188, 255, 310 and *note* ; ii, 233, 284, 409 ; iv, 27, 158, 159, 279, 284, 334, 335 ; v, 48, 168 *seq.*, 263 ; vi, 108, 109, 114, 132, 195, 198, 201, 218, 227, 377 ; ix, 73
 importance of, in Sháh-námá, i, 52
 consulted by Farídún, i, 194
 Minúchihr, i, 251, 307
 Zál, i, 255
 Sám, i, 278
 Kai Káús, ii, 103, 215, 217
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 273 ; iv, 158
 Siyáwush, ii, 282
 Rustam, iii, 219
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 158
 Húmán, v, 310
 Astrologer, consulted by Sikan-dar, vi, 180
 Ardawán, vi, 218
 Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 375 *seq.*, 390
 Bahráw Gúr, vii, 144, 145
 Khán of Chín, vii, 353
 Talhand, vii, 408, 413, 418
 Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 372
 Astyages (Istuvegu), king of the Medes (Manda *q.v.*, B.C. 584-550)
 conquered by Cyrus, i, 18 ; vi, 104
 identified by Armenian historians with Zakhák, i, 72, 144
 Mandane and, legend of, ii, 190
 Afrásiyáb and, in legend, ii, 191
 Asura. *See* Ahúra.
 Atbara, tributary of the Nile, vi, 65
 Athenaeus, Greek writer (2nd-3rd centuries A.D.), iv, 316
Deipnosophistae of, ii, 10
 quoted, iv, 314
 Athens, schools of, closed by Justinian, vii, 280
 Áthravans, priests of the Cult of Fire, i, 56
 Áthwya. *See* Abtín.
 Atkinson, James, on the Sháh-námá, vi, 250
 Atossa, wife of Cambyses and Darius Hystaspis, v, 11
 =Hutaosa, wife of Gush-tásp (?), v, 11
 Atropatene (Ázarbáiján *q.v.*), i, 9, 61
 primitive seat of Fire-worship, i, 56
 sub-kingdom in Parthian times, vi, 198
 Attock, town on the Indus in northern India, vi, 52
 Aurand, father of Sháh Luhrásp, v, 205
 Aurvaś-aspa (Luhrásp *q.v.*), iv, 310 ; v, 11

- Autumnal equinox, iv, 313
 Kai Luhrásp crowned at, iv, 313
 Avars, Caucasian tribe, viii, 194
 Avasta. *See* Zandavasta.
 Avidius Cassius, Roman general, vi, 291 *note*
 Áwa, Íránian hero, iv, 149
 Áwáza, stronghold, 170, viii, 134, 138
 Axumite, Ethiopian, dynasty, viii, 24 *note*
 Áyás, region, v, 61, 74, 107
 Áyín Gashasp (Yazdánbakhsh), Íránian noble, 171, viii, 75, 150 *note*, 222
 Hurmuzd consults, viii, 174, 177
 and the prisoner, story of, viii, 177 *seq.*
 marches to Hamadán, viii, 178
 consults a seer, viii, 178
 murdered, viii, 181
 avenged by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 181
 troops of, disperse, viii, 181
 Ázád Sarv, Firdausi's authority for the Story of Rustam and Shaghád, v, 260 *seq.*
 Ázád Sarv, archmage and agent of Núshírwán, v, 261, vii, 283 and *note*
 goes to Marv, vii, 283
 discovers Búzurjmihr, vii, 283
 returns with Búzurjmihr to court, vii, 283
 Ázáda, Rúman slave-girl, vi, 382
 goes hunting with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 382
 tries to shame Bahrám Gúr in his markmanship, vi, 383
 slain by Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384 and *note*
 Ázar (Ázarbáiján *q.v.*), ii, 195
 Ázar, genius, iii, 287, 328
 Ázar (Ádar), month and day, i, 88, 89; vi, 411; viii, 244, 421; ix, 17
 Ázar Ábádagán (Ázarakhsh, Ázargashasp *q.v.*), Fire-temple at Shíz (Takht-i Sulaimán) near the south-eastern border of Ázarbáiján, not at Tabriz with which the place has been wrongly identified (NT, p. 100, *note*), 172, iv, 259; vii, 86, 224, 362; viii, 282; ix, 74
 importance of, i, 61
 visited by Kai Khusrau, iii, 20
 Kai Khusrau and Kai Káuś go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258
 Khátún, wife of Khán, sent to serve at, vii, 5
 Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 86, 94
 Núshírwán visits, vii, 250, 363
 Ázar Afrúz, third son of Asfandiyár, v, 81
 Ázarakhsh (Ázargashasp, Ázar Ábádagán *q.v.*), Fire-temple, i, 61
 importance of, i, 61
 Ázarbáiján (Atropatene *q.v.*), province in north-western Persia, i, 9, 61; ii, 336; iv, 136; v, 16; vi, 198, 203; vii, 160, 214
 meaning of, i, 56
 Ázargashasp, spirit of the lighting, i, 73, 248, 309, 349; ii, 57, 294, 345; iii, 23, 53, 72, 92, 97, 114, 194, 270, 327; iv, 84, 100, 147, 175, 275, 307, 360; vi, 381; vii, 21, 79, 232; viii, 46, 122, 152, 176, 245, 256, 415
 temple of (Ázar Ábádagán *q.v.*), iv, 136, 258, 259; vii, 89, 250, 317, 365; viii, 68, 184, 210 and *note*
 visited by Kai Khusrau, iii, 20

- Ázargashasp, temple of Kai
 Khusrau and Kai Kâüs
 go on a pilgrimage to,
 iv, 235
 referred to, iv, 204
 Gushasp *q.v.*, vi, 212
 and *note*
 Bahrán Gûr visits, vii,
 80, 139
 high priest of, converts
 Sap'núd to Zoroastrian-
 ism, vii, 139
 Núshírwán visits, vii, 250,
 393
 Khusrau Parwíz visits,
 viii, 283, 307, 312
 Ázargashasp, Íránian warrior,
 viii, 296
 Ázar Makán, father of Farrukh-
 zád, viii, 408
 Ázarmdukht, Sháh, 175, v, 294 ;
 ix, 56, 59, 69
 reproaches Kubád, ix, 7
 end of, ix, 59, 60
 Ázarnarsí, son of Hurmuzd son
 of Narsí, vi, 318
 Azdites, Arab tribe, i, 11
 Azhi, Azi (Daháka, Zakhák *q.v.*),
 i, 142 ; ii, 81
- B
- BÁBAK, Tribal King. *See* Pápak.
 Bábak, muster-master of Núshír-
 wán
 bidden to enrol the host,
 167, vii, 230
 insists on Núshírwán's at-
 tendance for enrolment,
 vii, 231
 asks pardon of the Sháh, vii,
 232
 Bábar, founder of the Mogul
 dynasty in India
 resolutions of, as to wine-
 drinking, vii, 75 *note*
 Babbblestead, nonce name given
 by Asfandiyár to Zábúl-
 istán, v, 216
 Bábil (Babylon *q.v.*), 160
- Babr-i-Bayán, a surcoat of leo-
 pard or tiger skin worn by
 Rustam in battle, iii, 184,
 186
 referred to, iii, 278
 Babylon (Bábil, gate of the god),
 city on the left bank of
 the Euphrates, now repre-
 sented by the modern
 Hillah on the right bank,
 ii, 80 ; iii, 286 ; vi, 17,
 31, 81, 83 ; viii, 194, 249 ;
 ix, 65, 92
 hanging gardens of, v, 293
 Sikandar marches toward,
 vi, 176, 178
 prodigious birth at, vi, 81,
 180
 Sikandar sickens at, vi, 181
 dies at, vi, 81, 183
 Zakhák king of, ix, 65
 Babylonia, ii, 80, 81
 Babylonian, vi, 254
 script, vi, 320
 Bacchus, Saint and Martyr, viii,
 188
 Bactria, region between the
 Hindu Kush and the
 Oxus, vi, 32, 198
 Bactrian plains, iii, 10
 camels, viii, 47 ; ix, 93
 Badakshán, region south of the
 Upper Oxus and east of
 Balkh, famous for its
 rubies, iv, 65, 192
 signet-ring of, i, 300
 gem of, vi, 382 and *note*
 Bádán-Pírúz (Shahrám - Pírúz,
 Ardabíl *q.v.*), city built
 by Sháh Pírúz in Ázar-
 báiján, 166, vii, 160, 163
 Badar, Badr, battle of, ii, 337
 note, v, 166
 Bád Áwar, treasure viii., 406,
 and *note*, ix., 20.
 Baeton, Greek writer, *temp.*
 Alexander the Great, vi,
 12
 Baghdád, city on the Tigris,
 founded by the 'Ab-
 básid Khalífa Al Mansúr

Baghdád --*cont.*

as his capital in A.D. 762.
on the site of an old Baby-
lonian city (Baghdadu),
161, 165, i, 14, 160; iii,
35; iv, 147, 256; v, 28;
vi, 254, 290, 322, 327;
vii, 83 and *note*; viii, 109
note, 112, 174, 193, 203,
393; ix, 68

Ardshír Pápakán enthroned
at, vi, 258

Yazdagird quits, ix, 88

Persian settlement of, ix, 67
raided by Arabs, ix, 67

Bágiz, vi, 32

Bagoas, vi, 29

Bahár, district in Turkistán
where Siyáwushgird was
built, ii, 286

Bahman (Vohu Manau), ame-
shaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286,
327; v, 16; vi, 362 and
note

Yasht, Pahlaví Text, vii, 188
month and day, iv, 81 *note*,
v, 310; vii, 31 and
note

Bahman (Ardshír, Artaxerxes),
son of Asfandiyár, Sháh,
156, 157, i, 42; ii, 9;
v, 81, 166, 251, 254, 293,
297, 303; vi, 20 *note*, 34
and *note*, 49, 200, 213,
270 and *note*; viii, 270
eldest son of Asfandiyár, v,
80

Asfandiyár resigns the host
to, v, 82

hears of Asfandiyár's im-
prisonment, v, 85

goes with others to solace
him, v, 85

accompanies Asfandiyár
from Gumbadán, v, 103
sent on an embassy, v,
179 *seq.*

crosses the Hírmund, v, 182
coming of, reported to Zál,
v, 182

interview of, with Zál, v, 183

Bahman, follows Rustam to the
hunting-ground, v, 184
tries to kill Rustam, v,
184

interview of, with Rustam,
v, 185 *seq.*

entertained by Rustam, v,
186

astonished at Rustam's
appetite, v, 186

leaves Rustam, v, 190

gives Rustam's answer to
Asfandiyár, v, 191

Asfandiyár's wrath with, v
191

resigns his seat at the feast
to Rustam, v, 200

informs Asfandiyár of the
slaying of Núsh Ázar and
Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227

hears of Asfandiyár's over-
throw, v, 244

confided to Rustam by
Asfandiyár, v, 248

Zawára warns Rustam
against, v, 250

remains with Rustam, v,
252, 256

instructed by Rustam and
profits thereby, v, 256

Gushtásp advised by Já-
másp to write to, v, 258

Gushtásp's letter of recall
to, v, 258

equipped by Rustam for his
journey, v, 258

welcomed and called Ard-
shír by Gushtásp, v, 259

and *note*

long arms of, v, 281

appointed by Gushtásp to
succeed him, v, 279

historical position of, in
Persian legend, v, 281

ascends the throne and har-
angues the chiefs on the
vengeance due for Asfan-
diyár, v, 283

invades Sístán, v, 284 *seq.*
sends a hostile message to
Zál, v, 285

- Bahman, rejects Zál's conciliatory overtures, v, 286
 sacks Zál's palace, v, 286
 pillages Zábulistán, v, 287
 fights, defeats, and executes Farámarz, v, 288
 Bishútan intercedes for Zál with, v, 288
 stops the pillage of Zábul and releases Zál, v, 289
 quits Zábul by Bishútan's advice, v, 290
 passes over his son Sásán and nominates Humái and her issue as successors to the throne, v, 291
 death of, v, 294
 referred to, v, 310
- Bahman, son of Ardawán, 160, 161, vi, 202, 225, 227, 260
 made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*
 referred to, vi, 222
 bidden by Ardawán to seek out Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223
 wounded and put to flight by Ardshír Pápakán and Tabák, vi, 227
 escapes to Hind after the defeat of Ardawán, vi, 228
 urges his sister to poison Ardawán, vi, 259
- Bahman, Íránian magnate, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 312; viii, 22
- Bahman, castle of, in Ázarbáiján, 146, ii, 336, 405 *seq.*
- Bahrain, group of islands off the Arabian shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 330; ix, 68
- Bahrám, genius, iii, 287, 328; vii, 406 and *note*
 day, viii, 279
 fatal to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 337 and *note*, 339 and *note*
- Bahrám, moralist, quoted by Firdausí, ii, 186
- Bahrám (Vardanes), son of Gúdúz and brother of Gív, Íránian hero and Parthian king, 145, 147, 148; ii, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 85, 127, 138, 144, 158, 249, 257, 258, 271, 290, 318, 338, 340; iii, 13, 15, 19, 43, 46 *seq.*, 67, 72, 95 *seq.*, 114, 116, 132, 200, 214, 232; iv, 8, 312; vi, 197
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 goes with Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226
 put in command by Siyáwush, ii, 250, 257
 interviews Farúd, iii, 47 *seq.*
 Farúd presents his mace to, iii, 50
 reports his interview with Farúd to Tús, iii, 51
 tries to save Farúd, iii, 52
 reproaches the Íránians, iii, 66
 slays Kabúda, iii, 74
 rescues the crown of Rív-níz, iii, 94
 loses his whip, iii, 11, 95
 becomes fey, iii, 95
 succours a wounded brother, iii, 97
 finds his whip, iii, 95
 loses his horse, iii, 95
 set on by Turkmans, iii, 98
 Rúín, iii, 99
 wounds Rúín, iii, 99
 interviews Pírán, iii, 99
 attacked by Tazháv, iii, 101
 found by Gív, iii, 102
 death and burial of, iii, 104
- Bahrám, son of Zarasp, Íránian hero, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 commands the host in Zarír's absence, iv, 360
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362

- Bahrám, Íránian warrior or king, iv, 268
- Bahrám = Ardawán, vi, 197, 210
- Bahrám, son of Píruz, Íránian warrior, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Bahrám, father of Shírwí *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251, 262
- Bahrám, son of Urmuzd, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran I), 162, vi, 3
 receives the throne from, and is counselled by, Urmuzd, vi, 303 *seq.*
 mourns for Urmuzd, vi, 306
 Reign of, vi, 307 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 307
 appoints his successor and dies, vi, 309
 Mání and, vi, 327
- Bahrám, son of Bahrám, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran II), 162, vi, 3, 308
 appointed to succeed his father, vi, 309
 Reign of, vi, 310
 Note on, vi, 310
 story told of, vi, 310
- Bahrám, son of Shápúr, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran IV), 163, vi, 3, 371
 Reign of, vi, 368
 Note on, vi, 368
 ruler of Kirmán, vi, 368
 title of, vi, 313, 368
 seal of, vi, 368
 Tabarí's account of, vi, 368
 daughter of, vi, 369
 resigns the throne to his brother, vi, 369
 dies, vi, 369
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, 172, viii, 75, 163, 245
 reported slain, viii, 128
 returns with captive sorcerer, viii, 128
 speech of, viii, 166
 related to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 187
 wife of viii, 187
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, wife of, warns Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247
 pursues Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
 besieges Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 236
 beguiled by Bandwí, viii, 236, 245
 returns with Bandwí to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238
 blamed by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238
 given custody of Bandwí, viii, 238
 slain by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247
- Bahrám, Íránian general, left in charge of host by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 296
- Bahrám, father, in Persian Tabarí, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77
- Bahrám, name of, inscribed on cup incites Khusrau Parwíz to afflict Rai, viii, 365 and *note*
- Bahrám Ázarmihán, Íránian scribe, 170
 Hurmuzd attempts to suborn, viii, 85 *seq.*
 reveals state-secret to Hurmuzd, viii, 88
 put to death, viii, 89
- Bahrám Bahrámiyán, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran III), 162, vi, 3, 316, 324, 334
 Reign of, vi, 313
 Note on, vi, 313
 miscalled "Kirmánsháh," vi, 313, 368
 appoints his son to succeed him, vi, 314, 315
- Bahrám Chúbína, son of Gas-hasp, marchlord of Rai, Persian warrior and usurper, 170-173, i, 14; vi, 209, 250; viii, 70, 73, 184, 187, 199, 209, 214, 215, 343 *seq.*, 352 *seq.*

Bahráw Chúbína

359 *seq.*, 360, 383; ix, 6,
15, 19, 22, 61, 105

Romance of, viii, 72 *seq.*,
187, 191, 304 *note*; ix, 5

Nöldeke on, viii, 73

account of, viii, 72

seller of sheep's heads and,
viii, 74, 107

dream of, viii, 75

withholding of booty by,
viii, 70, 148

insult of Hurmuzd to, viii,
76

defeat of, in Lazic war, viii,
76

sends swords to Hurmuzd,
viii, 76

parentage of, viii, 76, 77

malicious speech about, viii,
77, 150

coinage of, viii, 77, 173

brought to notice of Hur-
muzd, viii, 98

described, viii, 98, 206

identified by Zád Farrukh,
viii, 99

sent for by Hurmuzd, viii,
100

consulted by Hurmuzd, viii,
100

made commander-in-chief,
viii, 102

selects his troops, viii, 102
justifies his method in so
doing, viii, 104

receives Rustam's banner
from Hurmuzd, viii, 105

Mihrán as recorder from
Hurmuzd, viii, 106

marches from Taisafún, viii,
106

refuses to be recalled, viii,
108

marches to Khúzistán, viii,
109 and *note*

hay-seller and, viii, 109

marches toward Dáma-
ghán, viii, 109

parley of, with Faghfúr,
viii, 112

Bahráw Chúbína, refuses Sáwa's
offers, viii, 113 *seq.*, 117
seq.

counselled by Kharrád, viii,
121

arrays his host, viii, 122

prayer of, before battle,
viii, 123

encourages the Íránians
against Sáwa's sorcery,
etc., viii, 124 *seq.*

defeats and slays Sáwa, viii,
126

doings of, after battle with
Sáwa, viii, 130

rewarded by Hurmuzd, viii,
133

ordered to attack Parmúda,
viii, 133

holds revel in a garden,
viii, 135

attacked by and defeats
Parmúda, viii, 135 *seq.*

besieges Parmúda in Áwáza,
viii, 138

informs Hurmuzd, viii, 138

negotiates for surrender of
Áwáza with Parmúda,
viii, 138 *seq.*

receives surrender of, and
insults, Parmúda, viii, 143

blamed by Kharrád and
archscribe, viii, 144

tries to appease Parmúda,
viii, 145

has inventory made of the
wealth in Áwáza, viii, 147

sends Ízid Gashasp with
spoil to Írán, viii, 148

Hurmuzd begins to suspect,
viii, 151

advances of, to Khán re-
jected, viii, 153

goes to Balkh, viii, 153

guided by an onager, viii,
159

incited to seek the king-
ship, viii, 158

change in, viii, 158

questioned by Kharrád, viii,
158

- Bahrám Chúbína, sends Yalán-sína after Kharrád and archscribe, viii, 159
 pardons archscribe, viii, 160
 Luck of, viii, 162
 renounces allegiance to Ilurmuzd, viii, 162
 intercepts the royal letters, viii, 163
 consults the chiefs, viii, 163
 becomes friends with the Khán, viii, 172
 appoints a prince for Khurásán, *etc.*, viii, 173
 marches to Rai, viii, 173
 avenges murder of Áyín Gashasp, viii, 181
 historical campaign of, against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 189
 carline and, viii, 189, 303
 marches to the Nahrawán, viii, 201
 spies' report of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 201
 Khusrau Parwíz marches to meet, viii, 203
 interview of, with, viii, 204 *seq.*
 tampers with troops of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 225
 combat of, with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 228
 arrives at Taisafún, viii, 231
 sends Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, in pursuit of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
 blames Bahrám, viii, 238
 chides, warns and imprisons Bandwí, viii, 238
 addresses the magnates, viii, 239
 elected Sháh, viii, 243
 gives malcontents three days to quit Írán, viii, 244
 plot against, viii, 245 *seq.*
 warned, viii, 247
 slays Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, viii, 247
 hears of Bandwí's escape, viii, 248
- Bahrám Chúbína, deceived by forged letters, viii, 287, 293, 294
 marches against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 287
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, viii, 288
 arrays his host, viii, 289
 fights with and slays Kút, viii, 290
 sends back corpse of Kút, viii, 291
 worsts Rúmans, viii, 292
 "Harvest of," viii, 292
 charges and routs Khusrau Parwíz' centre, viii, 294
 fights with Gurdwí, viii, 294
 goes to fight Khusrau Parwíz and his body-guard, viii, 297
 leaves Jánfurúz in charge of host, viii, 297
 puts to flight and pursues Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 298
 Surúsh saves Khusrau Parwíz from, viii, 299
 deserted by his chiefs, viii, 302
 retreats, viii, 302
 releases Nastúh, viii, 306
 goes to Rai, viii, 306
 welcomed by Khán, viii, 316
 asks oath of Khán, viii, 317
 counsels Khán to resist Makátúra, viii, 318
 challenged by Makátúra, viii, 319
 fight of, with Makátúra, viii, 320
 Khán sends gifts to, viii, 321
 asked by Khán's wife to avenge death of her daughter on lion-ape, viii, 324
 battle of, with lion-ape, viii, 325
 extradition of, demanded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 328
 urges Khán to make war on Írán, viii, 330
 sets forth for Írán, viii, 331

- Bahrám Chúbína, Kharrád at-
tempts to prejudice, with
Khán, viii, 333
arrives at Marv, viii, 336
fatal day of, viii, 337, 339
Kulún seeks interview with,
viii, 339
stabs, viii, 340
sister of, mourns, viii, 340
dying speech of, viii, 341
makes Yalán-sína his man-
datory, viii, 342
letter of, to Khán, viii, 343
burial of, viii, 343
name of, on cup, viii, 365
and *note*
assassination of, referred to,
ix, 4
- Bahrám Gúr, Sásánian Sháh
(Varahran V), 163-165, i,
42; vi, 3, 250, 325, 329
and *note*, 394 *seq.*; vii,
160, 164, 165, 170 and
note, 174, 178, 187, 334,
359; viii, 75, 129 and
note; ix, 26, 77
birth of, vi, 375
Yazdagird advised by mag-
nates to choose governor
for, vi, 376
put in Munzir's charge, vi,
372, 378
goes with Munzir to Yaman,
vi, 378
nurses of, vi, 378
education of, vi, 378 *seq.*
obtains his tutors' dismissal,
vi, 380
makes choice of steeds, vi,
380
slave-girls, vi, 381
goes to the chase with a
slave-girl, vi, 382
markmanship of, vi, 383
seq.
slays his slave-girl, vi, 384
and *note*
goes hunting with Nu'mán
and Munzir, vi, 384
picture of, hunting, sent to
Yazdagird, vi, 385
- Bahrám Gúr, returns with
Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi,
386
complains of Yazdagird to
Munzir, vi, 387
receives advice and his slave-
girl from Munzir, vi, 388
falls into disgrace at court,
vi, 389
asks Tainúsh to intercede
for him, vi, 389
released and returns to Mun-
zir, vi, 390
welcomed by Munzir, vi, 390
hears of his father's death
and of the election of
Khusrau, vi, 395, 396
claims the kingship and is
supported by Munzir, vi,
396 *seq.*
interview of, with Jawánwí,
vi, 398
negotiates with the Írán-
ians, vi, 401 *seq.*
Íránians produce examples
of Yazdagird's cruelty to,
vi, 404
addresses the Íránians, vi,
404
proposes to decide the ques-
tion of the kingship by
ordeal, vi, 405
promises to rule justly, vi,
406
agrees to be the first to face
the ordeal, vi, 409
Reign of, 164, vii, 3 *seq.*
Note on, vii, 3 *seq.*
length of, vii, 3
largely legendary, vii, 3
character of, vii, 3
resembles James V of Scot-
land, vii, 3
accession of, vii, 7
age of, at, vi, 373
inaugural measures at,
vii, 7 *seq.*
holds eight days' court, vii,
7 *seq.*
appoints ministers, vii, 4,
8, 11

- Bahrám Gúr, sends letters to
 the chiefs, vii, 8
 pardons his enemies, vii, 9
 makes festival for three
 days, vii, 9
 rewards Nu'mán and Mun-
 zir, vii, 10
 honours Khusrau, vii, 10
 remits arrears of taxes, vii,
 11
 restores the nobles exiled
 by Yazdagird to their
 honours, vii, 11
 proclamations of, vii, 12,
 70, 82
 persecutes the Christians,
 vi, 373; vii, 4
 war of, with Rúm, vii, 4
 adventures of, 164, vii, 4,
 12 *seq.*
 forbids wine-drinking, vii,
 23
 allows wine-drinking again,
 vii, 25
 whip of, vii, 47, 54, 63, 64
 equipage of, for the chase,
 vii, 48, 76
 loses and finds his tughral,
 vii, 49, 50
 visit of, to Barzín, vii, 49 *seq.*
 marries Barzín's daughters,
 vii, 53
 hunting-feats of, vi, 383
seq.; vii, 54, 55, 77, 80, 81
 visits a jeweller, vii, 56 *seq.*
 course of life of, bewailed by
 Rúzbih, vii, 56
 many wives of, vii, 56
 asks and obtains Arzú in
 marriage, vii, 61 *seq.*
 visit of, to Farshíward, vii,
 68
 forbids all plundering, vii,
 79
 ear-marks and brands
 onagers, vii, 81
 remits the tribute of Barkúh
 and Jaz, vii, 82
 visits Baghdád, vii, 83
 holds revel at Baghdád,
 vii, 83
- Bahrám Gúr reproaches Rúzbih
 for parsimony, vii, 83
 reported to be given up to
 pleasure, vii, 84
 reproached by his chiefs,
 vii, 84
 secret preparations of,
 against the Khán, vii, 85
 summons his chiefs, vii, 85
 levies a host, vii, 86
 makes Narsí viceroy, vii, 86
 goes to Ázar Ábádágán, vii,
 86, 94, 139
 march of, to Marv against
 the Khán, vii, 89
 defeats the Khán at Kash-
 mihán, vii, 4, 5, 90, 170
note
 marches on Bukhárá, vii,
 90
 defeats the Turkmans, vii,
 91
 grants peace to the Turk-
 mans, vii, 91
 boundary pillar of, vii, 92,
 160, 161, 164
 makes Shahra ruler of
 Túrán, vii, 92
 goes to Istakhr, vii, 95
 makes gifts of treasure, vii,
 95, 96
 deposits the Khán's crown
 in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
 goes to Taisafún, vii, 95
 welcomed by Narsí and the
 chiefs, vii, 96
 remits taxes for seven years,
 vii, 5, 97
 happiness of the world
 under, vii, 99
 bestows Khurásán on Narsí,
 vii, 99
 inquires about Cæsar's en-
 voy, vii, 100
 gives audience to Cæsar's
 envoy, vii, 101
 Cæsar's questions to, vii, 102
 parting gifts of, to Cæsar's
 envoy, vii, 106
 addresses the archmagés,
 vii, 106

- Bahrám Gúr, wazír complains of
 Shangul to, vii, 109
 writes to Shangul, vii, 110.
 visit of, to Hind, vii, 5, 112
seq.
 motive of, vii, 5
 fabulous, vii, 6
 bears his own letter to Hind,
 vii, 112
 audience of, with Shangul,
 vii, 112
 entertained by Shangul, vii,
 110
 wrestles before Shangul, vii,
 117
 displays his markmanship
 before Shangul, vii, 118
 calls himself Barzwí, vii,
 121
 slays monsters, vii, 121 *seq.*
 offered a daughter and great
 advancement by Shangul,
 vii, 127
 takes to wife one of Shan-
 gul's daughters, vii, 128
 receives an invitation from
 Faghfár, vii, 129
 reply of, vii, 130
 tells Sapínúd of his wish to
 quit Hind, vii, 131
 meets some Íránian mer-
 chants and pledges them
 to secrecy, vii, 133
 feigns sickness, vii, 134
 escapes with Sapínúd, vii,
 134
 reproached by Shangul, vii,
 135
 makes a league with Shan-
 gul, vii, 137
 welcome of, on his return,
 vii, 137
 addresses the nobles, vii,
 138
 praised by the nobles, vii,
 139
 makes a new treaty with
 Shangul, vii, 140
 entertains Shangul and
 seven other Íranks, vii,
 140 *seq.*
- Bahrám Gúr, appointed Shan-
 gul's heir, vii, 143
 parting gifts of, to Shangul,
 vii, 144
 takes account of his trea-
 sures, vii, 144
 term of life of, foretold by
 the astrologers, vii, 144
 resolves to levy no more
 taxes, vii, 145
 unsuccessful attempts of, to
 benefit his subjects, vii,
 146 *seq.*
 Gipsies introduced into Írán
 by, vii, 6, 149
 appoints Yazdagird his suc-
 cessor, vii, 150
 death of, vii, 6, 150
 Firdausí's reflections on,
 vii, 150, 151
 mourning for, vii, 151
 Bahrám-Gushnasp, father, in
 Arabic Tabarí, of Bahrám
 Chúbína, viii, 77
 Bahrám Tal, viii, 138 and *note*
 Baidá (White), a town in Párs a
 few miles north of Shíráz,
 not to be confounded
 with the stronghold
 known as "White Castle"
 further north, i, 236; vi,
 198 and *note*, 199
 Baigand, city and fortress
 (Kuhandizh ?) between
 Bukhárá and the Oxus,
 vii, 176
 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv,
 151
 marches from, iv, 154
 Máhwí encamps at, ix, 118
 Baisinghar Khán, grandson of
 Timúr the Lame, life of
 Firdausí by, i, 23
 edition of Sháhnáma of, i,
 23
 preface to, i, 67
 Baitu'l Mukaddas (Gang-i-Diz-
 hukht), Zakhák's capital
 (Babylon ?), also an Arab
 name for Jerusalem, i,
 161

- Baitu'l Harám, the Kaaba *q.v.*, vi, 119, 121
- Báj, Zoroastrian system of praying, i, 80
- Bakhtagán, father of Búzurmíhr, vii, 279
- Baku, town on the peninsula of Apsheron on the western shores of the Caspian and a chief centre of the petroleum industry, i, 58 *note*
- Bakyír, mountain where Afrá-siyáb had a palace, iv, 136
- Balaam, prophet, v, 15
- Bal'amí, Abú 'Alí Muhammad al-, (died A.D. 996), Sámánid minister and compiler of the Persian version of Tabarí's Annals, vii, 5
- Balas (Balásh *q.v.*), Sásánian Sháh, vii, 170 *seq.*
- Balásh, king of Kirmán, slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 205
- Balásh (Balas), Sásánian Sháh, 166, vi, 3
 appointed regent by Pírúz, vii, 164
 hears of the overthrow of Pírúz, vii, 169
 Reign of, vii, 170 *seq.*
 Note on, vii, 170
 character of, vii, 171
 introduces public baths, vii, 171
 end of, vii, 171
 title of, vii, 171
 accession of, vii, 171
 Súfarai's letter to, vii, 173
 welcomes Súfarai on his return from Túrán, vii, 181
 dethroned, vii, 182
- Balkh, city in northern Afghánistán, 154, 155, ii, 101, 228, 231, 242, 246, 249; iii, 153, 192; iv, 19, 20, 65, 150, 157, 255; v, 18, 20, 29, 31, 33, 41, 48, 73, 80, 87, 91, 104, 171, 255; vii, 94, 331, 359, 384; viii, 22, 74, 95, 153, 159, 161, 173; ix, 116
 ancient seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
 situated on ancient trade-route, i, 57
 seat of the Magi, i, 60 *seq.*
 Zoroaster's successful evangel at, i, 61; v, 18
 Zoroaster slain at, i, 61 v, 92, 93
 rhyme-word, Firdausi's difficulty with, i, 74
 Sháhnáma, scene of, shifted to, ii, 9,; iv, 317
 Siyáwush defeats Garsíwaz at, and takes, ii, 229
 Luhrásp makes, his capital, iv, 713
 becomes a devotee at, v, 31
 Kuhram sent by Arjásp to attack, v, 90
 stormed, v, 92, 93
 Luhrásp slain at, v, 91, 93
 spoil of, sent away by Arjásp, v, 108
 Asfandiyár quits, to invade Túrán, v, 120
 aphorist of, viii, 221
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
- Balúch, Balúchistán (Gedrosia, Makrán), country, 167, ii, 80, 226; iii, 34; iv, 136; vi, 12, 70; vii, 340
 Ardshír Pápakán's ill success against, vii, 242
 Núshírwán conquers, vii, 242
 becomes prosperous, vii, 362
- Balúchís, people, vii, 241 *seq.*
 ravages of, vii, 217, 241
 chastised by Núshírwán, vii, 242
- Bálwí, Íránian noble, 172, viii, 257, *seq.*
 deceived by Cæsar's talisman, viii, 273

- I álwí, praised by Caesar, xiii, 270
receives Chách, viii, 314
- Bámdát, father of Mazdak, vii, 188
- Bámiyán, city in Afghánistán, north of the Kuh-i-Baba mountains and famous for its Buddhist remains, iv, 65
- Banák, Íránian chief, *temp.* Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202
- Bandáwa, Sindian chief, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 175
- Band-i-Kaisar, dam at Shúsh-tar, vi, 295
- Bandwí, Íránian noble *temp.* Kubád, vii, 207
- Bandwí, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 171-173, viii, 200, 202, 204 *seq.*, 224, 225, 227, 231, 234, 245 *seq.*, 289, 296, 298, 356, 357; ix, 4
imprisonment of, viii, 77, 170
- Gustaham and, escape and revolt, viii, 182
referred to, viii, 189
put to death, viii, 191, 355
accompanies Khusrau Parwíz in his flight, viii, 231
turns back and murders Hurmuzd, viii, 232
rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
promises to save Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 234
disguises himself as Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 235
beguiles Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, viii, 236, 245
imprisoned by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238
- Bandwí, Bahrám Chúbína hears of escape of, viii, 248
entertained by Mausil, viii, 249
goes with Mausil to meet Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 282
Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
- Bandwí, causes defection of Bahrám Chúbína's chiefs, viii, 302
insults of, to Niyátús, viii, 309, 310
reconciled to Niyátús, viii, 311
minister of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 313
adherents of, beheaded, viii, 370
execution of, referred to, ix, 16, 104
- Baní Tayy, Arab tribe, viii, 188
- Banquets, the Seven, of Núshirwán, 168. *See* Núshirwán.
- Bánúgashasp, daughter of Rustam and wife of Gív, ii, 4
stays with Rustam while Gív seeks Kai Khusrau, ii, 365
suitors of, ii, 383, 384
rejoins Gív, ii, 395
- Bár, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 30
- Bár, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Baráhám, a Jew, 164, vii, 13
entertains Bahrám Gúr scurvily, vii, 16 *seq.*
goods of, confiscated, vii, 20
- Bárbad, minstrel, 175, viii, 396 *seq.*, 406, ix, 29 and *note*
supersedes Sarkash, viii, 399
visits Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 29
lament of, ix, 30
- Barbar, Barbaristán, town and country (British Somaliland), 143, ii, 82 *seq.*, 90, 93, 98; iii, 207, 269; iv, 136, 148; vi, 114; vii, 327; viii, 381
identification of, ii, 79
king of, ii, 83, 94, 95
taken prisoner by Guráza, ii, 97
sends embassy to Gush-tásp, v, 75

- Barda', city in Arrán *q.v.*, now in ruins, on the Tharthúr a tributary of the Kur, iv, 147; vii, 341; viii, 99, 100, 184, 222, 226; ix, 15 Afrásiyáb takes refuge in a cave near, iv, 259
- Bardí. *See* Baidá.
- Barkúh, city between Istakhr and Yazd, vii, 79, 80
tribute of, remitted by Bahráam Gúr, vii, 82
- Barmáiún (Purmáya *q.v.*), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91
- Bármán, son of Wisa, Túránian hero, 142, 144, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 129, 130, 150, 349; iii, 79, 210; iv, 149
spies out the Íránian host, i, 346
challenges the Íránians to single combat and slays Kubád, i, 347
rewarded by Afrásiyáb, i, 348
besieges Gazhdaham in White Castle, i, 354
defeated and slain by Káran, i, 354
revival of, in legend, ii, 119
marches on Írán, ii, 228
defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229
chosen to fight Ruhháam, iv, 97
slain by Ruhháam, iv, 102
- Barrier, Alexander's (Sikandar's), in the Caucasus, 160, i, 16. vi, 189, 249
legend of, vi, 78
site of, vi, 79
described, vi, 164
- Barsaentes, satrap, vi, 32
murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
executed, vi, 32
- Barsám, general of Bízhan, ix, 97, 117
marches on Marv, ix, 97, 116
Máhwí's conduct to, ix, 117
- Bar'sám, pursues and overtakes Máhwí, ix, 118
captures Máhwí, ix, 119
- Barsam, the sacred twigs, implement in Zoroastrian religious ceremonial, i, 80
- Barsine (Stateira), eldest daughter of Darius Codomanus, vi, 33
marries Alexander the Great, vi, 33
- Barta, Íránian hero, 151, iii, 25, 92; iv, 149
chosen to fight with Kuhram, iv, 97
slays Kuhram, iv, 105
- Bartás, region in Turkistán, ix, 19
- Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire-temple on the Binalúd Kuh, south west of Tús and Mashad in Khurásán, i, 237; ii, 107; vi, 391; viii, 216
Íránians worship at, vi, 400
- Barzín, Fire-temple built by Luhrásp at Balkh, iv, 318
- Barzín, Íránian hero, i, 365; ii, 12, 22, 73; iii, 25, 127, 273
- Barzín, father of Bihzád, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395
- Barzín, Íránian noble, *temp.* Bahráam Gúr, 164
visited by Bahráam Gúr, vii, 49
entertains Bahráam Gúr, vii, 50 *seq.*
gives his daughters in marriage to Bahráam Gúr, 164, vii, 53
- Barzín, father of Rád and Dád, *temp.* Bahráam Gúr, vii, 86
- Barzín, father of Ustád, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
- Barzín, father of Shádán, vii, 382, 423
- Barzín, bower of, vii, 83
- Barzín, general of Núshírwán, viii, 17

- Barzin, father of Kharrád, 171-173, viii, 74, 76, 100, 205 and *passim*, ix, 4, 9, 12, 27
- Barzín, father of Jahn, viii, 391
- Barzví, nonce-name assumed by Bahrán Gúr in Hind, vii, 121, 134
- Barzví, physician and sage, *temp.* Núshírwán, 169, vii, 383
goes on a mission to Hind, vii, 424
consults a sage, vii, 427
hears of the book of Kalíla and Dimna (Fables of Bidpai), and procures it for Núshírwán, vii, 427, 428
translates the above into Pahlaví, vii, 382, 428
asks boon of Núshírwán, vii, 429
- Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arab, ix, 68, 69
founded by 'Umar, ix, 67
- Bastám, city near Dámaghán on the road to Nishápúr, vii, 357
- Bástán-náma (Khudái - náma), Firdausí's chief authority, v, 24, 27, 261; vi, 17, 84
traditional origin of, i, 67
discussed, i, 68
translated into Arabic by Ibn Mukaffa', vi, 16, 373
modern Persian, i, 67 *seq.*; vii, 382
- Bastavairi, Bastvar (Nastúr *q.v.*), v, 12, 25
- Bátarún (Marcian), Rúman general, viii, 41, 47, 52
- Baths, public, introduction of, by Balásh, vii, 171
- Battle of the Twelve Rukhs, 151, iv, 7 *seq.*, v, 29
Firdausí's reflections on, iv, 98, 106
Eleven Rukhs, 151, iv, 88
arranged by Gúdarz and Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*
of the Bridge, ix, 5, 67
- Battlestead = Brazen Hold, v, 121
- Bazánúsh (Valerian, *q.v.*), 161
defeat of, and capture by, Shápúr son of Ardashír, vi, 204, 205
single combat of, with Garshásp, vi, 297
bridge built by, at Shúsh-tar, vi, 298
- Bazánúsh (Jovian *q.v.*), 162, 163, vi, 324, 326
elected Emperor, vi, 353
sues for peace, vi, 353
accepts Shápúr's terms, vi, 355
- Bazh, suburb of Tús, i, 38
- Bázhángí, dynasty of Tribal kings, vi, 198
- Bázúr, Túránian warlock, iii, 128
uses magic against the Íránians, iii, 128
wounded by Ruhhám, iii, 129
- Beas (Hyphasis), easternmost of the rivers of the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Bedouins, i, 135, 179
desert of the, iv, 148
commanded by Zahír in Kai Khusrau's host, iv, 148
- Bel, Babylonian god, v, 293
temple of, v, 293
- Belisarius, Roman general (A.D. 505-565), vii, 186, 187, 217, 218
- Berber, race in northern Africa, vi, 73
- Berbera, trading-station in the Gulf of Aden, ii, 79
- Berlin, viii, 192
- Berozias, Barzví *q.v.*, vii, 383
- Bessus, satrap, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 32
assumes royal state in Bactria, vi, 32
executed, vi, 32
- Bhima, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138, 139
- Bhután, Indian kingdom, between Assam and Thibet, vi, 81

- Bibliotheca*, of Diodorus, v, 293
- Bíd, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93
slain, ii, 59, 64; iii, 256;
iv, 296; v, 204
- Bídád, city of Cannibals in the
vicinity of Sughd, iii, 244
seq.
meaning of, iii, 244 *note*
stormed by Rustam, iii, 246
- Bídírafsh (Vidrafsh), Túránian
hero, 155, v, 24, 25, 41,
51, 52, 62 *seq.*
goes as envoy to Gushtásp,
v, 37, 40 *seq.*
returns with Gushtásp's
answer, v, 44
receives banner from Ar-
jásp, v, 46
commands one wing, v, 56
volunteers to fight Zarír, v,
62
slays Zarír, v, 63
fights Nastúr, v, 70
slain by Asfandiyár, v, 70
head of, presented to Gush-
tásp, v, 71
- Bidpai, Indian sage, vii, 383
Fables of (Book of Kalíla
and Dimna), brought to
Persia, 169, vii, 213, 382
- Bih Áfrid, daughter of Gush-
tásp, ii, 3; v, 22
taken captive by the Turk-
mans, v, 93, 94, 100
goes with Humái to draw
water and meets As-
fandiyár, v, 147
escapes from Arjásp's
palace, v, 153
laments over Asfandiyár, v,
252
reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
- Biháfridh, ancestor of Ardshír
Pápakán, vi, 200
- Bih Ardshír, Seleucia *q.v.* as
rebuilt by Ardshír Pápa-
kán, vi, 254, 291 *note*,
viii, 194, 196
- Bihbihán, town near the left
bank of the Táb river in
Párs, vii, 188
- Bihisht (Paradise), name of the
country round Gang, iv,
195
- Bihistún. *See* Bístún.
- Bihruz, a scribe *temp.* Bahrám
Gúr, vii, 71 *seq.*
makes an inventory of the
goods of the miser
Farshídwad, vii, 72
- Bihzád ("well bred"), the horse
of Siyáwush and sub-
sequently of Kai Khus-
rau, 146, ii, 391; iv, 172,
303
Siyáwush's last charge to,
ii, 312
Farangís instructs Kai
Khusrau how to obtain,
ii, 374 *seq.*
- Bihzád, Gushtásp's horse, v, 56,
69
- Bihzád, Íránian chief, *temp.*
Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
vi, 395; vii, 85 (?)
- Bihzád, Íránian chief, *temp.*
Kubád son of Pírúz, vii,
207
- Binalúd, mountain-range, west
of Mashhad, north of
Nishápúr, v, 29
- Birds, Sikandar holds converse
with, 160, vi, 160
- Birka-i-Ardshír, city in Párs
founded by Ardshír Pápa-
kán, vi, 290 and *note*
- Birmáya, cow, i, 151
supplies the infant Farídún
with milk, i, 151
slain by Zakhák, i, 152, 153,
162
- Birthmark, characteristic of
Kaian race, ii, 372; iii,
49 and *note*
described, ii, 372; iii, 49
Siyáwush's, iii, 49
Kai Khusrau's, ii, 372; iii,
49 and *note*
Farúd's, iii, 49
- Bisá (Fasá, Pasá, city south of
Lake Bakhtigán in Párs,
vii, 89 ?)

- Bishop and prelate *q.v.* iv, 341, 348
 as militarist, i, 373, 378;
 iv, 197; v, 306; vi, 352
 advises Caesar, iv, 339
 Nūshzād's last requests to,
 vii, 275
- Bishūtan (Peshó-tanu), brother
 of Asfandiyār, 156, 157,
 v, 66, 117, 178, 179, 182,
 195, 216, 223, 244 *seq.*,
 249 *seq.*, 261, 288 *seq.*
 an immortal, v, 12, 19
 birth of, v, 32
 commands the host during
 Asfandiyār's absence in
 the Seven Stages, v, 122,
 124, 126, 129, 132, 144,
 150
 Asfandiyār praised by the
 host and, v, 123, 125, 131,
 133
 revives Asfandiyār after his
 encounter with the dragon
 v, 127
 prays for deliverance from
 the snow, v, 138
 Asfandiyār and, consult, v,
 143
 sees Asfandiyār's signal and
 approaches the Brazen
 Hold, v, 150
 passes himself off as Asfan-
 diyār, v, 143, 151, 152
 joined by Asfandiyār, v,
 155
 advises Asfandiyār, v, 179
 Asfandiyār holds talk about
 Rustam with, v, 192
 advises Asfandiyār to main-
 tain friendly relations
 with Rustam, v, 196, 217
 Rustam served with un-
 tempered wine by, v, 211
 despair of, at the situation
 between Rustam and
 Asfandiyār, v, 218
 laments for Nūsh Āzar and
 Mihr-i-Nūsh, v, 232
 Asfandiyār talks of the
 fight with Rustam to, v,
 240
- Bishūtan, hears of Asfandiyār's
 overthrow and laments
 for him, v, 244
 Rustam bewails Asfandiyār
 to, v, 246
 Asfandiyār's last charge to,
 v, 249
 heads Asfandiyār's funeral
 train, v, 251
 displays the corpse of As-
 fandiyār, v, 253
 reproaches Gushtāsp, v, 253
 Jāmāsp, v, 254
 consoles Katáyūn, v, 255
 supports Rustam's over-
 tures to Gushtāsp, v, 257
 intended by Gushtāsp to be
 Bahman's minister, v, 279
 intercedes for Zāl, v, 288
 intercession of, accepted, v,
 289
 counsels Bahman to quit
 Zābul, v, 290
- Bistām (Gustaham *q.v.*), viii, 255
 and *note*, 256
- Bístún (Bagistana *i.e.* "Place of
 God," Behistún, Bisi-
 tūn), a lofty rock a few
 miles east of Kirmānshāh
 and famous for its in-
 scriptions, i, 379; ii, 128;
 iii, 12, 184, 350; iv, 190;
 v, 56, 184; vii, 61, 363;
 viii, 209
 inscription of Darius Hys-
 taspis at, i, 6; v, 11
 Gotarzes at, iii, 9, 11
 =Zāl's white elephant, i, 328
 =Rustam, v, 229
- Bíwarasp (Zahhák), i, 72, 144
 meaning of, i, 135
- Bíward, Túrānian hero, iii, 161
 comes to aid Pírān, iii, 152
- Bíward, Íránian chief *temp.*
 Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
 vi, 395
- Bízhan, Íránian hero, son of Gív,
 147, 150-152, ii, 4, 300
 and *note*; ii, 4, 366 and
note; iii, 20, 45, 67, 76
seq., 81, 92, 101, 115, 121,

Bízhan—*cont.*

129, 130, 133, 139, 141,
 157 *seq.*, 211, 234, 247,
 248, 253, 259, 264, 271,
 284 *seq.*, 289, 330 *seq.*, 337
seq., 349, 350, 352 *seq.*;
 iv, 7, 13, 26 *seq.*, 56, 77,
 88, 91, 102, 123 *seq.*, 147,
 292; vi, 194
 favourite with the poet, iv, 8
 parentage of, iii, 324
 friendship of, with Gusta-
 ham the son of Gazhdaham,
 iii, 15
 relations of, with Gív, iii, 15
 undertakes to slay Paláshán,
 iii, 26
 to carry off the crown
 and handmaid of Tazháv,
 iii, 27
 swears to avenge Zarásp, iii,
 59
 borrows a steed from
 Gustaham, iii, 59
 the mail of Siyáwush,
 iii, 60, 69
 worsts Farúd, iii, 62
 praises Farúd to Túš, iii, 62
 fights with Farúd, iii, 64
 Paláshán, iii, 70
 pursues Tazháv, iii, 77
 takes Ispanwí captive, iii, 78
 prowess of, with Káwa's
 standard, iii, 93
 shares his steed with Gusta-
 ham, iii, 95
 goes with Gív in quest of
 Bahrám, iii, 102
 attacks Bídád, iii, 244
 goes to summon Rustam,
 iii, 245
 worsted by Púládwand, iii,
 258
 Story of, and Manízha, 150,
 iii, 12, 285 *seq.*
 historical basis of, iii, 11
 Mohl on, iii, 285
 Firdausí on, iii, 287
 referred to, viii, 72
 volunteers to go to the help
 of the Irmánians, iii, 291

Bízhan, goes to Irmán with
 Gurgín, iii, 292
 destroys the wild boars, iii,
 293
 envied by Gurgín, iii, 294
 steed of, iii, 296, 302, 313
 interview of, with Manízha's
 nurse, iii, 297
 visits Manízha, iii, 298
 drugged, iii, 299
 wakes in Afrásiyáb's palace,
 iii, 300
 holds revel with Manízha,
 iii, 300
 discovered by Garsíwaz, iii,
 302
 taken before Afrásiyáb, iii,
 303
 sentenced to death, iii, 304
 lament of, iii, 305
 imprisoned, iii, 309; v, 116
 searched for by Gurgín,
 iii, 310
 receives Rustam's ring, iii,
 340
 Rustam's conditions of re-
 lease for, iii, 345
 released, iii, 346
 pardons Gurgín, iii, 346
 joins in attack on Afrá-
 siyáb's palace, iii, 347
 presented to Kai Khúšrau
 by Rustam, iii, 354
 holds converse with Kai
 Khusrau, iii, 356
 desires to fight Húmán, iv,
 39
 asks Gív to lend him the
 mail of Siyáwush, iv, 40
 seeks Gúdarz' permission to
 fight Húmán, iv, 41
 receives the mail of Siyá-
 wush from Gív, iv, 45
 parleys with Húmán, iv,
 45
 returns after the fight in
 Húmán's armour, iv 51,
 defeats night-attack and
 slays Nastíhan, iv, 54
 attacks with Gív Pírán's
 centre, iv, 83

- Bízhan, fights with Farshíward, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Rúin, iv, 97
 slays Rúin, iv, 103
 asks Gúdarz for help for Gustaham, iv, 117
 rescues Gustaham, iv, 124 *seq.*, 132
 brings back the corpses of Lahháq and Farshíward, iv, 126, 132
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Kai Khusrau gives audience to, and other nobles, iv, 283 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to iv, 295
 brings Luhrásp before Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
 Gúdarz' grief for, iv, 310, 312
 sons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Bízhan, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, 176, ix, 70, 96
 Máhwí writes to, ix, 96
 consults his minister, ix, 97
 sends troops to Marv, ix, 97
 Máhwí makes war on, ix, 115
 marches against Máhwí, ix, 117
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, lays ambush for Máhwí, ix, 118
 sends Barsám in pursuit of Máhwí, ix, 118
 hears of Máhwí's capture, ix, 119
 puts Máhwí to death, ix, 120
 goes mad and kills himself, ix, 120, 121
 Black Dív. *See* Dív.
 horse, Gushtásp's, v, 18
 cured by Zarduhsht, v, 18
 Stone, meteorite built into the wall of the Kaaba at Mecca, ii, 163 and *note*, vi, 65
 Blest, Country of the, vi, 74, 76
 Boars, wild, devastate Irmán, iii, 290
 slain by Bízhan, iii, 293
Bombyx Mori. *See* Silk.
 Book of Kings, Firdausí's Sháh-náma, i, 43
 Indication and Revision, Mas'údí's, vi, 252
 quoted, vi, 252
 Boot, golden. *See* Golden.
 Borysthenes, river (Dnieper *q.v.*), iii, 191
 Boulder of the Dív Akwán, iii, 271, 343 *seq.*, 347
 Rustam carried off on, iii, 276
 flung into the sea with, iii, 278
 raised from the sea, iii, 309
 used to cover Bízhan's prison, iii, 309
 removed from pit's mouth by Rustam, iii, 345
 Boundary-pillar, Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164
 Bowl, the full, symbolism of, vi, 63
 Brabantio, his warning to Othello, vi, 324
 Brádrók-résh, a Karap, v, 15
 slayer of Zarduhsht, v, 15
 Brahman, Hindu priest, iii, 29; iv, 50; v, 207, vii, 425; ix, 21

- Brahmans (Gymnosophistæ), 159
 vi, 64
 Palladius on, vi, 61
 country of, vi, 143, 147
 hear of Sikandar's coming
 and write to him, vi,
 143
 Sikandar's interview with,
 vi, 67, 143 *seq.*
 described, vi, 144
 reply to Sikandar's ques-
 tions, vi, 144 *seq.*
 Sikandar quits, vi, 147
 Brahmanism supersedes Budd-
 hism in eastern Írán, i, 16
 Brains, human, prescribed to
 Zahhák by Iblis, i, 139,
 146
 Bramble-grubber, 164. *See*
 Diláfrúz.
 Brand-mark, iii, 291
 of Káuś, iii, 291
 Brazen Hold, the 156, v, 116,
 117, 119 *seq.*, 159, 197,
 206, 255
 route to, v, 120, 135
 described, v, 121, 135, 141
 Asfandiyár's stratagem for
 taking, v, 116, 143
 surprised from within by
 Asfandiyár, v, 152 *seq.*
 left in charge of Sáwa, v,
 154
 Arjásp's head thrown from
 the ramparts of, v, 157
 Asfandiyár destroys, v, 162
 referred to, viii, 171
 Bride, the, one of the Kai Káuś'
 treasures, iv, 295
 given by Kai Khusrau to
 Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv,
 295
 Brides of the Treasure, Genii
 that watch over secret
 hoards, vi, 250
 Bridge, Battle of the, ix, 5, 67
 Browning, Robert, his poem of
 "The Glove," vi, 384
 Bucephala, city founded by
 Alexander the Great, vi,
 18
 Bucephalus, horse of Alexander
 the Great, vi, 18
 birth of, vi, 26
 a mare (Ethiopic version),
 vi, 18
 offered by Darius to Porus,
 vi, 31
 death of, vi, 18, 64
 city built by Alexander in
 memory of, vi, 18
 Buddha, birth stories of, vii, 383
 Buddhism, in eastern Írán and
 Kábulistán, i, 15
 superseded by Brahman-
 ism, i, 16
 regarded as idolatrous by
 Zoroastrians, i, 16
 Buddhist saints, story of two, vi,
 63
 Budge, Dr. E. A. Wallis, his
 editions of the Syriac
 and Ethiopic versions of
 the Pseudo-Callisthenes,
 vi, 14, 17 *note*
 Budini, race, vi, 73
 Búiti, demon, assails Zarduhsht
 i, 62; v, 17
 Bukhára, city on the Zarafshán
 river in the province of
 Sughd, ii, 241; iv, 65;
 vii, 331, 348, 359, 384;
 ix, 97, 115, 117
 Kurákhán sent to, iv, 154
 Afrásiyáb joins Kurákhán
 at, iv, 186
 Fire-temple built by Túr at,
 iv, 225
 Bahrám Gúr attacks, vii, 90
 receives tribute from, vii,
 94
 Bukhtakán. *See* Bakhtagán.
 Bulghár (Bulgaria), viii, 406
 Bull, mythological, i, 71; ii,
 407; vii, 245
 -fish, ii, 128
 Bundahish, Pahlaví text, i, 91,
 92, 117, 125, 131, 235,
 236, 337 *note*, 338, 369;
 ii, 3 *note*, 11, 26, 81, 118,
 189
 meaning of, i, 70 *note*

- Bundahish, account of Creation
 in, i, 117
 Búráb, court-farrier to Cæsar,
 iv, 326
 refuses to employ Gushtásp,
 iv, 327
 Buráza, minister under Yazda-
 gird son of Shápúr, vii, 4
 Burial-place of Rustam's race,
 the scene of the battle be-
 tween Bahman and Fará-
 marz, v, 287
 Burjak and Burjátúr, vi, 207.
 See Youths, the two.
 Burjâsp, Túránian hero, iv, 26
 commands the left wing, iv,
 26
 Burns, quoted, viii, 3
 Burrus, Prætorian prefect *temp.*
 Nero, vii, 279
 Burzmihir, Iránian warrior, vii,
 86
 bears Narsi's letter to Bah-
 rám Gúr, vii, 94
 Burzmihir, scribe, viii, 81, 87, 313
 = Búzurjmihir (?) *q.v.*, viii,
 71
 Burzúyalá, Túránian hero, iv,
 182
 fights and flees from Kai
 Khusrau, iv, 183
 Búsipás, nonce name used by
 Húmán when parleying
 with Rustam, iii, 198
 Bust, city in Sístán, situated at
 the junction of the Kan-
 dahár and Helmund
 rivers, i, 252; iv, 65; v,
 173, 277, 287; vi, 175;
 vii, 173, 395; ix, 89
 stream of, i, 252
 Buzgúsh, name of tribe, ii, 55
 and *note*, iii, 207
 Búzurjmihir, chief counsellor of
 Núshírwán in Iránian
 tradition and famous for
 his wisdom, 167-170, i,
 27; v, 261; vii, 5; viii,
 3 *seq.*, 67 *seq.*
 associated with the Persian
 Wisdom-literature, vii, 278
 Búzurjmihir, a semi-mythical
 personage, vii, 280
 found by Azád Sarv at Marv,
 vii, 283
 undertakes to interpret
 Núshírwán's dream vii,
 283
 goes with Azád Sarv to
 court, vii, 283
 adventure of, with a snake,
 vii, 284
 interprets Núshírwán's
 dream, vii, 284
 rewarded and honoured by
 Núshírwán, vii, 286, 289,
 304, 311, 315, 388
 accomplishments of, vii, 286
 discourses of, at the Seven
 Banquets of Núshírwán,
 vii, 287 *seq.*
 on fate and fortune, vii, 291
 on the attainment of great-
 ness, vii, 291, 296
 on what is worthiest, vii,
 291
 on sages, vii, 288, 291, 292,
 294, 296 *seq.*, 309
 on fools, vii, 297, 298, 306
 on conduct, vii, 288, 291
 seq., 299, 309
 on kings, vii, 290, 294, 295,
 301, 312
 on the wise administrator,
 vii, 294
 on sons, vii, 295, 303, 311.
 on riches and poverty, vii,
 295
 questioned by Ardshír and
 Yazdagird, vii, 308
 on scribes, i, 27; vii, 311
 on loyalty, vii, 312
 discourse of, vii, 366
 questioned by Núshírwán,
 vii, 367 *seq.*
 expounds the game of chess,
 vii, 380, 388
 invents the game of nard,
 vii, 381, 389
 welcomed on his return from
 Hind by Núshírwán, vii,
 393

Búzurjmíhr, goes hunting with,
and is suspected of theft
by, Núshírwán, viii, 4
disgraced by Núshírwán,
viii, 5
instructs Núshírwán's page,
viii, 5
refuses to admit himself in
the wrong, viii, 6 *seq.*
treated with increasing
rigour, viii, 7, 8
released, viii, 9
divination by, viii, 10 *seq.*
advises with Núshírwán,
viii, 47 *seq.*
instructed by Núshírwán
to prove Hurmuzd, viii,
56 *seq.*
abolition of Fire-worship
foretold by, viii, 68
death of, viii, 69, 71
=Burzmíhr (?), viii, 71
Mas'údí on, viii, 71
Byzantine title, vii, 218

C

CÆSAR, the dynastic title of the
kings of the West or Róm
who were regarded as be-
ing descended from Salm,
the son of Farídún, 154,
161, 162, 165, 167, 169,
172-174, i, 262; ii, 383;
iii, 9; vi, 112, 297, 353;
vii, 163; viii, 8 *seq.*, 19,
43 *seq.*, 51 *seq.*, 230, 232,
245, 252 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 299,
306 *seq.*, 334, 373 *seq.*,
408 *seq.*; ix, 10, 23
transliteration of, i, 84 and
note
temp. Luhrásp, 154, iv, 339
seq.; v, 11, 32, 167
daughter of=Katáyún, iv,
314; v, 167, 205
capital of, founded by Salm,
iv, 325

Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrásp, Nastár,
master of the herds to, iv,
325
refuses to employ Gush-
tásp, iv, 326
Búráb, court-farrier to, iv,
326
refuses to employ Gush-
tásp, iv, 327
proposes to give his eldest
daughter in marriage, iv,
329
wrath of, at his daughter's
choice of Gushtásp, iv,
330
yields to bishop's counsel,
iv, 331
refuses to provide for his
daughter and Gushtásp,
iv, 331
bids Mírín slay the wolf of
Fáskún, iv, 333
inspects the slain wolf, iv,
341
marries his second daugh-
ter to Mírín, iv, 341
bids Ahran slay the dragon
of Mount Sakíla, iv, 342
third daughter of, iv, 342
seq.
married to Ahran, iv,
348
rejoices in his two sons in
law, iv, 348
proclaims the tidings of the
slaying of the wolf and
the dragon, iv, 349
sons-in-law of, display their
accomplishment on the
riding-ground, iv, 349
sees Gushtásp's prowess and
questions him, iv, 350
learns the truth about the
wolf and the dragon and
asks pardon of Gushtásp
and Katáyún, iv, 351
wrath of, with Mírín and
Ahran, iv, 351
seeks to find out through
Katáyún who Gushtásp
is, iv, 351

Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrâsp, receives Gushtâsp with honour at court, iv, 352
 Ilyâs refuses to pay tribute to iv, 352
 receives a scornful message from Mirin and Ahran, iv, 353
 takes counsel with Gushtâsp, iv, 353
 bids Gushtâsp lead forth the host, iv, 354
 arrays the host, iv, 355
 Gushtâsp brings the dead body of Ilyâs to, iv, 355
 welcomes Gushtâsp after his victory, iv, 356
 consults Gushtâsp about demanding tribute from Írán, iv, 356
 sends an envoy to Luhrâsp, iv, 356
 gives audience to Zarír, iv, 360
 replies, to, and dismisses Zarír, iv, 361
 questions Gushtâsp, iv, 361
 sends Gushtâsp to Zarír's camp, iv, 361
 goes to feast with Gushtâsp and discovers who he is, iv, 363
 gives gifts to Katáyún, iv, 363
 the Íránian chiefs, iv, 364
 parts in good will from Gushtâsp, iv, 364
 sends embassy to Gushtâsp on hearing of Arjâsp's defeat, v, 75
temp. Humái, sues to Rushnawád for peace, v, 307
 = Failakús *q.v.*, vi, 24, 26, 27
 = Sikandar *q.v.*, vi, 40, 42, 49, 113, 114, 118, 121, 122, 124, 128, 129, 142, 158, 161, 170, 174, 178, 183
 = Valerian (Bazánúsh *q.v.*), vi, 326
 = Jovian (Bazánúsh *q.v.*), vi, 353, 354

Cæsar, *temp.* Shápúr son of Ardshír, 161
 pays tribute, vi, 298
temp. Shápúr son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 341 *seq.*, 345 *seq.*
 Shápúr in disguise visits, vi, 330
 entertained by, vi, 337
 discovered by, vi, 337
 arrested by, vi, 337
 sewn up in an ass's skin by, vi, 338
 put in charge of wife of vi, 338
 invades and ravages Írán, vi, 338
 Shápúr prepares to attack, vi, 346
 overthrown by Shápúr at Taisafún, vi, 346 *seq.*
 Shápúr's treatment of, vi, 349, 357
 mother of, vi, 351
 brother of (Yánús *q.v.*), vi, 351
temp. Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 389
 pays tribute, vi, 389
temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165
 embassy of, to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5, 86, 100
 marches on Írán, vii, 84
 propounds questions to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 102
 envoy of, questioned by the high priest, vii, 104
temp. Núshírwán, 167, 169, 172-174, vii, 244 *seq.*, 269, 273
 replies to Núshírwán concerning Munzir, vii, 245
 treasures of, taken by Núshírwán, vii, 255, 258
 sues to Núshírwán for peace, vii, 261
 sends tribute to Núshírwán, vii, 362
 death of, viii, 43
temp. Núshírwán, Hurmuzd, and Khusráu Parwiz, 172

- Cæsar, temp.* Núshírwán, *etc.*,
 offends Núshírwán, viii,
 44 *seq.*
 marches against Núshírwán, viii, 46
 attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
 retakes cities, viii, 93
 makes peace with Hurmuzd, viii, 95
 welcomes Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 257
 offers help to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 261
 changes his mind, viii, 262
 consults the astrologers, viii, 264
 decides to help Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 265
 offers daughter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 266
 offers of, accepted by Khusrau Parwíz viii, 269, 270
 talisman of, viii, 271, 275
 deceives Rúman envoys, viii, 272
 mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274
 gifts of, to Kharrád, viii, 278
 writes to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 279
 praises Rúman envoys, viii, 279
 counsels Maryam, viii, 279, 280
 gives Niyátús charge of Maryam, viii, 280
 corpse of Kút sent to, viii, 291
 Khusrau Parwíz announces death of Bahrám Chúbína to, viii, 345
 daughter of, gives birth to Shírwí, viii, 371
 Khusrau Parwíz' letter to, viii, 373
 rejoicing of, at birth of Shírwí, viii, 374
 embassy of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 374
 gifts of, given by Khusrau Parwíz to Shírwí, viii, 381
- Cæsar, temp.* Núshírwán, *etc.*,
 invited to seize Írán, viii, 408
 tricked by Khusrau Parwíz and retreats, viii, 410
 letter of, about the True Cross referred to, ix, 22
Cæsarean birth, of Rustam, i, 236, 321 *seq.*
Calanus (Sphinés), Indian ascetic, vi, 61
Onesicritus and, vi, 61
 Alexander the Great and, vi, 61
 death of, vi, 61
 derivation of, vi, 61
 identical with the sage sent by Kaid to Sikandar (*see* Four Wonders), vi, 62
Calendar, Zoroastrian, i, 88 ; iii, 286
 adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59
Callinicus. *See* Káliniyús.
Callisthenes, Greek historian *temp.* Alexander the Great vi, 12, 74
 Romance of Alexander fathered on, vi, 13
 account of, vi, 13
Callitris quadrivalvis, the Arar tree, vi, 19
Cambyses, father of Cyrus the Great, ii, 190
 identical with Siyáwush in legend, ii, 191
Cambyses, son of Cyrus the Great and King of Persia (B.C. 528-521), v, 10, 11 ; vi, 16
 Camel, piece in chess, vii, 422
 position of, vii, 422
 move of, vii, 422
Cancer, constellation, iii, 125, 151, 255 ; vii, 257
 moon in, an evil omen, i, 188 ; iii, 255 (?)
Candace (Kandake, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), dynastic title of the queens of Ethiopia, vi 13, 72

- Candace Alexander the Great and, vi, 65 *seq.*
- Candahar. *See* Kandahar.
- Cannibalism, iii, 191, 244
- Canopus, star, i, 188
of Yaman, i, 266; ii, 203; iii, 207; vi, 382
- Cappadocia (Pálawína), vi, 294
- Captives, mutilation of, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357
settlement of, vi, 327, 357
- Carline and Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 189, 303
- Carnelians, ii, 123
of Yaman, ii, 123
- Carrhæ, defeat of Crassus at, i, 15
- Carthaginians, the, vi, 30
Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
- Casaubon, Isaac, vi, 13
- Caspian Sea, i, 3, 4, 16, 19, 56, 57, 338; ii, 189, 336; iii, 10, 192; iv, 136; v, 13
- Caspian Gates, iv, 315; vi, 31, 32
- Cassander (B.C. 350-297), eldest son of Antipater and King of Macedonia, vi, 82
- Castellan, bishop as. *See* Bishop.
- Castes, division of Aryans into, i, 7
Íránians into, i, 130, 132
- Castle, White. *See* White Castle.
of the Aláns. *See* Alans.
Bahman. *See* Bahman.
Oblivion, vii, 184
Kubád son of Pírúz confined in, vii, 184
escapes from, viii, 184
- Catholicus, viii, 195
- Catullus, Roman poet (B.C. 84-54), i, 60
on Persian next of kin marriage, i, 60
- Caucasus, mountain-range running in a south-easterly direction from the Black Sea to the Caspian, i, 16; iv, 316; vi, 15; vii, 214, 217; viii, 72
- Caucasus, passes in, i, 16; vi, 79
fortified, i, 16, vii, 153, 187, 216, 239
Mas'údi's account of, vii, 215
- barrier (mythical) of Alexander the Great (Sikandar) in, i, 16; vi, 78, 189, 249
legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78
site of, vi, 79
described, vi, 164
- Cave, cavern, in Mázandarán, ii, 28
- White Dív's, ii, 28, 55, 58 *seq.*
- Afrásiyáb's, in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136 *seq.*, 259 *seq.*
- Central clime. *See* Clime.
- Chách (Shásh, Old Táshkand, now in ruins), city on the right bank of the Jaxartes west of Ferghána, famous for its bows, ii, 241, 258; iv, 19, 187, 188, 255; vii, 167, 329, 334, 340, 343, 348, 358, 359; viii, 314, 377; ix, 115, 116
bow of, i, 227; iii, 123, 181, 227; v, 244; vi, 384; viii, 125, 126, 294
government of, given to Tús by Rustam, ii, 358
thane of, one of Firdausí's authorities, vi, 197, 210
referred to, vi, 229 and *note*
daughter of governor of, vii, 285
intrigue of, vii, 285
executed, vii, 286
battle-axes of, ix, 118
- Chaghán, district on the right bank of the Oxus where that river is crossed from Tirmid, and city further north on the upper waters of river of the same name, iii, 152, 177, 228; vii, 94, 157, 359

- Chaghán, ceded by Kubád to the Haitálans, vii, 198
monarch of = Faghánish, vii, 333
- Chaghwán = Chaghán (?), vi, 174
Sikandar visits, vi, 174
quits, vi, 175
- Cháha, hostelry of, i, 45
- Chahár Makála, Persian treatise, i, 23
account of Firdausí in, i, 38, 39, 45
- Chahram (Jahram *q.v.*), city in Párs
- Chalah, viii, 193
- Chálandshán. *See* Chánlandshán.
- Chalcedon, viii, 194, 195
- Chalybon-Beroea (Aleppo), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41
held to ransom by Núshírwán, vii, 218
- Champions, the Twelve, vii, 156.
See Rukhs.
- Chamrosh, mythical bird, i, 235
- Chánlandshán (Khálanján, Khánlanján), district and town (Fírúzán) near Ispahán on the Zayinda river (*see* LEC. pp. 206, 207 and *note*), i, 29
Ahmad ibn Muhammad of, patron of Firdausí, i, 29
Firdausí's escape from drowning at, i, 26, 29
- Chao-wou = Sáwa *q.v.*, viii, 72
- Characters, chief, of Sháhnáma, i, 49
- Characteristics, of Írán, i, 3 *seq.*
- Characteristics of a Happy Man, Pahlaví text, vii, 279
- Charam, place in Írán, iii, 40, 41, 52, 68, 85, 86, 111, 112
- Charbar, place on the coast of Balúchistán (Makrán), vi, 70
- Chares of Mytilene, Greek writer and official at the court of Alexander the Great ii 40; vi 61
- Chares of Mytilene, story by, of Hystaspes and Zariadres quoted, iv, 314
- Charinda, river, iii, 10 *note*
- Charjui (Ámwí *q.v.*), city on the Oxus, vii, 91 *note*
- Charogos. *See* Tainúsh.
- Chase, equipage for, vii, 48, 76; viii, 384
- Chess, game of, 169, vi, 201; vii, 14 and *note*, 280, 385 *seq.*; viii, 371
Note on, vii, 380
sent by the Rája of Hind to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 380, 384 *seq.*
expounded by Búzurjmihr, vii, 380, 388
symbolism of, vii, 381
two forms of, vii, 381, 388, 422
changes in powers of pieces in, vii, 381
Mas'údi on, vii, 382
invention of, Story of the, 169, vii, 394 *seq.*
- Chess-board, vii, 14, 385, 388
- Chess-men, vii, 14, 380, 388
- Chevy Chase, ii, 82
- Chigil (Naryn ?) district and river, tributary of the Jaxartes, iv, 155
monarch of, v, 110
commands the left, v, 110 = Arjásp, v, 54, 86
Turkman of, = Gurgsár, v, 139
- Chihrzád (Humái), daughter and wife of Sháh Bahman, ii, 3; v, 290 and *note*
meaning of, v, 290 and *note*
- Chíjast (Khanjast, Urumiah), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136 *note*
- Children, sometimes brought up un-named, i, 8, 179
- Chín, country, China, but generally in the Sháhnáma equivalent to Chinese Tartary and sometimes to Túrán, 160, 165, 173,

Chin, country, China—*cont.*

i, 207, 229, 230, 261, 267,
351, 371; ii, 77, 82, 111,
143, 154, 159, 237, 277,
280, 287, 289, 297, 305,
307, 357, 359, 383, 391;
iii, 46, 49, 103, 106 and
passim.

assigned by Farídún to Túr,
i, 189

brocade of, i, 269, 233 and
passim

coasts of, vi, 173

cloth of gold from, ii, 275;
vi, 182, 334

dinárs of, iv, 241

Faghfúr of. *See* Faghfúr.

helm of, i, 132

images of, v, 35

implements of, vi, 122

Khán of. *See* Khán.

King of=Afrásiyáb, ii, 99;
iv, 165, 170, 230

=Khán, iii, 227, 228;
vii, 87

=Arjásp, v, 36, 52, 55,
69, 86, 108

=Faghfúr, vii, 131

lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142

=Sikandar, vi, 113

=Faghfúr, vi, 171

mace of, iii, 129

ornaments of, ii, 232; vi,
102, 139

paper of, vi, 172

pen of, vi, 57, 99

prince of=Khán, iii, 226

=Afrásiyáb, iv, 194

=Arjásp, v, 35

=Parmúda, viii, 142

=Sáwa, viii, 222

rarities of, vi, 171, 173; vii,
49

robes of, iii, 329; viii, 205,
257

Rose of=daughter of the
Khán, vii, 363 and *note*

sea of, i, 113, 140, 252, 349;

ii, 12, 256, 276, 285, 356,

357; iii, 151, 252; iv,

237, 254; v, 109, 203,

Chin, sea of—*cont.*

233, 239 *note*; vi, 149;
vii, 343; viii, 377

shield of, iii, 125, 140, 256;
ix, 118

Sikandar goes to, vi, 169

silk of, i, 157; iii, 104, 165;
v, 159, 295; vi, 85, 266;

vii, 73, 92, 347, 364, 418;

viii, 258, 269, 374

steel of, iii, 186

stuffs of, vi, 143, 215

ware of, vii, 78

sage of, viii, 235

sashes from, ix, 12, 53

gold thread of, ix, 82

merchantmen of, ix, 89

China, country, vi, 204

silk industry of, vi, 204

Chináb (Akesines), river in the
Punjab, vi, 31, 64

Chinese, viii, 72

language, vi, 147

Chingish, Túránian hero, 149, iii,
207

volunteers to avenge Kámús,
iii, 194

challenges Rustam, iii, 194

slain by Rustam, iii, 195

Chínwí, noble of Chín, viii, 331

Chionitæ, people, v, 13

geographical position of, v,
13

Chorene, Moses of. *See* Moses.

Chosrau, Chosroes I (Kisrá),
Sásánian Sháh, vii, 212,
281. *See* Neshírwár.

Chosroes, king of Armenia, vi,
202

Christ, 174, vi, 339; vii, 207,
249, 264, 270, 273, 276;
ix, 24, 109

Faith of, vi, 133, 339; vii,
274; viii, 43, 191, 272,
310, 380

account of, viii, 276

father of, viii, 276

mother of, viii, 276

Cross of, viii, 377, 380; ix,
23

laughter of, viii, 191, 380

- Christian, Christians, 167, vi, 342; vii, 171, 254, 270; viii, 21, 67, 195, 196, 256, 272, 308, 310, 381; ix, 23
rites of marriage, vi, 104
Faith, vi, 356
persecution of, vii, 153
Firdausi's view of, vii, 219
wife of Nûshîrwân, vii, 263, 274
 mother of Nûshzâd, vii, 263
 helps Nûshzâd in his revolt, vii, 266
 laments for Nûshzâd, vii, 276
 support Nûshzâd, vii, 266, 272
 shut gates of Kârsân against Khusrau Parwîz, viii, 252
Christianity, vi, 138
 polemics against, vii, 219, 270, 273
Chûbîn (Jûbîn), father, according to Mas'ûdî, of Bahrâm Chûbîna, viii, 77
Chûbîna, viii, 215, 222
 meaning of, viii, 98 *note*
Cilicia (Kaidâfa), most southeasterly province of Asia Minor, vi, 294
Circesium, viii, 188
City of Women, 160. *See* Harûm.
Claudius, Roman emperor (A.D. 41-54), iii, 10
Cleophis, Indian queen, vi, 65
 Alexander the Great and, vi, 65
Climate, of Îrân, i, 4, 5
 Mâzandarân, ii, 27
Clime, Climes, the seven, i, 40, 71, 122, 123, 238; ii, 15
 note, 372; iii, 290, 317; vi, 179, 262, 266, 273, 280, 376, 377; viii, 395
 Kai Khusrau surveys, in his divining-cup, iii, 318
 Central, i, 71, 122; ii, 27
Cloud, emblem of prosperity, i, 73, 113, 114; ii, 263 and *note*; iv, 141; vi, 90
Cloud, thunder-, as water-stealing demon, i, 7
 of bale=Afrâsiyâb, ii, 13
 name given by Rustam to himself, ii, 53
Clough, quoted, viii, 187
Cocks and hens, taught to crow daybreak, i, 126
Colchians, people of the south-eastern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72
Colic, cure of, vii, 39
Commander of the Faithful, ix, 72
 'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*
Commons, king of the, vii, 3
Communists (Mazdakites, *q.v.*), vii, 185
Companions of the Prophet (Muhammad), 139
 praise of, 139, i, 106
Constantinople, vii, 316; viii, 194
 conspirator against Nûshîrwân escapes to, vii, 316
Contents, General Table of, ix, 139
Cook, chief, of Nûshîrwân, grievance of, viii, 18
Cordwainer. *See* Shoemaker.
Corn-land, taxes on, vii, 215
Corpse, 160
Cos, island in the Ægean sea, vi, 204
 silk industry of, vi, 204
Cosmogony, ancient Îrânian, i, 5, 71
 Firdausi's, 102, iv, 136
Country of the Blest. *See* Blest.
Courses, the Seven, of Rustam, 143, ii, 29, 44 *seq.*
Crassus, the triumvir (B.C. 115-53), i, 15
 defeat of, at Carrhæ, i, 15
Creation, Zoroastrian account of, i, 5, 117
 Firdausi's account of, i, 102 *seq.*
Crete, island, south of Greece, vi, 323 *note*.

- Crete, Minos king of, legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Crocodile, iii, 278
= assassin, i, 111
= Kámús, iii, 192
- Cross, the, 174, vi, 351, 352; vii, 249, 270, 276; viii, 308, 309, 374
captured by Dáráb, vi, 306 and *note*
religion of, vi, 138
Passion of, vi, 339
the true, viii, 191, 196, 253, 377, 378, 380; ix, 4, 5, 10, 24
restoration of, ix, 7, 56
of Christ, ix, 23
Elevation of, ix, 43
- Crows and Owls, story of, viii, 263 and *note*
- Crystal, House of, ix, 25 and *note*
Ctesias. *See* Ktesias.
- Ctesiphon (Taisafún *q.v.*), city on the left bank of the Tigris some 25 miles below Baghdád, originally an extension of Seleucia on the right bank of that river, ii, 80; vi, 321, 322, 325, 372; viii, 42, 188, 189, 193, 194, 196; ix, 65 *seq.*
taken by Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44
Sa'ad, ix, 67
booty found at, ix, 68
- Culture-heroes. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshid, i, 118 *seq.*
- Cup, divining-, of Kai Khusrau, iii, 317, 318, 323
inexhaustible, of Kaid, 159, vi, 94, 100, 109
poisoned, proffered to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259
crystal, to detect poison (?), vii, 51
- Cybele, Greek goddess, vi, 71
= Hittite Ma, vi, 71
- Cymbals, of the Brides of the Treasure, vi, 250; vii, 35 and *note*
- Cypress, of Kishmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Cyrus the Great (B.C. 558-528), son of Cambyses and founder of the Persian empire
legend of, in Herodotus identical with that of Kai Khusrau, ii, 9, 190
in Ctesias transferred to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 195
rise of, i, 18
compared to that of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 194
historical parallel with Kai Khusrau, v, 10

D

- DABISTÁN, 17th century Persian treatise, v, 28
- Cypress of Kishmar, account of, in, v, 28
- Dád, Íránian warrior, vii, 86
- Dadáfríd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*
- Daévas. *See* Dív.
- Daghwí, desert in Turkistán, ii, 193; iv, 117
- Dahae *i.e.*, "foes" or "robbers," a name given by the Íránians to the nomad tribes dwelling east of the Caspian and north of the Atrak in the region now occupied by the Yamut Turkmans, i, 19; iii, 10
- Daháka (Azhi, Azi, Zakhák *q.v.*), evil spirit, i, 7, 142, 172
- Dahistán, stead or home of the Dahae *q.v.* and town between Harát and Marv, i, 280, 344 *seq.*, 349, 363, iv, 61, 72, 79, 148, 157; ix, 95
- Naudar beleaguered in, by Afrásiyáb, i, 353

- Dai, genius, i, 88, 89; iii, 287, 328
 month or day, i, 88, 89; v, 43; vi, 306; viii, 173, 421; ix, 17
 pa Mihr, day, i, 88; v, 16
- Dái Marj, place where Bahrám Gúr is said to have been drowned, vii, 6
- Dáitya, river, v, 13
- Daizan (Táír *q.v.*), vi, 322
 legend of, vi, 322
 daughter of, legend of, vi, 323
- Dakhma, "Tower of Silence," i, 81 and *note*
- Dakíki, Persian poet, 139, 154, 155, ii, 3 *note*, 8; v, 10, 13; vi, 196; viii, 190
 account of, i, 28, 67, 69, 109; v, 20
 Firdausí and, v, 21 *seq.*, 30, 87, 88
 work of, compared with the Yátkár-i-Zarírán, v, 24 *seq.*
- Dámaghán, city on the road from Tihrán to Nishápúr and the capital of the province of Kúmis, ii, 15; iv, 255; viii, 109, 189
- Dáman-i-Kuh, the northern "mountain-skirt" of modern Persia, iii, 15
- Damascus, chief city in Syria, vi, 195
 Nicolaus of, Greek historian, *temp.* Augustus, vi, 195
- Damáwand, volcano nearly 20,000 feet high and the culminating peak of the mountain-range south of the Caspian, i, 143, 144, 148; vi, 202; viii, 391
- Zahhák fettered on, i, 169, 173
- Árish's arrow-shot from, v, 12
- Dambar, city in Kábulistán (?) which was regarded as Indian, i, 252, 256; iv, 278, 283, 284; vii, 396, 399, 421
- Dámdád, Nask, i, 70 *note*
- Damúr, Túránian hero, ii, 296, 319; iv, 156
 overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295
 advocates execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
- Danbar. *See* Dambar.
- Dandamis. *See* Mandanes.
- Dáng, coin, ix, 94 and *note*
- Dánishwar, the dihkán, supposed compiler of the Bástán-náma, *temp.* Yazdagird III, i, 67, 68
- Danube, river, v, 11
 Darius' expedition to, v, 11.
- Dará, son of Dáráb, Sháh (Darius Codomanus *q.v.*) 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281; vi, 83 *seq.*, 112, 113, 123, 124, 132, 137, 170, 172, 188, 325, 353; viii, 220, 242, 387
 first historic Sháh in the Sháhnáma, i, 49
 origin of name, v, 297 *note*
 legendary son of Dáráb, vi, 17, 27
 appointed by Dáráb to succeed him, vi, 27
 Reign of, 158, vi, 29 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 29 *seq.*
 historical account of, vi, 29
 movements of, after his final defeat by Alexander (Sikandar), vi, 31
 Sikandar's correspondence with the wife and daughter of, vi, 33
 accession of, vi, 34
 letter of, to the kings, vi, 34
 pays his troops, vi, 35
 ambassadors come to, vi, 35
 demands tribute from Sikandar, vi, 36

- Dará, marches against Sikandar, vi, 37
 Sikandar's visit to the camp of, vi, 38
 invites Sikandar to a banquet, vi, 40
 ambassador of, recognises Sikandar, vi, 40
 sends horsemen in pursuit of Sikandar, vi, 41
 defeated by Sikandar, vi, 43
 collects another army, vi, 43
 defeat of, vi, 44
 goes to Chahram, vi, 44
 Istakhr, vi, 44
 takes counsel with his chiefs, vi, 45
 collects a new host, vi, 46
 marches from Istakhr, vi, 46
 defeat of, vi, 46
 withdraws to Kirmán, vi, 46
 bewails himself, vi, 47
 letter of, to Sikandar, vi, 49
 Fúr, vi, 50
 marches against Sikandar, vi, 51
 abandoned by his troops and flees, vi, 51
 murdered by his ministers, vi, 52
 murderers of, arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
 dying interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 53
 vengeance promised to, by Sikandar, vi, 53
 tells his last wishes to Sikandar, vi, 54
 bestows Rúshanak upon Sikandar, vi, 55, 86
 dies, vi, 55
 burial of, vi, 56
 Sásán, son of, vi, 211
 kindred of, support Ard-shír Pápakán, vi, 223
- Dará (Daras), city, viii, 41, 194
 taken by Núshírwán, viii, 41
 ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
- Dará Panáh, viii, 189, 284
 goes disguised to Khusrau Parwíz' camp, viii, 286
 betrays Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286
 returns to Bahrám Chúbína, with forged letter, viii, 287
- Daráb, Sháh, son of Bahman and Humái, 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281, 292, 297 *seq.*; vi, 11, 34 and *note*, 49, 83, 84, 86, 132, 137, 172, 188; vii, 215; viii, 191
 founding legend of, ii, 11; v, 293 *seq.*
 Tabarí's version of, v, 297 *note*
 birth of, v, 294
 referred to, v, 294 *seq.*
 exposed on the Farát, v, 295
 found and adopted by a launderer, v, 296 *seq.*
 royal birth of, asserts itself, v, 298
 youthful escapades of, v, 298
 brought up as a cavalier, v, 299
 feels lack of natural affection for the launderer, v, 300
 hears of his case from the launderer's wife, v, 300
 enlists, v, 301
 seen by Humái, v, 302
 and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
 receives gifts from Rashnawád, v, 304
 questioned by Rashnawád, v, 304
 prowess of, against the Rúmans, v, 305, 306
 praised and rewarded by Rashnawád, v, 305, 306
 captures the Cross, v, 306 and *note*
 takes of the spoil one spear, v, 307
 returns to Írán, v, 307

- Dáráb, Rashnawád hears from the launderer and his wife of the case of, v, 308
 Rashnawád writes to Humái about, v, 308
 recognised by Humái as being her son, v, 308
 appears with Rashnawád before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*
 crowned by Humái and accepts her excuses, v, 310
 Humái proclaims the accession of, v, 311
 visited by, and rewards, the launderer and his wife, v, 311, 312
 Reign of, 158, vi, 11 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 11 *seq.*
 father of Sikandar in Persian legend, vi, 16
 legendary father of Dárá, vi, 17
 harangues the chiefs, vi, 20
 ambassadors come to, vi, 21
 employs Rúman artificers, vi, 21
 wars with the Arabs, vi, 21
 defeats and demands tribute from Arabs, vi, 22
 wars with Rúm, vi, 22
 defeats Failakús, vi, 23
 grants terms of peace to Failakús, vi, 24
 marries the daughter of Failakús, vi, 25
 returns to Párs, vi, 25
 becomes disaffected towards his wife (Náhíd), vi, 25
 marries again, vi, 27
 Dárá is born to him, vi, 27
 fails in health, vi, 27
 appoints Dárá to succeed him, vi, 27
 dies, vi, 28
 Dáráb, Dárábírd, city in Párs, 158, vi, 17, 198, 199; viii, 313
 Darband, town and pass between the Caucasus *q.v.*, and the Caspian, ii, 336; viii, 369 *note*
 Darband, Pass of, described, i, 16
 fortification of, i, 16, 17
 and *note*, vii, 213, 239
 Mas'údi's accounts of, vii, 215
 Darí, vii, 430 and *note*
 Dariel, Pass of, in the Caucasus, vi, 79
 Darius, Hystaspis, Sháh, i, 9, 65; v, 10; viii, 187
 trilingual inscription of, at Bihistún, i, 6
 Zoroastrian calendar adopted by, i, 59
 reign of, and Gushtásp's compared, v, 11
 conversion of, v, 11
 Darius, Codomanus (Dará *q.v.*)
 Sháh, i, 49; vi, 16, 17, 29
 defeated at Issus, vi, 30
 Alexander escapes from the banquet of, vi, 30
 defeated at Gaugamela, vi, 31
 asks that his family may be restored to him, vi, 31
 writes to Porus, vi, 31
 historical account of the death of, vi, 31
 daughter of, marries Alexander, vi, 33
 corpse of, sent to Párs, vi, 33
 assassins of, punished, vi, 33
 Dareja, river in Ázarbáiján, v, 14
 Darkness, Land of. *See* Gloom.
 House of, ix, 7;
 Dármán, viii, 202
 Darmesteter, Professor, on Firdausi's geography, ii, 79, 80
 on Afrásiyáb's capture by Húm, iv, 136
 Story of the Worm, vi, 203
 Haftwád, vi, 206
 Darún, Zoroastrian religious rite, v, 19
 Daryai Rúd, river in Ázarbáiján, v, 14

- Dastagird, city, viii, 193, 196 ;
 ix, 7
 taken by Heraclius, viii, 194
- Dashma, Íránian hero, iv, 148
- Dástán (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84, 248, 264
- Dástán-i-Sám (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84
- Dástán-i-Zand (Zál *q.v.*), i, 245
 and *note*, 248
- Date-palm, i, 4
 taxes on, vii, 215, 225
- Daughter of Kaid. *See* Kaid,
 Four Wonders of.
- Daulat Sháh, author of "Lives
 of the Poets," i, 24
- Death, early, Firdausí's justifi-
 cation of, ii, 119
- Dead Sea, viii, 192
- Deinon. *See* Dinon.
- Deipnosophistæ*, of Athenæus, ii,
 10
 quoted, iv, 314
- Derketo, goddess, v, 292
 legend of, v, 292
- Destiny, Muhammadan and Zor-
 oastrian conceptions of, i,
 52
- Déwasárm, king of Hind, vii, 381
 sends the game of chess to
 Núshírwán, vii, 380
- Dharma, Indian god of righteous-
 ness, iv, 138
 follows in the form of a dog
 the Pándavas in their pil-
 grimage, iv, 139
- Dhoulkarnain. *See* Zu-'l-kar-
 nain.
- Dhú Kár, battle of, viii, 188, ix,
 4, 5, 66
 historical account of, viii,
 190
 date of, viii, 191
- Diagram to illustrate reign of
 Gushtásp, v, 27
 Persian Romance of Alex-
 ander the Great, vi, 84
- Díba-i-Khusrauí, treasure, viii,
 406 and *note*
- Dice, vii, 381
 used in the game of nard,
 vii, 381, 389
 symbolism of, vii, 381, 382
- Dihkán, Persian generic title, i,
 56, 81
 Faith of, vi, 95
- Dijla (Arwand, Tigris *q.v.*), river,
 i, 160
 Faridún's crossing of, i, 160
- Diláfrúz, Íránian hero, iv, 147
- Diláfrúz, a bramble-grubber,
 Bahráam Gúr and, vii, 70
 seq.
- Diláfrúz-i-Farrukhpái, Íránian
 slave-girl, 162, vi, 3
 slave to Cæsar's wife, vi,
 338
 pities Shápúr, vi, 339
 discovers who Shápúr is, vi,
 339
 frees Shápúr from the ass's
 skin, vi, 340
 escapes with Shápúr from
 Rúm, vi, 340 *seq.*
 entertained by a gardener,
 vi, 342
 praised by Shápúr, vi, 346
 named and honoured by
 Shápúr, vi, 356
 meaning of, vi, 356 *note*
- Dílám, Dílámán, district on the
 Caspian now represented
 by Talish and part of
 Gílán, vi, 202, 227 ; vii,
 243, 244, 362
- Dílámids (Buyids), dynasty rul-
 ing in south-western Írán
 in the 10th century A.D.,
 i, 14, 21, 45
- Dílamite, 'Alí the, friend and
 helper of Firdausí, i, 35 ;
 ix, 121
- Dilánjám, Cæsar's (*temp.* Luh-
 rásp) second daughter, iv,
 333
 asked in marriage by Mírín,
 iv, 333
 married to Mírín, iv, 341
- Dilárái, wife to Dára and mother
 of Rúshanak, 158, 159, vi,
 87 *seq.*
 visited by Náhid, vi, 89
- Dimna, Kalíla and, 169. *See*
 Fables of Bidpai.

- Dína-i Mañnog-i Khirad, Pahlavi text, ii, 189
 quoted, vii, 279
- Dínár, gold coin, i, 81, 231, 363
 and *passim*
- Dínawarí, Arabic historian (ninth century), vi, 16, 64, 80, 81, 256, 323; vii, 6, 156, 186, 214
- Dinkard, Pahlavi text, i, 70 *note*, 373; ii, 26, 81; vi, 252
- Diodorus, Greek historian, *temp.* Julius Cæsar and Augustus, v, 293
Bibliotheca of, v, 293
- Diognetus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Dionysus, Greek god, vi, 71
 temple of, visited by Sikandar, vi, 71
- Diram. *See* Drachm.
- Dirâzdast (Longimanus), title, v, 281; vi, 324 and *note*
- Dív, dívs (Daévas), demons or "foreign devils," 140, 143, 150, i, 42, 82, 130, 131, 134, 148, 227, 290; ii, 27, 33, 34, 35, 41 *seq.*, 57 *seq.*, 68, 73, 101, 102, 144; iii, 70, 74, 200, 232, 244, 255, 257 *seq.*, 261, 268, 273 *seq.*, 320, 330, iv, 86, 87, 177, 288, 296, v, 32, 58, 66, 71, 108, 174; 201, 202, 213, 220, 230; 245; vi, 135, 146, 150, 241; vii, 115, 154, 174, 368 *seq.*; viii, 159, 161, 206, 209, 211, 217, 218, 290, 341, 342, 399 and *note*, 418; ix, 18, 25
- rebel against Tahmúras, i, 127
- overthrown by Tahmúras, i, 127
- teach Tahmúras the art of writing, i, 127
- build edifices for Jamshíd, i, 133
- Dív, dívs, carry Jamshíd on his throne up to the sky, i, 133
- title of honour, ii, 29
- song of a, ii, 31
- Arjâsp informed by a, of Gushtâsp's resolve not to pay tribute, v, 36
- Mazdak's five, vii, 205
- Búzurmíhr's ten, vii, 368
- Akwán. *See* Akwán.
- =Áhriman, 139, i, 82, 126, 156, 195, 260; ii, 46, 324, 342, 370, 386, 400; iii, 189, 293, 333; iv, 63, 84, 201, 206, 278, 282, 286, 289 *seq.*, 301, 322, 341; v, 35, 81, 180, 188, 189, 194 *seq.*, 218, 228, 242; vi, 349; vii, 93, 107, 109, 117, 143, 154, 206, 227, 268, 289, 303, 304, 323, 332, 368 *seq.*, 376, 390; viii, 27, 50, 87, 123, 215, 222, 304, 341, 346, 411, ix, 47, 102, 104
- =Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 153, 219, 293, 298
- witch, viii, 161
- =Zahhák, viii, 242
- =Kulún, viii, 342
- Binder of the=Tahmúras, i, 42, 125, 126, 214
- =Gúdarz, iv, 35
- =Rustam, iii, 253, 262
- Black, son of Áhriman, 139, i, 82, 117; ii, 53; v, 199; viii, 171
- White, 143, i, 82; ii, 27, 39 *seq.*, 43, 44, 54, 55, 58 *seq.*, 66, 93, 163, 373; iii, 143, 256, 314; iv, 136, 296; v, 117, 176, 203, 207, 234
- defeats Káuś, ii, 40
- blood of, cures blindness, ii, 58, 62
- slain by Rustam, ii, 60
- Divining-cup. *See* Cup.
- Dneiper (Borysthenes), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Black Sea, iii, 191

- Don (Tanais), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Sea of Azov, iv, 315 *note*, 319
- Doni, The Morall Philosophie of*, vii, 383
- Drachm (diram), silver coin, i, 81
- Dragon, 143, 154, 156, 160, 164, 165, i, 42, 123; vi, 132, 140
- Faridún takes the form of, i, 186
- of the Kashaf, i, 235
- Sám and the, i, 296 *seq.*, v, 202
- slain by Rustam and Rakhsh, ii, 48 *seq.*
- of Mount Sakila, iv, 342 *seq.*
- Gushtásp and, iv, 343 *seq.*
- teeth of, produced by Hishwí to Cæsar, iv, 351
- referred to, iv, 358
- Sikandar's adventure with, vi, 71, 151
- slain by Bahráam Gúr, vii, 42, 123 *seq.*
- described, i, 123, 296; iv, 345; v, 202. vi, 151; vii, 43, 123
- Dragon=Afrásiyáb, iii, 22, 46, 211, 219, 222, 248, 319, 343; iv, 270
- =Ahriman, i, 195; iii, 330
- =Ardawán, vi, 222
- =Fúr, vi, 113
- =Gív, iii, 58
- =Húmán, iv, 43, 52
- =Paláshán, iii, 26
- =Púládward, iii, 264
- =Rakhsh's dam, i, 379
- =Rakhsh, i, 380
- =Rustam, iii, 222
- =Zahhák, i, 155, 158, 161, 163, 168, 169, 275, 288, 292
- Dragon's child=Rúdába, i, 304
- Drangiana (Sístán), province in eastern Írán, i, 4; vi, 32
- Dream, dreams, veridical, i, 51
- Firdausí on, vii, 281
- Dream, Abúl Kásim of Gurgán's, iii, 190
- Afrásiyáb's, ii, 232 *seq.*
- referred to, ii, 243, 297; iv, 170, 267
- Firdausí's, of Mahmúd, i, 112
- Dakikí, v, 23, 30
- Gúdarz's, ii, 363, 404
- Gushtásp's, v, 19
- Kaid's, v, 62, 91
- Katáyún's, iv, 316, 329, 330
- Núshírwán's, vii, 282 *seq.*; ix, 92
- Odatis', iv, 315
- Pápak's, vi, 200, 212
- Pírán's, ii, 325
- Sám's, i, 243, 244
- Siyáwush's, ii, 309
- Tús', iii, 149
- Zariadres', iv, 315
- Draupadi, joint wife of the five Pándavas, iv, 138 and *note*, 139
- Drought and famine in Írán, i, 3, 5, 370, 371; ii, 363; vii, 159, 162
- Pírúz's measures to alleviate, vii, 159, 162
- breaking up of, described, vii, 163
- Mazdak's parable concerning, vii, 201
- Drváspa, genius of cattle, iv, 137
- Dualism, i, 5, 49, 50, 52, 56, 58
- taught by Urmuzd to Zarduhsht, v, 16
- Dughdhóvá, v, 14, 15
- account of, v, 14
- Dúk, plain, viii, 282, 284
- mountain, viii, 289
- Dukhtnúsh. *See* Núsha.
- Dunbar. *See* Dambar.
- Duncker, Professor, ii, 9
- on date of Zandavasta, ii, 9
- Dúrásróbó, a Karap *q.v.*, v, 15
- Dust, prevalence of, in Írán, i, 3
- as a metaphor, i, 73 and *passim*
- Dynasty, dynasties, Íránian, i, 49
- Pishdádian *q.v.*
- Kaíánian *q.v.*

Dynasty, Ashkánian *q.v.*
Sásánian *q.v.*

E

ECLIPSE of sun, total, *temp.*
Pírúz, vii, 159

Edessa, S. James of, i, 374

Eggs, golden, as tribute, vi, 24,
36, 160, 169

Egypt (Misr, *q.v.*), ii, 80; vi, 12,
16, 17, 72, 81, 82; viii,
187, 193

Pseudo-Callisthenes written
in, vi, 13

invaded by Alexander the
Great, vi, 30

Egyptian Egyptians, vi, 16;
viii, 193; ix, 110

falsification of history by,
vi, 16

thorn, viii, 210

linen, ix, 110

Ekbatana (Hamadán), the capi-
tal of Media, i, 17; ii,
191; vi, 31, 32

capital of the Manda, *q.v.*,
i, 17

Elam (Susiana, Khúzistán),
ancient kingdom and Per-
sian province at the head
of the Persian Gulf, i, 9;
vi, 194, 198

Elburz. *See* Alburz.

Elements, the four, i, 102, 286

Elephant, elephants, i, 112 and
passim

towers on, iv, 179

Fúr's, vi, 115, 116

Sikandar's device to over-
come, vi, 115, 116

=Rustam, iii, 221, 253

=Rakhsh, iii, 257

=Fúr, vi, 117

piece in chess, vii, 285,
423

position of, vii, 388, 422
move of, vii, 422

White, Zál's, 141, i, 328

referred to, i, 377

Elephantine, the=Rustam, ii,
65, 67

Eleven Rukhs, Battle of the, iv,
88

arranged by Gúdarz and
Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*

Firdausí's reflections on, iv,
7, 98, 106

Ellipi, kingdom of, i, 9, 17

Elixir, 144, ii, 177, 178

Elymais (Elam, *q.v.*), kingdom,
vi, 198

Endless peace, the, vii, 217

Enótokoitai, the, vi, 80

Epirus, ancient kingdom in
northern Greece, vi, 12

Alexander I of, vi, 12
his expedition to Italy,
vi, 12

Equinox, autumnal, iv, 313

Erinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*, 11

Esdras (Ezra), Jewish priest and
scribe, supposed by the
Muhammadans to have
restored from memory the
law lost during the cap-
tivity, vii, 207, 264

Ether, viii, 275

Ethics, Muhammadan, respected,
viii, 74

Ethiop, Ethiopian, Ethiopic, i,
44; iii, 226; vi, 43, 71,
80

=Indian, vi, 13, 68

western and eastern, vi, 13,
68, 71

version of the Pseudo-Callis-
thenes, *q.v.*, vi, 17 and
note, 18, 30, 33, 66, 67,
71, 74, 82, 83

Ethiopia, vi, 72

flight of Nectanebus to, vi,
18 *note*

western and eastern, vi, 68

=India, vi, 68

Eumenes, Greek ephemerist,
temp. Alexander the
Great, vi, 12

Euphrates (Farát, *q.v.*), river, ii,
80; v, 292; vi, 31, 327;
vii, 217; viii, 188, 190

Euxine, sea, i, 16; ii, 191, 330;
vi, 72

Eye, metaphor for child, i, 178,
180, 181, 188, 191, ii,
297, 328, v, 272; vii,
279, 359

evil, ii, 204, 252; iii, 141,
157, 337; iv, 144, 282;
v, 194, 245, 251, 290;
vi, 266, 402; vii, 78, 81,
172; viii, 16, 417
turns milk to bane, vii, 320
seq., 324, 325

F

FABLES OF BIDPAI (Book of
Kalila and Dimna), vii,
213, 427 *seq.*; viii, 202
note, 390

introduction of, into Persia,
vii, 213

translation of, vii, 382, 383
Firdausi's account of, vii,
430

vogue of, vii, 383

origin of, vii, 383

Núshírwán's acquisition of,
vii, 423 *seq.*

Faghánish, *temp.* Pírúz, king of
the Haitálians, 168, vii,
157

helps Pírúz for a considera-
tion, vii, 157

temp. Núshírwán, 168

made king instead of
Ghátkar, vii, 333

Núshírwán takes counsel
about, vii, 333

descent of, from Bahrám
Gúr, vii, 334

Núshírwán writes to, vii,
337

makes submission to Núsh-
írwán, vii, 360

Faghfúr, dynastic title of the
rulers of Chín and Máchín,
152, 153, 160, i, 262;
ii, 383; iv, 11, 135, 199,
238 *seq.*; v, 221; vi, 35,

Faghfúr *cont.*

80, 113, 169 *seq.*, 325;
vii, 349, 343, 108; viii,

74; ix, 87, 97, 102

temp. Kai Khusrau, helps
Afrásiyáb, iv, 219

Khán and, sue to Kai
Khusrau for peace, iv,
229

orders Afrásiyáb to quit
Khutan and Chín, iv,
230

grants facilities to Kai
Khusrau for his march
through Chín, iv, 239

Khán of Chín and, welcome
Kai Khusrau, iv, 240

confirmed in the posses-
sion of Chín and
Máchín, iv, 252

temp. Sikandar, ambassa-
dors from, come to Dárá,
vi, 35

Sikandar visits as his own
ambassador, vi, 170

gives audience to Sikandar,
vi, 170

entertains Sikandar, vi, 171

answers Sikandar, vi, 172

gifts of, to Sikandar, vi,
173

sends envoy with Sikandar,
vi, 173

temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165

daughter of, the wife of
Shangul, vii, 115

hears of Bahrám Gúr's ex-
ploits in Hind, vii, 129

invites Bahrám Gúr to visit
him, vii, 129

Bahrám Gúr's reply to, vii,
130

temp. Núshírwán, viii, 97

Faghfúr, son of Sáwa, viii, 74,
75, 120

confused with Faghfúr of
Chín, viii, 74

parley of, with Bahrám
Chúbína, viii, 112

head of, on spear, viii,
132

- Failakús (Philip II of Macedon), grandfather in Iránian legend of Sikandar (Alexander the Great), 158, vi, 57, 102, 112, 125, 130, 131, 151, 182; vii, 215; viii, 387
 wars with Dáráb, vi, 22
 allied with the king of Rús, vi, 22
 marches from 'Ammúriya to encounter Dáráb, vi, 23
 defeated and returns to 'Ammúriya, vi, 23
 sues for peace, vi, 23
 agrees to send tribute, and give his daughter in marriage, to Dáráb, 158, vi, 24, 25
 adopts Sikandar as his heir, vi, 27
- Faith, Faiths, the four, vi, 92, 95
 of Christ, Christian, vi, 133, 352, 356
 of Áhriman, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
- Faithful, Commander of the, ix, 72
 'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*
- Fakírs, the, vi, 61
 Alexander the Great and, vi, 61
 Onesicritus and, vi, 61
- Fakká', a kind of drink, i, 43
note
- Falátún (Plato), vii, 100; viii, 264
- Falconry, ii, 108, 196; vi, 176; vii, 42, 48 *seq.*, 54, 55, 76 and *note*
 origin of, i, 126
- Famine, *See* Drought.
- Farab (Fáriyáb? *q.v.*), iv, 185
- Farab (Firabr), desert and town on the right bank of the Oxus opposite to Ámwí, *q.v.*, vii, 91, 92
 desert of, ix, 115, 118
- Fará'in, Iránian chief, vii, 207
- Farámarz, son of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 319, 341 *seq.*, 349, 351, 354; iii, 18, 30, 35, 36, 202, 323, 325, 326, 328; iv, 14; v, 173, 174, 182, 183, 198, 231, 260, 261, 272, 274, 281, 283, 284
 parentage of, iii, 323
 appointed to expel the Turkmans from Zábulistán, iii, 31
 referred to, v, 184
- Zawára and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 slays Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247
 marches against Kábul, v, 274, 276
 takes the corpses of Rustam, Zawára, and Rakhsh from the pits, and conveys them to Zábul for burial, v, 274 *seq.*
- fights with the king of Kábul and puts him and his kin to death, v, 276, 277
 makes a Zábulí king of Kábul, v, 277
 returns to Zábul, v, 277
 hears of Bahman's invasion and marches against him, v, 287
 defeated and put to death, v, 288
- Farának, wife of Abtín and mother of Faridún, i, 90, 145, 157
- Faridún brought up by, on Birmaya's milk, i, 151
 taken by, to Mount Alburz, i, 152
 told by, about his origin, i, 153
 prays for Faridún's safety, i, 158

- Farának, rejoices over Farídún's success, i, 175
 gifts of, to Farídún, i, 176
 Farának, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
 married to Bahráman Gúr, vii, 53
 Farangís, daughter of Afrásiyáb, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Kai Khusrau, 145, 146, 148, ii, 270 *seq.*, 288 *seq.*, 290, 300, 373, 381, 386 *seq.*; iii, 96, 117, 203, 211
 Mandane and, identical in legend, ii, 191
 Siyáwush marries, ii, 270
 Afrásiyáb summons, to court, ii, 300 *seq.*
 Siyáwush confides in, ii, 307 *seq.*
 Afrásiyáb appealed to by, ii, 317 *seq.*
 imprisoned, ii, 320
 sentenced, ii, 322
 Pírán saves and takes charge of, ii, 324 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau born of, ii, 326
 dwells at Siyáwushgird, ii, 333
 instructs Kai Khusrau how to find Bihzád, ii, 374
 gives Gív the mail of Siyáwush, ii, 376
 crosses the Jíhún, ii, 392
 provided for by Kai Káu's, ii, 399
 Fariburz marries, iii, 148
 referred to, iii, 146 *seq.*, 202; iv, 205, 213, 216
 death of referred to, iv, 304
 Farát (Euphrates), river, 158, v, 294, 309; vi, 37, 42, 43, 290; viii, 93, 250
 Dáráb cast away upon, v, 295
 Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), Sháh, 175, ix, 50, 53, 105
 accession-speech of, ix, 52
 counselled by his eldest son, ix, 52
 Faráyín, counselled by his youngest son, ix, 53
 misrule of, ix, 53
 plot against, ix, 54
 Farfúriyús (Porphyrogenitus?), Rúman general, 167, vii, 218
 defeated by Núshírwán, vii, 256
 makes report to Cæsar, vii, 260
 Farghán, Rúman architect, and Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 401 *seq.*
 Farghána, region south of the Jaxartes, east of Sughd, iii, 109
 Farghár, Túránian hero, iii, 250
 goes to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
 reports to Afrásiyáb, iii, 253
 Farhád, Íránian hero, ii, 73, 85, 138, 316, 338, 340; iii, 11, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 127, 268, 289, 313, 327, 331, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 25, 42, 147, 292
 Parthian origin of, iii, 11
 goes as envoy to the king of Mázandarán, ii, 63
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 111
 steed of, iii, 313
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 left in command by Gív, iv, 83
 put in command of the left wing, iv, 92
 left at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
 Farhád, Íránian general, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
 commands left wing, vii, 251
 Farhád, lover of Shirín, viii, 192
 Fariburz, son of Kai Káu's, 148, 151, ii, 3, 62, 190, 310, 335, 336, 340, 358, 405 *seq.*, 409; iv, 14, 24, 32, 45, 50, 145 *seq.*, 164, 166, 167, 174, 177, 182, 187,

Fariburz *cont.*

- 211, 213, 215, 238, 239,
253, 258, 268, 280, 331;
iv, 13, 34, 37, 91
encampment of, described,
ii, 155
claims of, to the throne sup-
ported by Tús, ii, 401,
iii, 13
recognises Kai Khusrau as
Sháh, ii, 410
Kai Khusrau's letter to,
iii, 84
reads to the chiefs Kai
Khusrau's letter, and
supersedes Tús, iii, 86
sends Ruhhám to Pírán, iii,
87
obtains an armistice and
prepares to renew the
campaign, iii, 89
fights and is defeated, iii, 90
returns to Írán, iii, 111
asks Rustam to support his
suit to Farangís, iii, 146
marries Farangís, iii, 148
leads the van of Rustam's
expedition to succour Tús,
iii, 148
meets Gúdarz, iii, 163
joins forces with Tús, iii,
169
goes to Kai Khusrau with
tidings of victory, iii, 236
seq.
returns to the host, iii, 241,
243
commands the right wing,
iv, 24
superseded *pro tem.* by
Katmára, iv, 92
chosen to fight with Kulbád,
iv, 97
slays Kulbád, iv, 99
commands with Tukhár the
troops from Kháwar, iv,
148
slays Fartús, iv, 181
commands the right, iv, 191
takes part in the siege of
Gang-bihisht, iv, 199

- Fariburz, Kai Khusrau remon-
strated with by, and
other nobles for refusing
audience, iv, 275
Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv,
295
sets out with Kai Khusrau
on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when
bidden by Kai Khusrau,
iv, 307
Kai Khusrau farewells and
warns, and his comrades,
iv, 308
disappears and is sought
in vain by, and his com-
rades, iv, 308
vainly reminds his com-
rades of Kai Khusrau's
warning, iv, 309
end of, iv, 309
Farídún (Thraétaona), Sháh, son
of Abtín and Farának, 140,
141, 153, i, 30, 42, 54, 55,
90 *seq.*, 142, 286, 336, 341,
349, 351, 364, 370, 382,
384, 385; ii, 11, 17, 19,
21, 29, 33, 36, 37, 99, 193,
195, 204, 237, 274, 318,
327, 392, 400, 404; iii,
21, 37, 245, 257; iv, 17,
66, 69, 89, 91, 142, 149,
151, 153, 168, 174, 203,
204, 221, 222, 255, 259,
260, 262, 266, 269, 286,
289, 299, 313, 328; v, 32,
34, 160, 180, 196, 204
seq., 245, 260, 261, 271,
283; vi, 73, 172, 209,
406; vii, 37, 38, 60, 62,
73, 79, 101, 120, 199, 207;
viii, 129, 205, 218, 231,
242, 260, 300, 376 *seq.*,
391, 392; ix, 25, 30, 53,
71, 86, 103
mythological origin of, i, 171
seq.
Zahhák's dream of, i, 147
seq.
advent of, prophesied, i,
149

Farídún, birth of, i, 150
 father of, slain by Zakhák, i, 151
 brought up on the milk of the cow Birmáya, i, 151
 taken by his mother to Mount Alburz, i, 152
 palace of, burned by Zakhák, i, 152, 153
 questions his mother about his origin, i, 152
 contemplates revenge on Zakhák, i, 154
 dissuaded by his mother, i, 154
 Káwa revolts to, i, 157
 resolves to war with Zakhák, i, 157
 brothers of, i, 158
 ox-head mace invented by, i, 158
 rewards the smiths, i, 158
 goes to fight Zakhák, i, 159 *seq.*
 visited and instructed by Surúsh, i, 159
 life of, attempted by his brothers, i, 160
 saves himself by his magic power, i, 160
 van of, led by Káwa, i, 160
 crosses the Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), i, 160
 enters Zakhák's capital, i, 161
 overthrows Zakhák's talisman, i, 161
 seeks in vain for Zakhák, i, 162
 finds the sisters of Jamshíd, i, 162
 hears where Zakhák is, i, 163
 Story of, and Zakhák's minister (Kundrav), i, 164
 doings of, reported to Zakhák by Kundrav, i, 165
 attacked by, and overthrows, Zakhák, i, 168, 288
 counselled by Surúsh about Zakhák, i, 168, 169

Farídún, becomes Sháh, i, 168
 fetters Zakhák upon Mount Damáwand, i, 169
 Reign of, 140, i, 171 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 171 *seq.*
 three sons of, i, 174, 177
 ethnical significance of, i, 54
 accession of, i, 174
 holds a feast, i, 175
 makes a progress through the world, i, 176
 builds himself a seat, i, 177
 sends Jandal on a mission, i, 177
 receives Jandal's report, i, 182
 instructs his sons how to deal with Sarv, i, 182
 sons of, outwit Sarv, i, 184
 receive Sarv's daughters in marriage, i, 185
 return home, i, 186
 proved by Farídún, i, 186
 named by Farídún, i, 187
 wives of, named by Farídún, i, 188
 horoscopes of, taken by Farídún, i, 188
 divides the world among his sons, i, 189
 grows old, i, 189
 Salm and Túr write to, to demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
 makes answer to his sons, i, 193
 holds converse with Íraj, i, 195
 writes to Salm and Túr, i, 197
 Íraj's head sent to, i, 202
 mourning of, for Íraj, i, 203 *seq.*
 sight of, injured by mourning for Íraj, i, 204
 hopes for issue from Íraj, i, 205
 recovers his sight, i, 206
 gifts of, to Minúchih, i, 207
 gives a feast to the nobles, i, 207

- Farídn, receives an embassy from his sons, i, 209
 makes answer to his sons, i, 211
 sends Minúchihr to fight with Salm and Túr i, 215
 hears of Minúchihr's victory, i, 222
 Minúchihr sends the heads of Salm and Túr to, i, 222, 229
 welcomes Minúchihr on his return in triumph, i, 230
 confides Minúchihr to Salm, i, 231
 gives thanks to God and prays for death, i, 232
 distributes the spoil to the troops, i, 232
 enthrones Minúchihr, i, 232
 passes his last days in austerities, i, 232
 dies, i, 232
 burial of, i, 233
 mourning for, i, 233, 237
 Firdausi's reflections on, i, 170, 232
 final warfare of Zahhák with, i, 278, *cf.* 173
 Mount Sipand besieged by order of, i, 329
 Grace of, i, 335
 saying of, ii, 219 and *note*
 flag of = flag of Káwa, vi, 59
 capital of, vii, 215, 238
 Fárikín (Maiyafárikín, Martyropolis), city in Roman Armenia, vii, 200
 taken by Kubád, vii, 200
 Fáriyáb, city half way between the town of Marvrúd and Balkh, iv, 65
 Farr, i, 82. *See* Grace.
 Farruhán (Farrukhán). *See* Faráyín.
 Farrukh, ruler of Nímruz, viii, 375
 Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See* Faráyín.
 Farrukhánzád (Farrukhzád *q.v.*), viii, 195
 Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd *q.v.*), father of Rustam, ix, 69
 Farrukhzád (of glorious birth), name assumed by Gush-tásp in Rúm, iv, 351 *seq.*, 357, 360
 Farrukhzád, Sháh, 175, ix, 61 *seq.*, 70
 Siyah Chashm and, ix, 62
 poisons, ix, 63
 Farrukhzád (Farrukhánzád *q.v.*), son of Hurmuzd, brother of Rustam, and favourite of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 23, 87, 92, 95
 conspires with Guráz, viii, 408, 412
 goes to the host, viii, 412
 rebels in favour of Shírwí, viii, 413
 brother of, viii, 413 and *note*
 conspires with Tukhár, viii, 414
 proclaims Shírwí Sháh, viii, 416
 hears where Khusrau Parwíz is hiding, viii, 419
 holds talk with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 420
 bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to murder Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 33
 defeats the Arabs, ix, 85
 counsels Yazdagird, ix, 86, 87
 leads the host to Khurásán, ix, 89
 entrusts Yazdagird to Máhwí, ix, 95
 goes to Rai, ix, 96
 Farrukhzád, Íránian warrior, viii, 241, 296
 speech of, viii, 240
 Farsang (parasang), measure of length, about 3.88 miles, i, 82
 Farshíward, son of Wisa and brother of Pírán, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; iii,

Farshidward — *cont.*

- 90, 100, 108, 205, 252 ;
 iv, 7, 10, 119, 122, 125,
 133, 153, 160, 162
 summons Pírán to save
 Farangís, ii, 322
 commands with Lahhák the
 right wing, iv, 26
 attacks the Íránians in
 flank, iv, 82
 opposed by Zanga, iv, 83
 goes to help Pírán and
 attacks Gív, iv, 85
 prowess of, iv, 86
 fights with Guráza, iv, 87
 Bízhan, iv, 87
 Lahhák and, put in joint
 command, iv, 84
 Pírán's instructions to,
 iv, 95
 hear of the death of Pírán
 and the coming of Kai
 Khusrau, iv, 112
 lament for Pírán, iv, 112
 take counsel with the
 host, iv, 113
 fight and escape Íránian
 outpost, iv, 116
 referred to, iv, 118, 120,
 126
 repose themselves, iv, 121
 corpses of, brought back
 by Bízhan, iv, 126, 132
 deaths of, announced to
 Afrásiyáb, iv, 152
 Farshidward, brother of Asfan-
 diyár, 155, v, 20, 22, 110,
 114, 141, 171
 governor of Khurásán, v, 77
 stationed on the Íránian
 right, v, 94
 mortally wounded by Kuh-
 ram, v, 95, 101, 104
 Asfandiyár laments for, v,
 101, 104
 resolves to avenge, v, 104
 dies, v, 104
 shrouded by Asfandiyár, v,
 105
 Farshidward, a miser, 164, vii,
 97 *seq.*

- Farshidward, a miser, Bahrám
 Gúr visits, vii, 68 *seq.*
 pretended destitution of,
 vii, 68 *seq.*
 wealth of, described, vii, 70,
 72, 73
 Fartús, Túránian hero, iii, 182,
 213, 231, 251
 comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
 hears of the coming of
 Rustam, iii, 175
 slain by Fariburz, iv, 181
 Farúd, son of Siyáwush and
 Jaríra daughter of Pírán,
 and half brother of Kai
 Khusrau, 145, 147, i, 92,
 370 ; ii, 3, 291 ; iii, 8, 14,
 42 *seq.*, 72, 85, 87, 93, 107,
 111 *seq.* ; iv, 42, 135 ;
 v, 30
 birth of, ii, 291
 hostility of Tús to, iii, 13
 Story of, 147, iii, 37 *seq.*
 referred to, iii, 39
 advised by Tukhár, iii, 47,
 52 *seq.*
 interview of, with Bahrám,
 iii, 47 *seq.*
 birth-mark of, iii, 49
 gives his mace to Bahrám,
 iii, 50
 eighty slaves of, the, iii, 55
 their mockery of Tús, iii,
 56
 their mockery of Gív, iii,
 58
 slays the steed of Tús, iii, 56
 wounds the steed of Gív, iii,
 58
 slays the steed of Bízhan,
 - iii, 61
 worsted by Bízhan, iii, 62
 attacks the Íránians, iii, 63
 prowess of, iii, 64
 mortally wounded, iii, 64
 dies, iii, 65
 mother and slaves of,
 destroy themselves, iii, 66
 burial of, iii, 68
 Kai Khusrau's grief for, iii,
 84 *seq.*, 112

- Farúd, son of Shírin and Khusrau
 Parwiz, ix, 39
- Farukhzád. *See* Farrukhzád.
- Farwardín, genius, i, 88; iii, 287, 328
 name of month and day, i, 88, 133, 263; iii, 230, 286, 317, 323; vi, 375; vii, 363; viii, 367, 371
 origin of, iii, 286
- Faryán, king, father-in-law of
 Kaidrúsh, 159, vi, 66, 67, 124 *seq.*, 171, 172
 city of, taken by Sikandar, vi, 124
 slain, vi, 125
 daughter and son-in-law of, taken prisoners, vi, 125
 brought before Naitkún, vi, 126
 sentenced to death, vi, 126
 pardoned, vi, 126
- Fáskún, forest in Rúm, iv, 333, 335 *seq.*
- Wolf of, 154
 described, iv, 333, 336
 Mírín bidden by Cæsar to slay, iv, 333
 Gushtásp undertakes to slay, iv, 336
 keeps tusks of, iv, 338
 tusks of, produced before Cæsar by Híshwí, iv, 351
 referred to, iv, 359
- Fátima, daughter of Muhammad and wife of 'Alí, i, 12
- Fazl. *See* Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl.
- Feast. *See* Mihrgán, Naurúz, New Year's Day, Sada.
- Ferghána. *See* Farghána.
- Fight of the Seven Warriors, 143, ii, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Firdausí, Persian poet and author of the Sháhnáma, 146, 154, 155, 160, 173, i, 3, 22 *seq.*; ii, 9, 10, 82, 119; iii, 11, 108, 271, 272; iv, 136, 138, 314, 316; v, 10, 20 *seq.*, 29, 282; vi, 16, 17, 64 *seq.*, Firdausí—*cont.*
 72, 78, 80 *seq.*, 197, 198, 202, 250, 254, 294, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, 326, 328, 368; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 156, 159, 185, 186, 188, 213, 214, 217 *seq.*, 317; viii, 71, 73, 74, 187, 190, 192, 193, ix, 69
 materials for the life of, i, 23 *seq.*
 personal references of, in the Sháhnáma, i, 24 *seq.*
 conclusions from, i, 35
 date of birth of, i, 24
 Muhammadan of the Shí'ite sect, i, 24, 106, 107
 fond of wine, i, 25; iv, 313; v, 164, vi, 291, 306, 309, 314, 362, 369; vii, 277
 owned or occupied land, i, 25; vi, 411; ix, 112
 escape of, from drowning, i, 26, 29
 son of, i, 26; viii, 190
 referred to (?), i, 27; vii, 277, 311
 death of, 173, i, 26; viii, 190
 complains of old age, 160, i, 26; ii, 336; iv, 141; v, 262; vii, 220
 patrons, friends and helpers of, i, 29 *seq.*, 35, 39, 110; ix, 121
 exempted from taxation, i, 35, 39; ix, 121
 Nizámí's account of, i, 38 *seq.*, 45
 later legends of, iii, 15, 109, 191; iv, 8
 Dakíkí, and. *See* Dakíkí.
 Mahmúd and, *See* Mahmúd.
 Satire of. *See* Mahmúd.
 Sháhnáma of. *See* Sháhnáma.
 Yúsuf and Zulíkha of, i, 45
 admits Muhammadan traditions into Sháhnáma, viii, 42

- Firdausí, and rhyme-word, viii, 397, *note*
 account of Arab conquest by, supplemented, ix, 65
 Yazdagird's death, ix, 70, 107
 reflections on, ix, 108, 111
 on completion of Sháhnáma, ix, 121
 time spent on Sháhnáma, ix, 122
 praise of Sultán Mahmúd-*See* Mahmúd
- Fire, ancient cult of the Aryans, i, 7, 49, 50
 priests of. *See* Magi.
 region of, ii, 56
 Húshang's discovery of, i, 123
 institution of the Cult of, i, 116, 123
 Feast of Sada, i, 124
 ordeal by, 144, ii, 218 *seq.*
 sacred, vi, 21, 201, 212
- Fire—fane or temple, 154. *See* Ázar Abádagán, Ázar-gashasp, Barzín.
 —worship, abolition of, prophesied, viii, 68
- Firúz, Íránian king, iv, 149
- Firúzábád. *See* Gúr.
- Firúzi Kuh, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28
- Fish, mythological, i, 71, 72, 148, 252; ii, 15, 299; iv, 279; vii, 341 and *note*, 406; viii, 212 and *note*
 salt, the, legend of, vi, 76 *seq.*
 —eaters. *See* Ichthyophagi.
- Fleece, Golden. *See* Golden.
- Flesh-meats, introduction of, attributed to Áhriman, i, 138
- Flight, of Muhammad, referred to, ix, 122
- Flying-machine, of Kai Káu's, ii, 103
- Fo-lin, vi, 73 and *note*
- Footman (pawn), piece in chess, vii, 385
 position of, vii, 388
 move of, vii, 422
 promotion of, vii, 422
- Ford and toll-house of Zark, ix, 100 and *note*, 116
- Fort, hill, Malcolm's description of a, i, 236
- Fortifications vitrified vi, 79, 165
- Fount of Life, the, vi, 74 *seq.*, 158 *seq.*
- Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 158 *seq.*
 account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
- Sikandar fails to find, vi, 100
- Founts, the Seven, viii, 392
- Four, Wonders of Kaid. *See* Kaid.
- Faiths, vi, 91, 95
- Frangrasyan (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*), i, 338; ii, 81, 189; iv, 137, 138
- Frashókart, son of Gushtasp, v, 26
- Frásiyáv (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*), i, 338; ii, 81
- Fravashí, i, 369; ii, 82; iii, 286
- Frazdánava, lake or river, v, 13
- Frúbá, sacred Fire, vi, 201, 255
- Funj, leader of Khán's host, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 330
- Fúr (Porus, *q.v.*), dynastic title and Indian king, *temp.* Sikandar, 159, vi, 31, 51, 62, 64, 110, *seq.* 123, 132, 135, 137, 170, 172, 175; vii, 395
- Dará's letter to, vi, 50
- Sikandar's war with, vi, 67, 112 *seq.*
- routed by Sikandar's iron steeds, vi, 116
- single combat of, with Sikandar, vi, 117
- slain, vi, 117
- troops of, submit to Sikandar, vi, 118

- Furúhil, Íránian hero, 151, iv,
24, 33
chosen to fight with Zangula, iv, 97
slays Zangula, iv, 101
- G
- GABRIEL, angel, i, 114; iv, 140;
vi, 138 *note*
- Gahán (Kahan, town above
Juwayn on the Farah
river which flows into
the northern end of the
Lake of Zirih in Sistán?)
149, iii, 152, 177, 224, 225
- Gahár, Túránian hero, 149, iii,
216, 224, 251
comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
slain by Rustam, iii, 225
- Gaiúmart, the first Sháh and
culture-hero, and the first
man in Zoroastrian tradi-
tion, 139, i, 90, 91, 116,
123; vi, 208; viii, 24,
55, 260, 269, 310, 376
- Reign of, i, 117 *seq.*
Note on, i, 117
greatness of, i, 118
culture-hero, i, 118
son of, i, 119
slain by Black Dív, i, 120
envied by Áhriman, i, 119
warned by Surúsh, i, 119
grief of, for the death of
Siyámak, i, 120
bidden by Surúsh to avenge
Siyámak, i, 120
goes with Húshang to fight
Black Dív, i, 121
death of, i, 121
Firdausí's reflections on, i,
121
rites of, vii, 53
Faith of, vii, 273; vii, 277
- Galbwí, Íránian chief, ix, 74
- Galínúsh, put in charge of Khus-
rau Parwíz, viii, 421; ix,
5, 11, 12
parley of, with Kharrád and
Ashtád, ix, 12 *seq.*
- Gandarep, monster, i, 143
slain by Keresáspa, i, 172,
173
- Gang, mountain, iv, 162; v, 216
- Gang, sea of, ii, 362
- Gang, stronghold in Túrán and
seat of Afrásiyáb, ii, 241,
261, 309, 344, 357, 369;
iii, 236, 253; iv, 258
king of=Afrásiyáb, iv, 134
two places known as, iv, 136
=Gang-bihisht *q.v.*, iv, 190,
195, 197, 198, 202, 208,
218, 220, 221, 229, 232
=Gang-dizh *q.v.*, iv, 247
- Gang-bihisht, north of the Jax-
artes, stronghold and seat
of Afrásiyáb, 152, iv, 135,
136, 207 *seq.*, 228
- Afrásiyáb at, iv, 187
marches from, iv, 190
returns to, iv, 196
described, iv, 195
prepared for a siege by
Afrásiyáb, iv, 197
besieged by Kai Khusrau,
iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
taken by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*
occupied by Kai Khusrau
for a while, iv, 218
- Gúdarz left in command of,
iv, 219
- Gustaham, son of Naudar,
left in command of, iv, 238,
Kai Khusrau dwells for a
year in, iv, 254
- Gang-dizh (Gang-i-Siyáwush),
stronghold, 145, 153, iv,
135, 136, 186 *note*, 203,
257, 264; ix, 25
possible identification of, ii,
189
meaning of, ii, 19
building and description of,
ii, 279 *seq.*
- Afrásiyáb takes refuge at,
iv, 230
- Kai Khusrau resolves to
pursue Afrásiyáb to, iv,
231
marches to, iv, 247

- Gangdizh, Kai Khusrau, forbids his troops to injure, iv, 247 enters, iv, 248 remains a year at, iv, 249 advised by his paladins to leave, iv, 249 appoints a governor for, iv, 249 distributes treasure at, iv, 250
- Gang-i-Dizhukht (Baitu'l Mukaddas *q.v.*), i, 161, 226
- Gang-i-Siyáwush. *See* Gangdizh.
- Ganges, Indian river, vi, 64
- Garámik-kart. *See* Girámi.
- Garcha, Túránian hero, iii, 152 comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
- Garden of the Hesperides, vi, 74 Indians, viii, 196
- Gardener, a, vi, 341 entertains Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 341 *seq.* sent by Shápúr to the high priest, vi, 344 describes Shápúr, vi, 344 rewarded by Shápúr, vi, 357
- Gargwí, Íránian hero, v, 109 commands the left, v, 109
- Garíb, surface-measure, vii, 215 and *note*
- Garshásp. *See* Keresáspa.
- Garshásp, son of Zav, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91, 174; ii, 336 Reign of, i, 373 *seq.* Note on, i, 373 relation of, to Keresáspa, i, 174 accession of, i, 374 death of, i, 375
- Garshásp, Íránian hero, i, 42, 144, 207, 212, 214, 239, 345; ii, 4; iii, 260, 273; v, 202 relation of, to Keresáspa, i, 174
- Garshásp, Íránian chief, *temp.* Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi, 297 single combat of, with Bazánúsh, vi, 297
- Garshasp, Íránian noble, *temp.* Núshírwán, viii, 18
- Garsiwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, 145, 150, 153, i, 92, 342, 349; ii, 3, 188, 189, 193, 195, 228, 231 *seq.*, 249, 253, 264, 268, 269, 286, 289 *seq.*, 313 *seq.*; iii, 197, 208, 306, 310, 350, 352; iv, 10, 135 *seq.*, 209 *seq.*, 252, 268; vi, 325; ix, 103 defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229 *seq.* sues for peace to Siyáwush, ii, 237 *seq.* fails to string the bow of Siyáwush, ii, 266 visits Siyáwush, ii, 289 *seq.* envies Siyáwush, ii, 292 *seq.* challenges Siyáwush, ii, 294 slanders Siyáwush, ii, 296 *seq.* betrays Siyáwush, ii, 301 *seq.* compasses the death of Siyáwush, ii, 315 *seq.* charged with the execution of Farangís, ii, 322 goes to Manízha's palace, iii, 301 finds Bízhan, iii, 302 takes Bízhan before Afrásiyáb, iii, 303 ordered to execute Bízhan, iii, 304 imprison Bízhan, iii, 309 disgrace Manízha, iii, 309 put in charge of the elephants, iv, 156 reinforces Afrásiyáb, iv, 181 Jahn and, compel Afrásiyáb to quit the field, iv, 182 commands the rear, iv, 191 taken prisoner by Rustam at the storming of Gangbihisht, iv, 210 referred to, iv, 211 sent to Kai Káuś, iv, 233 imprisoned, iv, 235

- Garsíwaz, sent for by Kai Káuś
and Kai Khusrau, and put
to the torture, iv, 265
voice of, attracts Afrá-
siyáb from lake, iv, 265
holds converse with Afrá-
siyáb, iv, 266
slain by Kai Khusrau, iv,
269
- Garsiyún, Íránian chief, ix, 115
- Gashan, as rhyme-word, viii,
397 *note*
- Gashasp, Íránian chief, vi, 394
addresses the nobles on the
succession to the throne,
vi, 394
- Gashasp, Íránian general, *temp.*
Núshírwán, vii, 251
put in charge of baggage-
train, vii, 251
- Gashasp, Íránian noble, viii, 17,
18
- Gashasp, father in Sháhnáma of
Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 76,
99, 162, 169, 304
- Gashasp, father of Ashtád *q.v.*,
ix, 11
- Gáthas, ii, 8; v, 11, 12, 17
- Gaugamela, village near Nineveh,
vi, 31, 32 *note*
battle of, vi, 31
- Gaumata (the false Smerdis),
Magus, vi, 207
usurpation, and death of, i,
58
overthrow of, celebrated at
the Magophonia, i, 59
- Gav, king of Hind, 169, vii, 395
seq.
mother of, vii, 395 *seq.*
two marriages of, vii, 395,
396
two sons of, vii, 395,
396
becomes queen, vii, 397
tries to keep peace be-
tween her sons, vii, 397
seq.
hears of the death of Tal-
hand, vii, 419
reproaches Gav, vii, 420
- Gav, mother of, chess invented
to appease, vii, 421
death of, vii, 423
birth of, vii, 395
tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401,
402, 407, 408, 410, 413,
417, 421
rivalry between Talhand
and, vii, 397 *seq.*
war between Talhand and,
vii, 404 *seq.*
attempts of, at accommoda-
tion with Talhand, vii,
405, 408, 413
defeats Talhand, vii, 412
proposes a decisive battle to
Talhand, vii, 414
victory of, vii, 416
invents chess to console his
mother for the death of
Talhand, vii, 421
- Gaza, city in south-western
Palestine, vi, 30
siege of, by Alexander the
Great, vi, 30
- Gazdaham, Íránian hero and
castellan of White Castle,
144, i, 369; ii, 131, 132,
134, 138, 139, 145, 146;
iii, 15, 25, 33, 40, 45, 294;
iv, 13, 24, 149
besieged by Bármán, i, 354
relieved by Káran, i, 354
Suhráb described by, ii, 136
evacuates White Castle, ii,
137
- Gedrosia (Makrán, Balúchistán),
vi, 69
- Gelani. *See* Gilán.
- Gemini, constellation, vi, 155;
viii, 86, 203; ix, 73
- Genealogical tables
Pishdádian dynasty, i, 90,
91
Kaiánian dynasty, ii, 3
Sásánian dynasty, vi, 3
Kings and heroes of Túrán,
i, 92
Íránian heroes, ii, 4
- Genealogies, fictitious, v, 282,
290, 293; vi, 199, 211

- Genealogies, of Pápak in Tabarí, vi, 200
 Mas'údí, vi, 200
- Geography, Firdausí's, ii, 28
 Darmesteter on, ii, 79, 80
- Geometrician, vi, 377
- Geopothros (Gotarzes *q.v.*), iii, 9
- George, Armenian general, viii, 195
- Germanus, vii, 218
- Germany, vi, 73
- Gharcha (Georgia), country between the Caucasus and the Aras, iv, 14, 65
 king of, iv, 149
- Gharchis (Georgians), vii, 94
- Ghátkar, ruler of the Haitálans, *q.v.*, 168; vii, 334, 335
 hears of, and destroys, the Khán's embassy to Núsh-írwán, vii, 330
 prepares to oppose the Khán vii, 330
 defeated, vii, 332
- Ghaznín, city in Afghánistán, the capital of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 20, 257; iv, 14; v, 173; vii, 173
- Ghee, clarified butter, vi, 105
- Ghúl, a sorceress, i, 42; v, 117, 128
 referred to, v, 121
 described, v, 130
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 131
- Ghundí, a dív, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93; iii, 256; iv, 296; v, 204
- Ghúr, district in Afghánistán between Harát and Ghaznín, ii, 101
- Ghuz, a Turkish tribe and desert east of Gurgán, iv, 60
- Gíl, Gílán, district on the southwest coast of the Caspian, 167, i, 230, 231; ii, 226, 293; iv, 148, 265; v, 13; vi, 227; vii, 224, 340, 362, ix, 93
 river of=Kizil Uzun, also called Safid Rúd, iv, 154
 waters of=Caspian, i, 230
- Gíl, Afrásiyáb's camp in, iv, 155
 Núshírwán's dealings with, vii, 216, 242 *seq.*
 captives from, settled at Súrsán, vii, 328
- Gimirrá. *See* Kimmerians.
- Gipsies, the, 165, vii, 6
 Nöldeke on, vii, 6
 language of, vii, 6
 brought into Írán by Bah-rám Gúr, vii, 149
- Girámí (Garámik-kart), son of Jámásp, 155, v, 24 *seq.*, 58
 death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 50
 worsts Námkhást, v, 59
 rescues Káwa's flag, v, 59
 slain, v, 59
- Giravgard, Túránian stronghold on the Oxus, iii, 73, 80
 occupied by the Íránians, iii, 78
- Girduní, Sirdarra, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28; vi, 32
 Sawachi, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28
- Girdkuh, fortress, v, 30
- Girih (Jirrah), place south of Shíráz, vi, 199
- Gív, Íránian hero, son of Gúdarz, and father of Bízhan, 146-151, 154, ii, 4, 25, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 85, 91, 127, 138 *seq.*, 148, 151, 158, 160, 188, 193, 197, 271, 318, 319, 338, 340, 349, 351, 362, 388 *seq.*; iii, 11, 13, 18, 19, 27, 33, 45, 48, *seq.* 57, 67, 75, 76, 81, 85, 86, 89 *seq.*, 96, 101 *seq.*, 108, 111, 114 *seq.*, 121 *seq.*, 127, 129, 130, 133, 139 *seq.*, 143, 154, 155, 157, 159, 161, 169, 170, 182, 183, 187, 206, 211, 227, 231, 238, 244, 245, 247, 248, 253, 255, 259, 264, 268, 273, 289, 291, 292, 294, 296 *seq.*, 302, 305,

Giv —*cont.*

307 *seq.*, 311 *seq.*, 330 *seq.*,
 337 *seq.*, 350, 353 *seq.*;
 iv, 7, 8, 11, 13, 15, 16, 19
seq., 26 *seq.*, 39 *seq.*, 52,
 54, 56, 59, 69, 82 *seq.*, 90,
 99, 102, 136, 147, 157, 223,
 226, 227, 233 *seq.*, 292,
 296, 306 *seq.*; v, 207,
 208; vi, 194; viii, 168
 meaning of, ii, 335
 historical character, iii, 9
 relationship of, to Rustam,
 ii, 155, 365, 384; iii, 323
 son of Gúdarz, ii, 158
 wife of, ii, 365, 384; iii, 323
 sister of, ii, 384; iii, 323
 father of Bizhan, ii, 366
 and *note*
 solicitude of, for Bízhan,
 iii, 15
 harries Mázandarán, ii, 39
 taken prisoner in Mázan-
 darán, ii, 40
 released by Rustam, ii, 58
 taken prisoner in Hámá-
 varán, ii, 90
 released by Rustam, ii, 97
 goes in search of Kai Káuś,
 ii, 104
 takes part in the Fight of
 the Seven Warriors, ii,
 107 *seq.*
 bears letter from Káuś to
 Rustam, ii, 139
 encampment of, described,
 ii, 155
 helps to saddle Rakhsh for
 the fight with Suhráb, ii,
 160
 Suhráb described by, ii, 166
 quarrels with Tús over the
 future mother of Siyá-
 wush, iii, 194
 sent by Gúdarz to seek Kai
 Khusrau, ii, 364 *seq.*
 finds Kai Khusrau, ii, 370
 receives the mail of Siyá-
 wush, ii, 377
 exploits of, in defence of
 Kai Khusrau, ii, 378 *seq.*

Giv, tells how he captured
 Pírán's wife and sister, ii,
 383
 overthrows Pírán and his
 host, ii, 385
 releases Pírán, ii, 387
 at the Jihún, ii, 391 *seq.*
 announces Kai Khusrau's
 arrival in Írán, ii, 394
 accompanies Kai Khusrau
 to Ispahán, ii, 396
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, ii,
 399
 goes on an embassy to Tús, ii
 400
 bears Kai Khusrau's letter
 to the castle of Bahman,
 ii, 408
 undertakes to slay Tazháv,
 iii, 28
 burn the barricade at the
 Kása rúd, iii, 29
 horse of, wounded by Farúd,
 iii, 58
 lends Bízhan the mail of
 Siyáwush, iii, 60, 69
 sees Paláshán approaching,
 iii, 69
 burns the barricade at the
 Kása rúd, iii, 73
 parleys with Tazháv, iii, 75
 rouses the Íránians, iii, 81
 rallies the host, iii, 91
 many kindred of, slain, iii, 94
 urges Bahrám not to return
 to the battlefield, iii, 96
 goes in quest of Bahrám, iii,
 102
 takes Tazháv captive, iii,
 102
 buries Bahrám, iii, 104
 made adviser to Tús, iii, 116
 interrupts Tús' parley with
 Húmán, iii, 122
 raids Khutan, iii, 247
 steed of, iii, 257
 worsted by Púládward, iii,
 258
 interferes in the fight
 between Rustam and
 Púládward, iii, 263

Gív, opposes Bízhan's expedition to Irmán, iii, 201
 questions Gurgín about Bízhan, iii, 311
 wroth with Gurgín, iii, 314
 appeals to Kai Khusrau, iii, 315
 comforted by Kai Khusrau, iii, 315, 318
 sent to summon Rustam, iii, 319
 met by Zál, iii, 321
 tells Bízhan's case to Rustam, iii, 322
 announces Rustam's approach to Kai Khusrau, iii, 326
 goes to welcome Rustam, iii, 353
 holds parley with Pírán, iv, 20
 overtures of, rejected and returns to Gúdarz, iv, 21
 commands the rear, iv, 24
 referred to, iv, 39
 tries to stop Bízhan from fighting Húmán, iv, 40, 43
 over-ruled by Gúdarz, iv, 43
 refuses to lend Bízhan the mail of Siyáwush, iv, 43
 repents of his refusal, iv, 44
 son of = Bízhan, iv, 76
 ordered to dispatch troops to oppose Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 82
 sends Zanga and Gurgín, iv, 83
 leaves Farhád in command and attacks with Bízhan Pírán's centre, iv, 83
 defeats Rúín, iv, 84
 fights with Pírán, iv, 84
 attacked by Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 85
 superseded *pro tem.* by Shídlush, iv, 92
 chosen to fight with Gurwí, iv, 97

Gív, takes Gurwí prisoner, iv, 100
 opposes Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 119
 consents to Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 120
 brings Gurwí before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
 given a command, iv, 149
 commands the rear, iv, 191
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199
 goes with the captives to Kai Káuś, iv, 233
 gives Kai Káuś tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, iv, 236
 returns to Gang-bihisht with letter for Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
 made governor of the country between the sea and Gang-dizh, iv, 246
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 250
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 252
 Gúdarz and, meet Húm, iv, 263
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 sent by Gúdarz to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278
 bidden with other chiefs by Kai Khusrau to make an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295
 receives grant of Kum and Ispahán, iv, 298
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307

- Gív, Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
end of, iv, 309
grief of Gúdarz for, iv, 310, 312
- Gívgán, Íránian hero, ii, 109, 155; iii, 34; iv, 24
- Gloom, the (Land of Darkness), 160, v, 30; vi, 79
conception of, vi, 73
visited by Asfandiyár, v, 76
Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 74 *seq.*
account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
Sikandar hears of, vi, 158
enters, vi, 159 *seq.*
emerges from, vi, 162
jewels of, vi, 162
- Glory, the divine. *See* Grace.
- Glove, The, Browning's poem of, referred to, vi, 384 *note*
- Go-between, old woman as, i, 280 *seq.*
- Gog and Magog (Yájúj and Májúj, *q.v.*), the barbarous nomads of northern Asia, i, 16; vi, 78
- Golden, Age, i, 129, 134
boot, iv, 34, 180, 243, 282, 300, 359
Fleece, land of the, i, 57
- Gomer. *See* Kimmerians.
- Good Thoughts, Words, and Deeds, Zoroastrian formula, 169, vii, 317, 318
symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
- Gordyene, kingdom, south of Armenia, vi, 198
- Gotarzes, Parthian king and Íránian hero (Gúdarz, *q.v.*), iii, 109
memorial tablet of, iii, 9
Geopothros, iii, 9
coin of, iii, 9
- Gotarzes, war of, with Vardanes, iii, 10, 11
Meherdates, iii, 10 *seq.*
character of, in history, iii, 10
- Grace or Glory, the divine, i, 113, 114, 116, 123, 130 *seq.*, and *passim*
account of, i, 82
visible appearances of, i, 82, 130, 374, 385; vi, 221 *seq.*
- Granicus, river in Asia Minor flowing into the Propontis (Sea of Marmara), vi, 30
battle of the, vi, 30, 31
- Grapes, bunch of, Kubád and the, vii, 183 *note*
- Greece, vi, 30
- Greed and Need, personification of, vi, 146; vii, 71, 205, 206, 368, 369
- Greek, Greeks, i, 10; v, 282; vi, 82
relations of, with the Íránians, i, 14
history and legend in relation to Persian dto, ii, 9
conception of India, vi, 68
captives, mutilation of, by the Persians, vi, 373
philosophers entertained by Núshírwán, vii, 280
- Green, Prophet, the, *See* Al Khidr.
sea, the, vi, 174 *note*, viii, 46 and *note*
- Gretna Green, vi, 323 *note*
- Griffon, fabulous bird, i, 235 and *note*
- Gúdarz, son of Kishwád, Íránian hero, and father of Gív, a reminiscence of the Parthian king Gotarzes, *q.v.*, 146, 148, 151-153, i, 42; ii, 4, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 83, 91, 127, 138, 142, 157, 177, 178, 193, 250, 286, 290, 316, 318, 335, 338, 340, 349, 371 *seq.*, 384,

Gudarz—*cont.*

388, 394, 406; iii, 8, 11,
15, 18, 19, 24, 28, 33, 38,
40, 45 *seq.*, 50, 51, 67, 81
seq., 85, 88 *seq.*, 100, 111,
114, 115, 117, 118, 120,
123, 126, 127, 129 *seq.*,
134, 136, 137, 139, 143,
145, 149 *seq.*, 154 *seq.*,
164, 169, 172, 177, 187,
205, 206, 211 *seq.*, 220,
225, 232, 236, 246, 253,
254, 255, 258, 264, 268,
273, 277, 289, 298, 302,
305, 308, 322, 327, 329
seq., 337 *seq.*, 354, 357
iv, 7, 13, 70, 80, 85, 88
seq., 102, 103, 106 *seq.*,
113 *seq.*, 136, 145 *seq.*,
149, 157, 162, 171, 180,
191, 206, 226, 227, 292,
299; v, 207, 208; vi,
194; viii, 104, 168; ix,
23
taken prisoner in Mázan-
darán, ii, 40
released by Rustam, ii, 58
receives Ispahán from Kai
Káuś, ii, 78
taken prisoner in Hámá-
várán, ii, 90
released by Rustam, ii, 97
censures Kai Káuś, ii, 105
takes part in the Fight of
the Seven Warriors, ii, 107
mediates between Kai Káuś
and Rustam, ii, 144 *seq.*
encampment of, described,
ii, 153
sons and grandsons of, ii,
158; iii, 33; ix, 25
loss of, iii, 83 *note*, 94,
131; iv, 310, 312
survivors of, iv, 298
consoles Siyáwush for his
mother's death, ii, 199
appointed ruler of Suḡhd
and Sipanjáb, ii, 358
returns to Írán, ii, 362
sees Surúśh in a dream, ii,
363

Gúdarz, sends Gív to seek for
Kai Khusrau, ii, 364
hears of Kai Khusrau's
arrival in Írán, ii, 395
welcomes Kai Khusrau and
Gív, ii, 396
accompanies them to Is-
takhr, ii, 399
dispute of, with Tús, ii, 400
seq.
goes with Kai Khusrau to
the castle of Bahman, ii,
407
advises Tús to avoid
Kalát, iii, 41
supersedes Tús, iii, 83
informs Kai Khusrau about
Farúd and the defeat of
the Íránians, iii, 83
sends Bízhan for Káwa's
standard, iii, 92
Íránian watchman and, iii,
156 *seq.*
meets Fariburz, iii, 163
Rustam, iii, 171
warns Rustam not to trust
Pírán, iii, 212
sends Ruhhám to help Rus-
tam, iii, 227
praises Rustam, iii, 248
stead of, iii, 313
goes to welcome Rustam,
iii, 353
sent to invade Túrán by Kai
Khusrau, iv, 15
ordered to negotiate with
Pírán, iv, 15
negotiations failing, marches
from Raibad to meet
Pírán, iv, 22
arrays his host, iv, 24
gives the right wing to
Fariburz, iv, 24
baggage to Hajír, iv, 24
left wing to Ruhhám, iv,
24
rear to Gív, iv, 24
posts a watchman on the
mountain-top, iv, 25
takes his station at the cen-
tre, iv, 24

- Gúdarz, counsels Bízhan as to his fight with Húmán, iv, 41
 over-rules Gív's objections, iv, 43
 rewards Bízhan, iv, 52
 prepares to resist a night-attack, iv, 53
 gives a force to Bizhan, iv, 54
 joins battle with Pírán, iv, 55
 writes to Kai Khusrau, iv, 56
 sends Hajír with the letter, iv, 57
 receives Kai Khusrau's reply, iv, 62
 prepares to renew the fight, iv, 63
 receives Rúín with a letter from Pírán, iv, 67
 entertains Rúín, iv, 68
 dismisses Rúín with presents and the reply to Pírán's letter, iv, 74
 prepares for the flank-attack of Lahhák and Farshídward, iv, 82
 sends Hajír with orders to Gív, iv, 82
 harangues the host, iv, 89
 resolves to fight in person, iv, 90, 92, 96
 gives the left wing to Farhád, iv, 92
 right wing to Katmára, iv, 92
 rear to Shídúsh, iv, 92
 chief command to Gustaham, iv, 92
 instructs Gustaham, iv, 92
 holds a parley with Pírán and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*
 slays Pírán's steed, iv, 107
 pursues Pírán, iv, 108
 calls on Pírán to surrender, iv, 108
 Pírán wounds, iv, 108
- Gúdarz, slays Pírán, iv, 109
 drinks Pírán's blood, iv, 109
 sends Ruhhám to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110
 harangues the host, iv, 110
 resumes his command, iv, 111
 calls for volunteers to pursue Lahhák and Farshídward, iv, 116
 sends Gustaham, iv, 117
 Bízhan to help Gustaham, iv, 119
 comes before Kai Khusrau with the other champions, iv, 126
 receives Ispahán, iv, 129
 commands the left wing, iv, 147
 takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208
 left in command at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
 Gív and, meet Húm, iv, 263
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263
 gives Kai Khusrau and Kai Káuś tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 264
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 takes counsel with other nobles, iv, 277
 sends Gív to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278
 goes with other chiefs to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's charge to, iv, 294
 gift to, iv, 295
 asks Kai Khusrau for a patent for Gív, iv, 298

- Gúdarz, goes with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 laments the loss of the paladins, iv, 310, 312
 returns to Írán, iv, 310
 promises fealty to Luhrásp, iv, 312
 grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
- Gúdarz, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
- Gúdarzians, descendants of Gúdarz son of Kishwád, iii, 108, 115, 200, 214
- Gulár, place, vi, 206
- Gulgún (bright-bay), steed of Gúdarz, iii, 366
 steed of Luhrásp, v, 64
 steed of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 57
- Gulshahr, wife of Pírán, ii, 269, 270, 288, 387, 390
 prepares Jaríra's wedding outfit, ii, 270
 presents gifts to Farangís, ii, 275
 announces the birth of Kai Khusrau to Pírán, ii, 326
 referred to, ii, 383
- Gulzaryún, river in Turkistán (Jaxartes), ii, 358, 381; iv, 187, 189, 190, 218, 219; vii, 329, 340, 360
- Gulnár, slave-girl of Ardawán, vi, 217
 meaning of, vi, 217 *note*
 intrigue of, with Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 217 *seq.*
 reports the presage of the astrologers to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 219
 flees with Ardshír Pápakán to Párs, vi, 220
- Gumbadán, mount and stronghold, v, 29, 86, 152, 171, 177, 206; ix, 93
 situation of, v, 30
 Asfandiyár warded at, v, 84
- Gund-i-Shápúr (Shápúr Gird, Rás Shápúr, Kand-i-Shápúr, Jund-i-Shápúr), city in Khúzistán, north-west of Shúshitar and now represented by the ruins of Sháhábád, vi, 295; vii, 219, 276
 built for Roman captives, vi, 295
 Mání-gate of, vi, 327
 Núshzád imprisoned at, vii, 264 and *note*
- Gúr (Júr, Zúr, Fíruzábád), city in Párs, south of Shíráz, vi, 199, 205, 229 *note*, 230, 245
- Gúr, nickname of Bahrám son of Yazdagird, vii, 6
 Nöldeke on, vii, 6
- Gúrán, king of Kirmán, iv, 146
- Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín *q.v.*), general of Khusrau Parwíz and Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 194, 408, 409 *seq.*; ix, 44
 conspires with Farrukhzád, viii, 408
 invites Cæsar to take Írán, viii, 408
 rebels, viii, 411; ix, 45
 letters of, ix, 45, 46
 letter of Fíruz to, ix, 47
 account of, ix, 50
 meaning of, ix, 50
 dual personality of, ix, 50
 marches on Taisafún, ix, 51
 confers with Íránian mag-nates, ix, 51
 misrule of, ix, 53
 conspiracy against, ix, 54
 goes hunting, ix, 55
 end of, ix, 55
- Guráz, son of Máhwí, referred to, ix, 107, 115
 governor of Marv, ix, 120
 put to death with his sons, ix, 120

- Guráza, Íránian hero, 151, ii, 73, 340; iii, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 92, 120, 141, 253; iv, 15, 24, 34
 takes king of Barbar prisoner, ii, 97
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 encampment of, described, ii, 155
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 fights with Farshíward, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Siyámak, iv, 97
 slays Siyámak, iv, 100
- Gurazm (Kavárazem), a relative of Gushtásp, 155, v, 12, 22, 53, 99, 101, 102, 104 *seq.*, 171, 205, 261
 envies Asfandiyár, v, 78
 death of, referred to, v, 97
 Asfandiyár addresses the corpse of, v, 105
- Gurdáfríd, daughter of Gazhdaham, 144, ii, 119, 138
 referred to, ii, 131
 encounter of, with Suhráb, ii, 132 *seq.*
 beguiles Suhráb, ii, 133 *seq.*
- Gurdgír, son of Afrásiyáb, ii, 92
 commands the troops from Tartary, Khallukh, and Balkh, iv, 156
- Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 173, 174, viii, 74, 202, 205, 206, 231, 293, 295, 296, 298, 342, 349, 354, 358; ix, 6
 a legitimist, viii, 74
 Gustaham and, persuade Khusráu Parwíz not to make a night-attack, viii, 224
 takes charge of baggage, viii, 228
 Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
- Gurdwí, fights with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 294
 receives province, viii, 313
 informs Khusráu Parwíz of Gurdya's doings, viii, 356
 writes to, and sends Khusráu Parwíz' letter to, Gurdya, viii, 360
 wife of, goes with letters to Gurdya, viii, 360
 hears of the plight of Rai and informs Gurdya, viii, 367
- Gurdya, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 171, 173, 174, ii, 110; viii, 74, 104 *note*, 187, 191, 347, *seq.*, 358 365; ix, 6
 a legitimist, viii, 74
 present at council, viii, 164
 speech of, viii, 165, 167, 171
 referred to, viii, 221
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 221
 laments Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340
 resident at Marv, viii, 346 *seq.*
 informs her followers of the Khán's offer of marriage, viii, 349
 starts for Írán, viii, 351
 parleys with Tuwurg, viii, 352
 arrives at Ámwi, viii, 354
 doings of reported to Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 356, 358
 met by Gustaham, viii, 356
 asked in marriage by Gustaham, viii, 357
 receives letters from Khusráu Parwíz and Gurdwí, viii, 360
 plots murder of Gustaham, viii, 360
 justifies murder of Gustaham, viii, 361
 reports death of Gustaham to Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 361

- Gurđya, dresses up as a warrior to please Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 303
 prowess of, in drinking, viii, 364
 appointed overseer of royal bower, viii, 364
 diverts Khusrau Parwíz and saves Rai, viii, 368
- Gurgán (Hyrcania), province watered by the Atrak and Gurgán rivers on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 168, iv, 61; vi, 373; vii, 89, 237, 337, 338, 357, 358, 361; viii, 15, 355; ix, 89
 Abú'l Kásim of. *See* Abú'l Kásim.
- Gurganj, one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Kát (Káth) being the other), situated on the Persian side of the Oxus, iv, 60
- Gurgín, son of Milád, Íránian hero, 150, 151, ii, 33, 35, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 127, 138, 144, 310, 340, 394; iii, 11, 12, 19, 20, 25, 48, 108, 115, 126, 145, 182, 211, 253, 264, 268, 273, 285, 289, 292, 294 *seq.*, 300, 305, 310 *seq.*, 322, 323, 331 *seq.*, 345, 346, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 24, 147, 191, 292; viii, 72, 211, 216
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 undertakes embassy to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29
 goes with letter from Kai Khusrau to Rustam, iii, 274
 accompanies Bízhan to Irmán, iii, 292
 refuses to help Bízhan against the wild boars, iii, 293
 envies and beguiles Bízhan, iii, 294
- Gurgín, goes with Bízhan in quest of Manízha, iii, 296
 searches for Bízhan, iii, 310
 finds Bízhan's steed, iii, 311
 questioned by Gív about Bízhan, iii, 312
 false account of, about Bízhan's disappearance, iii, 313
 Gív's wrath with, iii, 314
 appears before Kai Khusrau, iii, 316
 imprisoned, iii, 317
 appeals to Rustam, iii, 331
 released, iii, 333
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 pardoned by Bízhan, iii, 346
 opposes Lahhák, iv, 83
 chosen to fight Andarímán, iv, 97
 slays Andarímán, iv, 104
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 283 *seq.*
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
- Gurgsár, tribe, v, 43 and *note*
- Gurgsár, Túránian hero, 156, v, 117, 131 *seq.*, 146, 233 *note*
 made captain of the host by Arjásp, v, 46
 given command of one wing, v, 50
 persuades Arjásp to remain and fight Asfandiyár, v, 108, 109
 made leader of the host, v, 109
 taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 111
 offers to guide Asfandiyár to the Brazen Hold, v, 113
 goes as guide with Asfandiyár to Túrán, v, 120
 offered the kingdom of the Turkmans by Asfandiyár in return for faithful service, v, 120

- Gurgsár, describes the route to the Brazen Hold, and the Seven Stages, v, 120 *seq.*, 124 *seq.*, 128, 132, 134
 chagrin of, at Asfandiyár's successes, v, 124, 128, 131, 133
 reproached by Asfandiyár for giving false information, v, 139, 140
 offered the captainship of the Brazen Hold by Asfandiyár in return for trusty guidance, v, 140
 shows the Íránians a ford, v, 140
 questioned by Asfandiyár for the last time, v, 141
 curses Asfandiyár, v, 141
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 141
 Gúrkán (Júzján), city and district between Marvrúd and Balkh, iv, 65
 Gurkís, tribe (?), viii, 15
 Gurúkhán, Íránian hero, iv, 149
 Gurwí, Túránian hero, 145, 151, 152, ii, 296, 314, 319, 338, 340; iii, 197, 199, 237; iv, 7, 99, 111, 252; v, 272
 challenges and is overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295
 advocates the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
 carries out the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 320
 chosen to fight with Gív, iv, 97
 taken prisoner by Gív, iv, 100
 brought by Gív before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
 executed, iv, 129
 Gurzbán, vi, 394. *See* Gurkán.
 Gushasp, sacred Fire, vi, 201
 Gushasp, chief scribe, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 11
 bidden to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
 Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.*
 Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.*
 Gúsh-bistár, a savage, vi, 80, 177
 meaning of, vi, 177 *note*
 interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 177
 Gushtásp (Vistáspa, Vishtásp, Hystaspes¹), son of Luhrásp, father of Asfandiyár, and Sháh, 154-157, i, 42, 61; ii, 3, 9; iii, 109; iv, 314 *seq.*, 334 *seq.*, v, 24 *seq.*, 61, 68, 90, 92 *seq.*, 103 *seq.*, 119, 130, 148, 154, 155, 159, 166 *seq.*, 180, 181, 183, 205, 206, 208 *seq.*, 213, 216, 220, 221, 233 *note*, 243, 248 *seq.*, 281, 289, 293; vi, 20, 49, 55, 200, 213, 251, 252, 258; vii, 359; viii, 41, 68, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392, 393; ix, 25
 son of Luhrásp, iv, 318
 jealousy of, respecting the grandsons of Kai Káuś, iv, 318
 asks Luhrásp to appoint him heir to the crown, iv, 318
 departs in wrath for Hind, iv, 319
 arrives at Kábul, iv, 320
 overtaken by Zarír, iv, 320
 takes counsel with the chiefs, iv, 321
 returns to Luhrásp, iv, 322
 pardoned by Luhrásp, iv, 322
 determines to quit Írán, iv, 323
 takes a steed of Luhrásp's, iv, 323
 story of, in Rúm, ii, 10; iii, 285; iv, 324 *seq.*
 interview of with Híshwí, iv, 324

¹ The Hystaspes of legend not necessarily the father of Darius I. *See* Vol. iv, p. 314 *seq.*

Gushtásp, vainly seeks work in
 Rúm as a scribe, iv, 325
 herdsman, iv, 326
 camel-driver, iv, 326
 blacksmith, iv, 327
 dreamed of by Katáyún, iv,
 329
 goes to Cæsar's palace, iv,
 330
 chosen for her husband by
 Katáyún, iv, 330
 marries Katáyún, iv, 331
 spends his time in the chase,
 iv, 332
 makes friends with Hishwí,
 iv, 332 and *note*
 asked by Hishwí to under-
 take the adventure of the
 wolf of Fâskún, iv, 335
 undertakes to slay the wolf
 of Fâskún, iv, 336
 provided with steed and
 arms by Mirín, iv, 336
 goes with Mirín and Hishwí
 to the forest of Fâskún,
 iv, 337
 prays for help, iv, 337
 gives thanks for his victory,
 iv, 338
 takes the wolf's tusks, iv,
 338
 welcomed by Hishwí and
 Mirín on his return, iv,
 339
 discovers to Katáyún his
 royal race, iv, 340
 referred to, iv, 343 *seq.*
 asked by Hishwí to under-
 take the adventure of the
 dragon of Mount Sakila,
 iv, 345
 bids Ahran provide a steed,
 sword, and other arms,
 iv, 345
 goes with Ahran and Hish-
 wí to Mount Sakila, iv,
 346
 takes two of the dragon's
 teeth, iv, 346
 gives thanks for his victory,
 iv, 347

Gushtásp, welcomed by Hishwí
 and Ahran on his return,
 iv, 347
 accepts gifts from Ahran
 and bestows part upon
 Hishwí, iv, 347
 returns to Katáyún, iv, 348
 goes to the sports on
 Cæsar's riding-ground, iv,
 349
 prowess of, at polo and
 archery, iv, 350
 questioned by Cæsar, iv, 350
 reproaches Cæsar for his
 treatment of Katáyún, iv,
 350
 claim of, to have slain the
 wolf and the dragon, iv,
 351
 confirmed by Hishwí, iv,
 351
 reconciled to Cæsar, iv, 351
 goes to court and is received
 with honour by Cæsar,
 iv, 351
 consulted about Ilyás by
 Cæsar, iv, 353
 leads forth the host, iv, 354
 refuses the overtures of
 Ilyás, iv, 354
 brings the body of Ilyás to
 Cæsar, iv, 356
 routs the host of Ilyás, iv,
 356
 returns in triumph to Cæsar,
 iv, 356
 recognised by Zarír, iv, 360
 goes to Zarír's camp, iv, 361
 hears of Luhrásp's abdi-
 cation in his favour, iv,
 362
 saluted as Sháh by the
 chiefs, iv, 362
 invites Cæsar to a feast, iv,
 362
 sets out for Írán with Katá-
 yún, iv, 364
 parts in good will from
 Cæsar, iv, 364
 welcomed and crowned by
 Luhrásp, iv, 364

- Gushtásp, Reign of, 154, v, 9 *seq.*
 Notes on, v, 9 *seq.*, 116 *seq.*,
 166 *seq.*, 260 *seq.*
 division of, v, 9
 points of interest in, v, 9
 compared with that of
 Darius Hystaspis, v, 10
 diagram to illustrate, v, 27
 legend of Zarduhsht and, v,
 18
 black horse of, v, 18, 28
 sees his place in Paradise, v,
 19
 Ridge of, v, 29
 succeeds Luhrásp as Sháh,
 v, 31
 sons of, v, 32
 pays yearly tribute to Ar-
 jásp, v, 32
 converted by Zarduhsht, v,
 33
 helps to spread the Faith,
 v, 34
 establishes Mihr Barzín and
 other Fire-fanes, v, 34
 conversion of, recorded on
 Cypress of Kishmar, v, 34
 advised by Zarduhsht not
 to pay tribute to Arjásp,
 v, 35
 receives embassy from
 Arjásp and takes counsel
 with his chiefs, v, 41
 sends answer to Arjásp, v, 43
 summons the host, v, 47
 marches against Arjásp, v,
 48
 bids Jámásp foretell the
 issue of the fight, v, 48
 distress of, at Jámásp's
 prophecy, v, 53
 encouraged to fight by
 Jámásp, v, 54
 gives Zarír the standard and
 the command of the cen-
 tre, v, 55
 one wing to Asfandiyár,
 v, 55
 other wing to Shídas, v,
 55
 the rear to Nastúr, v, 55
- Gushtásp, takes up his position
 on a height, v, 55, 56, 63
 referred to, v, 60, 64 *seq.*,
 89
 hears of the death of Zarír,
 v, 64
 wishes to avenge Zarír, v,
 64, 68
 dissuaded by Jámásp, v, 64,
 69
 offers his daughter Humái
 to the avenger of Zarír,
 v, 64
 crown and throne to the
 avenger of Zarír, v, 66
 gives his steed and arms to
 Nastúr, v, 69
 sees and laments over Zarír's
 corpse, v, 73
 bids Nastúr lead the host
 home, v, 74
 marries Humái to Asfandi-
 yár, v, 74
 gives Nastúr a command
 and bids him invade
 Túrán, v, 74
 rewards the host, v, 75
 builds a Fire-fane and makes
 Jámásp its archmage, v,
 75
 Mansion of, v, 75
 writes to his governors to
 announce the defeat of
 Arjásp, v, 75
 receives embassies and tri-
 bute from Caesar and from
 the kings of Barbaristán,
 Hind, and Sind, v, 75
 makes Asfandiyár chief
 ruler of Írán and sends
 him to convert the world,
 v, 76
 sends the Zandavasta to
 each clime, v, 77
 Gurazm slanders Asfandiyár
 to, v, 78
 sends Jámásp to recall As-
 fandiyár to court, v, 80
 convokes an assembly and
 arraigns Asfandiyár, v,
 82 *seq.*

- Gushtásp, puts Asfandiyár in bonds, v, 84
 sends Asfandiyár to Gumbadán, v, 84
 takes the Zandavasta to Sistán, v, 85
 welcomed by Rustam and Zál, v, 85
 kings revolt from, v, 85
 while in Sistán hears from his wife of the sack of Balkh and the captivity of his daughters, v, 93
 calls together his chiefs and summons the host, v, 94
 marches from Sistán toward Balkh, v, 94
 takes command of the centre, v, 94
 thirty-eight sons of, slain, and defeat of, in fight with Arjásp, v, 95, 96
 takes refuge on a mountain, v, 96, 100
 consults Jámásp, v, 96
 sends Jámásp to Asfandiyár with the offer of the crown in return for help, v, 97
 interview of, with, and promise to resign the crown to, Asfandiyár, v, 106
 commands the centre, v, 109
 makes thanksgiving for victory, v, 113
 promises to resign the crown to Asfandiyár when he has delivered his sisters from captivity, v, 114
 summons troops, rewards Asfandiyár, and sends him to invade Túrán, v, 115
 hears of Asfandiyár's success and writes to him, v, 160
 gives a banquet on Asfandiyár's return, v, 164
 consults Jámásp and the astrologers on Asfandiyár's future, v, 168
- Gushtásp, Asfandiyár recounts his deeds to, v, 170 *seq.*
 promises to resign the throne to Asfandiyár when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174
 Asfandiyár sends the corpses of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, and a message to, v, 232
 Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249
 hears of Asfandiyár's death and laments for him, v, 252
 wrath of the nobles with, v, 252
 reproached by Bishútan, v, 253
 Humái and Bih Áfríd, v, 254
 Rustam's overtures to, v, 256
 Bishútan testifies in Rustam's favour to, v, 257
 reconciled, and writes, to Rustam, v, 257
 advised by Jámásp to write to Bahman, v, 258
 writes to Rustam and Bahman to recall the latter, v, 258
 welcomes and gives Bahman the name Ardshír, v, 259
 tells Jámásp of his wishes as to the succession, v, 279
 dies, v, 280
- Gustaham, son of Naudar and brother of Tús, i, 90; ii, 127, 336; iv, 194
 Tús and, sent by Naudar to conduct the Persian women to Alburz, i, 351, 353
 hear of Naudar's death, i, 364
 passed over in the succession, i, 369, 370
 Kai Khusrau sends troops to succour, iv, 157

- Gustaham, son of Naudar, attacks the Túránians, iv, 178
 sent to Chách with troops, iv, 188
 reports his defeat of Khurákhán, iv, 193
 takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208
 left in command of Gang-bihisht, iv, 238
 goes to welcome Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 252
 left behind as viceroy on Kai Khusrau's return to Írán, iv, 254
- Gustaham, son of Gazdaham,¹
 Íránian hero, 152, i, 369;
 ii, 12, 58, 107; iii, 19, 25, 33, 45, 48, 59, 92, 93, 127, 129, 139, 141, 211, 247, 248, 253, 273, 289, 294, 322, 350; iv, 7, 13, 15, 24, 33, 93, 132 *seq.*, 149, 191, 292
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 friendship of, for Bízhan, iii, 15
 lends Bízhan a steed, iii, 60
 mounts behind Bízhan, iii, 95
 attacks Bídád, iii, 244
 sends Bízhan to summon Rustam, iii, 245
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 fights with Andarímán, iv, 87
 made commander in chief *pro tem. vice* Gúdarz, iv, 92
 Gúdarz instructs, iv, 92
 resigns his command to Gúdarz, iv, 111
 volunteers to pursue Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 116
 wounded, iv, 123
- Gustaham, son of Gazdaham, rescued by Bízhan, iv, 124 *seq.*
 healed by Kai Khusrau, iv, 133
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
- Gustaham, Íránian warrior, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 394
 lions of, slain by Bahrám Gúr, vi, 410
 Bahrám Gúr's commander-in-chief, vii, 85
- Gustaham (Bistám *q.v.*), maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 171-174, viii, 199, 200, 202, 204 *seq.*, 227, 228, 231, 255, 257, 259, 269, 282, 289, 293, 295, 298; ix, 4, 6
 imprisonment of, viii, 77, 176
 Bandwí and, escape and revolt, viii, 182
 informs Khusrau Parwíz of the blinding of Hurmuzd, viii, 184
 referred to, viii, 189
 revolt of, viii, 191, 355
 saves Khusrau Parwíz from Turk, viii, 220

¹This is assumed in all cases where it is doubtful which Gustaham is meant. Cf. Vol. i, p. 369.

Gustaham (Bistám), Gurdwí and,
dissuade Khusrau Parwíz
from making a night-
attack, viii, 224
treasurer, viii, 229 and *note*
accompanies Khusrau Par-
wíz in his flight, viii,
231
turns back and murders
Hurmuzd, viii, 232
rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii,
233
Khusrau Parwíz warned
against, viii, 255, 256
deceived by Cæsar's talis-
man, viii, 272
praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
Bahrám Chúbina writes to,
viii, 285
chooses comrades for Khus-
rau Parwíz in battle, viii,
296
receives Khurásán viii, 313
summoned to court, viii, 355
hears of execution of Band-
wí, viii, 355
hears of Gurद्या's doings,
viii, 356
goes to meet Gurद्या, viii,
356
asks Gurद्या in marriage,
viii, 357
Gurद्या plots murder of,
viii, 360
intimates of, beheaded, viii,
370
assassination of, referred to,
ix, 16, 104
Gutschmid, Alfred von, on the
Cyrus legend in Ctesias,
vi, 195
Gúzihr, Tribal King, vi, 198, 199

H

HABASH (Ethiopia), 160, vi, 149
people of, encountered by
Sikandar, vi, 149
Haftánbúkht. *See* Haftwád.
Haft Khán, ii, 29

Haft Khwán, ii, 29; v, 117 and
note
of Rustam and Asfandiyár
compared, v, 117
Mán, ii, 29
Haftwád (Haftánbúkht, Asta-
wadh), Tribal King, 161,
vi, 199
account of, in Tabarí, vi,
205
daughter of, vi, 205, 206,
233, 234
becomes guardian of the
Worm, vi, 236
Nöldeke and Darmesteter
on, vi, 206
son of, vi, 206
helps his father against
Ardshír Pápakán, vi,
236
Story of, 161, vi, 232 *seq.*
seven sons of, vi, 233, 235
rise to power of, vi, 235
builds, and migrates to, a
stronghold, vi, 235
Ardshír Pápakán and, vi,
236 *seq.*
slain by Ardshír Pápakán,
vi, 245
Haitál, Haitálíans, country and
people (White Huns),
dwelling north of the
Oxus, 166, 168, vii, 6,
153, 161, 164, 171, 174,
181, 187, 197, 340, 342,
390; viii, 45, 242, 329,
370, 377
origin and seat of, i, 19,
20
confused with the Turks,
vii, 4
Bahrám Gúr's defeat of, vii,
4
help Pírúz, vii, 156, 157
Pírúz's expedition against,
vii, 159, 164 *seq.*
tradition of, vii, 160
king of, vii, 160, 184
helps Kubád, vii, 198
Kubád's flight to, vii, 170,
184, 198

- Haitál Haitálíans, Núshírwán's alliance with the Khán against, vii, 317
 Khán's war with, vii, 328 *seq.*
 Khán's embassy to Núshírwán destroyed by, vii, 330
 host of, levied to oppose the Khán, vii, 331
 defeated, vii, 332
 Núshírwán's help sought by, vii, 332
 Faghánísh made king by, vii, 333
 Núshírwán takes counsel concerning, vii, 333 334,
 make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
- Ha'íy, son of Kutíba, governor of Tús and a patron of Firdausí, i, 35, 39
- Hajír, Íránian hero, 144, 151, ii, 134, 136, 140, 349; iv, 103, 147, 191
 taken prisoner by Suhráb, ii, 131
 misleads Suhráb, ii, 152 *seq.*
 life of, attempted by Rustam, ii, 176
 attacks Bídád, iii, 244
 put in charge of the baggage, iv, 24
 bears letters from Gúdarz to Kai Khusrau, , iv, 57
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 58
 bears Kai Khusrau's reply to Gúdarz, iv, 61, 62
 goes with orders to Gíiv, iv, 82, 83
 slays Andarímán's horse, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Sipahram, iv, 97
 slays Sipahram, iv, 104
- Halab (Chalybon - Beroea, Aleppo), city in northern Syria, iv, 359, 360; viii, 41, 46, 47
- Halai (Olympia (?), Náhíd), daughter, in legend, of Philip II of Macedon, vi, 19
- Halai, reason for her repudiation by Dáráb and her naming her son Iskandar (Sikandar), vi, 19
- Halai-Sandarús. *See* Halai.
- Hamadán (Ekbatana), city in 'Irak-i-'Ajamí, vi, 31; vii, 6; viii, 178, 189; ix, 68
- Hámávarán (Yaman), southwestern Arabia, 143, ii, 25, 78 *seq.*, 94, 96 *seq.*, 139, 143 *seq.*, 213, 215, 218, 250; iv, 296, 299; v, 174, 207, 208, 220; viii, 104, 168
 king of, 143, i, 338; ii, 85 *seq.*, 93, 207 and *note*; v, 176
 asks quarter of Rustam, ii, 97
 releases Kai Káu's, ii, 97
- Hamáwan, mountain, 148, iii, 135, 137, 138, 142, 144, 153, 154, 158, 161, 164, 167, 169, 172, 177; iv, 299; v, 116
 occupied by the Íránians, iii, 132
- Hamdán Gashasp, Íránian chief, viii, 122, 163, 204
 speech of, viii, 166
- Hamza, of Ispahán, tenth century Arabic historian, vi, 257
- Handgrip, as test of strength, ii, 64, 66, 67; v, 208
- Háni bin Mas'úd, Arab chief, viii, 190
- Haoma. *See* Homa.
 = Húm, *q.v.*
- Haraiti Bareza (Alburz, *q.v.*), mountain, iv, 137
- Harám, the environs of Mecca, vi, 65, 120 and *note*, 121
- Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 4, 5
- Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, ii, 101; iii, 222; viii, 71, 92, 110, 116, 117, 130, 173

- Harát, early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
 battle of, i, 21
 Firdausí flees to, from Mahmúd, i, 39
 desert of, ii, 228 ; viii, 114
 marchlord of. *See* Mákh.
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
- Háris, father of Kais, viii, 250
- Háarith, father of Nadr, *q.v.*, v, 166
- Háarith bin Jabala, prince of the Ghassánians, vii, 217
 protected by Justinian, vii, 217
 war of, with Munzir, vii, 217
- Harpagus, Persian noble, *temp.* Astyages, ii, 190
 = Pírán in legend, ii, 191
- Harúm (City of Women), 160, vi, 73, 153 *seq.*
 visited by Sikandar, vi, 153 *seq.*
 Sikandar's correspondence with the ruler of, vi, 153 *seq.*
- Hárunu'r-Rashíd, Khalífa (A.D. 786-809), i, 14
- Hárút, angel, iii, 286, 288
- 'Harvest of Bahrám,' viii, 292
- Hasan Sabbáh (The Old Man of the Mountain), v, 30
- Háshim, Arab general, ix, 68
 sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
 wins battle of Jalúlá, ix, 68
 takes Hulwán, ix, 68
- Háshimí, a descendant of Háshim the great grandfather of Muhammad, i, 25 ; vi, 362 and *note*
- Háshimite=Muhammad, ix, 81 and *note*
- Háshish, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Hatra (Al Hadr), city, vi, 321 *seq.*
 account of, vi, 322
 besieged, vi, 322
 fall of, legend of, vi, 322
- Hatra, king of, vi, 323
- Haug, his theory of the origin of Zoroastrianism, ii, 8
- Hauz, tank or pool, i, 203 and *note*, vii, 50 and *note*
- Hawk, hawks, domestication of, by Tahmúras, i, 126
 two white, Kai Kubád's dream of, i, 385
- Hawking. *See* Falconry.
- Hay, sack of, Bahrám Chúbína and the, viii, 109
- Hazár, Hazárán, Túránian hero, v, 24, 56, 59
- Hazára, father of Kút, viii, 291
- Hecataeus, Greek historian (6th-5th centuries B.C.), vi, 13
- Helenopolis, city in Bithynia, vi, 61
- Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 610-642), v, 306 *note* ; viii, 187, 191 ; ix, 5, 7
 attempts of, for peace with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 194, 195
 takes Dastagird, viii, 194
 retreat of, viii, 195, 196
 Shírwí's letter to, ix, 7
 alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44
- Hermit, Khusrau Parwíz and the 172, viii, 254
- Herodotus, Greek historian (B.C. 484-425), ii, 9 ; iii, 191 ; vi, 13, 16, 68, 72, 73 ; viii, 193
 legend of Cyrus the Great in, ii, 190 ; vi, 195
- Heroes, chief, of mixed descent, i, 55
 Vale of, vii, 6
- Hesperides, Garden of the, vi, 74
- Hierapolis. *See* Árayish-i-Rúm.
- High priest, *temp.* Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 343 *seq.*
 hears of Shápúr's return, vi, 344
 informs the captain of the host, vi, 345

- Hijáz, north-western Arabia,
viii, 24 and *note*, 66, 67
- Hilál, Arab, ix, 69
slayer of Rustam son of
Farrukh-Hurmuzd, ix, 70
- Himálaya (Himavat), mountain-
range dividing India from
Thibet, vi, 74, 81
- Himavat. *See above*.
- Himyar—Hámávarán (Yaman),
ii, 79
- Hind, Hindústán, 147, 159, 161,
165, 169, i, 231, 261; ii,
92, 228, 287, 289; iii, 30,
152, 164, 165, 177, 204,
221, 222, 235, 237, 238,
242; iv, 14, 60, 65, 133,
196, 208, 272, 317, 320;
v, 76, 188, 257, 262, 265,
277; vi, 80, 81, 91, 98
and *passim*
land of sorcerers, i, 163
Mai of, i, 252
king of (Shangul) *temp.* Kai
Khusrau, iii, 162, 210,
218, 251
temp. Bahrám Gúr, vii,
113, 119, 126, 128
temp. Núshírwán, viii, 52
lord of=Shangul, iii, 187
man of=Shangul, iii, 216
prince of, iv, 71
lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of, iv, 319, 321
kings of, send tribute to
Gushtásp, iv, 75
ambassadors from, come
to Dáráb, vi, 21
Dárá, vi, 35
ruler of=Fúr, vi, 51
Sikandar invades, vi, 98
silk of, vi, 99
king of=Kaid, vi, 103
Sikandar becomes king of,
vi, 118
people of, help the Sindians
against Sikandar, vi, 175
Rája of, 169. *See* Rájá.
Bahrám Gúr's visit to, vii,
5, 110 *seq.*
motive of, vii, 5
- Hind, Bahrám Gúr's visit to,
fabulous, vii, 6
king of, entertained by
Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140
seq.
Núshírwán goes to, vii, 241
Hindiyá (Amida?), city in
Roman Armenia, vii, 200
taken by Kubád, vii, 200
- Hindu Kush, mountain-range in
Afghánistán, ii, 80
- Hindústání, vii, 6
Gipsy language a debased
form of, vii, 6
- Hiong-Nu, probably the Huns, v,
13
- Híra, city west of the Euphrates
near Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef),
vi, 372; vii, 217; viii,
188, 191; ix, 5, 66
seat of the dynasty of Al
Munzir, i, 55
kingdom of, ix, 65
abolished by Khusrau
Parwíz, ix, 66
attacked by Persians, ix, 67
- Hirá (Jebel Núr), mountain
north of Mecca, viii, 42
- Hírbad, keeper of the women's
house of Kai Káuś, ii, 202,
206
- Hírmund (Helmund), river in
Sístán in eastern Írán, i,
358, 359; iii, 321; v, 178,
182, 186, 191, 196, 219,
285
referred to, v, 198, 231
- Hishám ibn Muhammad ibn
Al-Kalbí, Arabic historian
(8th-9th centuries A.D.),
vi, 30; viii, 73
- Híshwí, Rúman toll-collector,
iv, 334 *seq.*
interview of, with Gushtásp,
iv, 324
becomes friends with Gush-
tásp, iv, 332
asks Gushtásp, on behalf of
Mírín, to undertake the
adventure of the wolf of
Fáskún, iv, 335

- Hishwí, goes with Gushtásp and Mirín to the forest of Páskún, iv, 337
- Mirín and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339
- asks Gushtásp, on behalf of Ahran, to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 344
- goes with Gushtásp and Ahran to Mount Sakila, iv, 346
- Ahram and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 347
- receives gifts from Gushtásp, iv, 348
- confirms Gushtásp's claim to have slain the wolf and dragon, and produces their teeth to Caesar, iv, 351
- Hittite, Hittites, vi, 71
- empire, vi, 71
- Hiuen Tsiang, Chinese traveller (A.D. 603-668), vi, 63
- quoted, vi, 63, 73
- Hoibaras, Persian slave, *temp.* Astyages, vi, 195
- Hold, The Brazen. *See* Brazen Hold.
- Holy Ghost, the, vi, 138 and *note*
- Holy Questions, Mountain of the, i, 62
- Homa (Soma), a plant held sacred by the Zoroastrians, i, 8 and *note*, ii, 8
- juice of, ii, 8
- referred to, iv, 138
- Homer, vi, 13, 72
- epic method of. contrasted with Firdausi's, i, 47
- quoted, vi, 68, 73
- Hormisdas I. *See* Urmuzd son of Shápúr.
- Hormisdas II. *See* Urmuzd son of Narsí.
- Hormisdas (Urmuzd son of Urmuzd son of Narsí), Persian prince, takes refuge with the Romans, vi, 318, 325
- Hormisdas, goes with Julian to the East, vi, 325
- Horoscope, i, 152
- of the sons of Faridún, i, 188
- Zál, i, 251, 278
- Rustam, i, 278, 307
- Siyáwush, ii, 196, 205, 234
- Mirín, iv, 334
- Shaghád, v, 264
- Ardawán, vi, 218
- Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376
- Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 390
- Shírwí, vii, 372; ix, 16, 17
- Horse, of Persian royalty, how distinguished, ii, 410 *note*
- Gushtásp's black. *See* Black horse.
- (steed, knight), piece in chess, vii, 285, 423
- position of, vii, 388, 422
- move of, vii, 422
- Hourí, maid of Paradise, i, 272; ix, 81
- House of Darkness, ix, 7
- Crystal, ix, 25 and *note*
- Houses, the Twelve, of the sky, i, 103, 188
- good influence of, i, 52
- Hrazdán, river in Armenia, v, 13
- Hulwán (Arash), town, vii, 187, 201
- situation of, vii, 187
- Yazdagird retires to, ix, 67
- taken by Háshim, ix, 68
- Húm (Haoma, *q.v.*), hermit, 153, iv, 135 *seq.*, 259 *seq.*
- hears Afrásiyáb lamenting in the cave, iv, 260
- capture of Afrásiyáb by, iv, 261
- Darmesteter on, iv, 136
- pities and unbinds Afrásiyáb, iv, 262
- tells his adventure with Afrásiyáb to Gúdarz and Gív, iv, 363
- Kai Káuś and Kai Khusrau, iv, 264
- suggests how Afrásiyáb may be recaptured, iv, 265

- Húm, recaptures Afrásiyáb, iv, 266
- Huma. See below.
- Humái (Huma), daughter of Gushtásp, ii, 3; v, 12, 25
- marriage of, with Asfandiyár, v, 22, 74
- ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
- offered in marriage to the avenger of Zarír, v, 64
- taken captive by the Turks, v, 93, 100
- goes with Bih Áfrid to draw water and meets Asfandiyár, v, 147
- escapes from Arjásp's palace, v, 153
- bewails Asfandiyár, v, 252
- reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
- Humái (Chihrzád, *q.v.*), daughter and wife of Bahman, and mother of Dáráb, Sháh, 157, 158, ii, 3, 9, 10; v, 281, 290 *seq.*; vi, 20, 22, 190
- married to Bahman, v, 290
- Bahman appoints, and her issue, to succeed him, v, 291
- Semiramis (?), v, 293
- genealogies of, v, 293
- Reign of, 158, v, 292 *seq.*
- Note on, v, 292 *seq.*
- accession of, v, 294
- Dáráb born of, v, 294
- referred to, v, 296
- hears of Rúman invasion and bids Rashnawád lead forth the host, v, 301
- reviews the host, v, 302
- affected on seeing Dáráb, v, 302
- hears from Rashnawád about Dáráb, v, 308
- recognises that Dáráb is her son, v, 308
- thanksgiving largess of, v, 309
- Rashnawád and Dáráb appear before, v, 309 *seq.*
- Humái, crowns, and excuses herself to, Dáráb, v, 310
- proclaims Dáráb, v, 311
- Humái, Íránian chief, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 88
- goes as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
- Húmán, son of Wísa and brother of Pírán, Túránian hero, 144, 148, 149, 151, i, 92; ii, 129, 130, 132, 148, 150, 264, 390; iii, 90, 91, 93, 108, 120 *seq.*, 133 *seq.*, 142, 149, 152, 153, 158, 166, 169, 177, 182, 192, 202, 205, 210, 217, 227, 232, 234, 252, 259, 350; iv, 7, 8, 10, 29 *seq.*, 44, 55, 56, 61, 75, 76, 91, 118, 152
- Bármán and, join Suhráb with troops, ii, 129
- Afrásiyáb's instructions to, ii, 129
- misleads Suhráb as to Rustam, ii, 165, 169
- reproaches Suhráb for sparing Rustam, ii, 171
- throws the blame for Suhráb's death on Hajír, ii, 176
- withdraws from Írán under safe conduct, ii, 176, 181, 182, 184
- rescues Afrásiyáb from Rustam, ii, 354, 355
- persuades Afrásiyáb to abandon the pursuit of Kai Khusráu, ii, 394
- parleys with Tús, iii, 121
- leads the host against Tús, iii, 127
- counsels Pírán, iii, 134
- pursues the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
- rallies the Túránians, iii, 139
- reconnoitres the Íránians, iii, 174
- informs Pírán of the arrival of Rustam, iii, 174

- Húmán, parleys disguised with Rustam, iii, 196
 commands the centre, iv, 25
 dissuaded from fighting by Pírán, iv, 30
 parleys with Bizhan, iv, 45
 armour of, donned by Bizhan, iv, 51
 Túránians' grief at death of, iv, 51
- Huns, the, i, 10; v, 13; vi, 15; vii, 153
 settlement of, at Samarkand, i, 19
 White. *See* Haitál.
- Húr, father of Bihruz, vii, 72
- Hurmuz (Urmuzd), Ashkánian king, vi, 197
- Hurmuz (Ormus), city and island on the south-eastern shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
- Hurmuz (Hormisdas III), Sháh, 166, vii, 153, 186
 appointed by Yazdagird to succeed him, vii, 155
 Reign of, vii, 156
 Note on, vii, 156
 defeated by Pírúz, vii, 157
 pardoned by Pírúz, vii, 156, 158
 leads the van in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálans), vii, 164
 perishes in battle, vii, 168
- Hurmuz, minister of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 26
- Hurmuzd (Hormisdas IV), son of Núshírwán, Sháh, 169-172, vii, 279; viii, 56 *seq.*, 69 *seq.*, 74 *seq.*, 78, 87, 147, 169, 170, 174, 198, 209, 212, 213, 222, 232, 265, 270, 304, 312, 333, 355, 370, 376; ix, 4, 15, 104
 son of the Khán's daughter, vii, 317
 sent against the Turks, vii, 317
 examination of, viii, 3, 57
- Hurmuzd (Sháh), counselled by Núshírwán, viii, 25 *seq.*
 Núshírwán's testament in favour of, and last counsels to, viii, 61 *seq.*
 Reign of, 170, viii, 70
 Note on, viii, 70
 character of, viii, 70
 system of administration of, viii, 71
 justice of, viii, 71
 instances of, viii, 90 *seq.*
 scribes executed by, viii, 71
 insult of, to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 76
 Lazic war renewed by, viii, 76
 Bahrám Chúbína's gift of swords to, viii, 76
 accession of, viii, 78
 turns to evil courses, viii, 81
 puts to death Ízid Gas-hasp, viii, 83
 poisons Zarduhsht, viii, 83 *seq.*
 schemes against and puts to death Simáh Parzín, viii, 85 *seq.*
 attempts to suborn Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 85 *seq.*
 gives audience, viii, 86
 hears state-secret from Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 88
 puts to death Bahrám Ázarmihán, viii, 89
 repentance of, viii, 90, 93
 places of residence of, viii, 90
 wars of, viii, 92
 attacked by Sáwa, viii, 92
 Sáwa's letter to, viii, 93
 attacked by Cæsar, viii, 93
 Khazars, viii, 93
 Arabs, viii, 93
 consults the Íránians, viii, 94
 counselled by his wazír, viii, 94
 makes peace with Cæsar, viii, 95

- Hurmuzd (Sháh), attacks and defeats the Khazars, viii, 95
 sends for Mihrán Sitád, viii, 97
 hears prophecy about Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 98
 orders search to be made for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 99
 discovers and sends for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100
 consults Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100
 gives chief command to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 102
 questions Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 103
 gives Rustam's banner to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 105
 sends Mihrán with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 106
 intelligencer after Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 107
 to recall Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 108
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110
 hears of Bahrám Chúbína's victory, viii, 132
 makes thanksgiving, viii, 132
 rewards Bahrám Chúbína and the troops, viii, 133
 surveys spoils sent by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 150
 grows suspicious of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 151
 dismisses the Khán with gifts, viii, 152
 hears from Kharrád of Bahrám Chúbína's disaffection, viii, 160
 consults with high priest, viii, 161
 Áyín Gashasp, viii, 174, 177
 plans to make away with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 174
 hears of Khusrau Parwíz' flight, viii, 176
 imprisons Bandwí and Gustaham, viii, 176
- Hurmuzd (Sháh), hears of the murder of Áyín Gashasp, viii, 182
 dethroned and blinded, viii, 183, 200
 visited in prison by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 185, 198, 230
 requests of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 199
 referred to, viii, 211
 counsels Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 230
 murdered, viii, 232
- Hurmuzd Garábzín *or* Galábzín (Kharrád son of Barzín *q.v.*), viii, 190
- Hurmuzd, priest, vii, 188
 assists Núshírwán in his disputation with Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
- Hurmuzd, Íránian general, vii, 251
 commands the outposts in Núshírwán's army, vii, 251
- Hurmuzd (Hurmuzdsháh, Farukh-Hurmuzd *q.v.*), father of Rustam, ix, 72, 78, 85, 89, 96
- Hurmuzd Shahránguráz (Shahránguráz *q.v.*), ix, 54
- Hurmuzd, devotee, ix, 102
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102
- Hurmuzdagán, vi, 193, 199
 battle of, vi, 193, 199, 202, 256
- Husain, friend of Firdausí, ix, 121
- Húshang, son of Siyámak, minister of Gaiúmart, and Sháh, 139, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 126; ii, 204; iv, 133, 286, 292, 302; v, 180, 245; vii, 37, 273; viii, 376; ix, 25, 41
- Firdausí's etymology of, i, 121
 goes with Gaiúmart to fight the Black Dív, i, 121
 slays the Black Dív, i, 121
 Reign of, 140, i, 122

- Húshang, Reign of, Note on, i, 122
 succeeds Gaiúmart, i, 122
 culture-hero, i, 123
 discovers fire, i, 123
 institutes Fire-worship, i, 123
 founds the Feast of Sada, i, 124
 domesticates animals, i, 124
 dies, i, 124
 Firdausí's reflections on, i, 124
 rites of, vii, 53
 Faith of, viii, 380
- Húshdív, Túránian hero, v, 46
 put in charge of the rear, v, 46
- Húshyár, astrologer, vi 372, 375
 takes Bahrám Gúr's horoscope, vi, 176
- Hushravah (Kai Khusrau, *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
- Hutaosa, wife of Gushtásp, v, 11
 = Atossa (?), v, 11
- Hvyaonas (Khyons, Chionitae ?), people, v, 13
- Hyapates, son of Semiramis, v, 292
- Hyaspes, *id.*
- Hyaspes (Jhílám), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 62, 63
- Hydraotes (Rávi), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Hyperboreans, the, vi, 74
 Elysium of, vi, 74
 Hyphasis (Beas), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Hyrkania (Gurgán, *q.v.*), ii, 27 ; iii, 10 ; vi, 373
 Gív, prince of, iii, 9
- Hystaspes (Gushtásp, *q.v.*), iv, 314 *seq.*
- Hystaspes, father of Darius I, v, 10
 governor of Parthia, v, 10
- IBLís, the Muhammadan Devil, 140, 143, iv, 206, 282 ; v, 174, 218
- IBLís, occasional substitution of for Áhriman in the Sháh-náma, i, 50, 70 ; ii, 82, 110
 tempts Zakhák, i, 136 *seq.*
 turns cook, i, 137 *seq.*
 causes serpents to grow out of Zakhák's shoulders, i, 139
 counsels, garbed as a leech, Zakhák, i, 139
- Ibn Mukaffá', Persian scholar and Arabic writer, vi, 373 ; vii, 161
 account of, vi, 17
 translator of the Bástán-náma into Arabic, vi, 17
 Fables of Bidpai (the Book of Kalíla and Dimna) into Arabic, vii, 383
- Ibráhím, Abraham the patriarch, vi, 119, 120
 house of = the Kaaba, vi, 119
- Ichthyophagi, vi, 81
 Sikandar and, vi, 69, 147
 Arrian on, vi, 69
 modern accounts of, vi, 70
 city of, described, vi, 177
 go to meet, and are visited by, Sikandar, vi, 178
 hand over the treasures of Kai Khusrau to Sikandar, vi, 178
- Íd-i-Kurdí, Feast of, i, 143
- Ighrírás (Aghraératha, Aghré-rađ, Aghrírás), brother of Afrásiyáb and Túránian hero, 142, i, 92, 337, 342 *seq.* ; ii, 18, 20, 303, 304 ; iii, 8 ; iv, 136, 206, 262
 characterised, i, 55, 338
 opposes war with Írán, i, 343
 Bármán's single combat, i, 347
 over-ruled by Pashang, i, 344
 Afrásiyáb, i, 347
 Íránian captives saved by, i, 363
 released by, i, 365 *seq.*

- Ighrîras, upbraided and slain by Afrâsiyâb, i, 367
 Pashang's grief for, i, 374
 revival of, in legend, iv, 135
 given a command, iv 156
 head of, sent by Kai Khusrau to Kai Kâús, iv, 185
 referred to, iv, 267
- Ijâs bin Kabîsa, viii, 188
 governor of Hîra, viii, 190
- Îlâ, Tûrânian king, iv, 182
 fights with Kai Khusrau, iv, 182
- Ilyâs, ruler of Khazar *q.v.*, 154, iv, 361
 tribute demanded of, by Cæsar, iv, 352
 refuses tribute and declares war, iv, 352
 makes overtures to Gush-tâsp, iv, 354
 corpse of, brought by Gush-tâsp to Cæsar, iv, 355
- Imagery, of Shâhnâma. *See* Shâhnâma.
- Imaus, Greek form of Himâlaya *q.v.*, vi, 12
- 'Inânian, 'Inânians, Arab tribe, vi, 324, 330, 331, 333
- Ind. *See* Hind.
- India, iv, 316; vi, 17, 64, 81, 83, 204
 Íránians and Aryans of, i, 15
 Palladius on, vi, 61
Ancient, M'Crindle's, quoted, vi, 68
 =Ethiopia, vi, 68
- Indian, Indians, 172, vi, 81, 375, 397; vii, 135, 146; viii, 377
 =Ethiopians, vi, 13, 68
 sages, vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 143 *seq.*, 266
 bells and gongs, vi, 175; viii, 46, 120
 bane, vi, 259
 king of=Shangul, vii, 118
 tongue, vii, 117, 143
 sword, falchion, scimitar, viii, 127, 145, 417; ix, 17
 Garden of the, viii, 196
- Indian, Indians, Faith of, 172, viii, 275
 script, ix, 17
 scribe, ix, 17
- Indies, Greek idea of two, vi, 13
 duplicate races in, vi, 68
- Indo-European race, i, 7
 Asiatic branch of, i, 7
 Aryans, i, 7
 * early seats of, i, 7
 religion of, i, 7
- Indra, Indian god, ii, 25; vi, 203
 Vritra and, ii, 25; vi, 203
- Indus, river, i, 71, 252; ii, 21; iii, 177, 204, 237, 251; v, 293; vi, 62, 67, 70; vii, 241
 mistaken for the Nile, vi, 68
- Introduction, to Shâhnâma, i, 3 *seq.*
- Iollas, Alexander the Great's cup-bearer, vi, 82
- Íraj, youngest son of Farídún *q.v.* and the protagonist of the Íránian race, 140, i, 54, 90, 91, 211; ii, 8, 16, 19, 20, 237, 297, 302; iii, 8; iv, 146; v, 42, 44, 261; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 376 and *note*, 392; ix, 103
 etymology of, i, 174
 naming of, i, 188
 horoscope of, i, 188
 receives Írán and Arabia as his portion, i, 189
 abdication of, demanded by Salm and Túr, i, 192
 offers to go to his brothers, i, 196
 visits Salm and Túr, i, 198
 reception of, by Salm and Túr, i, 198
 offers to resign his kingship to his brothers, i, 200
 slain by Túr and Salm, i, 201
 head of, sent to Farídún, i, 202
 mourning for, i, 203 *seq.*
 daughter of, 140, i, 205
 married to Pashang, i, 205

- Íraj, daughter of, gives birth to
Minúchihr, i, 206
vengeance for, i, 215 *seq.*
referred to, i, 335, 349
- Íraj, king of Kábul, iv, 146
- Írák, ix, 66
= 'Írák 'Arabí (Babylonia),
vii, 214, 224
- Iram, gardens of, i, 100, 113;
ii, 78; vii, 235 and
note
- Írán, 142-144, 146, 148, 150, 152-
155, 157, 158, 162, 163,
165, 167, 172, 173, 175,
176, i, 3, 113, 152, 153
and *passim*
boundaries of, i, 3
physical features of, i, 3
gradual desiccation of, i, 3
and *see* Drought.
climate of, i, 4
flora of, i, 4
fauna of, i, 5
land of contrasts, i, 5, 58,
60
cosmogony of, i, 5
people of, i, 6
-vej, region, i, 9
situation of, i, 9
Zoroaster's (Zarduhsht's)
birth-place of, i, 62
Arab conquest of, i, 12
Arabia and, Íraj's portion,
i, 189
-Shahr, ii, 81
fought for by Afrásiyáb and
the Arabs, ii, 92
invaded by Suhráb, ii, 130
lord of=Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of=Dáráb, vi, 21,
20
and Sháhnáma compared,
vi, 193
invaded by Munzir and
Nu'mán, vi, 397
Rúm's tribute to explained,
vii, 187
- Íránian, Íránians, 144, 147-151,
153, 155, 163-167, 171,
176, i, 9 and *passim*
neighbours of, i, 9
- Íránians, historical relations of,
with Semites, i, 10
Assyrians, i, 10
Arabs, i, 11; vi, 17; ix,
65 *seq.*
Greeks and Romans, i, 14
Aryans of India, i, 15
Túránians, i, 16 *seq.*
Kimmerians, i, 17
Scythians, i, 17
Parthians, i, 18
Alani, i, 19
Huns, i, 19
Turks, i, 20
- traditional relations of, with
other Indo - Europeans,
Semites, and Túránians, i,
54, 55, 56
revolt against Jamshíd and
summon Zakhák to Írán,
i, 139
chiefs of, imprisoned at
Sarí, i, 363
plot for release with Igh-
rírás, i, 363
inform Zál, i, 366
released by Kishwád, i,
367
provided for by Zál, i,
367
bewail Naudar, i, 364
wish to withdraw from the
Seven Stages, v, 135
encouraged to persevere by
Asfandiyár, v, 136
provoked to combat by
Zawára, v, 225
Sikandar's proclamation to,
vi, 44
bewail themselves, vi, 48
counsel Dárá to come to
terms with Sikandar, vi,
48
ask quarter of Sikandar, vi,
51
hail Sikandar as ruler, vi, 56
after Yazdagird son of
Shápúr's death meet for
counsel in Párs, vi, 394
Jawanwí sent by, to Mun-
zir, vi, 397

- Íránians, offer prayer at the Fire-fane of Barzín, vi, 400
 loyal, support Bahrám Gúr, vi, 402
 procedure of, to elect a Sháh, vi, 403
 decide to reject Bahrám Gúr, vi, 403
 remonstrated with by Munzir, vi, 403
 object-lesson of, to Munzir, vi, 404
 accept Bahrám Gúr's proposal for settling the question of kingship by ordeal, vi, 406
 ask Munzir to intercede with Bahrám Gúr for them, vii, 9
 arrears of taxes of, cancelled, vii, 11
 levied by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 86
 resolve to submit to the Khán, vii, 87
 send Humái as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
 letter of, to the Khán, vii, 87
 ask for Narsi's good offices with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 93
 lament for the death of Pírúz, vii, 169
 revolt against Kubád, vii, 195
 put Kubád in fetters, vii, 195
 ask pardon of Kubád, vii, 200
 pardoned by Kubád, vii, 200
 take Sakila, viii, 47
 chiefs received in audience by Hurmuzd, viii, 86
 consulted by Hurmuzd, viii, 94
 defeat the Khazars, viii, 96
 advise Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 102, 121, 239 *seq.*, 287
 Sáwa employs sorcery against, viii, 123
 encouraged by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 124
- Íránian, Íránians, defeat the Turks, viii, 126
 revolt against Hurmuzd, viii, 156
 elect Bahrám Chúbína Sháh, viii, 243
 homage Shírwí, ix, 8
 choose two chiefs to visit Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 9
 plot against Guráz, ix, 54
 go hunting with Guráz, ix, 55
 race, ix, 65
 enmity of, with Semite, i, 54; ix, 65
 announces arrival of Shu'ba Mughíra to Rustam, ix, 82
 defeat of, at Kádisiya, ix, 84
 retreat to Yazdagird, ix, 85
 -born, ix, 99
 defeat of, at Marv, ix, 116
 ambushed, ix, 118
 Irmá'il and Karmá'il, Zahhák's cooks, 140, i, 146
 Irmán, (*Arman q.v.*), i, 345, 358; iii, 12, 285, 292, 296, 311
 devastated by wild boars, iii, 290
 Irmánians (*Armenians q.v.*), 150, iii, 286
 complain to Kái Khusrau of the wild boars, iii, 290
 Iron steeds, Sikandar's, vi, 115
 Ísá (Jesus), viii, 276 *note*
 Isdigird I (Yazdagird son of Shápúr), Sásanian king, vi, 371
 Isdigird II (Yazdagird son of Bahrám Gúr), Sásanian king, vii, 153
 Ishmael, vi, 65, 120, 121
 Iskandar. *See* Sikandar.
 Iskandar, herb, vi, 26
 Iskandariya (Alexandria), 160, vi, 185
 Sikandar buried at, vi, 185
 Island, the=Meroe, vi, 65
 Islands, Male and Female, vi, 72
 origin of legend of, vi, 72

- Ismá'il. *See* Ishmael.
 Ismá'il, brother of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
 Isnawí. *See* Ispanwí.
 Ispahán, city in 'Irak-i-'Ajami, 146, i, 351; ii, 304, 399; iii, 109; vi, 57, 86, 87, 199, 201, 202, 210; vii, 6, 84, 214, 224; viii, 90 given to Gúdarz, ii, 78; iv, 129
 arrival of Kai Khusrau at, ii, 396
 bestowed on Giv by Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
 Ispanwí, slave-girl of Tazháv, iii, 14, 27, 77
 taken captive by Bízhan, iii, 78
 Ispurúz, neighbourhood in the neighbourhood of Mázan-darán, ii, 38, 56, 57, iv, 136, 230
 Israfil, archangel, 160, vi, 78
 Sikandar's interview with, vi, 83, 161
 Issedones, tribe situated on the Tarim basin in eastern Turkistán, iii, 192
 Issus, town, plain, and gulf in Cilicia, vi, 30
 battle of, vi, 30, 31
 Dárius' family taken prisoners at, vi, 31
 Istakhr (Persepolis), city in Párs, 142, 165, ii, 11, 22, 28, 339; vi, 57, 198, 199, 202, 211, 223, 225, 231, 326, 356, 386; vii, 83, 95, 188; viii, 90, 313; ix, 50, 54
 buildings at, attributed to Humái, v, 293
 Dará marches from, to encounter Sikandar, vi, 37, 46
 returns to, vi, 44
 Sikandar crowned Sháh at, vi, 59
 taken by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
 Istakhr, Ardshír Pápakán marches from, against the Kurds, vi, 230
 returns victorious to, vi, 232
 Yazdagird taken to, ix, 64
 made Sháh at, ix, 65
 Istuvegu. *See* Astyages.
 Italy, vii, 218
 Alexander of Epirus' expedition to, vi, 12
 Alexander the Great's legendary expedition to, vi, 12, 30
 Íwán-i-Kerkh, vi, 327
 Izads (Yazatas), the, iii, 286
 Ízid, viii, 75
 Ízid Gashasp, archscribe, 170, viii, 74
 confusion in name of, viii, 75, 76
 put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 75, 83
 malicious speech of, viii, 77
 and *note*, 150 and *note*
 imprisoned, viii, 81
 sends for high priest, viii, 81
 Ízid Gashasp, Iránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 136, 138, 149, 350, 353, 356
 conducts spoil to Irán, viii, 148
 goes hunting with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 156
 speech of, viii, 165
- J
- JABALA BIN SÁLIM, viii, 73
 Jacob of Sarúg, Syriac poet.
 Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander the Great versified by, vi, 15, 74, 78, 84
 Jádústán, vi, 109 and *note*
 Jagatai, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 29
 Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, Túránian hero, 152, i, 92; ii, 264, 268; iv, 156, 162, 200 *seq.*, 214

- Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, sent to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155
 advances to the attack and is defeated by Káran, iv, 178
 stationed at the centre with Afrásiyáb, iv, 179
 sent to the left with troops, iv, 180
 Garsíwaz and, compel Afrásiyáb to quit the field, iv, 182
 commands the right, iv, 190
 helps to defend Gang-bihisht, iv, 209
 taken prisoner by Rustam, iv, 210
 sent to Kai Káuś, iv, 233
 interned by Kai Káuś, iv, 235
 spurious passage about, iv, 272 *note*
- Jahn, architect of throne of Tákhdíś, viii, 391
- Jahram (Chahram), 161, 163, city in Párs, vi, 44, 119, 202, 225, 237, 241, 268, 400; vii, 185; ix, 29, 61
 Dára goes to, vi, 44
 desert of, vi, 401
- Jáj (? Chách *q.v.*), iv, 150
- Jalálpúr, city in the northern Punjáb, vi, 18
- Jalúlá, town north-east of Baghdád, i, 12, ix, 68
 battle of, i, 12, ix, 68
- Jam, son of Kubád and brother of Núshírwán, vii, 316
 conspires against Núshírwán, vii, 316
- Jámásp, chief minister of Sháh Gushtásp, 155, i, 42; ii, 9; v, 12, 22, 24 *seq.*, 58, 206, 216, 248; viii, 171, 393; ix, 26
 omniscience of, v, 19, 48
 answers, in conjunction with Zarír and Asfandiyár, Arjásps letter, v, 42
- Jámásp, foretells the death in battle of Ardshír, v, 49
 Shídasps, v, 50
 Girámí, v, 50
 exploits of Nastúr, v, 50
 death of Nivzár, v, 51
 Zarír, v, 52, 70 *note*
 triumph of Asfandiyár, v, 52
 defeat of Arjásps, v, 52
 encourages Gushtásp to fight, v, 54
 referred to, v, 59, 102
 dissuades Gushtásp from avenging Zarír, v, 64, 68
 made archmage of Fire-temple built by Gushtásp, v, 75
 sent to recall Asfandiyár to court, v, 80 *seq.*
 advises Gushtásp, when beleaguered by Arjásps, to release Asfandiyár, v, 97
 volunteers to go to Asfandiyár, v, 97
 reaches Gumbadán in disguise, v, 98
 interview of, with Asfandiyár, v, 99 *seq.*
 sends for blacksmiths to unchain Asfandiyár, v, 101
 sets off with Asfandiyár, Bahman, and Núsh Ázar, v, 103
 foretells Asfandiyár's fate, v, 169
 reproached by Bishútan, v, 254
 advises Gushtásp to write to Bahman, v, 257
 writes by Gushtásp's orders to recall Bahman, v, 258
 Gushtásp tells his intention as to the succession to, v, 279
 prophecy of, viii, 68
 additions of, to throne of Tákhdíś, viii, 392
- Jámásp, son of Pirúz, 166, vi, 3
 supersedes Kubád temporarily, vii, 184, 195

- Jámásp, son of Pirúz, title of, vii, 186
 fate of, vii, 186, 200
- James, St., bishop of Edessa, i, 374
- James V of Scotland, vii, 3
 Bahrá'm Gúr's resemblance to, vii, 3
- Jamhúr, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 398, 399, 401, 403
- Jamshíd, son of Tahmúras, Sháh and culture-hero, 140, 164, i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 4, 33, 37, 108, 204, 358, 399; iii, 7, 57, 257, 273; iv, 63, 133, 149, 203, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 32, 34, 38, 47, 180, 202, 215, 216, 245, 271, 284; vi, 45 and *note*, 172, 209; vii, 36 *seq.*, 107, 162, 173, 211; viii, 22, 242, 269, 310, 332, 341, 387; ix, 25, 39, 103
 Reign of, 140, i, 129 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 129 *seq.*
 the Íránian Noah, i, 129
 meaning of, i, 130
 ascends the throne, i, 131
 greatness of, i, 131
 culture-hero, i, 132
 makes armour, i, 132
 raiment, i, 132
 institutes castes, i, 132
 great builder, i, 133
 introduces jewelry and perfumes, i, 133
 leechcraft, i, 133
 ship-building, i, 133
 carried by the dís into the air, i, 133
 feast held in memorial of, i, 134
 fall of, i, 130, 134, 139
 Íránians revolt against, i, 139
 flight and death of, i, 139
 sisters of, married to Zahhák, i, 146
 found by Farídún, 140, i, 102
 referred to, iv, 304
- Jamshíd, treasure of, found by Bahrá'm Gúr, 164, vii, 36
 described, vii, 36
- Jandal, envoy of Farídún, 140, i, 177
 asks Sarv's daughters in marriage for Farídún's sons, i, 178
 informs Farídún of the outcome of his mission, i, 182
- Jandal, city in Hind, vii, 140
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrá'm Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Jánfurúz, Íránian general, viii, 297
- Jánúsiyár, minister of Dárá, vi, 52, 88
 murders Dárá, vi, 52
 informs Sikandar of Dárá's murder, vi, 52
 arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
 executed, vi, 56, 88
- Jaranjás, Túránian hero, iv, 156
- Jaríra, daughter of Pirán, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Farúd, 147, i, 92; ii, 3; iii, 43
 married to Siyáwush, ii, 268 *seq.*
 birth of her son Farúd, ii, 291
 referred to, iii, 39
 advises Farúd, iii, 42
 dream of, iii, 63
 kills herself, iii, 66
- Jarmana, place, ix, 93
- Jasha, king, i, 67, 68
- Játa'kas, vii, 383
- Jats, people of north-western India, vii, 6
 fabulous origin of, vii, 6
- Jawánwí, Íránian magnate, vi, 373; vii, 8, 10
 goes as ambassador to Munzir, vi, 398
 interview of, with Munzir, vi, 398 *seq.*
 recognises the divine Grace in Bahrá'm Gúr, vi, 398 *seq.*

- Jawánwi, suggests a course of action to Munzir, vi, 400
returns to Írán, vi, 400
bidden by Bahrám Gúr to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
- Jaz (Gaz), town north-west of Ispahán, vi, 337; vii, 76, 79, 80
tribute of, remitted, vii, 82
- Jerusalem, v, 306 *note*, vi, 81; viii, 191, 196
Elevation of the True Cross at, ix, 43
- Jesus, i, 42; viii, 191; ix, 10
sayings of, viii, 276 and *note*
Cross of, viii, 380
laughter of, viii, 191, 380
- Jew, Jews, 168, vi, 356; vii, 13, 273; viii, 21, 67, 276
Faith of, vi, 95
Bahrám Gúr's adventure with a, vii, 16 *seq.*
persecution of, vii, 153
Zúrán's plot with a, against Mahbúd, vii, 320 *seq.*
bewitches Núshírwán's food, vii, 321
makes confession to Núshírwán, vii, 325
Fables of Bidpai, vogue of largely due to, vii, 383
- Jewelled tree, Kai Khusrau's, iii, 329
- Jeweller, a, 164. *See* Máhiyár.
daughter of, 164
- Jewels, discovery of, i, 133
Palace of, 160
- Jhílam (Hydaspes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 63
- Jíhún (Oxus *q.v.*) river, 146, 152, i, 215, 219, 345, 375; ii, 15, 19 *seq.*, 99, 229, 237, 248, 258, 311, 340, 390, 394, 399, 404; iii, 58, 159; iv, 10, 12, 20, 53, 60, 79, 153, 154, 157, 181, 184, 187, 194, 255, 304; v, 12, 29, 40, 45, 48, 203; vii, 92, 165, 166, 180, 329, 338, 340; viii, 94, 99,
- Jíhún—*cont.*
134, 174, 332; ix, 77, 115, 118
boundary between Írán and Túrán i, 71, 370, 371
confused with the Aras, i, 370
fords of, viii, 331
- Jins, ix, 81
- Johari Das, Babu, quoted, vi, 81
- Joktan, vi, 65
= Kahtán, vi, 65
- Joshua, vi, 77
Moses and, Muhammadan legend of, vi, 77
- Jovian (Bazánúsh), Roman Emperor (A.D. 363-4), vi, 324 *seq.*; viii, 41
confused with Valerian, vi, 324
- Judaism, vi, 327
- Judda, the port of Mecca, 159, vi, 121
Sikandar arrives at, vi, 121
- Julian (Yánús), Roman Emperor (A.D. 361-363), i, 12; vi, 325
confused with Valerian, vi, 324
not an emperor in the Sháh-náma, vi, 324, 326
expedition of, against Persia, vi, 324 *seq.*
- Julius Valerius, early Latin translator of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 61, 66 *seq.*, 71, 74, 78, 79, 81
- Jund-i-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*), city, vi, 256
= Rás-Shápúr, vi, 256
foundation of attributed to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 266
- Jupiter, planet, i, 72, 161, 188, 281; ii, 115; iii, 318; iv, 143, 295; v, 250; vi, 138, 172, 292; vii, 49, 248, 357; viii, 28, 152, 157, 395
- Justin I, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 316

- Justin II, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 41
 Justinian, Eastern Roman Emperor, i, 16; vii, 212, 219, 317; viii, 41
 silkworm introduced into the West during reign of, vi, 204
 bargains of, with Núshírwán, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*
 protection of Hárith bin Jabala by, leads to war with Núshírwán, vii, 217
 successes of, in the West, vii, 217
 closes the schools of Athens, vii, 280
 Juyá, a div, ii, 71
 slain by Rustam, ii, 72

K

- KAABA, the, 159, vi, 65
 account of, vi, 65
 Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 67, 83, 119
 Kabáb, small pieces of meat skewered together for roasting, ii, 103; iii, 69; iv, 121; v, 152; viii, 250
 Kabása, viii, 188
 Kabtún, king of Misr and the progenitor of the Copts, vi, 121
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
 praises Kaidáfa to Sikandar, vi, 122
 Kabúda, 147, one of Afrásiyáb's herdsmen, iii, 73
 slain by Bahrám, iii, 74
 Kábul, Kábulistán (Afghánistán), city and country, 141, 157, i, 57, 252, 264, 268, 277, 282, 283, 286, 294, 298, 299 *note*, 300, 302 *seq.*, 316, 357, 378; ii, 12, 18, 21, 92, 228, 260, 271, 341; iii, 17, 35, 145, 153, 165, 174, 186, 190, 202, 206, 321; iv, 14, 65, Kábul - *cont.*
 146, 278, 283, 292; v, 126, 170, 173, 224, 242, 251, 260, 263 *seq.*, 271, 273 *seq.*, 284, 287; vi, 207; vii, 173
 Buddhism in, i, 15
 superseded by Brahmanism, i, 16
 dagger of, i, 219; vi, 320
 Zál visits, i, 256
 Beauty of = Rúdába, i, 262, 316
 monarch of = Mihráb, i, 294, 305
 rejoicings at, over Zál's successful embassy to Minúchihr, i, 314
 preparations at, to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 315
 falchion of, i, 376; ix, 98
 Shaghád sent to be brought up at, v, 264
 king of, 157, v, 264, 271
 daughter of, marries Shaghád, v, 264
 Shaghád and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*
 gives a feast, v, 266
 pretends to quarrel with Shaghád, v, 266
 treachery of, v, 268 *seq.*
 abases himself before Rustam, v, 269
 entertains Rustam and invites him to hunt, v, 269
 hypocrisy of, v, 271
 Farámarz sent against, v, 274, 276
 defeated and put to death with all his kin, v, 277
 tribute of, question about, v, 265
 Farámarz makes a Zábulí king of, v, 277
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, ii, 258, 360, 361; vii, 330, 358; ix, 117

- Kádísí, Kádisiya, town on one of the canals west of the Euphrates and south of Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef), vi, 119, 330; ix, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78
 battle of, i, 12, 143; ix, 5, 67, 69
 date of, ix, 67
 canal of, ix, 69
 Rustam advances to, ix, 73
 Kaékasta (Urumiah *q.v.*), lake, iv, 137
 Káf, mythical Mount Alburz *q.v.*, ii, 83, 404; iv, 65, 149; viii, 66 and *note*
 Káfúr, king of Bídád, 149, iii, 191
 worsts the Íránians, iii, 244
 slain by Rustam, iii, 245
 Kahtán, desert of, i, 287
 Kahtán, the Arabic form of Joktan, the progenitor of the southern Arabs, vi, 65, 120
 Kai, meaning of, ii, 8
 Kaian, Kaiánian (*see* Kai), ii, 8, 9, 22, 404; iii, 5 *seq.*, 9, 14, 43, 67, 112, 147, 307, 318, 320, 328, 342; iv, 5 *seq.*, 24, 33, 35, 65, 110, 127, 150, 166, 175, 234, 260, 262, 269, 273, 279, 285, 286, 289, 293, 308, 319, 324; v, 7 *seq.*, 10, 47, 49, 52, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67 *seq.*, 73 *seq.*, 79, 86, 91, 97, 122, 168, 203, 210, 223, 253, 254, 282, 288, 289, 291, 311; vi, 9 *seq.*, 17, 34, 48, 55, 57, 59, 81, 112, 125, 141, 179, 180, 194, 199, 200, 202, 210, 223, 237 *note*; viii, 65, 216
 dynasty, i, 49, 373; ii, 7 *seq.*; iii, 5 *seq.*; iv, 5 *seq.*; v, 7 *seq.*; vi, 9 *seq.*
 genealogical table, ii, 3
 birth-mark, ii, 372
 stature, ii, 375
 saying, iv, 33
 Kaian, throne, viii, 214
 race, viii, 217
 crown, ix, 11, 105
 Kaiánúsh (Katáíún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91, 158
 v, 261
 referred to, i, 147, 165
 Purmáya and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158
 go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159
 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160
 Kai Árash, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; vi, 197, 210, 228; viii, 216
 Kai Armin, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23
 Kaid, Indian king, 159, 161, i, 55; vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 112
 identical with Mandanes (Dandamis), vi, 62
 consults Mihrán about his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*
 dreams of, interpreted by Mihrán, vi, 94, *seq.*
 Four Wonders of, 159, vi, 94, 97 and *note*, 99 *seq.*
 daughter, 159, vi, 94, 100, 102, 104
 described, vi, 100, 102, 104
 married to Sikandar, vi, 104
 reference in Sikandar's Will to, vi, 182
 cup, described, vi, 94, 100
 principle of, explained, vi, 109
 leech, vi, 94, 101
 prescribes for Sikandar, vi, 107
 sage, vi, 94, 101
 =Calanus, vi, 62
 Sikandar's encounter of wits with, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*
 explains the principle of the cup, vi, 109

- Kaid, sends his Four Wonders and other gifts to Sikandar, vi, 103
 revival of, in legend, vi, 256, 266
 prophecy of, vi, 256, 257, 267
 consulted by Ardshír Pápa-kán, vi, 266
 advice of, to Ardshír Pápa-kán, vi, 267, 273
- Kaidáfa (Cilicia), vi, 294, 297
- Kaidáfa (Kandake, Candace *q.v.*), 159, vi, 83, 121 *seq.*, 325
 obtains Sikandar's portrait, vi, 122
 praised by Kabtún to Sikandar, vi, 122
 receives a letter from Sikandar, vi, 123
 answers Sikandar's letter, vi, 123
 welcomes Kaidrúsh on his return from captivity, vi, 127
 receives Naitkún (Sikandar) graciously, vi, 128
 state of, described, vi, 128, 130, 133
 gives audiences to Naitkún (Sikandar), vi, 128 *seq.*
 recognises Sikandar, vi, 129 *seq.*
 hears Sikandar's embassy, vi, 129
 covenants of, with Sikandar, vi, 132, 138
 warns Sikandar against Tainúsh, vi, 133
 chides Tainúsh, vi, 135
 takes counsel with Sikandar about Tainúsh, vi, 135
 approves of Sikandar's scheme, vi, 137
 takes counsel with her nobles, vi, 139
 gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 140
 Sikandar's final message to, vi, 143
- Kaidrúsh (Kandaros, Candaules), son of Kaidáfa (Candace), vi, 134, 135
- Kaidrúsh, wife of, vi, 66
 taken with his wife, by Sikandar, vi, 125
 brought with his wife before Naitkún, vi, 126
 sentenced with his wife to death, vi, 126
 pardoned with his wife, vi, 126
 gratitude of, vi, 127
 returns to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
 presents Naitkún (Sikandar) to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
- Kaihan. *See* Kaid.
- Kai Káuś, son of Kai Kubád and Sháh, 143-147, 152, 153, i, 42, 338; ii, 3, 8 *seq.*, 23 *seq.*, 33 *seq.*, 54 *seq.*, 61 *seq.*, 109, 110, 127, 130, 233, 243 *seq.*, 264, 269 *seq.*, 273, 284, 286, 290, 296, 301, 310, 318, 319, 335, 347, 361, 364, 371, 372, 383, 401; iii, 7, 9, 13, 14, 20 *seq.*, 24, 30, 45, 51, 84, 85, 88, 90, 93, 96, 113, 145, 147, 166, 174, 236, 238, 239, 289, 307, 327; iv, 13, 61, 129, 135, 136, 162, 167 *seq.*, 185, 191, 199, 201, 203, 217, 218, 232 *seq.*, 254, 256 *seq.*, 269 *seq.*, 278, 287, 289, 290, 292, 295 *seq.*, 306, 310, 314, 321 *seq.*; v, 29, 30, 116, 173, 174, 190, 203, 207, 208, 210, 215, 216; vii, 74, 107, 115; viii, 22, 104, 168, 270, 341; ix, 25
- Reign of, 143, ii, 25 *seq.*
 Notes on, ii, 25 *seq.*, 79 *seq.*, 118, 188 *seq.*, 335
 visits Rustam, ii, 83
 tempted by divs, ii, 30 *seq.*, 82, 102 *seq.*
 goes to Mount Káf, ii, 83
 defeats Afrásiyáb and regains Írán, ii, 100
 makes Rustam paladin of paladins, ii, 101

- Kai Káuś, buildings of, on Mount Alburz, ii, 81, 101
 flying-machine of, ii, 103
 fall of, from the sky, ii, 104 :
 v, 174
 repentance of, ii, 105
 hears of Suhráb and summons his chiefs, ii, 136 *seq.*
 bids Tús hang Rustam and Gív, ii, 143
 apology of, to Rustam, ii, 147
 encampment of, described, ii, 153
 overthrown by Suhráb, ii, 160
 refuses to cure Suhráb, ii, 178
 attempts to console Rustam, ii, 181
 marries the future mother of Siyáwush, ii, 194
 receives Siyáwush at court, ii, 198
 bestows Kuhistán upon Siyáwush, ii, 199
 conduct of, in the case of Siyáwush and Súdába, ii, 200 *seq.*
 sends Siyáwush to fight Afrásiyáb, ii, 225
 rejects terms of peace and quarrels with Rustam, ii, 244 *seq.*
 hears of the defection of Siyáwush, ii, 258
 grief of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 337
 hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Írán, ii, 395
 receives Kai Khusrau, ii, 397
 rewards Gív, ii, 399
 provides for Farangís, ii, 399
 arbitrates between Tús and Gúdarz, ii, 403 *seq.*
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from the castle of Bahman, ii, 410
- Kai Káuś, requires Kai Khusrau to swear vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21
 welcomes Gív and hears his tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
 gives a feast, iv, 234
 deals with the captives, iv, 235
 proclaims the conquest of Túrán and Chín, iv, 236
 rewards Gív, iv, 236
 sends Gív back with letter to Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
 hears that Kai Khusrau is returning and goes with the nobles to welcome him, iv, 256
 receives gifts from, and hears the adventures of, Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
 gives a feast in honour of Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
 counsels a pilgrimage to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 258
 Kai Khusrau and, hear from Gúdarz of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264
 send for Garsíwaz and put him to the torture, iv, 265
 make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269
 go in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270
 prays that he may die, iv, 270
 obsequies of, iv, 271
 treasure of, called "The Bride" bestowed by Kai Khusrau on Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295
 favour shown by Luhrásp to the grandsons of, iv, 318, 321 *seq.*
 grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362

- Kai Káuś, Rustam's patent from, v, 203
- Kai Khusrau, son of Siyáwush and Farangis, Sháh, 146-154, 160, 1, 42, 369; ii, 3, 9, 25, 104, 189, 190, 334 *seq.*, 386 *seq.*; iii, 13 *seq.*, 47, 55, 57, 66, 106, 108, 111 *seq.*, 132, 134, 160, 173, 175, 186, 191, 197, 198, 202, 205, 211, 226, 228, 238 *seq.*, 249, 250, 271, 277, 285, 286, 289, 294 *seq.*, 326 *seq.*, 338, 353 *seq.*; iv, 7 *seq.*, 19, 21, 30, 31, 36, 56 *seq.*, 65, 66, 71, 72, 76 *seq.*, 90, 99, 115, 144 *seq.*, 152, 153, 237 *seq.*, 262, 267 *seq.*, 317 *seq.*, 319, 321; v, 10, 12, 21, 39, 173, 188, 203, 204, 208, 215, 284, 289; vi, 79, 177; vii, 120, 173, 359; viii, 148, 219, 270, 332, 392; ix, 25, 103
- fravashi of, ii, 82
- identical with Cyrus the Great in legend, ii, 9, 190
- prophecies respecting, ii, 310, 372, 390
- birth of, ii, 325 *seq.*
- account of youth of, ii, 328 *seq.*
- questioned by Afrásiyáb, ii, 332
- dwells at Siyáwushgird, ii, 333
- sent to Khutan, ii, 356
- Máchín, ii, 357 *note*
- described by Surúsh, ii, 363
- Gúdarz sends Gív to seek, ii, 364 *seq.*
- recalled, ii, 370
- found by Gív, ii, 370
- birth-mark of, ii, 372, iii, 49 *note*
- saves Pírán's life, ii, 387
- at the Jíhún, ii, 391 *seq.*
- arrives at Zam, ii, 394
- visits Gúdarz at Ispahán, ii, 399
- Kai Khusrau, tells his story to Kai Káuś, ii, 397
- praises Gív to Kai Káuś, ii, 398
- goes to Istakhr, ii, 399
- enthroned as Sháh, ii, 400, 411
- supported by Gúdarz and opposed by Tús, ii, 400 *seq.*
- letter of, to the defenders of the castle of Bahman, ii, 407
- establishes Fire-worship at the castle of Bahman, ii, 409
- pardons Tús, ii, 410
- Reign of, 147, iii, 7 *seq.*
- Notes on, iii, 7 *seq.*, 108, 191, 271, 285 *seq.*; iv, 7, 135 *seq.*
- last link with the Vedas, iii, 7
- longest in respect of subject matter in the poem, iii, 7
- divisions of, iii, 7
- episodes of, iii, 7
- warlike character of, iii, 8
- subject-matter of, iii, 8
- accession of, iii, 17
- goes on a hunting expedition, iii, 19
- to the temple of Ázar-gashasp, iii, 20
- swears to take vengeance on Afrásiyab, iii, 21
- prepares for war, iii, 23 *seq.*
- offers reward for the head of Paláshán, iii, 26
- crown of Tazháv, iii, 27
- slave of Tazháv, iii, 27
- head of Tazháv, iii, 28
- burning the barricade at the Kása rúd, iii, 28
- going on an embassy to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29
- warns Tús to avoid Kalát, iii, 39

Kai Khusrau, hears of the death of Farúd and of the defeat of the Íránians, iii, 84
 wrath of, with Tús, iii, 84
seq., iii
 writes to Fariburz, iii, 84
 disgraces Tús, iii, 86
 imprisons Tús, iii, 87
 pardons Tús and the Íránians, iii, 114
 hears of the peril of the Íránians on Mount Hamáwan and summons Rustam, iii, 142 *seq.*
 sends Rustam to succour the Íránians, iii, 145
 furthers the suit of Fariburz to Farangís, iii, 147
 hears of Rustam's victory, iii, 239
 disposes of the captives and spoil, iii, 240
 sends gifts to Rustam and the host, iii, 241
 goes to meet Rustam on his return in triumph, iii, 267
 gives a feast to the chiefs, iii, 268
 rewards Rustam, iii, 269
 holds a court and hears of the doings of the dív Akwán, iii, 273
 writes to summon Rustam, iii, 274
 goes to welcome Rustam on his return from slaying the dív Akwán, iii, 282
 rewards Rustam, iii, 283
 hears at a feast of the case of the Irmánians, iii, 289
 calls for volunteers, iii, 291
 sends Bízhan and Gurgín to Irmán, iii, 292
 comforts Gív for the loss of Bízhan, iii, 315, 318
 imprisons Gurgín, iii, 317
 promises Gív to consult the divining-cup about Bízhan, iii, 317

Kai Khusrau sends Gív to summon Rustam, iii, 319
 sends the host to meet Rustam, iii, 327
 welcomes Rustam, iii, 328
 jewelled tree of, iii, 329
 requests Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 330
 releases Gurgín at Rustam's request, iii, 333
 equips Rustam for his quest of Bízhan, iii, 333
 welcomes Rustam on his return, iii, 354
 rewards Rustam and his comrades, iii, 356
 holds converse with Bízhan, iii, 356
 gives gifts to Manízha, iii, 356
 hears that the Túránians are invading Írán, iv, 12
 summons his paladins, iv, 13
 host, iv, 14
 sends Rustam to Hindústán, iv, 14
 Luhrásp to the Aláns, iv, 14
 Ashkash to Khárazm, iv, 15
 Gúdarz to Túrán, iv, 15
 orders Gúdarz to negotiate with Pirán, iv, 15
 receives letter from Gúdarz, iv, 58
 rewards Hajír, the bearer, iv, 58
 prays for victory, iv, 58
 sends Hajír with answer, iv, 61
 leads a host to aid Gúdarz, iv, 62
 referred to, iv, 85
 presage of, that Pirán would be slain by Gúdarz, iv, 85, 88
 reaches Gúdarz, iv, 111, 126
 receives Gúdarz and the other champions, iv, 126
 Gurwí brought by Gív before, iv, 127

- Kai Khusrāu, laments over
 Pirān, iv, 127
 buries Pirān and the Túr-
 ánian champions, iv, 128
 puts Gurwí to death, iv, 129
 rewards the host, iv, 129
 gives Ispahán to Gúdarz,
 iv, 129
 pardons the Túránian host,
 iv, 131
 amulet of, iv, 133
 heals Gustaham, iv, 133
 summons reinforcements,
 iv, 134, 145
 Great War of, with Afrásiyáb,
 152, iv, 135 *seq.*
 exemption of, from death,
 iv, 138
 recalls the troops under
 Luhrásp, Rustam, and
 Ashkash, iv, 145
 stations Tús on his right
 with Káwa's standard, iv,
 146
 gives the right wing to Rus-
 tam, iv, 147
 left wing to Gúdarz, iv,
 147
 commands to various
 chiefs, iv, 148, 149
 hears of Afrásiyáb's passage
 of the Jíhún, iv, 157
 sends troops to the aid of
 Gustaham, son of Nau-
 dar, at Balkh, iv, 157
 Ashkash with a host to
 Zam, iv, 157
 marches to Khárazm, iv, 157
 surveys the seat of war and
 entrenches the host, iv,
 157
 Shída's embassy to, iv, 161
 sends Káran to welcome
 Shída, iv, 165
 proposes to fight in single
 combat, iv, 166
 rejects the Íránians' sug-
 gestions of a peace, iv,
 167
 accepts Shída's challenge,
 iv, 168, 169
- Kai Khusrāu, sends Káran with
 a reply to Shída, iv, 168
 arms to fight with Shída,
 iv, 171
 makes Ruhhám his stand-
 ard-bearer, iv, 171
 sends instructions to the
 host, iv, 171
 parley of, with Shída, iv,
 172
 accepts Shída's challenge
 to a wrestling-bout, iv,
 175
 gives Ruhhám charge of his
 steed, iv, 175
 wrestles and overthrows
 Shída, iv, 175
 instructs Ruhhám to bury
 Shída, iv, 176
 spares the life of Shída's
 interpreter and bids him
 return to Afrásiyáb with
 tidings, iv, 176
 prays for vengeance on, and
 attacks, Afrásiyáb, iv, 178
 bids Shammákh attack, iv,
 180
 attacks with Rustam from
 the centre, iv, 180
 fights with Ustukílá, Ílá and
 Burzúyalá, iv, 182
 returns to camp, iv, 183
 hears of Afrásiyáb's retreat,
 iv, 184
 offers praise to God, iv, 184
 pursues Afrásiyáb, iv, 185
seq.
 marches to Sughd, iv, 188
 hears tidings of Afrásiyáb,
 iv, 188
 sends Gustaham, son of
 Naudar, to Chách, iv, 188
 Rustam to encounter
 Tawurg, iv, 188
 marches from Sughd and
 reduces the Turkman
 strongholds, iv, 189
 to the Gulzaryún, iv, 189
 commands the centre, iv,
 191
 prays for victory, iv, 191

- Kai Khusrau, hears of the defeat of Kurákhán by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 193
 hears of Rustam's defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
 warns Rustam to beware of Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
 plunders the camp of, and pursues, Afrásiyáb, iv, 195
 besieges Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
 converses with Rustam, iv, 198, 199, 222
 receives Jahn in audience, iv, 200
 declines Afrásiyáb's proposals for peace, iv, 207
 with Rustam, Gustaham son of Naudar, and Gúdarz, assails Gang-bihisht on all sides, iv, 208 *seq.*
 prays for victory, iv, 208
 takes Gang-bihisht by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*
 searches vainly for Afrásiyáb, iv, 212
 gives the spoil of Gang-bihisht to the troops, iv, 217
 grants quarter to the Turkmans and assumes the government of Túrán, iv, 217
 dwells for a while at Gang-bihisht, iv, 218
 leaves Gúdarz and Farhád at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
 marches against Afrásiyáb, iv, 220
 rejects Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 223
 fight a general engagement against Afrásiyáb, iv, 223, 226
 entrenches his troops and prepares with Tús and Rustam for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
- Kai Khusrau, repulses Afrásiyáb's night-attack, iv, 225
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iv, 227
 receives the submission of Afrásiyáb's army, iv, 228
 gives a feast, iv, 228
 offers praise to God, iv, 228
 returns to Gang-bihisht, iv, 228
 accepts the submission of the Khán and Faghfúr, iv, 229
 resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231
 plan of, opposed by the host, iv, 231
 supported by Rustam, iv, 231
 agreed to by the host, iv, 232
 sends Gív with Afrásiyáb's captive kindred to Kai Káuś, iv, 232 *seq.*
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, in command at Gang-bihisht and marches to Chín, iv, 238
 demands facilities from the Khán, the Faghfúr, and the king of Makrán, iv, 238
 marches through Khutan, iv, 240
 welcomed by the Faghfúr and the Khán of Chín, iv, 240
 stays three months in Chín, iv, 241
 leaves Rustam in Chín and marches to Makrán, iv, 241
 sends an embassy to the king of Makrán, iv, 241
 gives honourable burial to the king of Makrán, iv, 243
 stops the pillage of Makrán, iv, 243
 stays a year in Makrán, iv, 244
 makes ready a fleet, iv, 244

- Kai Khusrau, leaves Ashkash as governor and marches to the desert, iv, 244
 voyage of, iv, 245
 wonders of, iv, 245
 lands, iv, 246
 appoints Gív governor, iv, 246
 receives the submission of the chiefs, iv, 247
 seeks for tidings of Gang-dizh and of Afrásiyáb, iv, 247
 marches to Gang-dizh, iv, 247
 forbids his troops to injure Gang-dizh, iv, 247
 enters Gang-dizh, iv, 248
 searches for Afrásiyáb, iv, 248
 remains a year at Gang-dizh, iv, 249
 urged by his paladins to return to Írán, iv, 249
 appoints a governor for Gang-dizh, iv, 249
 distributes treasures at Gang-dizh, iv, 250
 marches seaward from Gang-dizh, iv, 250
 welcomed by Gív, iv, 250
 crosses the sea to Makrán, iv, 251
 welcomed in Makrán by Ashkash and the chiefs, iv, 251
 appoints a governor for Makrán, iv, 251
 marches to Chín, iv, 251
 welcomed by Rustam, iv, 251
 confirms the Faghfúr and Khán in the possession of Máchín and Chín, iv, 252
 goes with Rustam to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252
 rewards Rustam and Gív, iv, 252
 welcomed by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 252
 goes to Gang-bihisht, iv, 253
- Kai Khusrau, prays for satisfaction on Afrásiyáb, iv, 253
 dwells for a year in Gang-bihisht, iv, 254
 desires to return to Kai Káuś, iv, 254
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, as viceroy, iv, 254
 carries off treasure from Chín and Makrán, iv, 254
 arrives at Chách, iv, 255
 Sughd, iv, 255
 met by Khúzan and Talímán, iv, 255
 makes offerings to the Firc-temple at Bukhárá, iv, 255
 crosses the Jíhún, iv, 255
 arrives at Balkh, iv, 255
 welcomed everywhere by the people, iv, 255
 goes by Tálikán, the Marvrúd, Nishápúr, and Dámaghán to Rai, iv, 255
 stays two weeks at Rai, iv, 256
 announces his approach to Kai Káuś, iv, 256
 goes to Baghdád and thence to Párs, iv, 256
 reception of, by Kai Káuś, iv, 256
 presents gifts, and tells his adventures, to Kai Káuś, iv, 257
 has a feast given in his honour by Kai Káuś, iv, 257
 rewards the troops, iv, 258
 takes counsel with Kai Káuś concerning Afrásiyáb, iv, 258
 goes with Kai Káuś on a pilgrimage to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 258
 Kai Káuś and, hear from Gúdarz of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264

- Kai Khusrau, and Kai Káuś, send
for Garsiwaz, and put him
to the torture, iv, 265
slays Afrásiyáb, iv, 268
Garsiwaz, iv, 269
Kai Káuś and, make thanks-
giving before Ázargash-
asp, iv, 269
treasurer of, makes gifts to
Ázargashasp, iv, 269
sends letters announcing
his triumph to all the
chiefs, iv, 270
holds festival and bestows
treasure, iv, 270
goes with Kai Káuś in state
to the temple of Ázar-
gashasp, iv, 270
performs the obsequies of
Kai Káuś, iv, 271
assumes the crown as sole
Sháh, iv, 272
becomes world-weary, iv,
272
closes his court and with-
draws to his oratory, iv
274
prays that he may be taken
from the world, iv, 274
passes a week in prayer, iv,
274, 279
remonstrated with by the
nobles, iv, 275, 279
replies to the nobles, iv, 276
279
passes five weeks in prayer,
iv, 280
hears from Surúsh that his
prayer is granted, iv,
280
bidden to appoint Luhrásp
as his successor, iv, 281
puts off his royal robes, iv,
281
receives Zál, Rustam, and
others in audience, iv, 283
seq.
pardons Zál, iv, 291
orders an assembly to be
held on the plain, iv,
291
- Kai Khusrau, treasure of, dis-
positional of, iv, 294
found by Sikandar, 160,
vi, 176
charge of, to Gúdarz, iv, 294
gifts of, to Gív, Zál, and
Rustam, iv, 295
Gustaham, iv, 295
Gúdarz, iv, 295
Fariburz, iv, 295
Bízhan, iv, 295
Zál's companions, iv, 297
confirms Rustam in pos-
session of Nimrúz, iv, 297;
v, 203
bestows Kum and Ispahán
on Gív, iv, 298
confirms the charge of
Káwa's flag, and gives
Khurásán, to Tús, iv, 300
summons and crowns Luh-
rásp, iv, 300
Zál's protest to, against
Luhrásp's succession to,
iv, 301
justifies his choice of Luh-
rásp, iv, 301
takes leave of the Íránians,
iv, 303
women of, lament for him,
iv, 304
commends his women to the
honour of Luhrásp, iv, 305
dismisses the Íránians, iv,
305
counsels Luhrásp, iv, 305
bids Luhrásp farewell, iv,
306
sets forth on his pilgrimage
with some of his chiefs,
iv, 306
Indian parallel, iv, 138
again appealed to by the
Íránians, iv, 306
reply of, iv, 307
bids his chiefs return, iv, 307
rests with his remaining
chiefs by a spring, iv, 307
prepares for his passing, iv,
308
farewells his chiefs, iv, 308

- Kai Khusrâu, warns his chiefs of the coming of the snow, iv, 308
disappears, iv, 308
- Kai Kubád, Sháh and founder of the Kaiánian dynasty, 142, i, 42, 373, 374; ii, 3, 8, 12, 14, 16, 18 *seq.*, 26, 33, 34, 36, 37, 87, 143, 144, 249, 260, 270, 274, 327, 336, 363, 390, 394; iii, 34, 49, 51, 57, 144; iv, 35, 70, 149, 168, 201, 283, 298, 302; v, 174, 180, 188, 189, 202, 205, 210, 221, 272; vi, 197, 210; vii, 37, 74, 115, 120, 173; viii, 89, 170, 260, 270, 310, 332; ix, 25
brought by Rustam from Mount Alburz, i, 382 *seq.*
tells his dream to Rustam, i, 385
accepted by Zál and the other chiefs as Sháh, i, 387
Reign of, 142, ii, 11
Note on, ii, 11
origin of, ii, 11 and *note*
makes peace with Afrá-siyáb, ii, 20
gifts of, to Zál and Rustam, ii, 21
descendants of, commanded by Diláfrúz, stationed on Kai Khusrâu's left hand, iv, 147
- Kai Manush, vi, 200
- Kai Pashín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; iv, 302
- Kais, Arab chief, entertains Khusrâu Parwíz, viii, 250
- Kaiser Friedrich Museum, viii, 192
- Kait. *See* Kaid.
- Kai Ugí, vi, 200
- Kaiwán, Íránian statistician, vii, 11
- Kaiwán, calculates the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
- Kákula, Túránian hero, iv, 188
reinforces Afrá-siyáb, iv, 188
- Kákwi (*cf.* Karkwi), grandson of Zahhák, 141, i, 226
attacks the Íránians, i, 225
defeated and slain by Minú-chihr, i, 227
- Kaláhúr, warrior of Mázandarán, ii, 67
tries a handgrip with Rustam, ii, 67
- Kalát, stronghold, iii, 39; ix, 91
home of Farúd, iii, 39
Kai Khusrâu bids Tús to avoid, iii, 39
Tús marches to, iii, 40
captured by the Íránians, iii, 66
- Kalát-i-Nádírí, stronghold, ii, 189; iii, 14
described, iii, 14
- Kalé (Nereis), daughter of Alexander in the Pseudo-Cal-listhenes, vi, 77
Andreas, the cook, and, legend of, vi, 77
- Kalíla and Dimna, Book of, 169.
See Fables of Bidpai.
- Káliniyús (Nicephorium, Callinicus, Warígh *q.v.*, Rakka), city situated at the junction of the Belikh and the Euphrates, 167, viii, 188
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 218, 257
- Kalú, mountain in Túrán, ii, 328¹
Pírán sends Kai Khusrâu to be brought up on, ii, 328
goes to see Kai Khusrâu at, ii, 329
- Kálús, Rúman chief, iv, 356
sent as envoy to Ilyás, iv, 352, 358
Luhrásp, iv, 357
entertained by Luhrásp, iv, 357

¹ Misprinted "Kalar"

- Kálús, describes Gushtásp to Luhrásp, iv, 358
dismissed with honour, iv, 359
- Kámús, Túránian hero, 148, 149, iii, 107, 151, 152, 161, 162, 164 *seq.*, 168 *seq.*, 172, 176, 178, 181 *seq.*, 200, 207, 209, 213, 216, 224, 229, 232, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 269; iv, 297; v, 167, 199, 220
Story of, of Kashán, 148, iii, 108 *seq.*
Firdausí on, iii, 269
comes to the aid of Pírán, iii, 151
plan of campaign of, adopted, iii, 162
leads the attack, iii, 168
hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
Rustam described by Pírán to, iii, 183
challenges Rustam, iii, 187
parleys with Rustam, iii, 188
fights, and is taken prisoner by, Rustam, iii, 189
end of, iii, 190
- Kanábad, mountain, part of the Binalúd range north of Nishápúr in Khurásán.
The name may be preserved in the modern Gunabad, a village to the north of that range, iv, 23, 37, 47, 48, 51, 55, 56, 76, 88, 112
occupied by Pírán, iv, 22
- Kand. *See* Kaid.
- Kandá Gashasp, Íránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 163
speech of, viii, 166
- Kandahár, city in southern Afghánistán, i, 286; iv, 65; v, 233 *note*
- Kandake (Candace *q.v.*, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), vi, 66
- Kandaros. *See* Kaidrúsh.
- Kandaules. *See* Kaidrúsh.
- Kand-i-Shápúr. *See* Gund-i-Shápúr.
- Kangha (Khárazm *q.v.*), country, ii, 189, 190
- Kangdez (Gang-dizh *q.v.*), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
- Kanír. *See* Tainúsh.
- Kannúj (Kanauj), city near the west bank of the Ganges in the division of Agra in the United Provinces of British India, i, 261, 357; iii, 35; iv, 278, 283, 284; v, 257; vi, 64, 207, 352; vii, 115, 119, 123, 128, 129, 134, 137, 385, 386, 390, 393, 425
conquest of, by Mahmúd, i, 99, 100 and *note*. 113
Sikandar reaches, vi, 110
river of, vii, 112 and *note*, 390
monarch of=Shangul, vii, 140
Bahráam Gúr appointed heir to, vii, 143
- Karabagh (Arrán), district north of the Aras, i, 9
seat of primitive Fire-worship, i, 56
- Karakh-Maishán, town built on the lower Tigris by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 199, 291 *note*
- Káran, son of Káwa, Íránian hero and the mythical progenitor of a family famous in Ashkánian times, 141, i, 207, 211, 214 *seq.*, 344, 345, 365; ii, 11 *seq.*, 18, 22, 119; iii, 9; iv, 146; vi, 194; viii, 168; ix, 85
takes the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 *seq.*
reports his success to Minú-chihr, i, 225
commands Naudar's host, i, 345
tells of his encounter with Afrásiyáb, i, 350
counsels Naudar, i, 353

- Káran, son of Káwa, with Shidúsh and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354
 defeats and slays Barmán, i, 354
 defeats Wisa, i, 357
 meets and defeats Shamásás, i, 361
 bears to Zav the news of his election as Sháh, i, 370
 re-appearance of, in legend, iv, 135, 146
 made champion of the host, iv, 149
 sent by Kai Khusrau to welcome Shída, iv, 165
 bears Kai Khusrau's answer to Shída, iv, 168
 opposes and defeats Jahn, iv, 178
 family, of, vii, 171
 glorification of, vii, 170
 origin of, vii, 185
 rivalry of, with Mihrán, vii, 185
- Káran, mountain, the name given from the above hero to part of the Alburz range which lies between Mount Damiwand and Ámul and formed his principality, and that of his descendants as late as and after the Muhammadan conquest, v, 112
- Káran, Iránian chief, *temp.* Yazdagird, son of Shápúr and Bahrám Gúr, vi, 394; vii, 86, 90
- Káran, mountain-chief, viii, 189
- Karap (Karpan), v, 17
 meaning of, v, 14
- Kara su, river, v, 14
- Káraz, viii, 252 and *note*.
- Kargasárs, a wild tribe, i, 253
 and *note*, 277, 279, 286, 290, 294, 298, 319, 340; ii, 98; iii, 318
- Karímán, Iránian hero and great-grandfather of Rustam, ii, 4, 125 and *note*, v, 202
- Káristán, viii, 188
- Karkh, suburb of Baghdád, iv, 147; ix, 85
 Arab defeat at, ix, 85
- Karkh=Khurram Ábád (?), vi, 327
- Karkwí (*cf.* Kákwi), a descendant of Zakhák, i, 290
 attacks Sám, i, 290
 slain by Sám, i, 291
- Karmá'íl and Irmá'íl, Zakhák's cooks, 140
 device of, i, 146
- Kárnámak - i - Ardshír - i - Pápakán, Pahlaví text, vi, 14 *note*, 61, 198, 301, 325; vii, 380
 account of, vi, 195
 resembles Yátkár-i-Zarírán, vi, 196
 purport of, vi, 196
 portion of Sháhnáma corresponding with, vi, 196
 compared with, vi, 200
seq., 205 *seq.*, 255 *seq.*
 Firdausí and, vi, 196
 polo episode in, vi, 196
- Karnaprívaram is, vi, 80
- Karpan (Karap *q.v.*), v, 14
- Kársán, viii, 188, 252
 gates of, shut against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252
 walls of, fall down, viii, 253
 Khusrau Parwíz stays at, viii, 253
- Karshipta, mythical bird, i, 235
- Karsiyún, Túránian hero, iv, 10
- Kárun, mountain. *See* Káran.
- Kárún, river joining the Shat al Arab at its delta, vi, 199
note
 dam on, vi, 295
- Kása rúd (Kashaf *q.v.*), river, 147, iii, 28, 68, 69, 71, 72, 82, 105; iv, 90
 barricade at the, iii, 29
 burnt by Giv, iii, 73

- Kashaf (Kása rúd *q.v.*), river in north-eastern Khurásán, i, 235, 296
 story of the dragon of, i, 296 *seq.*
- Kashán (Kásán, town in Farghána, north of the Jaxartes ?), iii, 108, 151, 170, 177, 180, 181, 188, 192, 204, 207, 224, 237, 242; iv, 189; v, 39; vii, 331, 334
 Kámús of, Story of, 148, iii 108 *seq.*
 in Túrán, iii, 108
 in Írán, iii, 109
 man of = Kámús, iii, 189
- Kashán, city between Ispahán and Kum, iii, 109
- Kashmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Kashmígán, son of Farrukhzád, ix, 92
- Kashmíhan, place north-east of Marv, vii, 89
 Bahrám Gúr's victory at, vii, 90
 Súfarai's victory at, vii, 170 *note*, 176
- Kashmír, country, i, 113; ii, 271, 338; iii, 35, 152, 237, 251; iv, 14, 60, 65; v, 263; vii, 395, 396, 421
 king of, vi, 31
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Kastantaniya (Constantinople), viii, 265
- Kastarít. *See* Kyaxares.
- Kaswín. *See* Kazwín.
- Kát (Káth), one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Gurganj being the other) situated on the right bank of the Oxus, iii, 152
- Katáyún (Náhíd), daughter of Cæsar, wife of Gushtásp, and mother of Asfandiyár, 154, 156, ii, 3; iv, 348; v, 11, 253
 referred to, i, 55; v, 205, 249, 252
- Katáyún, eldest daughter of Cæsar, iv, 348
 Story of, 154, iv, 329. *seq.*
 marriage of, iv, 329 *seq.*
 dreams of Gushtásp, iv, 329
 sees and chooses Gushtásp for her husband, iv, 330
 marries Gushtásp, iv, 331
 sells a jewel, iv, 332
 discovers that Gushtásp is of royal race, iv, 340
 persuades Gushtásp to go to the Sports on Cæsar's riding-ground, iv, 349
 Cæsar reproached by Gushtásp for his unkindness to, iv, 350
 reconciled to Cæsar, iv, 351
 referred to, iv, 358
 receives gifts from Cæsar, iv, 363
 goes to Írán with Gushtásp, iv, 364
 sons of, v, 32
 counsels Asfandiyár, v, 168, 175
 ancestry of, v, 205
 Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249
 laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252
 consoled by Bishútan, v, 255
- Katíb, Arab chief, vi, 21, 65, 120
- Katmára, Íránian hero, iv, 92
 put in command of the right wing, iv, 92
- Káuś, Sháh. *See* Kai Káuś.
 brand-mark of, iii, 291
- Káuś, son of Sháh Kubád, vii, 316
- Kavárazem (Gurazm *q.v.*), v, 12
- Kavi (Kai), ii, 8
 Usa, ii, 25
- Kavi (Kavíg), v, 14
- Kavíg (Kavi), v, 17
 meaning of, v, 14
- Kavi Husravah (Kai Khusrav *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
- Kávya Ushaná (Kai Káuś, *q.v.*), ii, 25
- Kávyan (Kaian), ii, 8

Káwa, the smith, 140, i, 155 *seq.*, 207, 214; iv, 165, 178; vii, 185; viii, 72; ix, 30
 Zahhák and, Story of, 140, i, 154 *seq.*
 revolts and goes to Faridún, i, 157
 leads Faridún's van, i, 160
 flag of, i, 143, 160, 211, 217, 218, 237, 332; ii, 12, 227, 341, 349, 354, 400, 402, 405, 406, 410; iii, 25, 38, 39, 48, 84, 85, 116, 121, 126, 129, 135 *seq.*, 149, 161; iv, 24, 25, 34, 55, 59, 92, 112, 146, 180, 226, 243, 282, 292, 359; vi, 347; vii, 250; viii, 385; ix, 30, 67
 origin of, i, 157
 Bizhan's prowess with, iii, 93
 half of, taken by Pírán, iii, 94
 staff of, cloven by Púlád-wand, iii, 258
 Tús confirmed in charge of, by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
 rescued by Girámí, v, 59, 69
 Káwian, standard, i, 211
 Kázirún, town west of Shíráz, vi, 199
 Kazwín, city north-west of Tih-rán, v, 30
 Kerátor. *See* Tainúsh.
 Keresásp, Keresáspa, Íránian hero, i, 234, 235, 373; ii, 4
 account of, in the Zanda-vasta, i, 172
 later development of, i, 174
 Keresavasda (Garšiwaz *q.v.*), ii, 180; iv, 137
 Khalaj (Kharlíkh), a Turkish tribe dwelling north of the Jaxartes and east of Táshkand, vii, 92
 Khálid, famous Arab general
temp. Muhammad, v, 12
 begins hostilities against Persian Empire, ix, 66

Khálid, recalled to lead Syrian campaign, iv, 66
 Khallukh (*cf.* Khalaj), iv, 10, 156; v, 42, 44, 55, 61, 74, 90, 107, 112, 157, 242, 255
 Khán of Chín, the, *temp.* Kai Káuś, ii, 383
temp. Kai Khusrau, 148, 149, iii, 108, 160 *seq.*, 164 *seq.*, 172, 175 *seq.*, 181, 184, 187, 190 *seq.*, 196, 198 *seq.*, 205, 207 *seq.*, 215, 217, 221, 222, 226 *seq.*, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 320; iv, 60, 135, 238 *seq.*; v, 199, 220
 Khán of Chín = Arjásp, v, 47, 51, 72
temp. Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35
temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165, vii, 49, 91, 93, 97, 101, 111
 invades Írán, vii, 84
 responds graciously to the Íránians' embassy, vii, 88
 gives himself up to pleasure at Marv, vii, 88
 fate of, in war with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5, 90
 crown of, placed in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
 Khúshnawáz, son of, vii, 105
temp. Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 328 *seq.*; viii, 43, 52, 87, 89, 97 *seq.*
 daughter of, married to Núshírwán, 168, vii, 213, 357
 historically ruler of the Turks, vii, 317
 relations of, with Núshírwán, vii, 88
 the Haitálans, vii, 317, 328 *seq.*
 embassy of, to Núshírwán, vii, 329
 hears of the destruction of his embassy by the Haitálans, vii, 330

- Khán of Chín, leads forth his troops, vii, 330
 defeats the Haitálans, vii, 332
 Núshírwán takes counsel about, vii, 333, 334
 descent of, from Afrásiyáb and Arjásp, vii, 334.
 Núshírwán writes to, vii, 337
 purposes to invade frán, vii, 337
 hears of Núshírwán's advance, vii, 338
 takes counsel, vii, 338
 sends embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 339
 hears his envoy's account of Núshírwán, vii, 344
 offers to make affinity with Núshírwán, vii, 345
 attempts to outwit Núshírwán, vii, 351
 gives audience to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 351
 invites Míhrán Sitád to choose a wife for Núshírwán, vii, 352
 consults the astrologers, vii, 354
 entrusts his daughter to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 354
 gives presents to Míhrán Sitád, vii, 356
 parts with his daughter at the Jíhún, vii, 356
 daughter of, 168
 described, vii, 352, 357
 evacuates territory, vii, 358
 Khán of Chín (*see too* Parmúda), *temp*, Hurmuzd, Khusrau Parwíz, and Yazdagird, 171, 173, viii, 141 *seq.*, 190, 191, 204, 215, 220, 263 *seq.*, 306, 316 *seq.*, 342 *seq.*, 346 *seq.*, 351, 352, 356, 357, 363; ix, 87, 102
 supposed war of, with Hurmuzd, viii, 72
- Khán of Chín, marriage of daughter of, with Núshírwán referred to, viii, 72
 letter of, viii, 77
 dismissed by Hurmuzd with gifts, viii, 152
 refuses advances of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 153
 becomes friends with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 172
 brother of, 173, viii, 190, 191
 reports flight of Gurdya, viii, 351
 ordered to go in pursuit, viii, 351
 parley of, with Gurdya, viii, 352
 daughter of, viii, 190
 killed by lion-ape, 173, viii, 322, 324
 queen of, viii, 190
 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324
 disgraced, viii, 344
 welcomes Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 316
 swears friendship with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 317
 dominated by Makátúra, viii, 317
 advised by Bahrám Chúbína to slight Makátúra, viii, 318
 views fight between Bahrám Chúbína and Makátúra, viii, 320
 sends gifts to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 321
 refuses to give up Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 329
 distrust Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 334
 impress of seal of, obtained by Kharrád, viii, 338
 burns Kulún's kindred, viii, 334
 seeks in vain for Kharrád, viii, 344
 mourns for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 344

- Khán of Chín, brother of, 173
 = Bízhan, ix, 97
- Khánagí, Rúman noble, viii, 375, 378
 leads Cæsar's embassy to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 374
 Khusrau Parwíz' gifts to, viii, 382
 returns to Rúm, viii, 382
- Khán-i-Irmán (Arman *q.v.*), iii, 290
- Khanjast (Chijast, Urumiah), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136, 264; viii, 282
- Khár (Khuvár) of Rai, district and town (now Aradún), so called to distinguish it from a town of the same name in Párs, situated south-east of Tihrán, i, 308, 374, 381
- Khárazm (Khiva), country, ii, 189, 190; iv, 11, 12, 15, 60, 61, 72, 157, 173, 186, 287; vi, 72; vii, 238, 359
- Kharazmians, people, ii, 190; vi, 72
- Kharijites, Muhammadan sect, i, 13
- Kharrád, Íránian hero, i, 365; ii, 11, 22, 33, 73, 340; iii, 115, 127, 139, 211, 273, 289; iv, 15
- Kharrád, nonce name assumed by Asfandiyár, v, 146, 149
- Kharrád, *temp.* Ardshír Pápakán, Íránian warrior, 161, vi, 284
 takes Ardawán prisoner, vi, 228
temp. Bahrám Gúr, Íránian chief, vii, 85
temp. Kubád son of Pírúz, archimage, vii, 207
temp. Núshírwán=(?) the above, vii, 251
- Kharrád, sacred Fire, vi, 212 and note, 226, 391
- Kharrád. bower of, vii, 83
- Kharrád, son of Barzín (Hurmuzd Garábzín or Galábzín), 171-173, viii, 74, 76, 158 *seq.*, 205, 225, 257 *seq.*, 269, 270, 331 *seq.*, 381; ix, 4, 11, 12, 24
 sent by Hurmuzd as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110
 beguiles Sáwa and flees, viii, 111
 flight of, reported to Sáwa, viii, 112
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 121
 seeks, refuge, viii, 123
 counts Íránian slain, viii, 127
 blames and counsels Bahrám Chúbína for his behaviour to Parmúda, viii, 144, 146
 questions Bahrám Chúbína on his adventure with the onager, viii, 158
 flees from Balkh with arch-scribe, viii, 159
 makes report of Bahrám Chúbína to Hurmuzd, viii, 160
 real name of, viii, 190
 waits on Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252
 speech of, to Cæsar, viii, 259, 275
 masters Cæsar's talismans, viii, 274, 275
 Cæsar's gift to, viii, 278
 praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
 made chief minister, viii, 314
 speech of, to Khán, viii, 332
 attempts to prejudice Bahrám Chúbína to the Khán, viii, 333
 intrigues against Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 334 *seq.*
 cures daughter of queen of Chín, viii, 336
 incites Kulún to kill Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 337
 asks boon of queen of Chín, viii, 338

- Kharrád, returns to Írán and is rewarded, viii, 345
 reads out Cæsar's letter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 376
 end of, ix, 4
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9
 Ashtád and, parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12
 report to Shírwí, ix, 27
 Kharrád, Íránian general, defeats Khazars, viii, 96
 Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, ix, 102
 Khashásh, Túránian hero, v, 47
 made leader of the van, v, 46
 Khatá (Cathay), northern China, ii, 357
 Khatlán (Khuttal), a general name for the non-Muhammadan regions to the north and east of Khurásán (=Haitál), more specifically a district on the right bank of the upper Oxus west of, or forming part of, Badakhshán, iii, 218, 228; iv, 65; vii, 94, 331, 359
 Khátún, consort of the Khán of Chín, vii, 5
 fate of, in war with Bahráw Gúr, vii, 5
 Kháwar, the West or Khurásán (?), perhaps=Khár *q.v.*, iv, 147, 148. *Cf.* Káran (mountain).
 Khazar, Khazars, region and people north of the Caucasus, i, 17; ii, 285; iv, 71, 316, 352 *seq.*, 358, 361; vii, 83, 214, 224; viii, 94, 377, 379
 invasion of, viii, 72, 93
 defeated, viii, 96
 Khazarwán, Túránian hero, 142
 Shamásás and, invade Zábulistán, i, 345, 358
 Khazarwán parleyed with by Mihráb to gain time, i, 358
 slain by Zál, i, 360; ii, 18
 Khazarwán, *temp.* Bahráw Gúr, king of Gílán, vii, 85
 takes the Khán prisoner, vii, 90
 Khazarwán, Íránian noble, *temp.* Khusrau Parwíz, speech of, viii, 241
 Khazrá, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
 Khiláfat, the, i, 12 *seq.*
 Khil'at, robe of honour, i, 82
 Khír, place on the south-western shore of Lake Niris in Párs, vi, 198
 Khisr (Al Khidr, *q.v.*), chief and prophet, vi, 159
 goes with Sikandar to the Gloom, vi, 159
 parts company with Sikandar, vi, 160
 finds the Fount of Life, vi, 160
 Khiva (Kharazm), country, ii, 190
 Khorasan. *See* Khurásán.
 Khshathró-saoka (Gang-dizh ?), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
 Khudai-náma (Bástán-Náma), i, 66; v, 24
 Khurásán, province in north-eastern Írán, 176, ii, 399; iv, 148, 203; v, 28, 77; vi, 242, 301; vii, 100, 214, 224, 237, 335; viii, 78, 94, 241, 313, 355, 369; ix, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
 Narsí made ruler of, vii, 99
 governor of, viii, 75
 prince of, viii, 173
 Máhwí becomes master of, ix, 114
 Khurásán, chieftain, viii, 241
 speech of, viii, 240
 Khurásání. *See* Mákh.
 Khurdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328

- Khurdád, month and day, i, 88,
159; vii, 112, 225, 351;
viii, 25, 173
- Khurm, seat of an oracle, vi, 82
oracle of, consulted, vi, 184
- Khurra-i-Ardshír. *See* Ardshír
Khurra.
- Khurram Ábád (Karkh?), city,
vi, 327, 357 and *note*
- Khurshíd, genius and day, i, 88;
v, 92 *note*
- Khurshíd, Íránian chief, viii,
270, 296
- Khúshnawáz, ruler of the Haitá-
lians, 166, vii, 194, 198,
359; viii, 75, 168, 242,
245, 297
- Pírúz advances against, vii,
104
writes to Pírúz, vii, 165
appeals to Bahrám Gúr's
treaty, vii, 166
prayer of, to God, vii, 167
digs a trench, vii, 67
defeats Pírúz by a feint, vii,
168
correspondence of, with
Súfarai, vii, 174 *seq.*
defeated by Súfarai, vii,
177
takes refuge in Kuhandizh,
vii, 177
sues for peace, vii, 178
releases Kubád, Ardshír, and
other captives, and gives
up the spoil, vii, 180
- Khusrau, Sháh. *See* Kai Khus-
rau.
- Khusrau, Íránian noble, 163,
164, vi, 408
elected Sháh in succession
to Yazdagird son of Shá-
púr, vi, 395; vii, 11
proposes that Bahrám Gúr
shall begin the ordeal, vi,
409
does homage to Bahrám Gúr,
vi, 410
honoured by Bahrám Gúr,
vii, 10
- Khusrau, father of Khazarwán,
viii, 241, 296 (?)
- Khusrau Parwíz, son of Hur-
muzd, Sháh, 171-175, v,
294, 306 *note*; vi, 3; viii,
71, 74, 170, 173, 174, 181,
182, 191 *seq.*, 216, 304,
306, 316, 334, 335, 342,
358, 367 *seq.*, 395 *note*,
413 *note*; ix, 4 *seq.*, 11,
12, 25, 26 *note*, 30, 31, 33
seq., 38 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*
horse of, story of, viii, 91
Hurmuzd plots to kill, viii,
174
flees, viii, 175
adherents gather round,
viii, 175
swear fealty to, viii, 176
goes to Baghdád, viii, 184
visits Hurmuzd in prison,
viii, 185, 198, 230
extensive historical con-
quests of, viii, 187
materials for reign of, in
Sháhnáma, viii, 187
flight of, historical, from
Ctesiphon, viii, 188
affects Christianity in exile,
viii, 188
helped on terms by Emperor
Maurice, viii, 188
historical campaign of,
against Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 189
visits of, to Fire-temple at
Shíz, viii, 190, 283, 307,
312
Nu'man bin Munzír exe-
cuted by, viii, 190
triumphal arch of, viii,
192
Assurbanipal and, reigns of,
compared, viii, 193
fall of, historical account of,
viii, 193 *seq.*
attempts of Heraclius to
make peace with, viii, 194,
195
treatment of defeated gen-
erals by, viii, 194

- Khusrau Parwíz, prediction concerning, viii, 194
 Reign of, 196, viii, 186 *seq.*
 Note on, viii, 186 *seq.*
 Hurmuzd's requests to, viii, 199
 spies' report of Bahrám Chúbína to, viii, 201
 takes counsel, viii, 202
 marches to meet Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 203
 interview of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 204 *seq.*
 attacked by Turk and saved by Gustaham, viii, 220
 dissuaded from making a night-attack, viii, 224
 troops of, tampered with by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 226
 sends away his baggage, viii, 228
 combat of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 228, 229
 retreats to, and holds, the bridge of Nahrawán, viii, 228
 worsts Yalán-sína, viii, 229
 flees to Taisafún, viii, 229
 counselled by Hurmuzd, viii, 230
 prepares to flee, viii, 231
 takes refuge in a shrine, viii, 233
 arrives at Bábil, viii, 249
 entertained by Kais, viii, 250
 Mihrán Sitád, viii, 251
 town of Kársán and, viii, 252
 interview of, with Hermit, viii, 254
 warned against Gustaham, viii, 255, 256
 welcomed by Cæsar, viii, 257
 takes up his abode at Warígh, viii, 257
 instructs his embassy to Cæsar, viii, 257
 Cæsar offers daughter to, viii, 266
- Khusrau Parwíz, accepts Cæsar's offer, viii, 269, 270
 welcomes Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 280
 marches to Dúk, viii, 282
 Mausíl and, viii, 283
 returns to Dúk, viii, 284
 Dará Panáh goes over to, viii, 286
 forges letter to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286
 sends corpse of Kút to Cæsar, viii, 291
 decides to fight without Rúman help, viii, 292, 293
 arrays his host, viii, 293
 resolves to fight in person, viii, 295
 bodyguard of, viii, 296
 leaves Bahrám in charge of host, viii, 296
 flees from Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 298
 saved by Surúsh, viii, 299
 returns to Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 299
 suspected of Christian tendencies, viii, 308
 gives banquet to Niyátús and Rúmans, viii, 309
 restores captured cities to Rúm, viii, 312
 makes Kharrád, son of Barzín, chief minister, viii, 314
 proclamation of, viii, 314
 demands extradition of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 328
 advised to send envoy to Khán, viii, 329
 resolves to put Bandwí to death, viii, 354
 summons Gustaham, viii, 355
 hears of Gurdyá's doings, viii, 356, 358
 writes to Gurdyá viii, 359
 hears of the death of Gustaham, viii, 362
 welcomes Gurdyá to court, viii, 362

- Khusrau Parwiz, Gurdya dresses
 up to please, viii, 363
 warned by Shírwí against
 Gurdya, viii, 364
 makes Gurdya overseer of
 royal bower, viii, 364
 oppresses Rai, viii, 365
 relieves Rai, viii, 368
 organizes the realm, viii, 369
 seq.
 puts to death adherents of
 Bandwí and Gustaham,
 viii, 370
 consults astrologers on birth
 of Shírwí, viii, 372
 grieved at Shírwí's horo-
 scope, viii, 372
 consults the high priest,
 viii, 372
 writes to Cæsar, viii, 373
 Cæsar's embassy to, viii,
 374
 gives Cæsar's gifts to Shírwí,
 viii, 381
 presents to Khánagí, viii,
 382
 and Shírín, ix, 7
 Story of, 174, viii, 382 *seq.*
 equipage of, for the chase,
 viii, 384
 married to Shírín, viii, 386
 justifies his marriage, viii,
 388
 gives gilded chamber to
 Shírín, viii, 389
 displeased with Shírwí,
 viii, 390
 and throne of Tákdís, viii,
 391 *seq.*
 palace of, story of, viii, 400
 seq.
 Farghán and, viii, 401 *seq.*
 imprisons Rúman artificers,
 viii, 402
 releases Rúman artificers,
 viii, 403
 treasures of, viii, 406
 Guráz intrigues against, viii,
 408
 device of, against Guráz and
 Cæsar, viii, 409
- Khusrau Parwiz, sends Farrukh-
 zád to the host, viii,
 411
 hears Kubád proclaimed
 Sháh, viii, 416
 arms and hides in garden,
 viii, 417
 palace of, plundered viii,
 418
 discovered, viii, 419
 holds talk with Farrukhzád,
 viii, 420
 recalls former presage, viii,
 420
 imprisoned, viii, 421
 duration of reign of, viii,
 421
 charges against, ix, 4, 5, 9,
 10
 reply of, to charges, ix, 5,
 14 *seq.*
 Haram of, ix, 4, 5
 last days of, Theophanes'
 account of, ix, 6
 Shírwí's treatment of, ix, 7
 sons of, executed, ix, 7, 35
 imprisoned at Taisafún, ix,
 9
 companioned by Shírín, ix,
 29
 Bárbad visits, ix, 29
 laments over, ix, 30
 steed of, ix, 30
 son of, ix, 31
 referred to, ix, 33 and *note*
 kingdom of Híra abolished
 by, ix, 66
 Muhammad's letter to, ix,
 66
- Khusrau and Shírín, Persian
 poem, viii, 192
 Khusrau, father of Pírúz, 175,
 vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
 Khusrau, a miller, 176, ix, 99.
 See Miller.
- Khutan, town and district in
 eastern Turkistán, 146,
 150, ii, 277, 288, 325, 357,
 383; iii, 107, 242, 247;
 iv, 26, 219; vii, 84, 115,
 339, 331, 359

- Khutan, raided by Giv, iii, 247
 monarch of, iv, 11
 Afrásiyáb, iv, 230
 Kai Khusrau marches through, iv, 240
 people of, make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
 Khuzá' Arab tribe, vi, 65
 rule of, ended by Sikandar, vi, 120
 Khúzán, a king of Párs, iv, 146, 191
 meets Kai Khusrau in Sughd, iv, 255
 Khúzians, people of Khúzistán, *q.v.*, iv, 146
 Khúzistán (Susiana, 'Arabistán), province at the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 290 and *note*, 298, 327, 357; viii, 109 and *note*, 193
 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
 Khuzrá, treasure, ix, 20
 Khvaitúk-das, i, 60
 Catullus on, i, 60
 Khyóns (Hvyaonas), v, 13, 25
 Kibchák, region east of the Jaxates and north of Táshkand, iv, 254; ix, 93
 Kibtís, vi, 397 and *note*
 Kímák, a river in Kibchák, iv, 203, 231
 Kimmerians, the, i, 17
 Kinám-i-Asírán, near to, or identical with, the ruins of Shús (Sús, Susa), vi, 327, 357 and *note*
 King, the ideal, iii, 16
 of kings, title of, vi, 193, 197
 meaning of, in Achæmenian and Parthian times, vi, 198
 assumed by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
 of the Commons, vii, 3
 piece in chess, vii, 382, 385
 position of, vii, 388, 422
 check to, vii, 422
 mate to, vii, 423
 piece in nard, vii, 382, 389
 Kings, Book of, Firdausi's, i, 43
 Persian, viii, 73
 Tribal. *See* Tribal.
 Kirmán, region in southern Írán, 158, iv, 146; vi, 31, 47, 57, 59, 199, 202, 205, 245, 252; vii, 214; viii, 313
 Dárá retires to, vi, 46
 etymology of, vi, 204, 236
 Ardshír Pápakán's invasion of, vi, 205, 245
 Kirmánsháh, title, vi, 313, 368
 Kirmánsháh, city between Baghdád and Hamadán, vii, 187; viii, 192
 Kirmánsháhán, city in Kirmán, south of Yazd, vi, 368
 Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes?), ix, 93
 Kírwí, Íránian noble, vii, 23
 story of, vii, 22
 Kishmar, place south of Nishápúr in the Kuhistán district of Khurásán, v, 35
 Cypress of, v, 27
 account of, v, 28, 34
 Gushtásp and, v, 34
 Kishwád, Íránian hero, father of Gúdarz, 151, i, 207, 344, 365; ii, 4, 11, 12, 18, 22, 33, 70, 73, 107, 112, 138, 318, 384, 399, 404, 409; iii, 19, 24, 33, 45, 100, 121, 123, 126, 143, 154, 187, 215, 289, 302, 305, 308, 311, 327, 339; iv, 20, 32, 35, 63, 147, 174, 180, 263, 294, 310, 360, viii, 104
 Káran, Shídúsh, and, pursue Kurúkhán, i, 354
 sent by Zál to release the Íránian captives, i, 367
 Kishwaristán, Íránian hero, iv, 148
 commands the troops from Barbaristán and Rúm, iv, 148
 Kisrá, Sháh, 166. *See* Núshírwán.
 Kitradád, Nask, i, 373

- Knathaiti, Pairika, female personification of idolatry, i, 172
- Kobad, Sháh. *See* Kubád.
- Ktesias, Greek historian (5th century B.C.), vi, 13, 68
 legend of Cyrus in, ii, 9; vi, 195
 Gutschmid on, vi, 195
 account of Semiramis in, v, 203
Persica of, v, 293
- Kubád, Íránian hero, brother of Káran, 142, i, 207
 acts as Minúchíhr's scout, i, 217
 parleys with Túr, i, 217
 accepts Bárman's challenge to single combat, i, 347
 dissuaded by Káran, i, 347
 reply of, i, 347
 fights and is slain, i, 348
- Kubád, Sháh. *See* Kai Kubád.
- Kubád, son of Pírúz and father of Núshírwán, Sháh (Kobad), 166, vi, 3, 208; vii, 179 *seq.* and *note*, 226, 247; viii, 25, 46, 72, 168, 169, 245, 265, 285, 312, 369; ix, 22, 25
 captivity of, among the Haitálíans, vii, 160
 leads the rearguard in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálíans), vii, 164
 taken prisoner, vii, 168
 released, vii, 180
 made Sháh instead of Balásh, vii, 182, 188
 Reign of, 166, vii, 183 *seq.*
 Note on, vii, 183 *seq.*
 historical sketch of, vii, 183
 title of, viii, 183 and *note*
 reform of taxation by, vii, 183 *note*, 215
 with the help of Shápúr of Rai overthrows and puts Súfarai to death, vii, 191 *seq.*
 dethroned, vii, 184, 195
- Kubád, imprisoned, vii, 184
 escapes, vii, 184, 197
 marriage of, vii, 184, 186, 198
 gives his wife a signet-ring, vii, 198
 cedes Chaghán to the Haitálíans in return for their help, vii, 198
 goes to Ahwáz, vii, 198
 hears of the birth of Núshírwán, vii, 199
 marches on Taisafún, vii, 199
 pardons the Íránians and Jámásp, vii, 200
 makes Rizmíhr chief minister, vii, 200
 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 187, 200
 takes cities from Rúm, vii, 200
 makes his capital at Madá'in, vii, 201
 builds a city and hospital, vii, 201
 drought in reign of, vii, 201
 Mazdak and, vii, 184, 201 *seq.*
 Mazdak's parable to, vii, 201
 converted by Mazdak, vii, 184, 204
 presides over the disputation between Núshírwán and Mazdak, vii, 207
 gives judgment against Mazdak, vii, 208
 hands over Mazdak and his followers to Núshírwán, vii, 208
 repentance of, vii, 209
 testament of, vii, 210, 316
 age of, vii, 210
 death of, vii, 210
 sons of, vii, 316
- Kubád (Shírwí *q.v.*), son of Khusrau Parwíz and Maryam, Sháh, 175, viii, 190, 196; ix, 3 *seq.*, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 94

- Kubád (Shírwí), secret and public names of, viii, 371, 416
 proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416
 imprisons Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 421
 accedes to throne, viii, 421
 Reign of, 175, ix, 3
 Note on, ix, 3
 tragic, ix, 3
 pestilence during, ix, 3
 boorishness of, ix, 3
 difficult situation of, ix, 3
 reproached by his sisters, ix, 7
- Kubád, son of Jam son of Kubád, vii, 316
 plot to make, Sháh, vii, 316
- Kubard, Túránian hero, iv, 190
 commands the left, iv, 190
- Kúch, tribe or town (Kúk ?) in Kirmán, ii, 226
- Kúfa, city west of the Euphrates and in the neighbourhood of Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef), viii, 190; ix, 68, 69
 wood of, vi, 381
 founded by Sa'ad, ix, 67
- Kúh, nonce name assumed by Húmán, iii, 198
- Kuhandizh (Baigand *q.v.*), vii, 177
 Khúshnawáz takes refuge in, vii, 177
- Kuhíla, Túránian hero, iv, 181
 slain by Minúchihr, iv, 181
- Kuhistán, generally a mountainous region, particularly that of northern Írán, Parthia, or of the high ranges further south, but in the Sháhnáma=Máwara'u'n-Nahr (Transoxania), ii, 199
- Kuhram, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 349
 chosen to fight with Barta, iv, 97; v, 29
 slain by Barta, iv, 105
- Kuhram, brother or son of Arjásp, 156, v, 29, 58, 89
seq., 106 *seq.*, 112, 141, 159
- Kuhram, commands one wing of the host, v, 46
 in chief, v, 56
 sent by Arjásp to attack Balkh, v, 90
 troops of, storm Balkh, burn the Fire-temple, and slay Zarduhsht and the priests, v, 92
 stationed on the left, v, 95
 mortally wounds Farshíward, v, 95
 appointed by Arjásp to send away the spoil of Balkh in the charge of his younger brothers, v, 108
 commands the right, v, 110
 defeated by Asfandiyár, v, 110
 bidden to prepare for war, v, 151
 retreats to the Brazen Hold, v, 152
 mistakes Bishútan for Asfandiyár, v, 152
 hears the cries of the Íránian watch from the Brazen Hold and takes counsel with Andarímán, v, 155
 makes for the Brazen Hold with his troops, v, 156
 pursued by Asfandiyár, v, 156
 encountered and taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 157
 executed, v, 158 and *note*
- Kujárán, city and province on the Persian Gulf, vi, 205, 206, 232
 Haftwád migrates from, to stronghold, vi, 235
- Kulbád, Túránian hero, brother of Pírán, 146, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 264, 388; iii, 166, 177, 198, 199, 205, 210, 222, 231, 234, 252; iv, 10, 26
 wounded by Zál, i, 361
 death and revival of, in legend, ii, 119

- Kulbád, pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 377 *seq.*
 chosen to fight with Fariburz, iv, 97
 slain by Fariburz, iv, 99
- Kulún, Túránian hero, i, 382, 387
 sent by Afrásiyáb to intercept Rustam, i, 383
 slain by Rustam, i, 386
- Kulún, Turk in league with Kharrád against Bahrám Chúbína, 173, viii, 335
 incited by Kharrád to kill Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 337
 arrives at Marv by help of Khán's seal, viii, 339
 seeks interview with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 339
 stabs Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340
 maltreated, viii, 340
 kindred of, burnt, viii, 344
- Kum, city in 'Irák 'Ajami, between Tihrán and Káshán, ii, 399
 bestowed on Gív by Kai Káuś, ii, 399
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
- Kumár, city or cape in India, ii, 103 and *note*
- Kundrav, minister of Zakhák, 140
 mythological origin of, i, 143
 Farídún and, Story of, 140, i, 164
 goes to Zakhák with tidings of Farídún, i, 165
- Kundur, Túránian hero, iii, 152, 185, 210, 215, 251; v, 112,
 worsted by Rustam, iii, 224
 stationed on the right, v, 94
- Kunduz (Kuhandizh, Baigand *q.v.*), iv, 151
 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151
 marches from, iv, 154
- Kur (Cyrus), river in Transcaucasia flowing into the Caspian sea, v, 13
- Kuraish, Arab tribe, vi, 65
- Kurákhán, son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92; iv, 10
 counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 301
 summoned and sent with troops to Bukhárá by Afrásiyáb, iv, 154
 joined by Afrásiyáb, iv, 186
 defeated by Gustaham son of Naudar, iv, 193
 defeat of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
- Kurákhán, governor of Balkh, viii, 22
- Kurán, vi, 65; viii, 277 *note*; ix, 81 and *note*
 quoted, i, 99; v, 166; viii, 42, 192; ix, 81 and *note*
 references to Alexander the Great in, vi, 15, 78, 84
 legend of Moses and the salt fish in, vi, 77
 Gog and Magog in, vi, 78
- Kurd, Kurds, the people of Kurdistán *q.v.*, 161, i, 9; vi, 193, 203, 257
 language, i, 64
 legend of the origin of the, i, 146
 Ardshír Pápakán's war with, in Kárnámak, vi, 190, 200, 256
 Sháhnáma, vi, 230 *seq.*
- Kurdistán, mountainous region north of Mesopotamia, vi, 330
- Kurdzád, daughter of Mihrak *q.v.*
- Kuria Muria Islands, off the southern coast of Arabia, vi, 72
- Kurúkhán, Túránian warrior, i, 353
 sent by Afrásiyáb to attack Párs, i, 353
- Kurus, Indian tribal race, iv, 388
- Kús, i, 177. *See* Tammísha.
- Kút, Rúman warrior, 172, viii, 281, 289, 291
 slain by Bahrám Chúbína viii, 290

Kút, corpse of, sent back to Rûmans, viii, 291
 Kutch (*read Kûch q.v.*), iii, 34
 Kutib, father of Husain (or Ha'iy) one of Firdausi's patrons, i, 35; ix, 121
 Kyaxares (Kastarit), king or chief and leader in the confederacy that overthrew Nineveh, i, 18

L

Labarum, the, v, 306 *note*
 Lâdan (Pashan), battle of, iii, 13 *seq.*, 80 *seq.*, 89 *seq.*, 123; iv, 27, 37, 90, 120, 299
 Lagus, Ptolemy son of. *See* Ptolemy.
 Lahhâk, Tûránian hero, brother of Pírân, 152, i, 92; ii, 323 *note*; iii, 90, 166, 198; iv, 7, 71, 122, 125, 133, 160, 162
 summons Pírân to save Farangís, ii, 322
 pursues the Íránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
 commands with Farshíward the right wing, iv, 26
 attacks the Íránians in flank, iv, 82
 opposed by Gurgín, iv, 83
 goes to help Pírân and attacks Gív, iv, 85
 prowess of, iv, 86
 put in chief command with Farshíward, iv, 94
 Pírân's instructions to, iv, 95
 Farshíward and, hear of the death of Pírân and the coming of Kai Khusrau, iv, 112
 lament for Pírân, iv, 112
 take counsel with the host, iv, 113
 fight, and escape from, Íránian outpost, iv, 116
 Lahhâk, Farshíward and, referred to, iv, 118, 120, 126
 repose themselves, iv, 121
 corpses of, brought back by Bizhan, iv, 126, 132
 deaths of, announced to Afrásiyâb, iv, 152
 Lambak, a water-carrier, 164
 entertains Bahrâm Gúr, vii, 13 *seq.*
 rewarded by Bahrâm Gúr, vii, 20
 Land of Darkness. *See* Gloom.
 Land-tax, Mahmúd's remission of, vi, 196, 208
 Núshírwân's reform of, vii, 215, 225
 Latin version, early, of Pseudo-Callisthenes. *See* Julius Valerius.
 Launderer, a, foster-father of Dárâb, 158, v, 292
 finds Dárâb in the Farât, v, 296
 Dárâb adopted by, and his wife, v, 297
 quits his home with wife and Dárâb and settles elsewhere, v, 298
 becomes wealthy but sticks to trade, v, 298
 perturbed at Dárâb's youthful escapades, v, 298
 brings up Dárâb to be a cavalier, v, 299
 Dárâb's lack of natural affection for, v, 300
 wife of, informs Dárâb of his case, v, 300
 Rashnawâd sends for, and his wife, v, 304
 informed by, of the case of Dárâb, v, 308
 visits, with his wife, Dárâb at his accession, v, 311
 dismissed with gifts, v, 312
 Lâzhawardí, fort, ix, 93
 Lazica, region on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215; viii, 194

- Lazic war, renewed by Hurmuzd, viii, 76
 Bahrán Chúbína defeated in, viii, 76
 Leech of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.
 Legend, Syriac Christian, of Alexander. *See* Syriac.
 Leo, constellation, ii, 405; iii, 81, 318; vi, 172, 180; vii, 410; viii, 122, 394
 Libra, constellation, i, 310; vi, 97
 Life, Fount of. *See* Fount.
 Water of, 160 *Id.*
 Plutarch's, of Alexander the Great, vi, 67
 Lion, lions, slain by Rakhsh, 143, ii, 45
 Asfandiyár, 156, v, 125
 Bahrán Gúr, 163-165, vii, 55, 77
 -ape, 173, viii, 322 *seq.*
 Lion's House, constellation of Leo, i, 188
 Lion's Mouth, the, place, iv, 245
 Loadstone, chamber of, viii, 275
 suspended cavalier in, viii, 275
 Longimanus (Dirázdest), title of Artaxerxes I, son of Xerxes, v, 281
 Lucerne (*Medicago sativa*), tax on, vii, 215
 Lúch, perhaps = Kúch *q.v.*, vii, 362
 captives from, settled at Súrán, vii, 328
 Luhrásp, Sháh, 154, 155, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; iv, 57, 65, 135, 337, 347, 356 *seq.*; v, 10, 20, 21 and *note*, 26, 29, 36, 38, 64, 68, 80, 86, 87, 90 *seq.*, 98 *seq.*, 104, 114, 141, 154, 155, 157, 159, 160, 167, 171, 180, 183, 205, 208, 243, 255, 281, 284; vi, 55, 200; viii, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392; ix, 104
 sent to the Aláns by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
 Luhrásp, successes of, iv, 60, 71
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145
 nominated by Surúsh to be Kai Khusrau's successor, iv, 281
 crowned by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
 Zál's protest against the succession of, iv, 301
 succession of, justified by Kai Khusrau, iv, 301
 acknowledged by Zál, iv, 302
 the chiefs, iv, 303
 undertakes to respect Kai Khusrau's wives, iv, 305
 counselled and farewelled by Kai Khusrau, iv, 306
 addresses the chiefs, iv, 311
 receives the fealty of Zál and other chiefs, iv, 312
 praises and rewards Zál, iv, 312
 coronation of, iv, 312
 Reign of, 154, iv, 314 *seq.*
 Note on, iv, 314 *seq.*
 harangues the chiefs, iv, 316
 makes Balkh his capital, iv, 317
 builds the Fire-temple of Barzín, iv, 318
 shows favour to the grandsons of Kai Káuś, iv, 318, 321 *seq.*
 refuses to appoint Gush-tásp his heir, iv, 319
 sends Zarír in pursuit of Gushtásp, iv, 320
 pardons Gushtásp, iv, 322
 hears of Gushtásp's flight, iv, 323
 consults Zarír and the sages, iv, 323
 searches in vain for Gush-tásp, iv, 324
 receives Kálús, Caesar's envoy, in audience, iv, 357
 entertains Kálús, iv, 357
 consults Zarír, iv, 358
 questions Kálús, iv, 358

Luhrásp, dismisses Kálús with honour, iv, 359
 sends Zarír with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359
 message of, to Cæsar, iv, 361,
 welcomes and crowns Gush-
 tásp on his return to Írán, iv, 364
 resigns the throne to Gush-
 tásp and becomes a de-
 votee, v, 31
 converted by Zarduhsht, v,
 33
 advises Gushtásp to resign
 the kingship to Asfan-
 diyár, v, 66
 opposes Kuhram, v, 91
 slain, v, 91, 93, 99
 Asfandiyár's vow to avenge,
 v, 103
 Lumsden, his edition of the
 Sháhnáma, i, 76
 Luna. *See* Moon.

M

MA, Hittite goddess, vi, 71
 =Cybele, vi, 71
 priestesses of=Amazons, vi,
 71
 Macan, his edition of the Sháh-
 náma, i, 76; vi, 60
 Mace, Farídún's, i, 161, 163, 165,
 168
 the making of, i, 158
 Macedonia, vi, 81, 82
 Macedonian invasion of the East,
 vi, 68, 69
 Máchin (China), ii, 357 *note*, 370,
 394; iii, 46, 253, 265;
 iv, 151, 203, 229, 231, 234,
 252; v, 142, 145; viii,
 417; ix, 107
 Machine, flying, of Kai Káu's, ii,
 103
 Macrianus, Prætorian prefect, vi,
 294
 treachery of, to Valerian,
 vi, 294

M'Crindle, *Ancient India* of,
 quoted, vi, 68, 80
 Madá. *See* Medes.
 Madá'in, Ctesiphon (Taisafún),
 and the neighbouring
 cities, 167, 174, vii, 201,
 244, 266, 272, 337, 363;
 viii, 4, 46, 192, 193
 Núshirwán sends his Rúman
 captives to, vii, 259
 palace of Khusrau Parwíz
 at, story of, viii, 400
 Mádik, king of the Kurds, mean-
 ing of, vi, 203, 256
 Madófyrať, mountain, part of
 the Alburz range, south-
 east of the Caspian, v, 30
 Magi, priests of the Medes
 (Madá), i, 9; ii, 190; vi,
 372, 373; vii, 171, 184
 preservers of tradition, i, 56,
 60
 meaning of name, i, 56 and
note
 rise to power of, i, 58
 influence of, declines after
 the Greek conquest, i, 59
 principal seats of, i, 60
 literature of, i, 61
 language of, i, 64
 compile the prose Sháh-
 náma for Abú Mansúr, i,
 69
 advocates of next-of-kin
 marriage, ii, 189
 Magian, Magians, vii, 60
 chant, vii, 60
 fire, vii, 409
 Magic, i, 51
 derivation of, i, 56
 sympathetic, i, 8
 Magism, v, 11
 Magog. *See* Gog.
 Magophonia, import of, i, 59
 Magus. *See* Magi.
 Mahábhárata, Indian Epic, iii,
 8; iv, 316; vi, 31, 80
 the passing of the five Pán-
 davas in, compared with
 that of Kai Khusrau, iv,
 138

- Máh Áfríd, grandmother of Minúchihr, i, 205
- Máh Áfríd, daughter of Túr, iv, 304
- Máh Áfríd, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53
- Máh Ázar, scribe, viii, 81
- Máhán, Íránian noble, v, 260, 263
- Mahbúd (Mebodes), minister of Kubád and Núshírwán, 158; vii, 213
instrumental in making Núshírwán Sháh, vii, 316
Núshírwán's treasurer, vii, 319
sons of, vii, 319
serve Núshírwán's meals, vii, 319, 321
wife of, prepares Núshírwán's food, vii, 321, 322
envied by Zúrán, vii, 319
fall of, vii, 317, 322
Núshírwán's repentance with regard to, vii, 317, 325
- Máh i-Ázáda Khú, wife of Túr, i, 188
meaning of, i, 188 *note*
- Máhiyár, minister of Dárá, murders Dárá, vi, 52
tells Sikandar of the murder, vi, 52
arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
executed, vi, 56, 88
- Máhiyár, Íránian noble, vii, 38
praises Bahrám Gúr, vii, 38
- Máhiyár, a jeweller, 164, vii, 55 *seq.*
daughter of. *See* Árzú.
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.*
- Mahmúd, Sultán (A.D. 999-1030), i, 100; iii, 15; viii, 24
account of, i, 21
brothers of, i, 21, 114
Firdausi's praise of, 139, 152, 155, 156, 160, 161; i, 29 *seq.*, 112 *seq.*; iv, 135 *seq.*, 139; v, 30, 89, 118, 262; vi, 20, 107, 279, 292, 370; vii, 277; ix, 122
- Mahmúd—*cont.*
Firdausi's feeling against, i, 33; vi, 62, 92 *seq.* and *note*
Satire on, i, 23, 40 *seq.*
alleged ill treatment by, i, 33, 36 *seq.*; vii, 431
alleged repentance of, i, 45; iv, 8
occasion of, iv, 8
approves of Firdausi's version of the fight between Rustam and Ashkabús, iii, 109
remission of the land-tax by, vi, 186, 208
- Mahraspand, father of Ádarbád, v, 16 *note*
- Mahrwí, viii, 248
- Máhwí (=Sháhwi?), one of Firdausi's authorities, i, 67; vii, 382
- Máhwí, Persian chief, 176, ix, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 *seq.*, 118
described, ix, 87
Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird to, ix, 95
accepts charge of Yazdagird, ix, 96
becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, ix, 96
writes to Bízhan, ix, 96, 116
betrays Yazdagird, ix, 97, 98, 116, 117
quest of, for Yazdagird, ix, 100
has tidings of Yazdagird, ix, 101
consults his warriors, ix, 106
son of, counsels, ix, 107
receives Balkh and Harát, ix, 115
governor of Marv, ix, 120
put to death with his sons, ix, 120
sends miller to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107, 110

- Máhwí, sends troops after miller with instructions, ix, 107
troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 108
hears of death of Yazdagird, ix, 108
bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, ix, 108
slays monks, ix, 113
consults his intimates and minister, ix, 113
advised by his minister, ix, 113
claims the throne on false pretences, ix, 114
becomes master of Khurásán, ix, 114
evil rule of, ix, 114
makes war on Bízhan, ix, 115
conduct of, to Barsám, ix, 117
crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, ix, 118
flees, ix, 118
overtaken by Barsám, ix, 118
captured by Barsám, ix, 119
put to death by Bízhan, ix, 120
- Mai, city in Turkistán, i, 252, 256, 261; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 385, 421
- Mai, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 399, 401, 403, 404
- Maidán, riding-ground, i, 83
- Maidhyó-maungha, cousin and first convert to Zarduhsht, v, 17
- Mail of Siyáwush, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81; iv, 40, 41, 44, 45, 51
referred to, iv, 42, 43
- Maishán (Mesene), a small state on the lower Tigris, vi, 199
- Májúj (Magog), 160. *See* Yájúj.
- Makátúra, Turkman chief, 173, viii, 317
dominates the Khán, viii, 318
- Makátúra, slighted by the Khán, viii, 318
challenges Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 319
fight of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 320
- Mákh, viii, 71, 78
- Makhzúm, place, 93
- Makná Bád, city, iii, 109
- Makrán (Gedrosia, Balúchistán), country on the shore of the Arabian Sea, ii, 80, 82; iv, 136, 203, 231, 234, 237 *seq.*, 254; vi, 182, 202, 397; vii, 390; viii, 393, 417
king of, 153, iv, 238 *seq.*
refuses facilities to Kai Khusrau, iv, 239, 242
buried by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243
- Kai Khusrau marches upon, iv, 241
stops pillage of, iv, 243, 244
prepares a fleet in, iv, 244
sails for Gang-dizh from, iv, 245
returns to, iv, 251
goes to Chín from, iv, 251
Alexander the Great's return by, productive of marvels, vi, 69
etymology of, vi, 69
- Malcolm, Sir John, identification and description of Mount Sipand by, i, 236; v, 30
version of Suhráb by, ii, 118
on the scene of the death of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 6
- Málíka, daughter of Táír, vi, 3, 324
legend of, vi, 323, 330 *seq.*
offers to betray her father's stronghold to Shápúr, vi, 331
makes the garrison drunk, vi, 333
opens the gate to Shápúr, vi, 333

- Málíka, goes to Shápúr's camp, vi, 333
- Mamigonian, Armenian family, viii, 188
- Mámún, Khalífa, i, 14; vii, 382, 430
- Man, the First (Gaiúmart *q.v.*), i, 5
on the nature of, 139, i, 104
of Sigz (Rustam), ii, 100 and *note*
- Man, weight, i, 290 and *note*; viii, 148 and *note*, 314, 399
- Manáchihr, i, 206 *note*
- Manda, nomads, i, 18
confused with the Madá (Medes), i, 18; vi, 194
empire of the=empire of the Medes, ii, 191
- Mandane, daughter of Astyages, ii, 190
=Farangís in legend, ii, 191
- Mandanes (Dandamis, Kait, Kaihan, Kand, Kaid *q.v.*), vi, 61
Onesicritus and, vi, 61
identical with Kaid, vi, 62
- Mání, heresiarch, 163, ii, 19 *note*; v, 118 and *note*; vi, 307; vii, 188
account of, vi, 327
-gate, vi, 327, 359
teaching of, vi, 328
disputation of, with the high priest, vi, 358
executed, vi, 359
- Manicheism, ii, 19 *note*
- Manízha, daughter of Afrásiyáb, 150, iii, 285, 295 *seq.*, 304, 308 *seq.*, 348, 349
Bizhan and, story of, 150, iii, 7, 12
historical basis of, iii, 11
Mohl on, iii, 285
Firdausí on, iii, 287
referred to, viii, 72
sends her nurse to Bizhan, iii, 297
invites Bizhan to visit her, iii, 298
drugs Bizhan, iii, 299
- Manízha, wakes Bizhan in Afrásiyáb's palace, iii, 300
holds revel with Bizhan, iii, 300
disgraced, iii, 309
made Bizhan's attendant, iii, 310
referred to, iii, 318, 319
hears of the arrival of Rustam's caravan, iii, 337
interviews of, with Rustam, iii, 337, 342
bears Rustam's ring to Bizhan, iii, 340
kindles signal fire for Rustam, iii, 344
receives gifts from Kai Khusrau, iii, 356
- Manshúr, Túránian hero, iii, 161, 165, 172, 182, 185, 199, 205, 210, 213, 226, 231, 241, 251, 256
comes to the aid of Pírán, iii, 151
hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
- Mansion of Gushtásp, Fire-temple, v, 75
- Mansúr bin Núh, Sámánid prince (A.D. 961-970), i, 20, 21 v, 21; vii, 5
- Manúshán, a king in Párs, iv, 140, 180, 191
- Mánúshíhar (Minúchihr), i, 338
- Mánwí, viii, 253
- Marathi, Scythian people, iv, 315
- Marchlord, ill-disposed, oppresses Rai, 174, viii, 366
destroys gutters and cats, viii, 366
recalled, viii, 368
- Marcian (Bátarún *q.v.*), viii, 41
- Marco Polo, Venetian traveller (A.D. 1254-1324), vi, 74
- Mardánsháh, (Yalán-sina *q.v.*), viii, 74, 76; ix, 5, 6
son of, ix, 5, 6
conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 6
mutilation and execution of, ix, 6

- Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírín, viii, 189, 191, 193, 196; ix, 39
 execution of, ix, 7
- Mardás, father of Zakhák, Story of, 140, i, 135 *seq.*
 murdered by Zakhák, i, 137
- Mardásas. *See* Mardánsháh.
- Mardwí, Túránian hero, iii, 77
- Mardwí, Persian official, viii, 21
- Mardwí, gardener, viii, 397
- Margh, city in Turkistán, i, 256; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 412, 421
- Mark, birth. *See* Birthmark.
- Marriage, next of kin (Khvaitúkdas), i, 60; ii, 189; v, 17
- Mars, planet, i, 72, 276, 332, 339; ii, 247, 407; iii, 110, 159, 178, 318, 332; vii, 92, 252, 418; viii, 395; ix, 73, 89
- Martyropolis, ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
- Márúsipand, palace, ix, 11
- Márút, angel, iii, 286
- Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistán, 173, i, 45; ii, 101; v, 29, 260, 261, 263; vii, 174, 357; viii, 20, 93, 173, 336, 337, 346 *seq.*, 352, 356; ix, 70, 89, 116, 117
 early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
 as rhyme-word, vii, 88 *note*
 Khán reaches, vii, 88
 Bahrám Gúr marches on, vii, 89
 Ázád Sarv finds Búzurjmihr at, vii, 283
 traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, ix, 70
 Yazdagird at, ix, 97, 116
 sage of, ix, 110
 apothegm of, ix, 110
 conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, ix, 117
 Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, ix, 120
- Marvell, quoted, viii, 399 *note*
- Marvrúd (Murgháb), river in Khurásán flowing into and forming the Marv oasis, ii, 228; iv, 255; viii, 92
- Mary, Maryam, mother of Jesus, viii, 276 *note*, 277 *note*
- Maryam, daughter of Cæsar, 173, 174, viii, 188, 192, 276 *note*, 278, 279, 373, 374, 380,
 murder of, viii, 193, 389
 referred to, viii, 255, 266, 269, 270, 371, 381, 389
 counselled by Cæsar, viii, 279, 280
 Niyátús put in charge of, viii, 280
 as peace-maker, viii, 310
- Mashad, city in Khurásán, ii, 189
- Máshya and Máshyói, the offspring of Gaúmart, the first man, i, 117, 131
- Masius, Mount, viii, 41
- Massagetae, tribe, iii, 192
- Mas'údí, Arabic historian (died A.D. 956), v, 293; vi, 62, 63, 82, 193, 257, 313, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 280
 version of the death of Rustam by, v, 261
 genealogies of Pápak according to, vi, 200
 'Book of Indication and Revision' by, vi, 252
 apologue of the owls by, vi, 310
 parentage of Yazdagird son of Shápúr according to, vi, 371
 account of the fortifications at Darband by, vii, 215
 origin of the game of nard according to, vii, 382
 origin of the game of chess according to, vii, 382
 on Búzurjmihr, viii, 71
- Maundeville, Sir John, vi, 13, 72
- Maurice, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 188

- Maurice, helps Khusrau Parwiz on terms, viii, 188
murder of, viii, 193
- Mausil, Armenian prince, viii, 188, 189, 248, 282, 295
entertains Bandwī, viii, 249
Khusrau Parwiz and, viii, 283
referred to, viii, 293 and
note
- Má wara 'u'n-Nahr (Kuhistán *q.v.*, Transoxania), ii, 19, 199; iii, 151
- Maximian, Roman Emperor, viii, 188
- Mayam, place, iii, 40, 41, 53, 111
- Mayors of the palace, Oriental, i, 14
- Mazaga, Indian city, vi, 65
taken by Alexander the Great, vi, 65
- Mázana (Mázandarán, *q.v.*), ii, 28
- Mázandarán, region lying between the Alburz range and the Caspian, 143, i, 4, 5, 12, 253, 279, 290, 294, 296, 298, 319, 323, 339, 378; ii, 25 *seq.*, 33, 34, 36 *seq.*, 45, 55, 60 *seq.*, 66 *seq.*, 75, 76, 78, 81, 93, 105, 139, 143 *seq.*, 293, iii, 144, 167, 207, 215; 232, 243, 256, 260, 324, 330; iv, 86, 136, 296, 299; v, 116, 117, 203, 207, 220; vi, 373; vii, 215; viii, 48; ix, 74
approach to, from Írán, ii, 28
description of, ii, 27
king of, 143, ii, 39, 43, 54, 62 *seq.*
interview of, with Rustam, ii, 67
fight of, with Rustam, ii, 73
transforms himself into a rock, ii, 74
death of, ii, 75
- Mázandaránian, a native of, or pertaining to, Mázandarán, iii, 320
- Mazda, Ahura. *See* Ahura.
- Mazdak, heresiarch, 166, i, 63; vii, 184, 185
disputation of, with Núshírwán, vii, 188, 206 *seq.*
account of, vii, 188, 201
becomes chief minister to Kubád, vii, 201
influence of, over Kubád, vii, 201
parable of, to Kubád in time of drought, vii, 201
practical application of Kubád's reply by, vii, 202
converts Kubád, vii, 204
preaching and practice of, vii, 204
attempt of, to convert Núshírwán, vii, 205
Kubád decides against, vii, 208
executed with his followers by Núshírwán, vii, 208
- Mazdakism, vii, 184
- Mazdakites, vii, 184
great assembly of, vii, 205
massacre of, vii, 185, 208
- Mebodes. *See* Mahbúd.
- Mecca, city, v, 31, 166; vi, 120; ix, 69
Sikandar's visit to, vi, 64, 119 *seq.*
account of, vi, 64
- Medea, land of, i, 57
- Mede, Medes (Madá), Aryan people, i, 7, 10, 17, 56, 58, 72; vi, 194, 203
account of, i, 9
confused with the Manda (nomads), i, 18; vi, 194
empire of the=empire of the Manda, i, 17; ii, 191
- Media, iv, 315; vi, 31; vii, 6; Magna, vi, 201, 203, 256
vii, 214
- Median, vi, 195
- Median, language (Zend), i, 64
seq.
empire, ii, 9; vi, 194
- Mediterranean, the, vi, 294

- Megara, city in Greece, vi, 323
note
 legend concerning, vi, 323
note
- Megasthenes, Greek writer,
temp. Alexander the
 Great, vi, 68
- Meherdates (Mílád), Parthian
 prince, iii, 10 *seq.*
- Memphis, Egyptian city, vi, 82
 corpse of Alexander the
 Great taken to, vi, 82
- Merchant, a, 164
 entertains and displeases
 Bahrám Gúr, vii, 39
 made the slave of his own
 apprentice, vii, 42
- Merchants, Íránian, made acces-
 sories to Bahrám Gúr's
 flight from Hind, vii, 133,
 134
- Mercury, planet, i, 72 ; iii, 159,
 318 ; v, 243 ; vi, 171, 224 ;
 viii, 299, 395 ; ix, 73
- Meroe, island and city of, vi, 13,
 65
- Meru, mythical mountain, iv, 139
- Mesopotamia, vi, 30, 294, 321
 Arab invasions of, iii, 14
 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
- Mesopotamian desert, vi, 322
- Messiah, the, viii, 267
- Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of
 Ardshír, son of Shírwí, in
 Arabic Tabarí, ix, 43
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr, month and day, i, 88, 89,
 174, 175, 232 ; vi, 24, 33,
 55
- Mihr, feast, ix, 40
- Mihr, sacred Fire. *See* Mihr
 Barzín.
- Mihr Ázar, priest, vii, 188, 206
 assists Núshírwán in his
 disputation with Mazdak,
 vii, 206
- Mihr Barzín, sacred Fire and
 Fire-temple, vi, 201, 212
 and *note*
 established by Gushtásp, v,
 34
- Mihr Barzín, Íránian warrior,
temp. Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihr Bídád, Íránian magnate,
 vii, 21
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii,
 22
- Mihr 'Hasis, minister of Ardshír,
 son of Shírwí, in Persian
 Tabarí, ix, 43
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr Hurmuzd, Íránian noble,
 175, viii, 196 ; ix, 34
 account of, ix, 5
 referred to, ix, 6, 33
 conspires against Khusrau
 Parwíz, ix, 6
 put to death, ix, 7
 described, ix, 33
- Mihr-i-Núsh, second son of
 Asfandiyár, ii, 3 ; v, 80,
 283
 slain by Farámarz, v, 227
 death of, reported to Asfan-
 diyár by Bahman, v, 227
 corpse of, sent to Gush-
 tásp, v, 232
- Mihr-i-Núsh, Persian sage, vii,
 270
 quoted, vii, 270
- Mihr-i-Núsh, ix, 103
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-
 dagird, ix, 103
- Mihr Narsí, chief minister of
 Bahrám Gúr and of his
 son Yazdagird, vii, 4, 153
 sons of, vii, 4
- Mihr Pírúz, Íránian warrior,
temp. Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihráb, king of Kábul, 141, 142,
 i, 234, 361 ; ii, 12, 14, 18, 21
 visited by Zál, i, 256
 tributary to Sám, i, 256
 daughter of (Rúdába), i, 257,
 v, 203
 praises Zál to Síndukht, i,
 200
 hears from Síndukht of the
 loves of Zál and Rúdába,
 i, 284
 reproaches Rúdába, i, 289
 Sám sent against, i, 292

- Mihráb, hears of Sám's coming,
i, 202, 209
Minúchúhr's assent to
Zál's marriage, i, 314
felicitates Sindukht, i, 315
Sindukht and, prepare to
welcome Sám and Zál, i,
314
entertain Sám and Zál, i,
317
visit Sám, i, 319
hears of the birth of Rustam,
i, 323
goes with Zál and Rustam
to meet Sám, i, 324
parleys with Shamásás and
Khazarwán to gain time,
i, 358
writes to summon Zál, i,
359
- Mihrak, Tribal King, 161, vi, 3,
199, 237, 238, 257, 267,
208, 270, 272, 273; vii,
185, 192
=Mithrak, vi, 206
slain by Ardshír Pápakán,
vi, 241
daughter of, 161, vi, 3, 241,
256, 257, 268 *seq.*, 272
escapes, vi, 241, 256, 268
referred to in Kaid's
prophecy, vi, 267
discovered by Shápúr, vi,
268 *seq.*
informs Shápúr of her
birth, vi, 270
marries Shápúr, vi, 270
birth of her son Urmuzd,
vi, 271
=Mithrak = Mádik = Arda-
wán (?), vi, 256
importance of, in legend, vi,
257, 267; viii, 72, 73
- Mihrak, servant of Núshírwán,
viii, 18 19
- Mihrán, Indian sage, 159, vi,
91, 97
consulted by Kaid about
his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*
interprets Kaid's dreams,
vi, 94 *seq.*
- Mihrán, family, vii, 156
importance of, viii, 72, 73
proverb on, vii, 183
account of, vii, 185
rivalry of, with family of
Káran, vii, 185
men of mark among the,
vii, 186, 187; viii, 74
- Mihrán, treasurer to Yazdagird
son of Shápúr, vi, 387
- Mihrán, Íránian general, vii, 251
commands the centre of
Núshírwán's host, vii, 251
- Mihrán, archscribe, viii, 76
sent with Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 106
counsels Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 122 and *note*
seeks refuge, viii, 123
congratulates Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 129
takes counsel with Kharrád,
viii, 159
flees from Balkh and is
retaken, viii, 159
pardoned by Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 160
referred to, viii, 163
speech of, viii, 166
- Mihrán Sitád, Íránian high priest
and envoy, *temp.* Núshírwán,
168, vii, 186, 350,
361, 363; viii, 96, 100
attempt of the Khán to out-
wit, vii, 352
takes charge of the Khán's
daughter, vii, 354
receives gifts from the Khán,
vii, 350
welcomed on his return, vii,
357
embassage of, referred to,
viii, 72, 97
sent for by Hurmuzd, viii, 97
tells of prophecy about
Bahrám Chúbína, viii,
98, 210
death of, viii, 99
- Mihrán Sitád, merchant, enter-
tains Khusráu Parwíz,
viii, 251

- Mihrás, father of Ilyás ruler of Khazar, iv, 352
- Mihrás, Cæsar's envoy, vii, 261
negotiates peace with Núsh-irwán, vii, 261
- Mihrdát. *See* Meherdates.
- Mihrgán, feast, i, 175 and *note*, iv, 313; vi, 230 and *note*, 245
- Mihrmās, vi, 200
- Míl as rhyme word, i, 75
- Mílád, Iránian hero, iii, 11, 12, 25, 29, 145, 274, 289, 293, 345; iv, 83, 147, 191; vi, 394; viii, 72, 211
import of word, viii, 73
customs of, viii, 216
- Mílád (Taxila), Indian city, vi, 102, 109, 110
situation of, vi, 62
Sikandar approaches, vi, 98
- Military obsequies, *temp.* Núshirwán, vii, 252
- Milk, bane of, vii, 125 and *note*, 324
easily "turned," vii, 317
poisoned by the Evil Eye, vii, 320 *seq.*, 324, 325
- Mill, 176, ix, 89, 116
- Miller, a, daughters of, 164
becomes Bahrám Gúr's father-in-law, vii, 34
dignified by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 34
- Miller, a, 176, ix, 70
Yazdagird and, ix, 99
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, ix, 100
informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, ix, 101
bidden to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107
fling corpse into stream, ix, 108
- Mingrelia, province on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215
- Minister, piece in chess. *See* Wazir.
- Minos, king of Crete, vi, 323 *note*
legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Mínú, viii, 253 and *note*
- Minúchihr, Sháh, 140-142, i, 42, 90, 91, 209 *seq.*, 274, 275, 319, 337, 339 *seq.*, 348, 363; ii, 19, 29, 33, 36, 37, 302, 318, 400; iii, 9, 30, 87, 115; iv, 10, 65, 69, 70, 76, 136, 206, 283, 285, 298; v, 12, 174, 252, 284; vi, 200, 353; viii, 219, 223, 392; ix, 103
birth of, i, 206
etymology of, i, 206 and *note*, 234 and *note*
Faridún's gifts to, i, 207
goes to fight Salm and Túr, i, 216
makes proclamation to the host, i, 218
contends against Salm and Túr, i, 219
prepares for a night-surprise, i, 220
sends Túr's head to Faridún, i, 222
sends Káran to take the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 *seq.*
hears of Káran's success, i, 225
defeats and slays Karkwí, i, 225 *seq.*
pursues and slays Salm, i, 227
pardons Salm's troops, i, 229
sends Salm's head and a letter to Faridún, i, 229
return of, in triumph, i, 230
welcomed by Faridún, i, 230
confided to Sám by Faridún, i, 231
enthroned by Faridún, i, 232
mourning of, for, and burial of, Faridún, i, 233
Reign of, 141, i, 234 *seq.*
Note on, i, 234 *seq.*
accession and inaugural address of, i, 237
Sám's address to, i, 238

- Minúchihir, hears of Sám's finding of Zál, i, 248
 sons of, i, 248
 sends Naudar to congratulate Sám, i, 248
 summons Sám and Zál to court, i, 249
 Sám tells the story of his quest to, i, 250
 Zál's horoscope taken by order of, i, 251
 gifts of, to Sám, i, 251
 hears of the case of Zál and Rúdába, i, 288
 advises with the archimages, i, 288
 welcomes Sám, i, 289
 hears of Sám's campaign, i, 290
 bids Sám destroy Mihráb and his belongings, i, 292
 receives Zál well, i, 306
 consults the astrologers as to Zál, i, 307
 Zál proved by hard questions by order of, i, 308
 Zál displays his accomplishment before, i, 311
 gracious reply of, to Sám, i, 314
 warned of his death by the astrologers, i, 335
 counsels, and gives the throne to, Naudar, i, 335
 dies, i, 336
- Minúchihir, son of Árash, iv, 149
 commands the troops from Khurásán, iv, 148
 slays Kuhílá, iv, 181
 commands the left, iv, 191
- Mírín, Rúman chief, 154
 asks Cæsar's second daughter, Dilánjám, in marriage, iv, 333
 bidden by Cæsar to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 333
 casts a horoscope, iv, 334
 asks Hishwí to interest Gushtásp in his behalf, iv, 334
- Mírín, provides Gushtásp with a steed and arms, iv, 339
 goes with Gushtásp and Hishwí to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
 Hishwí and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339
 informs Cæsar that he has slain the wolf, iv, 341
 marries Cæsar's daughter, iv, 341
 consulted by Ahran, iv, 342
 refers Ahran to Hishwí, iv, 344
 letter of, to Hishwí, iv, 344
 Ahran and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
 Cæsar's wrath with, iv, 351
 sends a scornful message to Cæsar, iv, 353
 set to guard the baggage, iv, 355
- Mír Khánd (Mirkhond), Persian historian (A.D. 1433-1498), v, 30; vi, 62, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 156, 159, 171, 183, 186; viii, 192
 distich of, quoted, ix, 56
- Miskál, measure of weight, vi, 24
 and *note*, viii, 394
- Misr (Egypt), 159, ii, 79, 80, 84, 94, 96, 143, 286; vi, 114, 115, 122, 181; viii, 381
 king of *temp.* Kai Káu's, ii, 94, 95, 98
 king of, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 37
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
 invaded by Sikandar, vi, 37, 121
 sea of, vi, 120
 Sikandar stays a year in, vi, 121
- Mithra, Mitra, god, i, 7
 Mithradát. *See* Meherdates.
 Mithrak, vi, 206
 = Mihrak, vi, 206
 = Mihrak = Mádik = Ardawán (?), vi, 250

- Mithrates. *See* Meherdates.
 Mithradates I, Parthian king, ii, 80
 Modes of speech, viii, 30
 Mohl, Jules, his edition and translation of the Sháh-náma, i, 76, 77; vi, 60
 on the Story of Bizhan and Manízha, iii, 285, 286
 the Worm, vi, 203
 Wisdom-literature, vii, 280
 Mong, Indian city, vi, 18
 Monks, ix, 109
 find and recover corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 109
 lament over and entomb Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*
 sentences of, over Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*
 slain by Máhwí, ix, 113
 Monophysite, viii, 195
 Moola Firooz, i, 201 *note*
 Moon, one of the seven planets, i, 72, viii, 395
 on the nature of the, 139, i, 205
 =Túr, i, 223
 divided by Muhammad, viii, 42, 67
 Moses, Hebrew law-giver, v, 294
 Salt Fish and, legend of, vi, 77
 Faith of, vi, 95
 Moses of Chorene, Armenian historian (5th century A.D.), i, 72
 account of Zakhák by, i, 144
 Rustam by, i, 236
 Mosul, city in Mesopotamia, vi, 322
 Mountain, mountains, sanctity of, i, 118
 of the Holy Questions, i, 62
 --skirt (Dáman-i-Kuh), iii, 15, 91, 95
 =Rakhsh, iii, 221, 251
 Old man of the, v, 30
 --sheep, personification of the divine Grace, vi, 201, 221. *See* Ram.
 Mu'áwiya, Khalifa (A.D. 661-679), i, 12, 13
 Múbid, i, 83
 Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. *See* Shu'ba Mughíra, ix, 69
 Muhammad, the Prophet (about A.D. 571-632), i, 13, 40, 41; ii, 337 *note*; vi, 65, 190, 292; viii, 42, 191; ix, 69, 81 *seq.*
 on 'Alí, i, 12, 106
 praise of, i, 106
 quoted, i, 106, v, 166
 reference of, to Alexander the Great in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
 Muhammad, birth of, vii, 213
 Núshírwán and, 170, viii, 68
 divides the Moon, viii, 42, 67
 letter of, to Khusráw Parwíz, ix, 66
 Flight of, referred to, ix, 122
 Muhammad Kásim, Arab general, vi, 325
 Muhammad Laskarí, friend of Firdausí, i, 99; iii, 286
 Muhammad Mahdí, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76
 Muhammad, son of Abdúr-Raz-zak, i, 68, 99
 Muhammadan, Muhammadans, vi, 78; viii, 73
 elements in Sháhnáma, viii, 42
 ethics respected, viii, 74
 Mukaffa'. *See* Ibn Mukaffa'.
 Múltán, city in the Punjáb, vii, 140
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140
 Mumasenni, tribe, i, 237
 Munzir, al, dynasty of, i, 55
 Munzir, prince of Híra, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr and Bahrám Gúr, 163, 164, vi, 372, 394, 406, 408; vii, 9
 visits Yazdagird, vi, 377
 monarch of Yaman, vi, 378

- Munzir, returns to Yaman with Bahrám, vi, 378
 chooses nurses for Bahrám, vi, 378
 dismisses Bahrám's tutors, vi, 380
 provides Bahrám Gúr with steeds, vi, 380
 provides Bahrám Gúr with slave-girls, vi, 381
 goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384
 sends a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting to Yazdagird, vi, 385
 sends Bahrám Gúr with Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386
 receives a letter from Yazdagird, vi, 387
 counsels and sends Bahrám Gúr a slave-girl and presents, vi, 388
 welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his return, vi, 390
 supports Bahrám Gúr's claim to the throne, vi, 396 *seq.*
 invades Írán, vi, 397
 interview of, with Jawánwí, vi, 398 *seq.*
 refers Jawánwí to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 398
 advises Bahrám Gúr to negotiate with the Íránians, vi, 401, 404
 intercedes with Bahrám Gúr for the Íránians, vii, 10
 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
- Munzir, son of Nu'mán, prince of Híra, *temp.* Núshírwán, 167, vii, 244 *seq.*
 protected by Núshírwán, vii, 217
 war of, with Hárith bin Jabala, vii, 217
 sent by Núshírwán to invade Rúm, vii, 246
- Murdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88 ; iii, 287, 328
- Músh, town west of Lake Ván, viii, 188
- Mushkináb, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
- Mushkinak, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
- Muslim, ix, 85
- Mutawakkil, Khalífa (A.D. 847-861), i, 14
 Cypress of Kishmar destroyed by, v, 28
- Mutilation, instances of, vi, 261, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
- Mytilene, Chares of, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, ii, 10 ; vi, 61
 quoted, iv, 314
- N
- NABARZANES, Persian general, vi, 32
 pardoned by Alexander the Great, vi, 32
- Nádir, Sháh, iii, 14
- Nadr son of Hárith, v, 166
 recites the story of Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 166
 fate of, v, 166
- Nahávand, city, south of Hamadán, i, 12 ; ix, 68, 69
 Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, ix, 68
 Battle of, i, 12 ; ix, 69
- Náhíd (Katáyún, *q.v.*)
- Náhíd (Halai, Olympias ?), daughter of Failakús and mother of Sikandar, 159, vi, 24 *seq.*, and *note*
 married to Dáráb, vi, 25
 troubled by offensive breath, vi, 26
 cured, but repudiated by Dáráb, vi, 26
 returns to Failakús and gives birth to Sikandar, vi, 26

- Náhid, visits Dilárái and Rúshanak, vi, 89
 referred to, vi, 187
- Náhid, the planet Venus, vi, 214
- Nahrawán, city near Baghdád, east of the Tigris; also a canal on the eastern bank of that river, quitting it about 100 miles above, and rejoining it about 100 miles below, Baghdád, vii, 141; viii, 187, 204, 206, 231
 bridge of, viii, 223, 228 *seq.*
 broken down by Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 229
- Naishapur. *See* Nishápúr.
- Naitkún (Antigonus), minister of Sikandar, name of, assumed by Sikandar, vi, 66, 125 *seq.*
 personates Sikandar, vi, 125 *seq.*
- Kaidrúsh and his wife brought before, vi, 126
 sentenced to death by, vi, 126
 pardoned by, vi, 126
 =Sikandar, vi, 131, 133, 134, 141
- Nakula, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138
 referred to, iv, 139
- Names, use of, in sympathetic magic, i, 8, 177, 179
 secret and public, viii, 372 and *note*
- Námkhást, Túránian hero, v, 24, 26
 goes as envoy to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40
 returns with Gushtásp's answer, v, 44
 given command of the centre, v, 56
 worsted by Girámí, v, 59
- Napata, city in Nubia, vi, 65
- Naphtha, 159, i, 56
 black, iv, 208, 209
 use of, in sieges, iv, 208, 209
- Naphtha, Sikandar's iron steeds filled with, 159, vi, 115
- Fúr's elephants and troops routed by the use of, vi, 116
 used to vitrify Sikandar's barrier, vi, 165
- Nard, game of, 169, viii, 371
 invention of, vii, 280, 381, 382, 389
 sent by Núshírwán to the Rája of Hind, vii, 5, 381
 meaning of, vii, 381
 symbolism of, vii, 381
 Mas'údí on, vii, 382
 described, vii, 389
- Narímán, Íránian hero, father of Sám and great-grandfather of Rustam, i, 42, 174, 207, 212, 239, 299, 333, 344; ii, 4, 49, 115, 119, 125, 126, 162, 354; iii, 17, 35; v, 196, 199, 202, 242, 262, 264, 266, 289
 death of, described, i, 329
- Narimanau, epithet of Keresáspa, i, 172, 174
- Narmpái, name of a tribe, 160, ii, 55 and *note*, 63, 64; vi, 71 and *note*
- Sikandar and, vi, 150
- Narses (Narsí, son of Bahrám, *q.v.*), Sásánian king
- Narses, Exarch, treatment of, by Empress Sophia, viii, 76
- Narses, general, viii, 189
- Narsí, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
- Narsí, son of Bahrám, Sháh (Narses), 162, vi, 3, 313, 316, 325, 330, 331, 337; vii, 359
 Reign of, vi, 315 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 315
 title of, vi, 315
 inaugural address of, vi, 315
 daughter of, 162. *See* Núsha.
- Narsí, brother of Bahrám Gúr, 165, vi, 3; vii, 4, 95, 100

- Narsí, made captain of the host,
vii, 11
regent, vii, 86
fails to persuade the Írán-
ians to resist the Khán,
vii, 87
Bahrám Gúr's letter to, vii,
92
writes to Bahrám Gúr on
behalf of the Íránians, vii,
94
goes with the chiefs to wel-
come Bahrám Gúr, vii, 96
made ruler of Khurásán,
vii, 99
welcomes his brother on his
return from Hind, vii, 137
Nárwan, forest of, near Tammísha
q.v. i, 217, 218; ii, 341;
viii, 356, 360, 377; ix, 86
Nasíbín (Nisibis, *q.v.*), vi, 326
cession of, vi, 355
inhabitants of, refuse to
submit to Shápúr, vi, 356
taken by Shápúr, vi, 356
Násiru'd-Dín, title of Subuk-
tigín, *q.v.* i, 21, 100, 114
Nasr, Amír, brother of Sultán
Mahmúd, i, 21; vi, 196
account of, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
praise of, i, 114; vi, 207
Nasr, Arab chief, vi, 65
appeals to Sikandar for
help, vi, 120
made ruler of Mecca, vi, 121
Nasr, son of Ahmad, Sámánid,
vii, 340
patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383
Nastár, Cæsar's master of the
herds, iv, 325
refuses to employ Gushtásp,
iv, 326
Nastíhan, Túránian hero, son of
Wisa and brother of
Pírán, 146, 151, i, 92; ii,
264; iii, 79, 198, 210, 231,
252; iv, 53 *seq.*, 61, 75,
77
pursues Kai Khusrau, ii,
377 *seq.*
Nastíhan, slain by Bízhan, iv,
54
Nastúh, Íránian hero, ii, 4; iii,
46; iv, 148
Nastúh, Túránian hero, iv, 156
Nastúh, son of Mihrán Sitád, 173,
viii, 225, 303
advises Hurmuzd, viii, 96
released by Bahrám Chú-
bína, viii, 306
Nastúr (Basta-vairi, Bastvár),
son of Zarír, 155, v, 12,
25, 26
exploits of, foretold by
Jámásp, v, 50
given command of the rear,
v, 55
fights victoriously, v, 60
goes in search of Zarír, v, 67
finds Zarír's corpse and
laments over it, v, 67
exhorts Gushtásp to avenge
Zarír, v, 68
goes forth with Gushtásp's
steed and armour, v, 69
challenges Bídírafsh, v, 69
fights with Bídírafsh, v, 70
attacks, with Asfandiyár and
Núsh Ázar, the Túrán-
ians, v, 71
leads the host home, is
given a command, and
invades Túrán, v, 74
stationed on the Íránian
left, v, 94
commands the right, v, 109
Nastúr, son of Shírín and
Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 39
Nature-worship, of the Aryans,
i, 7, 51
Nau-Ardshír = Nard, vii, 381
Naubahár, Fire-temple at Balkh,
31
Luhrásp retires to, v, 31
Naudar, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91,
369; ii, 20, 36, 70, 153,
336, 400, 404; iii, 8, 24,
39, 50, 57, 67, 80, 112,
123, 132, 177, 187, 215,
257, 289, 294, 327; iv,
13, 61, 70, 157, 167, 178,

Naudar—*cont.*

- 191, 193, 206, 237, 254,
262, 267; vii, 37, 171;
viii, 223, 242
embassies of, to Sám, i, 248,
288
returns with Sám to court, i,
289
counselled by Minúchihr and
appointed his successor, i,
335
laments for Minúchihr, i,
336
Reign of, 142, i, 337 *seq.*
Note on, i, 337
accession of, i, 339
evil rule of, i, 339
revolts against, i, 339
appeals to Sám, i, 339
the chiefs reconciled to,
by Sám, i, 341
rewards Sám, i, 342
marches against Afrásiyáb
to Dahistán, i, 345
battles of, with Afrásiyáb,
i, 348 *seq.*
takes counsel with Káran,
i, 349
defeated, i, 350, 353
sends Tús and Gustaham
to conduct the Persian
women to Alburz, i, 351
beleaguered in Dahistán, i,
353
escapes from Dahistán, i,
355
pursued and taken by Afrá-
siyáb, i, 355
slain, i, 363
the Íránians bewail, i, 364
Naurúz, Persian New-year's day
when the sun enters Aries,
vi, 33, 55, 273, 389; viii,
216
Nawand, place in Khurásán on
the Binalúd Kuh (?), ii,
107
Náztáb, a miller's daughter, vii,
32 and *note*
taken to wife by Bahrám
Gúr, vii, 33

- Nearchus, admiral of Alexander
the Great, vi, 12, 61, 70
Ichthyophagi, account of
by, quoted by Arrian, vi,
69, 70
Nectanebus II (Nekht-neb-f),
the last Pharaoh
personates Amen-Ra and
becomes the legendary
father of Alexander the
Great, vi, 16
story of, vi, 18 and *note*
Need, personification of. *See*
Greed.
Negroes, the, described, vi, 73,
157
cause frost and snow to
harm Sikandar, vi, 156,
157
Nekht-neb-f. *See* Nectanebus.
Nereis. *See* Kalé.
Nero, Roman emperor (A.D. 54-
68), vii, 279
Néryósang, ii, 82
Nestorian, Nestorians, viii, 195
Metropolitan, vii, 219
Patriarch, vii, 219
New Year, Persian, beginning of,
i, 74, 88
Feast of (Naurúz, New
Year's Day), i, 74, 274;
vii, 94, 200
origin of, i, 133
Nicaea, Indian city, vi, 18
Nicephorium (Callinicus, Kálíni-
yús *q.v.*, Warígh, Rakka),
viii, 188
Nicolaus of Damascus, Greek
historian *temp.* Augustus,
vi, 195
Níl, as rhyme-word, i, 75
Nile, i, 40, 71, 114, 297; ii, 96,
153, 217, 310, 402; iii,
38, 41, 58, 208, 224, 225;
iv, 145 *seq.*, 180, 333; v,
176, 188, 191, 245; vi, 42,
169, 171, 269; vii, 48,
250, 344, 416; viii, 126,
284, 293, 294; ix, 98
Blue, vi, 65
mistaken for Indus, vi, 68

- Nímruz = Sístán = Zábulistán,¹ i, 252, 294, 340, 357; ii, 21, 34, 69, 77, 80, 84, 338, 395; iii, 17, 35, 319; iv, 156, 188; v, 85, 248, 288; vii, 327; viii, 196, 284; ix, 5, 6
 confirmed to Rustam by Kai Khusrau, iv, 297
 Zál by Luhrásp, iv, 312
 Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
 satrapy of, ix, 69
- Nineveh, viii, 193
 fall of, i, 10
 kings of, that attacked Irán, i, 10
 battle near, viii, 194
- Ninus, mythical founder of Nineveh, v, 292, 293
- Ninyas, son of Ninus, v, 293
- Niris, salt lake in Párs, vi, 17
 referred to, vi, 21
- Nisá, city (Muhammadábád?) in Khurásán or town in Kirmán, vii, 89; viii, 19
- Nishápúr, city in Khurásán,² i, 36, 45; ii, 101; iv, 255; v, 28 *seq.*, 291; vi, 298; viii, 173; ix, 95
- Nisibis (Nas'ibín q.v.), city in northern Mesopotamia, i, 374
 sieges of, i, 374, viii, 41
 peace of, vi, 254
 cession of, by Jovian, vi, 326
 by Khusrau Parwíz (?), viii, 188
- Nisus and Scylla, story of, vi, 323 *note*
- Nitetis, vi, 16
- Nívzár, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26
 death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 50
 slain, v, 60
- Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 173, viii, 189, 281, 289; ix, 23
 brother of Cæsar, viii, 280, 310
 put in charge of Maryam, viii, 280
 welcomed by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 280
 wroth with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 290
 watches fight between Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 297
 entertained at banquet by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 307
 quarrel of, with Bandwí, viii, 309
 threat of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 310
 reconciled to Bandwí, viii, 311
 returns to Rúm, viii, 312
- Nizámí, Persian poet, viii, 192
- Nizámí-i-'Arúdí, Persian writer (12th century A.D.), i, 23
 account of Firdausí by, i, 38 *seq.*, 45, 46
- Nöldeke, Professor, v, 20, 21, 282; vi, 198 *note*, 199 and *note*, 253, 313, 372; viii, 71, 188
 on the dív Akwán, iii, 271
 quoted, v, 118
 treatise of, on the Alexander Romance, *etc.*, vi, 14 and *note*
 on the Story of the Worm, vi, 203, 205, 206
 on Haftwád, vi, 206
 on the Gipsies, vii, 6
 on Súfarai, vii, 171, 185
 on Wisdom-literature, vii, 281

¹ Properly speaking, Zábulistán is the name of the hilly country about the upper waters of the Helmand, while Nímruz and Sístán are synonymous names for the low-lying lands into which its waters descend, but Firdausí does not seem to make any such distinction.

² The city has suffered much in the past from the ravages of war and earthquake and has been rebuilt several times on slightly varying sites.

- Nöldeke, on Romance of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 73
- North, Sir Thomas (A.D. 1535-1603 ?), vii, 383
version of the Fables of Bidpai by, vii, 383
- Northman, the, vi, 19
found the Russian empire, vi, 19
- Note on Pronunciation, preceding text in each volume
- Nubia, vi, 65
- Núh bin Nasr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 942-954), vii, 5
- Núh II. bin Mansúr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 976-997), i, 21, 36; v, 21
- Nu'mán, prince of Híra, 163, 164, vi, 372, 396, 404
visits Yazdagird, vi, 377
goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384
goes to the Persian court with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 386
returns to Yaman with letters and presents, vi, 387
welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his revisiting Yaman, vi, 390
invades Írán, vi, 397
rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
- Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, viii, 188; ix, 5
put to death, viii, 190
- Nu'mán, Arab general, ix, 68
sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68
defeats Pírúzán at Nahá-vand, ix, 68
slain, ix, 69
- Nurse, Manízha's, iii, 297
interview of, with Bizhan, iii, 297
- Núsha (Dukhtnúsh), daughter of Narsí, 162, vi, 3, 324, 331
carried off by the Arabs, vi, 323, 330
- Núsh Ázar, Fire-temple at Balkh, v, 92 *note*, 173, 241, 255
burnt by the Turkmans, v, 93
- Núsh Ázar, youngest son of Asfandiyár, ii, 3, v, 166, 283, 285
attacks, with Nastúr and Asfandiyár, the Túránian host, v, 71
builder of a Fire-temple, v, 81
with Asfandiyár at Gumbadán, v, 98
informs Asfandiyár of Jám-ásp's arrival, v, 98, 99
accompanies Asfandiyár from Gumbadán, v, 103
slays Turkhán, v, 151
wrangles with Zawára, v, 226
slays Alwá, v, 226
slain by Zawára, v, 227
death of, reported to Asfandiyár by Bahman, v, 227
corpse of, sent to Gushtásp, v, 232
- Núshírwán (Kisrá, Chosroes I), Sháh, 166-170, i, 27, 42; v, 260; vi, 3, 201; vii, 4, 199, 220, 273 *seq.*, 279 *seq.*, 320; viii, 3 *seq.*, 71, 72, 86 *seq.*, 98, 129, 169, 198, 200, 205, 209, 300, 312, 313, 377; ix, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
collector of Íránian tradition, i, 67
quoted, vi, 208, 209 and *note*
origin of name, vii, 185, 211 and *note*
birth of, stories of, vii, 186, 197 *seq.*
assistants of, against Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
upbringing of, vii, 200
Mazdak's attempt to convert, vii, 205
disputation of, with Mazdak, vii, 206 *seq.*

- Núshírwán, Kubád decides in favour of, vii, 208
 executes Mazdak and his followers, vii, 208
 Kubád's testament in favour of vii, 210, 316
 Reign of, 167, vii, 212 *seq.*
 Notes on, vii, 212 *seq.*, 279 *seq.*, 316 *seq.*, 380 *seq.*, viii, 3 *seq.*, 41 *seq.*
 Roman Emperors contemporary with, vii, 212
 historical events of reign of, in the Sháh-náma, vii, 213
 marriage of, with the daughter of the Khán vii, 347, *seq.*
 referred to, viii, 72, 97 *seq.*
 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 213, 217
 first campaign of, vii, 218, 249
 conspiracy against, vii, 214, 316
 division of empire by, vii, 214, 224; ix, 69
 bargains of, with Justinian, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*
 taxation reformed by, vii, 215, 224
 wall of, in the Caucasus, 167, i, 16; vii, 215, 239
 Mas'údí's account of, vii, 215
 dealings of, with the Aláns, vii, 216
 Gílán, vii, 216
 Balúchís, vii, 217
 Munzir supported by, vii, 217, 244
 and consequent war with Rúm, vii, 217, 244
 jealous of Justinian's successes in the West, vii, 217
 promises to rule justly, vii, 221 *seq.*
 attends muster at the insistence of Bábak, vii, 231
 approves of Bábak's conduct, vii, 232
- Núshírwán, method of, in levying troops, vii, 233
 writes to Caesar on Munzir's behalf, vii, 245
 supplies Munzir with troops for the invasion of Rúm, vii, 246
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, vii, 250
 disposition of host by, vii, 251
 addresses his troops, vii, 251
 proclamations of, vii, 252, 305
 burial of dead soldiers by, vii, 252
 policy of, with enemies, vii, 253
 takes Shúráb, vii, 254
 Áráyish-i-Rúm, vii, 255
 Caesar's treasures, vii, 255, 258
 defeats Farfúríús, vii, 256
 takes Antákiya, vii, 258
 disposes of the Rúman captives, vii, 259, 327
 Rúman cordwainer and, vii, 260
 envoy from Caesar comes to, vii, 261
 grants peace to Caesar, vii, 262
 appoints Shírwí to receive the Rúman tribute, vii, 262
 Christian wife of, vii, 263
 mother of Núshzád, vii, 263, 274 *seq.*
 helps Núshzád, vii, 266
 laments for Núshzád, vii, 276
 imprisons Núshzád, vii, 264
 illness and reported death of, vii, 264, 265
 hears of Núshzád's revolt, vii, 266
 instructs Rám Barzín how to act, vii, 267 *seq.*
 Seven Banquets of 168, vii, 280, 287 *seq.*
 possible origin of, vii, 280

- Núshírwán, Seven Banquets of,
 Búzurjmíhr's discourses
 at, vii, 287 *seq.*
 dream of, vii, 282
 consults the archmagés, vii,
 282
 seeks for a dream-interpre-
 ter, vii, 282
 dream of, interpreted by
 Búzurjmíhr, vii, 284
 rewards and honours Bú-
 zurjmíhr, vii, 286, 289, 304,
 311, 315
 relations of, with Singibú,
 vii, 317
 the Haitálíans, vii, 317
 with Mahbúd and his sons,
 vii, 319 *seq.*
 suspects Zúrán, vii, 324
 greatness of, vii, 327
 buildings of, vii, 327
 embassy of Khán to, vii, 329
 consults the chiefs as to
 Faghánísh, the Khán, and
 the Haitálíans, vii, 333
 reply of chiefs to, vii, 334
 rejoinder of, to chiefs, vii,
 336
 prepares for war with the
 Khán, vii, 337
 writes to his chiefs, the
 Khán, and Faghánísh,
 vii, 337
 marches from Madá'in, vii,
 337
 goes to Gurgán, vii, 337
 receives embassy from the
 Khán, vii, 339
 holds a court, vii, 340
 displays his prowess before
 the assembly, vii, 341
 dismisses the Khán's envoy
 with a letter, vii, 344
 Khán's offer of affinity to,
 vii, 347
 reply of, vii, 349
 occupies territory evacuated
 by the Khán, vii, 358
 Haitálíans and others bring
 gifts to, vii, 360, 362
 gives praise to God, vii, 361
- Núshírwán, receives the tribute
 from Rúm, vii, 362
 goes to the temple of Ázar-
 gashasp, vii, 363
 greatness of, vii, 364
 questions Búzurjmíhr, vii,
 367 *seq.*
 receives the game of chess
 from Hind, vii, 380, 385
 Rája of Hind's embassy to,
 vii, 384
 rewards Búzurjmíhr for dis-
 covering how to play
 chess, vii, 388
 sends Búzurjmíhr with pre-
 sents and the game of
 nard to Hind, vii, 390
 proposes wager with the
 Rája, vii, 391
 welcomes Búzurjmíhr on
 his return from Hind, vii,
 393
 acquires the Book of Kalíla
 and Dimna, vii, 423 *seq.*
 sends gifts to the Rája, vii,
 425
 rewards Barzwí, vii, 429
 precautions of, as to suc-
 cessor, viii, 3
 goes hunting with Búzurj-
 míhr, viii, 4
 suspects and disgraces
 Búzurjmíhr, viii, 5
 treats Búzurjmíhr with in-
 creasing rigour, viii, 7, 8
 reconciled to Búzurjmíhr,
 viii, 9
 questioned by archmagés,
 viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*
 gives judgment against his
 own son, viii, 16
 chief cook of, aggrieved, viii,
 18
 counsels Hurmuzd, viii, 25
seq.
 writes to console Caesar's
 son and successor, viii,
 43
 wroth at answer received,
 viii, 45
 invades Rúm, viii, 46

Núshírwán, success of, viii, 47
 checked, viii, 47
 in want of money, viii, 47
 takes counsel with Búzurj-
 mihr, viii, 47
 refuses advances from a
 shoemaker, viii, 50, 71
 high esteem of, for scribes,
 viii, 50
 grants peace to, and takes
 tribute from, the Rûmans,
 viii, 52
 returns to Taisafûn, viii, 53
 sons of, viii, 56, 63
 instructs Búzurjmihr to
 prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56
seq.
 testament of, in favour of,
 and last counsels to,
 Hurmuzd, viii, 61 *seq.*; ix,
 22
 directions of, as to inter-
 ment, viii, 65
 hall of, shattered, viii, 68
 death of, viii, 69, 71
 system of administration of,
 viii, 71
 ministers of, put to death by
 Hurmuzd, viii, 81 *seq.*
 choice of Hurmuzd by, story
 of, viii, 87
 palace of, viii, 193
 dream of, ix, 92
 Núsh Zád=Míhr-i-Núsh, *q.v.*,
 v. 285 and *note*
 Núshzád, father of Míhrak,
 vi, 237, 241, 267, 270,
 273
 Núshzád, son of Núshírwán,
 167, vii, 213, 265, *seq.*
 historical account of, vii, 219
 Firdausi's account of, vii,
 263 *seq.*
 education of, vii, 263
 imprisonment of, vii, 264
 hears report of Núshírwán's
 death, vii, 265
 revolts, vii, 266
 helped by his mother, vii,
 266
 writes to Caesar, vii, 266

Núshzád, goes to fight with Rám
 Barzín, vii, 272
 exhorted to yield by Pírúz,
 vii, 273
 reply of, to Pírúz, vii, 274
 wounded, vii, 275
 repents, vii, 275
 sends message to his mother,
 vii, 275
 dies, vii, 275
 lamentation for, vii, 276
 Firdausi's reflections on, vii,
 276

(O)

OASIS OF AMMON, vi, 65
 Alexander the Great's visit
 to, vi, 65
 Oblivion, Castle of, vii, 184
 Obsequies, military, in the time
 of Núshírwán, vii, 252
 Oceanus, Homeric and Oriental,
 i, 71
 Odatis, Scythian princess, iv, 315
 legend of, iv, 315
 Odenathus, Arab chief, vi, 222
 Shápúr son of Ardshír and,
 vi, 294, 325
 confused with Valerian, vi,
 324 *seq.*
 Odorico, Minorite Friar and tra-
 veller (A.D. 1286-1331),
 vi, 13
 Old Man of the Mountain, the, v,
 30
 Olives, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
 Olympias (Náhíd, Halai?), wife
 of Philip of Macedon and
 mother of Alexander the
 Great
 legendary relations of, with
 Nectanebus, vi, 16, 18
 choice by, of name for her
 son, vi, 19
 intrigues of, vi, 82
 Omartes, Scythian chief, iv, 315
 legend of, iv, 315
 Omen, ii, 192, v, 177
 of the quince, ix, 13, 14

- Omphis, Indian king, vi, 62
 Onager, the div Akwán as, iii, 273 *seq.*
 Bahrám Chúbína guided by, viii, 156, 158
 Onesicritus, chief pilot of Alexander the Great and writer, vi, 67
 untrustworthy, vi, 12, 61, 67
 Fakírs and, vi, 61
 Calanus and, vi, 61
 Mandanes and, vi, 61
 Onnes, minister of Ninus, v, 292, 293
 Ordeal by fire, ii, 218 *seq.*
 Ormus (Hurmuz), city on the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
 Osrhoene, kingdom in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 198
 Othello, play of, quoted, vi, 324
 Owls, Mas'údí's apologue of the, vi, 310
 and Crows, story of, viii, 263 and *note*
 Ox, the first, i, 5
 legend of the, i, 117, 236
 Ox of Kai Káu's, ii, 26
 Ox-hide, or skin, filled with gold as tribute, v, 265 and *note*; vii, 262, 363; viii, 46, 52, 53
 Oxus (Jíhún, *q.v.*), river, i, 57; ii, 190; v, 12, 29; vii, 156, 317; viii, 72
 ancient trade-route, i, 57
 confused with Aras, i, 71, 370
 change in course of, i, 57
 note, iii, 10
 referred to, ix, 117 and *note*, 118
 Oxyartes, father of Roxana (Rúshanak), wife of Alexander the Great, vi, 32

 P
 Padashkvár, a mountain or section of the Alburz range, i, 338

 Page, of Núshírwán, viii, 5 *seq.*
 relative of Búzurjmíhr, viii, 5
 instructed by Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6
 takes messages between Núshírwán and Búzurjmíhr, viii, 6 *seq.*
 Pahlav, region, ii, 77, 102; iii, 222
 Pahlaván, i, 83; vi, 194
 Pahlaví, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, vii, 6, 113, 188, 380 *seq.*; viii, 73, 74; ix, 50
 meaning of, i, 64, 83
 Firdausí's use of the word, i, 69
 Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 382
 language (middle Persian), v, 24, 26, vi, 194
 texts, ii, 27; v, 13, 14, 24, 30; vi, 195, 196, 257
 version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 84
 writing and reading, confusion in, vi, 14, 62, 205, 206
 Paidáwasí, Persian coin=five dinárs, vii, 95 and *note*, viii, 381 and *note*; ix, 19
 Paighú=Túránian, v, 13, 21
 note, 38 *note*, 41 *note*, 44 *note*; viii, 190
 Paikár-i-Gurd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*
 Pairika. *See* Parí.
 Palace of Jewels, 160
 Paladins, 154
 Paláshán, Túránian hero, 147, iii, 26, 79
 surveys the Íránian host, iii, 69
 slain by Bízhan, iii, 70
 Pálawína (Cappadocia), vi, 294, 297, 298
 Palestine, vi, 30

- Palladius, bishop, vi, 61, 62
 treatise of, on the Brah-
 mans, vi, 61
 interpolated into the
 Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi,
 61
- Palmyra, city in Syrian desert,
 vi, 294, 322, 324; vii, 217
- Palus Maeotis (Sea of Azoff), vi,
 73
- Pándavas, the five, iv, 138, 139
 pilgrimage of, compared
 with that of Kai Khusrau
 and his paladins, iv, 138
- Pand Námah, of Moola Firooz, i,
 201 *note*
- Pandnámak-i Vadshörg-Mitró-i
 Búkhtakán, Pahlaví text,
 vii, 279
- Pándu, Indian king, iv, 316
- Pápak, Tribal King, 160, vi, 3,
 104, 105, 108 *seq.*, 211
note and *seq.*, 227, 252,
 254, 259; viii, 214, 219
 and *note*, 285
 Sásán and, vi, 212
 daughter of, marries Sásán,
 160, vi, 213
 mother of Ardashír Pápa-
 kán, viii, 214
 Ardawán's letter to, vi, 214
 dies, vi, 218
 kindred of, support Ardashír
 Pápakán, vi, 223 *seq.*
- Pápakán Ardashír. *See* Ardashír
 Pápakán.
- Parable, Mazdak's, vii, 201
- Paradise Lost* referred to, vi, 71
- Parí, i, 83, 172
- Paris, city, MSS. of the Pseudo-
 Callisthenes in National
 Library at, vi, 14
- Parmúda (*see too* Khán of Chín),
 170, 171, viii, 75, 117, 130,
 136 *seq.*, 146, 149 *seq.*, 164,
 174
 hears of Bahrám Chúbína's
 victory and takes counsel,
 viii, 131
 marches toward Jíhún, viii,
 131
- Parmúda, approaches Balkh,
 viii, 134
 attacks and is defeated by
 Bahrám Chúbína, viii,
 134 *seq.*
 escapes to Áwáza, viii, 138
 besieged by Bahrám Chúbína,
 viii, 138 *seq.*
 negotiates surrender of
 Áwáza with Bahrám Chúbína,
 viii, 139 *seq.*
 surrenders Áwáza and sets
 out for Írán, viii, 143
 insulted by Bahrám Chúbína,
 viii, 144
 Bahrám Chúbína tries to
 placate, viii, 145
- Párs (Persis, Fársistán), country
 on the eastern shores of
 the Persian Gulf, 142, 153,
 160, i, 351, 353, *seq.*, 357,
 368, 371; ii, 23, 28, 76,
 101, 226, 275, 286, 362,
 410; iv, 146, 256, 269,
 270, 318; v, 293; vi, 17,
 25, 32 *note*, 37, 45, 115,
 119, 194 and *passim*; vii,
 86, 90, 95, 190, 194, 201,
 206, 214, 224; viii, 109
note, 112, 216, 241, 393,
 395; ix, 68
 corpse of Darius Codomanus
 sent to, vi, 33
 Ardashír Pápakán flees to, vi,
 220
 marches from, against Ar-
 dawán, vi, 227
 returns to, vi, 229
 Íránians, after the death of
 Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
 meet to consult in, vi, 394
- Parsís, ix, 64
- Part Kings. *See* Tribal Kings.
- Parthia, kingdom, v, 10
 Hystaspes governor of, v,
 10
- Parthian, Parthians, i 10, 60, 64;
 vi, 203, 256, 322; vii, 156;
 viii, 73
 conquest of Írán by, i, 19
 Zoroastrianism under, i, 63

- Parthian, dynasty, iii, 9, 11 ; v, 281 ; vi, 194, 201
uses the title of King of kings, vi, 197
Great King, vi, 198
history, events of, reproduced in distorted form in Sháhnáma, iii, 11
kingdom, ii, 80
- Parwíz, Íránian chief, vi, 394
Parwíz, meaning of, viii, 187.
See too Khusrau Parwíz.
- Pashan (Ládan), battle of, iii, 15, 80, 89 ; iv, 27, 36, 42, 90, 206 ; viii, 397 and *note*
- Pashang, father of Minúchihr, i, 90 ; iii, 25 (?) ; iv, 136, marries daughter of Íraj ; i, 205
- Pashang, ruler of Túrán and father of Afrásiyáb, 142 ; i, 92, 336, 337 ; ii, 11, 13, 18, 20, 21, 297, 401 ; iii, 15 ; iv, 78, 136, 151, 174, 222, 266, 289
consults his chiefs as to war with Írán, i, 342
bids Afrásiyáb invade Írán, i, 343, 375
advised by Ighrírás not to make war, i, 344
overrules Ighrírás, i, 344
Afrásiyáb's letter to, i, 346
wroth with Afrásiyáb, i, 374
- Pashang (Shída, *q.v.*), son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92 ; iii, 15
- Pashín, son of Kai Kubád. *See* Kai Pashín.
- Pashín, Íránian noble, vi, 408
- Patashwárgar, region, vi, 202 and *note*
- Pát-khusrau, brother of Gush-tásp, v, 26
- Patrician, iv, 348
- Patrons of Firdausi, i, 29
- Pauravas, Indian race and dynasty, vi, 31
- Paurúshasp. *See* Pourushaspa.
- Perfumes, invention of, i, 133
- Periods, mythic and historic, of Sháhnáma, i, 49, 53
- Perozes (Pírúz), Sásánian king, vii, 159
- Persepolis (Istakhr), city in Párs, vi, 31, 32 *note*, 373 ; ix, 65
buildings at, attributed to Humái, v, 293
- Zoroastrian scriptures said to have been burnt at, i, 63
- Persia, i, 308 ; ii, 191 ; iii, 109, 128 ; iv, 8 ; v, 306 *note* ; vi, 61, 278 ; vii, 118, 129, 381 ; viii, 195 ; ix, 66
- Chess brought to, vi, 201 ; vii, 280, 284 *seq.*
- Fables of Bidpai brought to, vii, 213, 423 *seq.*
- Persian, Persians, i, 6, 8 *seq.*, 73, 74 ; ii, 190 ; v, 74 ; vi, 30, 44, 45, 81, 143, 148, 157, 170, 201 and *passim*
- bard, quoted, vii, 265
- dispute with the Rúmans over Sikandar's burial, vi, 184
- empire, ii, 9 ; vi, 197, ix, 65
- war of, with Rúm, viii, 41
- history and legend in relation to Greek history and legend, ii, 9
- language, vi, 147, 205 ; vii, 134, 140, 143, 430 ; ix, 12, 65
- monks introduce the silk-worm into Europe, vi, 204
- mutilation of captives, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
- sea or gulf, vi, 204, 205, ix, 66, 68
- swords, vii, 135
- wisdom-literature, vii, 278 *seq.*, viii, 3
- verse, vii, 383
- Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 383
- conquest of Yaman, viii, 24 *note*
- raid Syria, viii, 41

- Persian Persians, defeat by
Romans referred to, viii,
72
war with Turks, viii, 72
Book of Kings, viii, 73
Tabari. See Tabari.
=Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 113
=Hurmuzd, viii, 116, 117
prince=Bahrám Chúbina,
viii, 319
ideas on marriage, ix, 7
=Ashtád and Kharrád, ix,
24
exonerate Shúfn, ix, 38
win 'The Battle of the
Bridge,' ix, 67
fail in attack on Híra, ix, 67
defeat of, at Kádisiya, ix,
67, 84
Jalúlá, ix, 68
Nahávand, ix, 69
Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy
to, ix, 69
robes, ix, 94
transcribe Sháhnáma for
Firdausí, ix, 121
Persica, of Ktesias, v, 293
Persis (Párs, Fársistán), vi, 195
Peshó-tanu (Bishútan *q.v.*), v,
12
Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, ix,
3, 7
Petroleum, in ancient cult and
modern industry, i, 56 *seq.*
Pharasmānes, King of Khárazm,
vi, 72
Philip II of Macedon, (Faiakús,
B.C. 382-336), father of
Alexander the Great, i,
55 *note*, vi, 16, 29
Nectanebus and, story of,
vi, 18
names his son Alexander,
vi, 19
Philon, Macedonian noble, vi, 76
Philosophers, Greek, enter-
tained by Núshírwán, vii,
280
Phocas, Eastern Roman Em-
peror, viii, 187, 189, 193,
194
Phosphor, morning star, ii, 123
Photius, quoted, viii, 194
Phraates II, Parthian king,
(B.C. 128-127), ii, 10, 81
Phraates=Farhád, iii, 11
Phrygians, the, vi, 71
Píl, as rhyme-word, i, 75
Pillar, Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 92, 160,
161, 164
Pilsam, Túránian hero, 144, 146,
ii, 112 *seq.*, 320, 323 *note*,
350 *seq.*; iii, 204
pleads for Siyáwush, ii, 315
summons Pírán to save Far-
angís, ii, 322
Pírán, son of Wisa, Túránian
hero, cousin, commander-
in-chief, and counsellor of
Afrásiyáb, 145, 146, 148-
152, i, 92; ii, 3, 112, 188,
257 *seq.*, 264, 277, 291,
311, 315, 319, 335, 350,
370, 377, 379 *seq.*, 397,
398; iii, 13, 26 *note*, 39,
42, 58, 90, 91, 98 *seq.*, 102,
108, 120, 122, 123, 125,
142, 149 *seq.*, 158, 160,
161, 169, 181 *seq.*, 192, 193,
199 *seq.*, 216 *seq.*, 222,
227, 232, 234, 242, 252,
253, 259, 305 *seq.*, 335 *seq.*,
349, 350, 357; iv, 7, 10
seq., 15 *seq.*, 29 *seq.*, 36,
38, 41, 47, 59 *seq.*, 88 *seq.*,
93 *seq.*, 103, 106 *seq.*, 117,
118, 129, 134, 145, 159,
160, 162, 205, 206; viii,
414
character of, i, 55
identical with Harpagus in
legend, ii, 191
advises Afrásiyáb to receive
Siyáwush, ii, 253 *note* and
seq.
goes to welcome Siyáwush,
ii, 258 *seq.*
daughter of, 145. See Jaríra.
arranges marriages for
Siyáwush, 145, ii, 208
seq.
entertains Siyáwush, ii, 278

- Pírán, offers to help Siyáwush to build Gang-dizh, ii, 278
 prophecy of Siyáwush to, ii, 282 *seq.*
 goes to collect tribute, ii, 285
 visits Siyáwush, ii, 287
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 288
 summoned to save Farangís, ii, 322 *seq.*
 pleads for Farangís, ii, 324
 takes charge of Farangís, ii, 325
 dreams of Siyáwush, ii, 325
 protects the infant Kai Khusrau, ii, 326 *seq.*
 advises Afrásiyáb respecting Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
 sends Kulbád and Nastíhan to pursue Kai Khusrau, ii, 377
 overthrown with his host by Gív, ii, 385
 appeals to Kai Khusrau, ii, 386
 released, ii, 387
 describes Gív's prowess to Afrásiyáb, ii, 389
 disgraced, ii, 390
 retires to Khutan, ii, 390
 appointed to oppose the Íránians, iii, 71, 79
 marches on Giravgard to surprise the Íránians, iii, 80
 captures the Íránians' herds, iii, 81
 defeats the Íránians, iii, 82, 94
 Ruhhám's embassy to, iii, 87
 grants a month's armistice to Fariburz, iii, 88
 losses of, in battle, iii, 94
 takes half of Káwa's standard, iii, 94
 sends Rúin to attack Bahráh, iii, 98
 goes to see Bahráh, iii, 99
 hears of the Íránians' retreat, iii, 105
 informs Afrásiyáb and returns in triumph, iii, 106
- Pírán, goes to Khutan, iii, 107
 goes to oppose Tús, iii, 117
 informs Afrásiyáb of the Íránian invasion, iii, 118
 reinforced, iii, 118
 joins battle with Tús, iii, 118
 sends a warlock to bring a snowstorm on the Íránians, iii, 128
 defeats the Íránians, iii, 131
 takes counsel with his chiefs, iii, 133
 pursues the Íránians, iii, 134
 sends Lahhák and Húmán on in advance, iii, 135
 reaches Mount Hamáwan, iii, 137
 beleaguers the Íránians, iii, 138
 attacked by Tús, iii, 139
 hears of the approach of reinforcements, iii, 151
 harangues his host, iii, 151
 goes to meet his allies, iii, 153
 plan of campaign of, rejected, iii, 162
 hears of the arrival of Íránian succours, iii, 164 *seq.*
 Rustam, iii, 174
 takes counsel with Kámús and the chiefs, iii, 175, 182
 attacks the Íránians, iii, 176
 describes Rustam to Kámús, iii, 183
 parleys with Rustam, iii, 202
 reports to his kindred his interview with Rustam, iii, 206
 declines Rustam's terms, iii, 217
 retreats, iii, 231
 counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 253
 urges Afrásiyáb to withdraw to Chín, iii, 265
 city of, iii, 335
 entertains Rustam in disguise, iii, 335
 pursues Rustam, iii, 349
 sent by Afrásiyáb to invade Írán, iv, 11

- Pírán, holds parley with Gív, iv, 20
 informs Afrásiyáb, iv, 20
 receives reinforcements, iv, 20
 rejects Gív's overtures, iv, 21
 occupies Kanábad, iv, 22
 arrays his host, iv, 25
 gives the centre to Húmán iv, 25
 left to Burjásp, iv, 26
 right to Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 26
 sets scouts on the mountain-top, iv, 26
 dissuades Húmán from fighting, iv, 30
 hears of Húmán's death, iv, 51
 sends Nastíhan to make a night-attack, iv, 53
 hears of Nastíhan's death, iv, 55
 attacks Gúdarz, iv, 55
 proposes terms to Gúdarz, iv, 63
 sends Rúín with letter to Gúdarz, iv, 67
 receives Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74
 harangues his troops and prepares for battle, iv, 75
 sends messenger to Afrásiyáb, iv, 75
 receives Afrásiyáb's reply, iv, 80
 becomes despondent, iv, 81, 98
 sends Lahhák and Farshíward to take the Íránians in flank, iv, 82
 fights with Gív, iv, 84
 appeals to Lahhák and Farshíward for help, iv, 85
 announces the proposed Battle of Eleven Rukhs, iv, 94
 gives the chief command to Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 94
- Pírán, instructs them, iv, 95
 holds a parley with Gúdarz and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*
 steed of, slain by Gúdarz, iv, 107
 falls under his steed and is injured, iv, 107
 flees from Gúdarz, iv, 107
 refuses to surrender, iv, 108
 wounds Gúdarz, iv, 108
 slain by Gúdarz, iv, 109
 lamented for by Lahhák and Farshíward, iv, 112
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
 buried with the Túránian champions by Kai Khusrau, iv, 128
 death of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 151
 treasures of, taken possession of by Afrásiyáb, iv, 219
- Pírúz (Perozes), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 153, 178 *seq.*, 335, 359; viii, 73, 75, 108, 242, 245, 267, 285
 passed over in the succession by Yazdagird, vii, 155
 helped by the Haitálans, vii, 156, 157
 defeats Hurmuz, vii, 157
 Hurmuz pardoned by, vii, 150, 158
 Reign of, 166, vii, 159 *seq.*
 Note on, vii, 159 *seq.*
 calamities of, vii, 159
 title of, vii, 159
 relic of, vii, 159
 measures of, against drought vii, 159, 162
 cities of, vii, 159, 163
 expedition of, against the Haitálans, vii, 159, 164 *seq.*
 tradition of, vii, 160
 in mythical story, vii, 161

- Pírúz (Perozes), Bahrám Gúr's pillar said to have been moved by, vii, 161
 daughter of, taken prisoner, vii, 161
 child of, the wife of Kubád, vii, 161, 184
 accession of, vii, 161
 advances against Khúshnawáz, vii, 164
 gives the van to Hurmuz, vii, 164
 gives the rear to Kubád, vii, 164
 gives the regency to Balásh, vii, 164
 makes Súfarai (Sarkhán) minister to Balásh, vii, 164 and *note*
 replies to the appeal of Khúshnawáz, vii, 165, 167
 defeated by Khúshnawáz, vii, 168
 death of, vii, 168
 Íránian tradition of the revenge for, vii, 170
 Súfarai determines to avenge, vii, 173
- Pírúz, Íránian chief, vii, 85
- Pírúz, Íránian general, vii, 187
- Pírúz, Íránian warrior, vii, 219, 273 *seq.*
 exhorts Núshzád to yield, vii, 273
- Pírúz, father of Ustád, viii, 296
- Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírwí, 175
 appointed general, ix, 44
 letter of Guráz to, ix, 46
 takes counsel, ix, 46
 writes to Guráz, ix, 47
 Guráz marches against, ix, 48
 appeals to Tukhár, ix, 48
 feasts with Ardshír, ix, 48
 informs Guráz of the death of Ardshír, ix, 51
 put to death, ix, 57
- Pírúz, Íránian prince, ix, 59
- Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Íránian noble, takes Rustam's letter to Sa'ad, ix, 80, 81
- Pírúzán, Persian general, commands Persian forces at Nahávand, ix, 68
 slain, ix, 69
- Pírúz-Rám (Rám-Pírúz), city built by Pírúz, 166, vii, 159, 163
- Pírúz Shápúr (Ambar *q.v.*), vi, 327, 357
- Pisces, constellation, i, 310 and *note*; ii, 407; iii, 26, 159, 318; iv, 364; vi, 395; vii, 245; viii, 51, 342; ix, 71
- Pishdádian, Pishdádians, i, 116, 373; vii, 161, 171
 Dynasty, i, 49, 115 *seq.*, 122; ii, 9, 336; iii, 9, 13; vi, 194
- Plague. *See* Pestilence.
- Planets, the seven, vi, 206; vii, 408
 created by Áhriman, i, 52
 evil influence of, i, 52
 symbolized in the game of nard, vii, 382
- Plato (Falátún), Greek philosopher (B.C. 427-347), vii, 100 *note*
- Planisphere, ii, 215, 216
- Pleiads, Pleiades, i, 114, 205, 244, 245, 267, 332; ii, 148, 282, 394, 408; iv, 183, 245, 329; v, 110, 131; vi, 169, 401; vii, 365; viii, 53, 158
- Plutarch, Greek writer (A.D. 46-120), vi, 67
- Poll-tax, vii, 215, 225
- Polo, game of, 145, ii, 263 *seq.*, 292; iv, 349, 350; vi, 329, 379, 382; vii, 57, 118, 143, 235; viii, 246, 247, 258, 371; ix, 16
- episode in Kárnámak and Sháhnáma, vi, 196, 257, 263, 271
 -stick, ii, 292; iv, 350; vi, 271, 272; vii, 118; viii, 247

- Porus (Hôr 700), Indian king,
 vi, 17, 60, 70, 83
 son of, vi, 18, 63
 Darius' letter to, vi, 31
 origin of name of, vi, 31
 kingdom of, vi, 31
 Alexander and, historical
 account of, vi, 63
 in the Pseudo-Callisthe-
 nes, vi, 64, 67
 statue of, vi, 64
 nephew of, vi, 80
 Pourushaspa, father of Zar-
 duhsht (Zoroaster), ii, 9;
 v, 14, 15, 17
 Prefatory Note, vii, v
 Prelate, *or* bishop *q.v.*, iv, 341,
 348; vi, 184
 as militarist, iv, 197; v,
 306; vi, 124; viii, 47
 and *note*
 Prelude, to Shâhnâma, i, 99 *seq.*
 Kai Kâús, ii, 29
 Suhrâb, ii, 119
 Siyâwush, ii, 191
 Kai Khusrâu, iii, 15
 Farûd, iii, 37
 Kâmus, iii, 110
 Akwân, iii, 272
 Bîzhan and Manîzha, iii, 287
 Battle of the Twelve Rukhs,
 iv, 9
 Rustam and Shaghâd, v, 261
 Nûshîrwân, vii, 220
 Hurmuzd, viii, 77
 Presbyter, iv, 348
 Prithâ, Indian princess, iv, 316
 Procopius, Byzantine historian
 (6th century A.D.), vii, 187
 Prometheus, i, 57
 Pronunciation, Note on, preced-
 ing text in each volume.
 Property-tax, remission of, 165
 Prophet, the, Praise of, 139
 Proverb, i, 194, 195, 197; vii,
 185; viii, 187
 Pseudo - Callisthenes, Greek
 Romance of Alexander
 the Great, ii, 9; vi,
 30 *seq.*, 62 *seq.*, 71, 72,
 74 *seq.*
 Pseudo-Calisthenes, account and
 versions of, vi, 13 *seq.*,
 17
 version of, vi, 17
 treatise of Palladius inter-
 polated in, vi, 61
 Alexander and Porus in, vi,
 64
 historic elements in, vi, 83
 Egyptian elements in, vi, 83
 Persian elements in, vi, 83
 Arabic elements in, vi, 83
 diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
 Ptolemy, son of Lagus, one of
 Alexander the Great's
 generals, king of Egypt
 (B.C. 323-283), and his-
 torian, vi, 12, 13, 66
 Pûlâd, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 64,
 93; iii, 256; iv, 296 and
note; v, 204
 Pûlâd, Íránian hero, ii, 22
 Pûlâd, Túránian hero, ii, 264;
 iii, 199, 234
 Pûlâdwand, Túránian hero *or*
 div, 149; iii, 191, 268,
 270
 summoned by Afrâsiyâb, iii,
 254
 goes to help Afrâsiyâb, iii,
 255
 takes counsel with Afrâ-
 siyâb, iii, 256
 worsts Tús, iii, 257
 Gív, Ruhhâm, and Bîz-
 han, iii, 258
 cleaves in twain Kâwa's
 standard, iii, 258
 challenged by Rustam, iii,
 259
 overthrown by Rustam, iii,
 264
 withdraws with his army
 from the field, iii, 265
 Pun-t (Berbera *q.v.*), ii, 79
 Pûrandukht, Shâh, 175, v, 294;
 vi, 3; ix, 56
 reproaches Kubâd, ix, 17
 makes Shahrângurâz prime
 minister, ix, 56
 True Cross and, ix, 56

Purmáya (Barmaiún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91; v, 261
 referred to, i, 147, 165
 Kaiánúsh and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158
 go with Farídún against Zakhák, i, 159
 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160
 Pusfarrukh, ix, 50
 Python, Apollo and the, vi, 203

Q

QUEEN OF CHÍN (wife of the Khán), viii, 190
 daughter of, slain by lion-ape, viii, 322
 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324
 steward of, plots with Khar-rád against Bahrám Chúbína viii, 335
 daughter of, cured by Khar-rád, viii, 336
 grants boon to Khar-rád, viii, 338
 disgraced, viii, 344
 Questions, Mountain of the Holy, i, 62
 hard, vii, 102 *seq.*
 Quince, omen of the, ix, 13, 14
 Quintus Curtius, Roman writer (1st century A.D.), vi, 65
 on the Amazons, vi, 72

R

RACES, duplicate in West and East, vi, 68
 fair-haired, vi, 73
 Rád, ruler of Zábulistán, vii, 86
 Ráda, Mount, ix, 91, 94
 Rádwi, archimage
 pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-dagird, ix, 102

Rai, city and district near Tih-rán, 174, i, 363, 366 *seq.*; ii, 23, 399; iii, 242; iv, 147, 255, 256; v, 14, 18; vi, 32, 202, 219, 229; vii, 84, 160, 184; viii, 72, 155, 166, 171, 173, 174, 189, 214, 216, 240; ix, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96
 seat of the Magi, i, 60
 Khár of. *See* Khár. i, 368, 374, 381
 Ardawán's capital, vi, 201
 Shápúr of, vii, 184, 185, 191, 192
 seat of Arsacid power, viii, 72
 Bahrám Chúbína goes to, viii, 306
 Khusrau Parwíz oppresses, viii, 365
 misery of, viii, 367
 Gurdaya delivers, viii, 368
 Rái. *See* Rája.
 Raibad, town, about twenty miles west of Nishápúr, and district east of the Jagatai range, in Khurásán*, iv, 17, 22, 23, 47, 55, 76, 88, 112, 134
 occupied by Gúdarz, iv, 16
 arrival of Kai Khusrau at, iv, 111, 126
 Rája (Rái) of Hind, *temp.* Luh-rásp, iv, 321; ix, 17
temp. Núshírwán, 169, vii, 140 and *note*, 143, 424
 proposes wager to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 385, 387
 receives game of nard from Núshírwán, vii, 5, 381, 389 *seq.*
 fails to discover how to play the game, vii, 392
 pays forfeit to Núshírwán, vii, 393
 receives Núshírwán's gifts from Barzwí, vii, 425

*The village of Riwad to the south of the range may perhaps indicate what was once the western boundary of the district.

- Rāja, assists Barzai in his mission to Hind, vii, 428
 letter of, ix, 17
 put in charge of Shinn, ix, 17
- Rakhsh, Rustam's steed, 142, i, 386; ii, 13, 42 *seq.*, 67, 74, 94, 97, 110, 116, 139, 143, 311, 354; iii, 146, 177, 186, 189, 194, 195, 223, 224, 226, 227, 229, 259, 264, 275, 276, 278, 279, 313, 324, 329, 335, 342, 344, 346 *seq.*, 350, 352; iv, 295; v, 117, 184, 192, 198, 207, 208, 214, 219, 228 *seq.*, 234 *seq.*, 266, 275
 caught by Rustam, i, 378 *seq.*
 described, i, 379, 380
 care taken of, i, 380
 slays a lion, ii, 45
 encounters a dragon, ii, 48
 stolen by Turkmans, ii, 121 *seq.*
 sire of Shuráb's charger, ii, 128
 saddled by Giv, Ruhhám, and Tús for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
 referred to, iii, 184, 228, 253; v, 199
 wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229
 returns home without Rustam, v, 229
 Rustam's thought of abandoning, v, 235
 healed by the Símurgh, v, 237
 tries to save Rustam, v, 270
 falls into the pit, v, 270
 body of, taken from pit by Farámaiz, v, 275
 tomb of, v, 276
 lord of=Rustam, v, 306
- Rakhshasas, vi, 13
- Rakka (Callinicus, Káliniyús *q.v.*, Nicephorium, Warigh), city, viii, 188
- Rám, personification of the Divine Grace, i, 374. *See* mountain-sheep.
 Rustam's life saved by a, ii, 46
 constellation, ii, 299; v, 129
- Rám, Fire-temple, vi, 202, 226
- Rám, Íránian warrior, viii, 291
- Rám Ardshír, city, vi, 202, 290 and *note*
- Rám Barzín, high priest and general, 167, vii, 275
 Kubád's testament kept by, vii, 210
 Núshírwán's instructions to, concerning Núshzád, vii, 267 *seq.*
 goes to fight with Núshzád, vii, 272
 hears of Núshzád's last wishes, vii, 276
- Rám Barzín, Persian official, viii, 313
- Rámbihisht, wife of Sásán, vi, 198
- Rám Hurmuz, city in Khúzistán, east of Ahwáz, vi, 199
 plain of, vi, 199
- Rámishn - i - Ardshír, district, vi, 202
- Rám Kubád (Aragán), city, vii, 188
- Rám Pirúz. *See* Pirúz Rám.
- Rangwí, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
- Rasafa, viii, 188
- Rashnawád, captain of the host to Humái, 158
 assembles troops, v, 301
 Dáráb enlists under, v, 301
 host of, reviewed by Húmái, v, 302
 marches on Rúm, v, 302
 and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
 gives presents to Dáráb, v, 304
 questions Dáráb, v, 304
 sends for the launderer and his wife, v, 304

- Rashnawád, Dáráb and, defeat the Rûmans, v, 305, 306
 praises Dáráb, v, 305, 306
 offers Dáráb the spoil, v, 306
 grants peace to Caesar, v, 307
 returns to Írán, v, 307
 hears from the launderer and his wife about the case of Dáráb, v, 308
 writes to Humái about the case of Dáráb, v, 308
 appears with Dáráb before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*
- Rás-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr, *q.v.*), city, vi, 255, 256
- Ratl, weight, vi, 156 and *note*
- Raven, Raven-head, ix, 91 and *note*, 95 *note*, 96
- Ravi (Hydraotes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Rawalpindi, town and district in the Punjáb, vi, 62
- Rawlinson, Sir Henry, his account of Gotarzes' inscription at Bihistún, iii, 9
- Rawlinson, Professor, vi, 253
- Red Sea, ii, 364
- Reeds (bamboos), vi, 71
 gigantic, seen by Sikandar, vi, 148
 used in house-building, vi, 71, 148
- Religion, War of the, v, 19, 26
 two campaigns of, v, 29
- Remus, *See* Romulus.
- Reseph, viii, 188
- Responses, of Núshírwán, viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*
- Revellers, Rosary of, ix, 38, 40
- Rhyme-words, i, 74; ii, 228 *note*; v, 261; vi, 372; vii, 88 and *note*, 89 and *note*, 174 and *note*, 245 and *note*, 263 and *note*
- Firdausí and, viii, 397 *note*
- Ridge of Gushtásp, v, 29
- Rív-Ardshír, city east of the Jaráhi river near the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 202
 referred to, vi, 224
- Rívíníz, son-in-law of Tús, 147, iii, 14, 25, 45, 57, 60, 71
 prepares to attack Farúd, iii, 51
 referred to, iii, 55
 burial of, iii, 68
- Rívíníz, son of Kai Káuś, ii, 3; iii, 14, 96, 113, 114, 232
 slain, iii, 93
 battle for crown of, iii, 94
- Rívíníz, son of Zarasp, iv, 360
 Zarír and, go to Rúm, iv, 360
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
- Rízmihr (Zarmihr), son of Súfaraí, 166, vii, 207; viii, 169
 identical with Súfaraí, vii, 185
 Kubád and, go to the Hattáians, vii, 186
 fate of, vii, 186
 loyalty of, to Kubád, vii, 196
 helps Kubád to escape from prison, vii, 197
 negotiates a marriage for Kubád, vii, 197
 made chief minister, vii, 200
- Rizwán, angel, ii, 39 and *note*, 288
- Roc, mythical bird, i, 51, 235
- Roman, Romans, i, 10; iii, 286; vi, 254, 318, 325, 326; vii, 214; viii, 188, 189, 195; ix, 50, 66
 relations of, with the Íráni-ans, i, 14
 empire, Eastern, i, 373; vi, 253
 war of, with Persian, viii, 41, 193
 Alexander's legendary visit to, vi, 30
 emperors, vi, 321, 371, 372
 neglect the defences of the Caucasus, vii, 187
 so-called tribute of, to Persia, vii, 187
 treatment of Munzir by, vii, 217
 leads to war with Núshírwán, vii, 217

- Romans, defeat Bahrán Chūbāna, viii, 76
- Romance of Alexander the Great (Pseudo-Callisthenes, *q.v.*), vi, 11 *seq.*, 88
- incorporation of, in Sháh-nāma, vi, 16
- vogue of, vi, 17
- sources of marvels in, vi, 12, 69
- diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Rome, vi, 194, 197, 203, 301, 324
- Shápúr son of Ardshír's wars with, vi, 294, 297
- Bahrán Gúr's war with, vi, 373
- Romulus and Remus, foundling legend of, v, 293
- Rook, piece in chess. See Rukh.
- Rosary of Revellers, ix, 38, 40
- Roxana (Rúshanak, *q.v.*), vi, 33
- Alexander and, vi, 30
- account of, vi, 32
- Rúdāba, daughter of Mihráb king of Kābul, wife of Zál, and mother of Rustam, 141, 157, i, 145, 200; ii, 44, 180; v, 182, 184, 190 *note*
- Story of Zál and, i, 256 *seq.* referred to, iii, 285
- Zál hears of, i, 257
- description of, i, 257, 259, 264, 266, 272
- hears of Zál, i, 260
- falls in love with Zál, i, 260
- handmaids of, go in quest of Zál, i, 263
- interview Zál, i, 266
- invite Zál to visit Rúdāba, i, 267
- reproached by the porter, i, 267
- describe Zál, i, 268
- prepares to receive Zál, i, 269
- entertains, and plights her troth to, Zál, i, 272
- Zál consults the archimages on the matter of, i, 273
- Rúdāba, go-between of, with Zál, i, 280
- Zál sends Sám's letter to, i, 280
- rewards her go-between, i, 281
- go between of, discovered by Síndukht, i, 281
- reproached by her parents, i, 282, 287
- congratulated by Síndukht, i, 315
- seen and admired by Sám, i, 318
- married to Zál, i, 318
- Zál and, go to Sístán, i, 319
- grievous travail of, i, 320
- saved by the Simurgh, i, 321
- Caesarean operation performed upon, i, 322
- gives birth to Rustam, i, 322
- fasts in sorrow for Rustam, v, 278
- frenzy of, v, 278
- regains her wits, v, 279
- referred to, v, 190, 289
- lamentation of, v, 289
- Rúdagí, Persian poet, versifies the Fables of Bidpai, vii, 383, 431
- Rúdbár, district, v, 30
- Rúdyáb, father of Pápak (in Sháh-nāma), vi, 200, 212
- Rue, wild, as a prophylactic, i, 380
- Ruhhám, son of Gúdarz, Íránian hero, ii, 4, 62, 73, 144, 158, 340; iii, 19, 33, 48, 67, 115, 120 *seq.*, 139 *seq.*, 154, 157, 182, 187, 211, 248, 259, 264, 268, 273, 322, 350, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 31, 37, 147; vii, 156
- helps to saddle Rakhsh for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
- mortally wounds Farúd, iii, 64
- embassy of, to Pírán, iii, 87
- attacks Bázúr, iii, 128

- Ruhhám, worsted by Ashkabús, iii, 179
 goes to the help of Rustam, iii, 227
 worsted by Púládward, iii, 258
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 commands the left wing, iv, 24
 superseded *pro tem*, by Farhád, iv, 92
 chosen to fight with Bármán iv, 97
 slays Bármán, iv, 102
 sent by Gúdarz to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110
 acts as Kai Khusrau's standard-bearer in his combat with Shída, iv, 171
 protests against Kai Khusrau's fighting on foot with Shída, iv, 174
 holds Kai Khusrau's steed, iv, 175
 instructed by Kai Khusrau to bury Shída, iv, 176
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
- Ruhhám, king of Rai, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Ruhhám, Íránian warrior, vii, 156
 helps Pírúz to gain the throne, vii, 156, 186; viii, 73
- Rúin, son of Pírán, 151, i, 92; iii, 207, 234; iv, 10, 71, 90, 102, 152, 153, 162
 summons Pírán to save Farangís, ii, 323 and *note*
 sent by Pírán to attack Bahrám, iii, 98
 wounded by Bahrám, iii, 99
 put in command of ambush, iv, 26
 bears letter from Pírán to Gúdarz, iv, 67
- Rúin, entertained by Gúdarz, iv, 68
 returns to Pírán with Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74
 goes to help Pírán against Gív and is defeated, iv, 84
 chosen to fight with Bízhan, iv, 97
 slain by Bízhan, iv, 103
- Rúina, place, ix, 91
- Rukh, piece in chess (castle), vii, 385, 423
 position of, iv, 8, ; vii, 388, 422
 move of, iv, 8; vii, 422
- Rukhs, Battle of the Twelve, 151;
 iv, 7 *seq.*
 meaning of, iv, 7
 Battle of the Eleven, 151,
 iv, 88
 arranged by Gúdarz and Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*
 Firdausi's reflections on, iv, 7, 98, 106
 referred to, v, 29; vii, 156
- Rúm, the Eastern Roman Empire, 151, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, i, 15, 229; ii, 143, 297, 307, 360; iii, 106, 151, 164, 296; iv, 14, 133, 148, 196, 197, 208, 272, 312, 314, 316, 317, 323 *seq.*, 330, 331, 333 *seq.*, 339, 341 *seq.*, 345, 348, 349, 352, 353, 355, 356, 359, 361, 364; v, 75, 76, 102, 180, 188, 262, 301, 305; vi, 40, 41, 45, 51, 53, 81, 94, 104, 113 *seq.*, and *passim*
 king of = Mahmúd, i, 113
 = Sikandar, vi, 172
 West and, Salm's portion, i, 189
 brocade of, i, 157, 183, 210, 252, 263, 316 and *passim*; iii, 26, 235, 291, 297, 355; iv, 128, 271, 304; v, 295; vi, 56, 89; vii, 64, 67, 276, 384; viii, 157, 173, 278, 337, 367, 374; ix, 99, 101

- Rúm, helm of, iii, 114
 sea of, iii, 177
 city in, founded by Salm, iv, 325
 ravaged by Rashnawád and Dáráb, v, 307
 ambassadors from, come to Dáráb, vi, 21
 Dáráb wars with, vi, 22
 prince of, vi, 22
 chiefs of, vi, 23, 153
 withdraw on Dáráb's approach, vi, 23
 tribute of, to Írán, vi, 24
 explained, vii, 187
 ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35
 reed (pen) of, vi, 85
 stuffs of, vi, 143
 philosophers of, vi, 115, 154; viii, 279, 382
 cavaliers of, vi, 167
 Sháh of=Sikandar, vi, 170
 Sikandar's policy to safeguard, vi, 178
 Arastálís' advice to Sikandar concerning, vi, 179
 invaded by Shápúr, vi, 350
 slave-girls of, chosen by Bahrám Gúí, vi, 382
 Bahrám Gúr's war with, vii, 4, 5, 84
 Núshírwán's wars with, vii, 213
 robes of, viii, 308
 captured cities of, restored to, viii, 312
 monks of, slain by Máhwi, ix, 113
- Rúman, Rúmans, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, iii, 309; iv, 357, 390, 393; v, 173, 205, 292; vi, 44, 45, 101 *seq.*, 113, 114, 127, 142, 148, 168, 170, 179 *seq.*, and *passim*
 slaves, i, 252; vi, 382; vii, 54, 259
 invade Írán, v, 301
 defeated by Rashnawád and Dáráb, v, 305 *seq.*
- Rúman, Rúmans, king of=Philip of Macedon, vi, 19
 carry out works in Írán, vi, 21
 =Sikandar, vi, 50, 52, 154
 Íránians ask quarter of, vi, 51
 tongue, vi, 160; vii, 256, 261
 dispute with the Persians as to Sikandar's burial, vi, 184
 sages, vi, 185
 their sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, vi, 1, 85, *seq.*
 silk, vi, 280; vii, 424
 defeated by Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 297
 engineers build bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 299
 astrologic tablets, vi, 376
 eunuchs, vii, 67; viii, 279
 pen, vii, 73
 helmet, vii, 89, 272, 274
 bishop, vii, 275, 276
 envoy, viii, 8 *seq.*
 surrender to Núshírwán, viii, 47
 entrench themselves, viii, 47
 sue for peace and pay tribute viii, 51 *seq.*
 architect, viii, 193, 401
 marches, viii, 252
 robes, viii, 253
 helms, viii, 105, 276, 417
 worsted by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 292
 artificers imprisoned by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 402
 released by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 403
- Rúmiya (New Antioch, Súrśán *q.v.*), a suburb of Ctesiphon (Taisafún) on the east bank of the Tigris, vii, 218
- Rús (Russia), vi, 19; viii, 406
 king of, vi, 22

- Rúshanak (Roxana, *q.v.*), daughter of Dárá (in Sháhnama) and wife of Sikandar, 158, 159, ii, 3; vi, 86 *seq.*, 188
 account of, vi, 32
 derivation of, vi, 33
 bestowed by Dárá on Sikandar, vi, 55
 son of, vi, 81, 181
 visited by Náhíd, vi, 89
 married to Sikandar, vi, 90
 reference in Sikandar's Will, to, vi, 181
- Rúshan Pírúz, city, vii, 160
- Russia, vi, 19
- Russian, Russians, vi, 19
 empire, vi, 19
 foundation of, vi, 19
 cloth, ix, 110
- Rustam, son of Zál, Íránian national hero, 141-150, 153, 154, 156, 157, i, 42, 63, 90, 174, 235 *seq.*, 376 *seq.*; ii, 4, 18, 25, 34, 35, 42 *seq.*, 79, 92 *seq.*, 188, 236, 237, 271, 286, 290, 311, 316, 318, 319, 335, 344 *seq.*, 349 *seq.*, 371, 372, 380, 394, 400; iii, 24, 35, 36, 40, 107 *seq.*, 121, 134, 138, 141 *seq.*, 155, 164 *seq.*, 182 *seq.*, 294, 307, 308; iv 11, 13, 27, 30, 65, 157, 167, 172, 198, 226, 227, 277, 285, 289, 292, 319, 324; v, 9, 22, 30, 50, 73, 86, 165, 254 *seq.*, 278, 279, 281, *seq.*, 298; vi, 325, 395; vii, 151; viii, 106, 177, 219, 223, 332; ix, 25
- Caesarean birth of, i, 236, 321 *seq.*
 account of, in Moses of Chorene, i, 236
 presage of, by the astrologers, i, 278, 307
 Simurgh, i, 321
 origin of name, i, 322 and *note*
 effigy of, sent to Salm, i, 322
 nurturing of, i, 324
- Rustam, goes with Zál and Mihráb to meet Sám, i, 325
 slays the white elephant, i, 327, 377
 bidden by Zál to take Mount Sipand, i, 329
 takes Mount Sipand, i, 331, 377
 sends the Spoil to Zál, i, 333
 sets fire to Mount Sipand, i, 333
 bidden by Zál to prepare for war, i, 376
 reply of, i, 376
 Zál gives Sám's mace to, i, 378
 obtains Rakhsh, i, 378
 goes in quest of Kai Kubád, i, 382 *seq.*
 slays Kulún, i, 386
 first campaign of, ii, 11 *seq.*
 nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner, ii, 14, 116, 354
 rewarded by Kai Kubád, ii, 21
- Seven Courses of (Haft Khwán) 143, ii, 44 *seq.*
 life of, saved by a ram, ii, 46
 song of, ii, 51
 rescues Kai Káuś in Mázandarán, ii, 58
 handgrip of, ii, 66, 67
 encounter of, with Kaláhúr, ii, 67
 Juyá, ii, 71
 audience of, with the king of Mázandarán, ii, 67 *seq.*
 encounter of, with the king of Mázandarán, ii, 73
 rewarded by Kai Káuś, ii, 77
 entertains Kai Káuś, ii, 83
 takes the king of Shám prisoner, ii, 97
 defeats Afrásiyáb, ii, 100
 made paladin of paladins by Kai Káuś, ii, 101
 goes in search of Kai Káuś, ii, 104
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 slays Alkús, ii, 115

- Rustam, and Suhráb, Story of, ii, 118-7.
- loses Rakhsh, ii, 121
- Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129
- holds a drinking-bout, ii, 141
- quarrels with Kai Káuś, ii, 142
- reconciled by Gúdarz, ii, 144 *seq.*
- goes in disguise to see Suhráb, ii, 149
- adventure of, with Zhanda Razm, ii, 149 *seq.*
- Suhráb described by, ii, 151, 160
- encampment of, described, ii, 154
- armed by Tús, Gív, and Ruhlám for his fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
- challenges Suhráb, ii, 161
- charge of, to Zawára, ii, 167
- declines Suhráb's advances, ii, 169
- saves his life by a ruse, ii, 170
- prays that his strength may be restored, ii, 171
- learns too late that Suhráb is his son, ii, 173
- grief of, ii, 173 *seq.*
- makes a truce with Húmán, ii, 176
- tries to slay Hajír, ii, 176 himself, ii, 177
- brings up Siyáwush, ii, 196
- maiches with him against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225, *seq.*
- returns and quarrels with Kai Káuś, ii, 242 *seq.*
- grief and wrath of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 338 *seq.*
- puts Surkha to death, ii, 346
- fight with the Túránians, ii, 347-7.
- appoints Tús ruler of Chách, ii, 355
- Gúdarz ruler of Sughd and Sapanjáb, ii, 355
- Rustam, daughter of, ii, 383, 384, iii, 323
- wife of, ii, 384, iii, 323
- hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Írán, ii, 395
- Turkman occupation of Zábulistán, account of by, iii, 14
- goes to do homage to Kai Khusrau, iii, 17
- witnesses Kai Khusrau's oath to avenge Siyáwush, iii, 22
- proposes to Kai Khusrau to expel Turkmans from Zábulistán, iii, 30
- asks Kai Khusrau to pardon Tús and the Íránians in the matter of Farúd, iii, 113
- summoned by Kai Khusrau, iii, 143
- advocates the marriage of Fariburz and Farangís, iii, 146
- marches to succour Tús, iii, 148
- meets Gúdarz, iii, 171
- takes counsel with Tús and the chiefs, iii, 172
- arrays the host, iii, 177
- fight of, with Ashkabús, legend about, iii, 109
- referred to, viii, 75
- parleys with Ashkabús, iii, 180
- slays Ashkabús, iii, 181
- described by Pirán, iii, 183
- harangues the troops, iii, 186, 219, 223, 232, 235
- challenged by Kámús, iii, 187
- spear-bearer of, slain by Kámús, iii, 188
- parleys with Kámús, iii, 188
- takes Kámús prisoner, iii, 189
- and the Khán of Chín, Story of, 149, iii, 191 *seq.*
- referred to, iii, 193
- slays Chingish, iii, 195

Rustam, parleys with Húmán, iii, 196
 conditions of peace offered by, iii, 197, 205
 parleys with Pírán, iii, 202
 proposes peace on terms to the Íránians, iii, 211
 warned by Gúdarz not to trust Pírán, iii, 212
 wrath of, with Pírán, iii, 218
 unhouses Shangul, iii, 221
 prowess of, in battle, iii, 222 *seq.*
 overthrows Kundur, iii, 224
 slays Sáwa, iii, 224
 Gahár, iii, 225
 attacks the Khán of Chín, iii, 225, *seq.*
 victorious, iii, 231, *seq.*
 wroth with Tús and the Íránians, iii, 234
 sends Fariburz to Kai Khusrau with tidings of victory, iii, 236, *seq.*
 leads on the host, iii, 238
 reaches Sughd, iii, 244
 sends troops to attack Bídád, iii, 244
 slays Káfúr, iii, 245
 besieges and storms Bídád, iii, 246
 sends Gív to raid Khutan, iii, 247
 praised by Gúdarz, iii, 248
 described by Afrásiyáb, iii, 251
 attacks the Túránians, iii, 257
 challenges Púládwand, iii, 259
 overthrows Púládwand, iii, 264
 defeats the Túránians, iii, 266
 divides the spoil, iii, 266
 ravages Túrán, iii, 266
 returns in triumph, iii, 267
 asks Kai Khusrau's leave to return to Zál, iii, 269
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 269

Rustam, Story of fight of, with the dív Akwán, 149, iii, 271 *seq.*
 summoned to court by Kai Khusrau, iii, 274
 pursues the dív Akwán, iii, 275
 foiled by Akwán, iii, 276
 taken at a disadvantage by Akwán, iii, 276
 offered a choice of deaths by Akwán, iii, 277
 outwits Akwán, iii, 277
 finds Rakhsh among Afrásiyáb's herds, iii, 278
 encounters Afrásiyáb's herdsmen, iii, 279
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 280
 slays Akwán, iii, 281
 carries off the spoil, iii, 281
 welcomed by Kai Khusrau, iii, 282
 tells his adventure with Akwán, iii, 282
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 283
 returns home, iii, 283
 summoned to court in the matter of Bizhan, iii, 319 *seq.*
 visited by Gív, iii, 322
 promises to help Gív, iii, 324
 goes with Gív to court, iii, 326
 address of, to Kai Khusrau, iii, 327
 undertakes the rescue of Bizhan, iii, 330
 plan of, iii, 333
 chooses his comrades, iii, 334
 goes disguised to Túrán, iii, 335
 gives presents to Pírán, iii, 336
 welcomed by Pírán, iii, 336
 opens a market, iii, 337
 interviews of, with Manízha, iii, 337, 342

- Rustam, sends food and his ring to Bízhan, iii, 340
 removes boulder of Akwán from pit's mouth, iii, 345
 makes conditions for release with Bízhan, iii, 345
 releases Bízhan, iii, 346
 arrays his troops against Afrásiyáb, iii, 350
 mocks Afrásiyáb, iii, 351
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 352
 triumphant return of, iii, 353
 presents Bízhan to Kai Khusrau, iii, 354
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 356
 goes to Sistán, iii, 356
 sent to Hindústán by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
 successes of, iv, 60, 71
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145
 commands the right wing, iv, 147
 attacks with Kai Khusrau from the centre, iv, 180
 goes with Zawára to the right wing, iv, 180
 sent to the desert to attack Tawurg, iv, 188
 reports his defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
 advances, iv, 194
 failure of Afrásiyáb's attempt to surprise, iv, 195
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199, 208 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's converse with, iv, 198, 199
 captures Jahn and Garsiwaz, iv, 210
 advises Kai Khusrau to reject Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 222
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
 supports Kai Khusrau's proposal to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231
- Rustam, left by Kai Khusrau in Chín, iv, 241
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 251
 accompanies Kai Khusrau to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252
 summoned by the Iránians to remonstrate with Kai Khusrau, iv, 278
 with Zál and the sages, sets forth for Irán, iv, 279
 met on arrival by Gúdarz and other chiefs, iv, 282
 holds converse with the Iránians, iv, 282
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295
 confirmed by Kai Khusrau in possession of Ním-rúz, iv, 297
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 laments the loss of the paladins and returns to Irán, iv, 310
 Zál and, welcome Gushtásp to Sistán, v, 85
 rivalry in legend between Asfandiyár and, v, 116
 Haft Khwán of, compared with that of Asfandiyár, v, 117
 Asfandiyár's fight with, Story of, 156, v, 166 *seq.*
 recited by Nadr, son of Hárith, at Mecca, v, 166
 referred to, v, 169, 170, 306
 Gushtásp bids Asfandiyár go against, v, 173
 Asfandiyár's message to, v, 179

- Rustam, life of, attempted by
 Bahman, v, 184
 interview of, with Bahman
 v, 185
 entertains Bahman, v, 186
 great appetite of, v, 186, 210
 jests with Bahman on his
 small appetite, v, 186
 sends Zawára and Farámarz
 to bid Zál and Rúdába
 prepare to receive Asfan-
 diyár, v, 190
 goes to the Hírmund, v,
 191
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v,
 192, *seq.*
 invites Asfandiyár to visit
 him, v, 193
 accepts Asfandiyár's invita-
 tion to a feast, v, 195
 tells Zál, of his interview
 with Asfandiyár, v, 196
 indignation of, at not being
 summoned to the feast,
 v, 197
 sets forth to reproach Asfan-
 diyár, v, 198
 wrangle of, with Asfandiyár,
 v, 198 *seq.*
 demands his proper seat at
 the feast, v, 200
 Zál and, vilified by Asfan-
 diyár, v, 201
 details his ancestry, v, 202
 recounts Sám's exploits, v,
 202
 his own exploits, v, 203,
 207
 patents of, from Kai Káuś
 and Kai Khusrau, v, 203
 aged six hundred years, v,
 204
 tries a handgrip with Asfan-
 diyár, v, 209
 accepts Asfandiyár's chal-
 lenge, v, 209
 asks for neat wine, v, 211
 makes fresh overtures to
 Asfandiyár, v, 211 *seq.*
 addresses the royal tent-
 enclosure, v, 215
- Rustam, bids Zawára bring him
 his arms, v, 218
 rejects Zál's counsels, v, 220
 arms for battle, v, 222
 gives Zawára charge of the
 troops, v, 222
 goes with Zawára to the
 Hírmund, v, 222
 instructs Zawára, v, 222
 crosses the Hírmund and
 summons Asfandiyár to
 the combat, v, 223
 suggests a general engage-
 ment, v, 224
 distress of, at the death of
 Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-
 Núsh, v, 228
 offers to surrender Zawára
 and Farámarz to Asfan-
 diyár, v, 228
 wounded by Asfandiyár, v,
 229
 flees from Asfandiyár, v,
 229
 sends Zawára with a message
 to Zál, v, 230
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v,
 231
 recrosses the Hírmund, v,
 231
 kin of, grieve over his
 wounds, v, 234
 bids the leeches to attend to
 Rakhsh first, v, 234
 despair of, v, 235
 advised by Zál, v, 235
 Zál summons the Símurgh
 to the aid of, v, 235
 healed by the Símurgh, v,
 237
 instructed by the Símurgh
 how to overcome Asfan-
 diyár, v, 237, *seq.*
 cuts the fatal branch of
 tamarisk, v, 239
 prepares the arrow, v, 240
 summons Asfandiyár to re-
 new the fight, v, 240
 makes a final effort for peace
 with Asfandiyár, v, 241
seq.

- Rustam, bewails Asfandiyār to Bishūtan, v, 249
 Asfandiyār reminds Bahman to, v, 248
 foretells an evil future for, v, 248
 laments Asfandiyār, v, 250
 warned by Zawāra against Bahman, v, 250
 sends Asfandiyār's corpse to Gushtāsp, v, 251
 Bahman remains with, v, 252, 256
 instructs Bahman, v, 256
 writes to Gushtāsp to excuse himself in the matter of Asfandiyār, v, 256
 overtures of, to Gushtāsp supported by Bishūtan, v, 257
 Gushtāsp accepts the excuses of, and writes to, v, 257
 requested by Gushtāsp to send back Bahman, v, 258
 equips Bahman for his journey, v, 258
 Story of, and Shaghād, 157, v, 260 *seq.*
 provenance of, v, 260 *seq.*
 death of, v, 261, 273, 289
 versions of, v, 261
 Kābul's tribute to, question of, v, 265
 Shaghād and the king of Kābul plot against, v, 265
 takes up Shaghād's cause, v, 267
 prepares to occupy Kābul with a host, v, 268
 persuaded by Shaghād to go with Zawāra and a small escort, v, 268
 pardons king of Kābul, v, 269
 entertained by king of Kābul, v, 269
 goes hunting with Zawāra, v, 270
 falls a victim to treachery, v, 270
- Rustam, Shaghād, glories over, v, 271
 slays Shaghād, v, 272
 last words of, v, 272
 corpse of, taken from the pit by Farāmarz, v, 274
 obsequies of, v, 274 *seq.*
 Artabanus and, v, 282
 burial place of, v, 287
 scene of the battle between Bahman and Farāmarz, v, 287
 personification of the Sacae, i, 68; vi, 194
 conduct of, in Hāmāvarān, viii, 104, 168
 banner of, bestowed on Bahrām Chūbīna, viii, 105, 217
- Rustam, Persian commander in chief under Yazdagird III, 176; ix, 66, 67, 69, 73, 81 *seq.*, 90, 95
 brother of Farrukhzād, viii, 413 and *note*
 revolt of, viii, 413
 overthrows Āzarmdukht, ix, 59
 advances to Kādīsīya, ix, 67, 73
 end of, ix, 69
 finds evil aspects in the stars ix, 73
 writes to his brother, ix, 73
 hears of Shu'ba Mughīra's arrival, ix, 82
- Rúzbiḥ, Bahrām Gūr's high priest, 164, vii, 26 *seq.*, 54, 67
 bewails Bahrām Gūr's course of life, vii, 56
 reproached by Bahrām Gūr for his parsimony, vii, 83
- Rúzbiḥ, scribe, viii, 252
- S
- SA'AD, son of Wakkās, Arab general, 176, ix, 67, 68, 82 *seq.*, 90

- Sa'ad, succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, ix, 67
 at Kádisiya, ix, 67, 69
 founds Kúfa, ix, 67
 takes Ctesiphon, ix, 67
 recalled, ix, 68
 sent by 'Umar to invade Írán, ix, 72
 letter of Rustam to, ix, 78
 taken by Pírúz, ix, 80, 81
 Sabbákh, king of Yaman, iv, 146
 Sabz dar sabz, melody, viii, 399
 and *note*
 Sacae (Scythians), i, 17, 19
 Rustam a personification of, i, 68; vi, 194
 Sacaestán. *See* Sístán.
 Sacrifice, human, and serpent-worship, i, 143
 Sada, feast of, 140, i, 23; iv, 317; v, 309; vi, 33, 55, 230 and *note*, 245, 273, 389; vii, 11, 94, 200; viii, 68, 133, 216, 313; ix, 40 92
 institution of, i, 124
 Sada, Íránian noble, vii, 312
 Safid Rúd, river flowing through Gílán into the Caspian, v, 13, 16
 Sagastán (Sístán *q.v.*), v, 13
 Sage, sages, 159, vi, 101, 103
 Indian, vi, 62
 naked (Brahmans *q.v.*)
 of Kaid. *See* Kaid.
 saying of, viii, 155
 Sagittarius, constellation, i, 188; iv, 355
 Sagsár, Sagsárs, district and tribe, i, 279 and *note*, 290, 323, 339; ii, 143; iii, 152, 207
 Sahadeva, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138
 referred to, iv, 139
 Sahí, wife of Íraj, i, 188
 referred to, i, 182 *seq.*
 Sahl, son of Máhán, Íránian noble, v, 260, 261, 263
 Saifu'd-Daula, title of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
 Sakil, son of Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrásp, iv, 355
 commands the left wing, iv, 355
 Sakla, mountain, 169, iv, 342; viii, 41
 dragon of, 154, iv, 342 *seq.*
 referred to, iv, 343, 351, 358
 stronghold of, taken by Rúmans, viii, 47
 Sakláb (Slavonia), ii, 360; iii, 152, 164, 177, 185, 204, 218, 221 *seq.*, 235, 238, 243, 255; vi, 179; vii, 112, 115, 364; viii, 379
 Salm, eldest son of Faridún, 140, 141, i, 42, 90, 91, 183 *seq.*, 335, 342, 344, 362; ii, 19, 237, 318; iii, 37, 115, iv, 66, 69, 269, 272; v, 205, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 101; viii, 266, 270, 300, 376 *note*, 378, 381
 racial significance of, i, 54
 etymology of, Firdausí's, i, 174
 naming of, i, 187
 horoscope of, i, 188
 receives Rúm and the West, i, 189
 envies Íraj, i, 190
 plots with Túr, i, 190
 Túr and, demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
 Íraj visits, i, 198
 Íraj not welcomed by, i, 198 *seq.*
 slay Íraj, i, 201
 send Íraj's head to Faridún, i, 202
 hear of Minúchihr, i, 208
 send an embassy to Faridún, i, 208
 receive Faridún's reply, i, 213 *seq.*
 prepare for war, i, 215
 worsted by Minúchihr, i, 220
 plan night-surprise, i, 220
 worsted, i, 221

- Salm, hears of Túr's defeat and death, i, 223
 retreats on the castle of the Aláns, i, 223
 prevented by Minúchihr, i, 223
 flees from Minúchihr, i, 227
 slain by Minúchihr, i, 228
 troops of, ask quarter of Minúchihr, i, 228
 head of, sent to Farídún, i, 229
 Scimitar of, iv, 335 *seq.*
- Salt, Rustam's caravan of, i, 330 *seq.*
 desert, i, 3
 fish, legend of the, vi, 76 *seq.*
- Sám, son of Narímán, Iránian hero, father of Zál and grandfather of Rustam, i, 41, 142, i, 42, 207, 212, 231, 235, 238 *seq.*, 337, 344, 375; ii, 4, 16, 17, 33, 34, 49, 125, 126, 137, 140, 173, 182, 183; iii, 35, 121, 202, 215, 260, 279, 283; iv, 222, 251, 290, 301, 319; v, 14, 15, 58, 62, 63, 196, 198 *seq.*, 242, 262 *seq.*, 266, 267, 274, 285, 286, 289, 290; vii, 74; viii, 223
 pronunciation of, i, 95 *note*
 etymology of, i, 171 *seq.*
 Minúchihr confided to, by Farídún, i, 231
 mace of, i, 235, 290, 297, 328 given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378
 speech of, to Minúchihr, i, 238
 casts away his son Zál at birth, i, 241
 hears rumours of Zál, i, 243
 dreams of, concerning Zál, i, 243, 244
 consults the archmages and bidden to seek his son, i, 243
 finds his son on Mount Alburz, i, 244 *seq.*
- Sám, son of, restored to him by the Simurgh, i, 247
 returns home with Zál, i, 248
 congratulated by Minúchihr, i, 248
 goes with Zál to court, i, 249
 tells of his quest to Minúchihr, i, 250
 Minúchihr's gifts to, i, 251
 public rejoicings at his home-coming, i, 252
 goes to the wars and leaves Zál to rule in Zábulistán, i, 253
 Míhráb tributary to, i, 256
 Zál writes to, about Rúdába, i, 275
 receives Zál's letter, i, 277
 consults the astrologers, i, 278
 Rustam's birth foretold to, i, 278
 replies to Zál's letter, i, 279
 returns from the war, i, 280
 summoned to court, i, 289
 welcomed by Minúchihr, i, 289
 tells of his campaign, i, 290
 slays Karkwí, i, 291
 bidden to destroy Míhráb and all his belongings, i, 292
 welcomes and promises to help Zál, i, 293
 writes to Minúchihr and pleads past services, i, 295
 tells of the slaying of the dragon of the Kashaf, i, 296
 "One blow," i, 297, 299
 receives Sindukht in audience, i, 302
 invited by Sindukht to visit Kábul, i, 305
 dismisses Sindukht with gifts, i, 305
 hears of Zál's success with Minúchihr and informs Míhráb, i, 314
 goes with Zál to Kábul, i, 317

- Sám, sees Rúdába and felicitates Zál, i, 318
 returns to Sístán, i, 319
 entertains Mihráb and Síndukht, i, 319
 leaves Zál the regent of Sístán and goes on a campaign, i, 319
 hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323
 writes to congratulate Zál, i, 323
 comes to see Rustam, i, 324
 bids Zál and Rustam farewell, i, 327
 hears of Rustam's success at Mount Sipand and writes to Zál, i, 334
 Naudar's appeal to, i, 339
 goes to court, i, 340
 met and offered the crown by the Íránian chiefs, i, 340
 refuses the crown, i, 340
 reconciles the chiefs and Naudar, i, 341
 counsels Naudar, i, 341
 rewarded by Naudar, i, 341
 departs, i, 341
 death of, referred to, i, 345, 346, 349
 obsequies of, 358
 mace of, given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378
 exploits of, recounted by Rustam, v, 202
- Sám, Íránian warrior, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395
- Sáma Keresáspa Narimanau, Íránian hero, i, 171 *seq.*
- Samangán, city south-east of Balkh (?), 144 ii, 121 *seq.*, 130
 king of, 144, ii, 118, 140, 184
 entertains Rustam, ii, 122
 father of Zhanda Razm, ii, 150
- Sámánid, Sámánids, i, 14, 20, 21, 67; vii, 5, 383
 end of dynasty of, i, 21
- Samarkand (Sogdiana, Sughd), city and district in Turkistán, ii, 241; vii, 167, 358, 359; viii, 377; ix, 96, 115
 early seat of Aryan civilization (?), i, 7
 settlement of the Huns at, i, 19
- Sambáz, Íránian chief, speech of, viii, 242
- Samírán, king, vi, 405 and *note*
- Samkurán, Íránian hero, iv, 149
- Sandar, Sandarús, the Arar tree, vi, 19
- Sandal, Sandalí, city in Hind, vii, 395, 396, 401 *seq.*
 king of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Sanja, a dív, ii, 39, 40, 44, 55; iv, 296; v, 204
- Sanscrit, vii, 382
- Sapad, mountain. See Spentódáta.
- Sapandármad. See Sipandármad.
- Sapínúd, daughter of Shangul, vi, 3; vii, 144
 married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 128
 finds out who her husband is, vii, 131
 plans Bahrám Gúr's flight from Hind, vii, 132
 reproached by Shangul, vii, 135
 converted to Zoroastrianism, vii, 139
 visited by Shangul, vii, 142
- Sapor I (Shápúr son of Ardshír *q.v.*), Sásánian king, vi, 294, 321
- Sapor II (Shápúr son of Urmuzd *q.v.*), Sásánian king, i, 374; v, 13; vi, 294, 321; viii, 41
- Sapor III (Shápúr son of Shápúr *q.v.*), vi, 365
- Sarakhs, city in Khurásán, between Nishápúr and Marv, ii, 108

- Saraparda, i, 84
Sarapardā Pārdā. See *House*.
- Sargon I. of Agani, v, 293
 foundling legend of, v, 393
- Satf, city in Mázandarán, i, 230, 289, 366; v, 174; vii, 237; viii, 168, 341, 355, 392; ix, 80
 Iránian captives imprisoned at, i, 363
 released, i, 367
- Sar-i-pul-i-Zohab, vii, 187
- Sarkab, Rúman general, viii, 281, 292
- Sarkash (Sergius), minstrel, 174, viii, 193, 398 *seq.* 406
 Story of, 174, viii, 396
 disgrace of, viii, 399
- Sarkhán. See *Súfarai*.
- Sarúch, desert in Kirmán, ii, 226 vii, 362
- Sarúg, Jacob of, Syriac poet. See *Jacob*.
- Sarv, king of Yaman, 140, i, 211, 286; v, 260; vi, 73
 daughters of, asked in marriage by Farídún for his sons, i, 178
 consults his chiefs, i, 179
 agrees, conditionally, to Farídún's request, i, 181
 attempts to outwit Farídún's sons, i, 183 *seq.*
 gives his daughters in marriage to Farídún's sons, i, 185
- Sarv = Ázád Sarv, *q.v.*
- Sásán, eponym of Sásánian dynasty, viii, 219, 220, 330, 344
- Sásán, son of Bahman, ii 3; v, 290
 disinherited and flees from court, v, 291
 account of, v, 291
- Sásán, name of Dárá's son and several of his descendants, ii 3; vi, 200, 211, 224, 255; ix, 105 and *note*
- Sásán, descendants of, help Ardshir Pápakán, vi, 224
 House of, vi, 241, 270 and *note*
 lineage of, ix, 56, 105 and *note*
- Sásán, father of Ardshir Pápakán, 160, vi, 3, 193, 198, 200, 201, 240
 legend of, vi, 211 *seq.*
 marries daughter of Pápak, vi, 213
- Sásánian, Sásánians, i, 11, 374; iii, 9; v, 13, 281; vi, 81, 209, 225, 253, 257; vii, 85, 185, 212, 237; viii, 65, 72, 73, 214, 262, 330, 413 *note*; ix, 4, 5, 46, 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76, 77, 83, 105
 dynasty, i, 49, 374; ii, 10; v, 10, 282; vi, 249 *seq.*, 253, 257, 321; vii, 1 *seq.*, 381; viii, 73; ix, 4
 Tabarí on the rise of the, vi, 198
 characterised, vi, 249
 Zoroastrianism under, vi, 251
 Mas'údí on Church and State under, vi, 251
 duration of, vi, 257
 empire, i, 11; vi, 193, 327; viii, 193
 conquered by the Arabs, ix, 65 *seq.*
 genealogical table of, vi, 3, 253
 Tabarí's history of, vi, 14 *note*
 fictitious genealogies of, v, 290; vi, 199, 211, 256
 view of Sikandar, vi, 15, 224 and *note*, 240 and *note*
 rivalry with Arsacids, viii, 73
 usage, viii, 190
 architecture, viii, 193
 race viii, 285, 386, *note*
- Satire, Firdausi's, on Sultán Mahmúd, i, 40 *seq.*

- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's
four ix, 69
- Saturn, planet, i, 72, 100, 161,
204, 245, 295, 311; ii,
183, 208, 215, 247, 263,
310, 319, 394, 407; iii,
32, 110, 178, 232, 237, 254,
268, 318; iv, 31, 214;
v, 68, 89, 136, 154, 159,
220, 233; vi, 97, 115, 176,
281, 318, 385; vii, 92,
151, 252, 267, 346, 418;
viii, 24, 66, 321, 392, 395;
ix, 73
sphere of, ix, 92
- Sav (the Sôvbar of the Pahlavi
texts, now Chashmah-i-
Sabz), a lake among the
hills in the neighbourhood
of Tús and Mashad, 163,
vi, 373, 392
legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*
- Savalán, mountain in Ázarbáiján
v, 14
- Sáwa, Túránian hero, 149, iii, 224
slain by Rustam, iii, 224
- Sáwa, Íránian hero, v, 154
left in charge of the Brazen
Hold by Asfandiyár, i,
154
- Sáwa, ruler of the Turks, 170;
viii, 74, 94 *seq.*, 100 *seq.*,
107, 108, 110 *seq.*, 123, 129,
132, 133, 135, 137, 139,
164, 169, 174, 216, 219,
222, 224, 240
=Chao-wou, viii, 72
attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 92
letter of, to Hurmuzd, viii,
93
prophecy about, viii, 98
Hurmuzd sends Kharrád,
son of Barzín, to, viii, 110
hears of Bahrám Chúbína's
army and blames Kharrád
viii, 110
offers of, to Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 113 *seq.*, 117 *seq.*
employs sorcery against the
Íránians, viii, 123
defeated and slain, viii, 126
- Sáwa, head of, set on lance, viii,
130
wealth of, sent to Hurmuzd,
viii, 133
- Sawurg, Indian king, 159, vi, 64,
118
- Sayce, Professor, on the Ama-
zons, vi, 71
- Scandinavians, vi, 73
found the Russian empire,
vi, 19
- Scimitar of Salm, iv, 335 *seq.*
- Scotland, vi, 79
vitrified forts in, vi, 79
- Scribe, scribes, office of, highly
esteemed, i, 27 and *note*;
vii, 311; viii, 50
put to death by Hur-
muzd, viii; 71, 81 *seq.*
- Scriptures, Zoroastrian. *See*
Zandavasta.
- Scylla, Nisus and, story of, vi,
323 *note*
- Scythia, iv, 316
- Scythians (Sacaе), their relations
with the Íránians, i, 17
wars of, with Darius Hys-
tapsis, v, 11
- Seasons, confusion of the, ix, 77
note
- Sects, Muhammadan, i, 99
parable of, i, 107
- Seleucia (Bih Ardshir *q.v.*), city
on the right bank of the
Tigris, opposite to Ctesi-
phon (Taisafún), ii, 80;
vi, 254, 291 *note*, 322; viii,
189, 194, 196
- Semiramis, legendary queen of
Assyria, historically Sam-
muramat, wife (?) of
Samsi Adad king of Assy-
ria (B.C. 824-804), ii, 10;
vi, 66, 405 *note*
legend of, v, 292, 293
Humái and, v, 292, 293
- Semites, the, i, 9
relations of, with the Írán-
ians, i, 9 *seq.*, ix, 65
- Seneca the younger, Nero's tutor
(B.C. 3—A.D. 65), vii, 279

- Seoses (Súfarai ?), Persian commander in chief, *temp.*
Kubád, vii, 187
- Sergiopolis, viii, 188
- Sergius, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188
patron saint of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188, 195
Roman leader in Tabarí, viii, 188
- Sergius (Sarkash), minstrel, viii, 193
- Serpent, serpents, on Zakhák's shoulders, i, 139
worship and human sacrifice, i, 143
- Seven, favourite number in Persian story, vii, 186, 280,
Banquets of Nushirwán. *See* Banquet.
- Climes. *See* Climes.
- Courses (Haft Khwán) of Rustam. *See* Rustam.
- Planets. *See* Planet.
- Persian nobles, legend of the vi, 207
transferred to Ardshir Pápakán (?), vi, 207
- Stages (Haft Khwán) of Asfandiyár. *See* Asfandiyár.
- Warriors, Fight of the, 143, ii, 25, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Founts, jewel, viii, 392
and forty Sháhs, viii, 395
and *note*
- Severus, Roman Emperor (A.D. 146-211), vi, 322
Hatra besieged by, vi, 322
- Shabáhang, Farhád's steed, iii, 313; iv, 8
Bizhan's steed, iv, 47
- Shabdíz, Bahrám Gur's steed, vii, 37, 80
Giv's steed, iii, 257
Luhrásp's steed, iv, 323
taken by Gushtásp, iv, 323
- Míhráb's steed, i, 326
Khusrau Parwíz's steed, viii, 407; ix, 30
- Shabrang, Bahrám Gur's steed, vii, 37, 80
Bizhan's steed, iii, 296, 302, 313; iv, 8, 39, 50, 119, 124
- Shádán son of Barzín, one of Firdausi's authorities, i, 67, 69; vii, 382, 423
- Shaddád, son of 'Ad, legend of, i, 100
- Shádward, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Shaghád, son of Zál, 157, v, 261
Story of Rustam and, 157, v, 260 *seq.*
provenance of, v, 260
birth of, v, 263
astrologers' evil prognostic of, v, 264
sent to be brought up at Kábul, v, 264
marries the daughter of the king of Kábul, v, 264
king of Kábul and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*
pretended quarrel of, with the king of Kábul, v, 266
goes to Zábul, v, 267
cause of, taken up by Rustam, v, 267
persuades Rustam to go with Zawára and a small escort to Kábul, v, 268
warns the king of Kábul of Rustam's coming, v, 269
glories over Rustam, v, 271
outwitted and slain by Rustam, v, 272
corpse of, burnt, v, 277
- Sháh, accession of, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Sháhá, city in Hámavarán, ii, 89
- Sháhábád, the modern name for the ruins of Gund-i-Shápúr in Khúzistán, vi, 295
- Shahd, river, ii, 108; iii, 11, 110, 118, 123, 152, 173, 230, 241; vi, 391, 392
- Shahd, mountain, iii, 237

- Sháhnáma (Bastán-náma, Khudai náma), 139, i, 66; ix, 4 *seq.*, 43, 50, 61, 70
 subject-matter of, how preserved, i, 56
 origin of, i, 65 *seq.*
 put into writing, i, 66
 Prose, compilers of, referred to, viii, 71, 73
 probably compiled by Magi, i, 69
 referred to, by Firdausi, i, 108, 109; iv, 141 *seq.*; vi, 196
 more than one, i, 29, 66, 67, 69
 Dakíki and. *See* Dakíhi.
 Sháhnáma, Firdausi's, 139, 176, 3, 23 *seq.*; iii, 7, 9, 11, 14, 271, 286; iv, 7, 8, 136 *seq.*, 316, v.9. *seq.*, 19, 20, 22 *seq.*, 27 *seq.*, 293, 294; vi, 3 and *note*, 30, 31, 66 *seq.*, 72, 79, 82 *seq.*, 194 *seq.*, 205 *seq.*, 249 *seq.*, 253, 256, 270 *note*, 294, 301, 307, 310, 325, 326; vii, 5, 156, 184, 185, 215, 217, 317, 381; viii, 3, 41, 42, 71, 72, 74 *seq.*, 187 *seq.*, 191, 192
 scene of, i, 3
 theme of, i, 8, 47
 Baisinghar Khán's edition of, i, 23
 completion of, Firdausi on, 176; ix, 121
 date of completion of, i, 24; ix, 122
 length, metre, and language of, i, 47; iv, 8; ix, 122
 anomalies of, i, 48
 explained, i, 48
 divisions and chief characters of, i, 49
 machinery of, i, 51
 leading motives of, i, 53
 cosmogony of, i, 71; iv, 136
 imagery of, i, 72
 editions of, i, 76
 translations of, i, 77, 87
- Sháhnáma, principles of the present translation of, i, 77 *seq.*
 certain terms used in, explained, i, 80 *seq.*
 Firdausi on the compilation of, i, 108
 historic element in mythical period of, iii, 8 *seq.*
 Greek subject-matter in, vi, 11
 derivation of *Sikandar* given in, vi, 19
 historic period of, i, 49; vi, 29
 Írán and, analogy between, vi, 193
 portion of, corresponding to *Kárnámak*, vi, 196
Kárnámak and, compared, vi, 200 *seq.*, 255 *seq.*
 Wisdom-literature in, vii, 278 *seq.*
 Sháhnáma, of Abú-'Alí Muhammad, i, 69
 Shahrá, chief, 165, vii, 92
 made king of Túrán by Bahráma Gúr, vii, 92
 Shahrám-Pírúz. *See* Bádán Pírúz.
 Shahrán, ix, 102
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102
 Shahrán Guráz, Íránian warrior, speech of, viii, 239
 Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, Guráz *q.v.*), 175; ix, 50
 heads conspiracy against Guráz; ix, 54
 Shahr-Bánú-Iram, sister of Gív and wife of Rustam, ii, 4, 384
 Shahrbaráz (Guráz *q.v.*), Íránian general, viii, 194; ix, 43, 50
 revolt of, viii, 195
 sons of, viii, 196
 rebellion of, ix, 43, 44
 alliance of, with Heraclius, ix, 44
 Shahr-Barz. *See* Shahrbaráz.

- Shahrīgīr, warrior in Sikandar's host, vi, 123, 126
 takes Kaidāfa's son and daughter in law prisoners, vi, 123
- Shahrīgīr, captain of the host to Ardshīr Pápakán, vi, 241
 Ardshīr's instructions to, vi, 241
 goes to Ardshīr's help, vi, 244 and *note*
- Shahrguráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), ix, 59
- Shahrináz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Faridún, and mother of Salm and Túr, i, 90, 142, 164 *seq.*, 177
 married to Zahhák, i, 146
 sons of, by Faridún, i, 177
- Shahrīr, Shahrivar, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 286, 328
 month and day, i, 88; v, 310; vii, 76
- Shahrwaráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), ix, 50
- Shahrwí, archimage, vi, 329
 minister during Shápúr son of Urmuzd's minority, vi, 329
- Shahryár, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwiz, ix, 39
 father of Yazdagird, ix, 64
- Sháhwhí, eldest son of Haftwád, vi, 237
 referred to, vi, 206
 helps his father against Ardshīr Pápakán, vi, 236
 executed, vi, 245
- Sháhwhí (=Máhwhí?), one of Firdausí's authorities, vii, 372, 374
- Shakespeare, quoted, iii, 286; v, 156 *note*; vii, 383; viii, 117
- Shakn, region, iii, 152, 177, 185, 192, 204, 222, 223, 228, 237
- Shám (Syria), ii, 80, 84; vi, 357; viii, 170
- Shám, king of, taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 97
- Shamásás, Túránian hero, 142; i, 346; ii, 12, 18
 Khazarwán and, invade Kábulistán, i, 345, 358
 parleyed with by Mihráb to gain time, i, 358
 flees from Zál, i, 361
 met and defeated by Káran, i, 361
- Shambalíd, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
 married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53
- Shamírán, Túránian hero, iii, 185
 comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
- Shamírán, stronghold north of Harát (?), ix, 91, 94
- Shammákh, king of Súr, iv, 57, 149
- Shammás, legendary founder of Fire-worship, vi, 339 *note*
- Shammás, Núshzád's general, vii, 219, 272
- Shamtá, viii, 195, 196
- Shangul, king of Hind, *temp.* Kai Khusrau, 149, iii, 161, 172, 185, 198, 205, 210, 217, 251
 comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
 volunteers to fight Rustam, iii, 209, 216
 challenges Rustam, iii, 221
 worsted, iii, 221
temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165, vi, 325; vii, 109 *seq.*
 border-raids of, vii, 110
 gives audience to the Íránian envoy (Bahrám Gúr), vii, 112
 state of, described, vii, 112
 brother of, vii, 113
 vaunts his own greatness, vii, 114
 wife of, the daughter of the Faghfúr, vii, 115
 son of, vii, 115
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 116

- Shangul, Bahrám Gúr wrestles before, vii, 117
 plays at polo, vii, 118
 Bahrám Gúr displays his marksmanship before, vii, 118
 tries to find out who the Persian envoy (Bahrám Gúr) is, vii, 118 *seq.*
 takes counsel with his sages, vii, 126
 offers a daughter and great advancement to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 127
 marries Sapínúd to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 128 *seq.*
 goes to a festival, vii, 134
 hears of Bahrám Gúr's flight vii, 135
 reproaches Sapínúd, vii, 135
 makes a league with Bahrám Gúr, 137
 bids farewell to Sapínúd, vii, 137
 makes a new treaty with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140
 entertained with seven other kings by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
 visits his daughter Sapínúd, vii, 142
 farewells Sapínúd, vii, 143
 makes Bahrám Gúr his heir, vii, 143
 Bahrám Gúr's parting gifts to, vii, 144
 sends Gipsies to Írán, vii, 149
 Shapígán, treasury of, i, 61, 62
 Shápúr, Pishdádian hero, i, 210, 211, 215
 slain, i, 352
 Shápúr, Kaiánian hero,¹ ii, 271, 338, 340; iii, 19, 289, 322, 331; iv, 292
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Shápúr, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210
- Shápúr, son of Pápak, vi, 199
 Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, Sháh (Sapor I), 161, i, 42; vi, 3, 256, 303, 307, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, viii, 265
 compilation of Zandavasta under, i, 62, 63
 stories of, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 255
 Tabárí, vi, 255, 257
 crowned in his father's lifetime, vi, 257
 secret birth of, vi, 261
 origin of name, vi, 262 *note*
 recognised and acknowledged by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 264
 discovers the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268 *seq.*
 summoned and counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 286 *seq.*
 confused with Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
 Reign of, 161, vi, 294 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 294
 historical inaccuracies of, vi, 294
 wars of, with Rome, vi, 294, 297
 Odenathus and, vi, 294
 defeats the Rómans, vi, 297
 receives tribute from Cæsar, vi, 298
 builds cities, vi, 298
 bids Bazánúsh build a bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 298
 summons and counsels Urmuzd, vi, 299
 Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Sháh (Sapor II), 162, 163, i, 374; v, 16 *note*; vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 371, 373, 405 (?); vii, 359; viii, 41
 provides for uniformity of Zoroastrian doctrine, i, 62

¹ May be identical with the above in legend.

- Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Zoroastrian canon closed under, i, 63
 referred to, vi, 318
 Reign of, 162, vi, 321 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 321 *seq.*
 bridge of, at Taisafún, vi, 321, 329
 residences of, vi, 321, 330
 confused with Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
 triumphant treaty of, with the Rúmans, vi, 326, 355
 cities of, vi, 327, 357
 birth of, vi, 328
 crowned as an infant, vi, 328
 education of, vi, 329
 Málíka offers to betray her father's hold to, vi, 331
 opens the gate to, vi, 333
 sends Málíka to his camp, vi, 333
 treatment of Arab captives by, vi, 323, 334
 receives the title of Zú'l Aktáf *q.v.*, vi, 335
 returns to Párs and receives tribute, vi, 335
 consults the astrologers, vi, 335
 visits Cæsar in disguise, vi, 339
 entertained by Cæsar, vi, 337
 denounced by a Persian resident at Cæsar's court, vi, 337
 arrested, vi, 337
 sewed up in an ass's skin and imprisoned, vi, 338
 pitied by an Íránian slave-girl, vi, 339
 freed from ass's skin by slave-girl, vi, 340
 entertained by a gardener, vi, 341 *seq.*
 sends the gardener to the high priest, vi, 344
 described by the gardener, vi, 344
- Shápúr, praises the slave-girl, vi, 349
 prepares to attack Cæsar, vi, 346
 sends spies to Taisafún, vi, 349
 sends tidings of his victory over Cæsar to the provinces, vi, 348
 treatment of Cæsar by, vi, 349
 invades Rúm, vi, 350
 defeats Yánus, vi, 352
 bids Bazánúsh come to him, vi, 354
 dictates terms of peace, vi, 355
 returns to Istakhr, vi, 356
 takes Nasíbín, vi, 356
 names and honours the slave-girl, vi, 356
 rewards the gardener, vi, 357
 keeps Cæsar captive, vi, 357
 sends Cæsar's corpse to Rúm, vi, 357
 arranges a disputation between Mání and the high priest, vi, 358
 Mání executed by, vi, 359
 arranges for the succession with his brother Ardshír, vi, 360 *seq.*
 dies, vi, 362
- Shápúr, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Sapor III), 163, vi, 3, 251, 360, 371; vii, 171, 186
 Ardshír, son of Urmuzd, resigns the throne to, vi, 364
 Reign of, 163, vi, 365 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 365
 death of, vi, 366
 Tabarí on, vi, 365
- Shápúr, son of Yazdagird, king of Armenia, vi, 373
 Shápúr of Rai, Kubád's commander-in-chief, vii, 184, 185; viii, 72
 summoned to overthrow Súfarai, vii, 191

- Shápúr of Rai, conference of, ↓
 with Kubád, vii, 192
 goes to Shíráz and arrests
 Súfarai, vii, 193
 conveys Súfarai to Sháh
 Kubád, vii, 194
- Shápúr, Íránian noble, *temp.*
 Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333
- Shápúr, Íránian warrior, 172,
 viii, 202, 225, 257, 259,
 269, 293, 296
 deceived by Cæsar's talis-
 man, viii, 273
 praised by Cæsar, viii,
 279
 Bahrám Chúbína writes to,
 viii, 285
 receives Istakhr and Dáráb-
 gird, viii, 313
- Shápúr, father of Pírúz, ix,
 80
- Shápúr Gird (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*)
 city, vi, 295, 298
- Shatt-al-Arab, the combined
 streams of the Tigris and
 Euphrates, ix, 67
- Sháwarán, Íránian hero, 151, ii,
 73, 90, 111, 228, 249, 250,
 255, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34,
 43, 45, 48, 67, 115, 334,
 iv, 97, 105, 147, 275
- Shawwál, the tenth Muham-
 madan month, vi, 208
- Sheep's heads, Bahrám Chúbína
 and the, viii, 74, 107
 omen of, reported to Hur-
 muzd, viii, 108
- Shem, patriarch, vi, 65
- Shepherds, Kai Khusrau brought
 up by, ii, 328 *seq.*
- Sher-kappí, viii, 322 *note*
- Shíbán, vi, 397
- Shída (Pashang), son of Afrá-
 siyáb, 152, i, 92; iii, 262,
 350; iv, 10 *seq.*, 15, 135,
 156, 158 *seq.*, 206, 222,
 287, 290
 consulted by his father, iii,
 250 *seq.*
 goes on embassy to Púlád-
 wand, iii, 255
- Shída, refuses to interfere in the
 fight between Rustam and
 Púládwand, iii, 363
 sent by Afrásiyáb to Khá-
 razm, iv, 11
 defeated by Ashkash, iv,
 60, 72
 commands the left wing, iv,
 155
 surname of, meaning of, iv,
 155 *note*
 urges Afrásiyáb to attack
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 159
 Afrásiyáb's reply to, iv,
 160
 wishes to meet Kai Khus-
 rau in single combat, iv,
 161
 goes on an embassy to
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 161
 skirmish of, with Íránian
 outposts, iv, 164
 welcomed by Káran, iv,
 165
 mail and steed of, iv, 168
 receives Kai Khusrau's reply,
 iv, 170
 returns to Afrásiyáb, iv, 170
 goes to fight Kai Khusrau,
 iv, 171
 parley of, with Kai Khus-
 rau, iv, 172
 challenges Kai Khusrau to
 a wrestling-bout, iv, 173
 urged by his interpreter to
 flee from Kai Khusrau, iv,
 174
 refuses, iv, 174
 wrestles and is overthrown,
 iv, 175
 Kai Khusrau instructs Ruh-
 hám to bury, iv, 176
- Shídásp, minister to Tahmúras,
 i, 127
- Shídasp, son of Gushtásp, 155,
 ii, 3; v, 26, 58
 death of, foretold by Jámásp
 v, 50
 given command of one wing,
 v, 55
 slain, v, 58

- Shídúsh, Íránian hero, i, 211 ; ii, 58, 85, 158, 310 ; iii, 33, 45, 48, 127, 129, 130, 139, 141, 157, 248, 253 ; iv, 13, 15, 25, 191
 with Káran and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354
 put in command of the rear, iv, 92
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Shi'ite, Shi'ites, Muhammadan sect, i, 13
 origin of, i, 13
 Firdausí a, i, 24
 Shikbán, Íránian warrior, vi, 395
 Shiknán, place, vii, 359
 Shingán, region, iii, 228, 238 ; iv, 65
 Shíráz, city in Párs (Farsistán), 166, i, 236 ; vi, 198 *note*, 210 ; vii, 6, 173, 190, 193, 194
 Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwíz, 174, 175, viii, 187, 194, 303, 383, 407 ; ix, 28, 30
 enmity of, to Shírwí, viii, 180, 191, 193
 account of, viii, 192
 Khusrau and, Persian poem, viii, 192
 meaning of, viii, 193
 Maryam murdered by, viii, 193, 329
 a Christian, viii, 195
 warns Khusrau Parwíz against Gurdya, viii, 364
 Khusrau Parwíz and, ix, 7
 Story of, 174, viii, 382
 married to, viii, 386
 gilded chamber given to, viii, 389
 hears Kubád proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416
 informs Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 416
 has charge of Shírwí's horoscope, ix, 19
- Shírín, has charge of Rája's letter ix, 17
 companions Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 29
 reproached and summoned by Shírwí, ix, 36
 makes her Will, ix, 36
 goes to Court, ix, 37
 justifies herself, ix, 38, 40
 exonerated, ix, 38, 41
 sons of, ix, 39
 unveils to the Court, ix, 39
 Shírwí enamoured of, ix, 39
 makes request of Shírwí, ix, 40, 41
 goes home, ix, 40
 distributes her wealth, ix, 40
 frees her slaves, ix, 41
 poisons herself, ix, 42
 Shírkhán (Shirván, district and town west of the Caspian between the Kur river and Darband ?), i, 169
 Shírkhún, a Zabolí, v, 184
 guides Bahman to Rustam, v, 184
 Shíró, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26
 slain, v, 57
 Shíróya, son of Bízhan, iv, 360
 goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 Shírwán (Shirván ?) iii 216.
See Shírkhán.
 Shírwí, Íránian hero, i, 207, 215
 helps to take the Castle of the Alans, i, 223 *seq.*
 conveys the spoil to Farídún, i, 230, 232
 Shírwí, Núshírwán's commander-in-chief, vii, 251
 appointed to receive the Rúman tribute, vii, 262
 Shírwí (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 188, 190, 371 *seq.* ; ix, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64
 Shírn's enmity to, viii, 189, 191, 193
 internment of, viii, 194, 196, 301
 released, viii, 196, 415

- Shírwí (Kubád), secret and public names of, viii, 372, 416
 astrologers consulted at birth of, viii, 372
 ill-omened horoscope of, viii, 372; ix, 16
 referred to, viii, 373, 390
 kept by Shírín, ix, 16
 Khusrau Parwíz gives Cæsar's gifts to, viii, 381
 boorishness of, viii, 390
 Khusrau Parwíz' displeasure with, viii, 390
 sends to take Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 419
 Reign of, 175, ix, 3
 Note on, ix, 3
 Length of, ix, 42
 treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 7
 writes to Heraclius, ix, 7
 Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, ix, 27
 reproaches and summons Shírín, ix, 36, 37
 falls in love with Shírín, ix, 39
 grants Shírín's requests, ix, 40, 42
 poisoned, ix, 42
 son of, ix, 42
 Shírzád, herald in Núshírwán's host, vii, 252
 Shírzíl, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
 Shíz (Takht-i-Sulaimán), seat of the Magi in Ázarbáiján, i, 60; viii, 190
 Fire-temple at, vii, 5
 Khátún sent to, vii, 5
 Shoemaker, Bahrám Gúr and the, 164, vii, 24
 Núshírwán and the, 169, vii, 218, 260
 offer of, to advance money to Núshírwán, viii, 48
 rejected, viii, 50, 71
 Shu'ba Mughíra, companion of the Prophet, ix, 69, 83
 emt assy of, ix, 69, 82
 Shu'ib, Arab chief, 158, vi, 21
 attacks Dáráb, vi, 21
 defeated and slain, vi, 22
 Shúlak, Gushtásp's steed (Dakíkí), v, 73
 Asfandiyár's steed (Firdausí), v, 126
 Shúráb (Sura), city on the Euphrates, east of Antioch, vii, 217
 place of Gushtásp's exile, vii, 254
 taken by Núshírwán, vii, 217, 254
 Shúrsán, vi, 379
 Shús (Sús, Susa), city on the Karkhah river north west of Shúshtar in Khúzistán, vi, 327
 Shúshtar, Shústar, city on the Dujayl (Kárún) river in Khúzistán, vi, 199, 295 and *note*, 299; viii, 381
 dam and bridge at, vi, 298, 326
 Sicily, vi, 30
 Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
 Siege-operations, iii, 246; iv, 208 *seq.*; vii, 254, 257
 Signs, the Twelve (Zodiac), vii, 408
 Sigz, man of (Rustam), ii, 100 and *note*; iii, 183, 209, 218, 221
 Sigzian, a native of Sigz, v, 226 and *note* 228
 = Rustam, iii, 209, 225, 227; v, 241
 = Zawára, v, 226, 228
 = Farámarz, v, 228
 Sikandar (Iskandar, Alexander the Great, *q.v.*), Sháh, 158-160, i, 42, 49; ii, 3, 8 *seq.*; v, 30; vi, 11, 13, 16, 18, 29, 30, 33, 193, 210, 240 and *note*, 325, 353; viii, 52, 214, 217, 242, 262, 381, 387, 392; ix, 26
 paternity of, i, 55 and *note*

- Sikandar, derivation of, in *Tabarí*, vi, 19
 derivation of, in *Sháhnáma*, vi, 19, 26
 birth of, vi, 18, 26
 adopted as his heir by *Failakús*, vi, 27
 counselled by *Arastális*, vi, 35
 refuses tribute to *Dará*, vi, 36
 prepares for war with *Dará*, vi, 37
 invades, and defeats king of, *Misir*, vi, 30, 37
Írán, vi, 30, 37 *seq.*
 visit of, to the camp of *Dará*, vi, 38
 invited to banquet with *Dará*, vi, 40
 takes the golden cups of *Dará*, vi, 40
 recognised, vi, 40
 escapes, vi, 41
 defeats *Dará*, vi, 43, 44, 46
 issues proclamation to the *Íránians*, vi, 44, 47
 gives the spoil to his troops, vi, 44, 47
 marches from *Írák* against *Dará*, vi, 46
 enters *Istakhr*, vi, 46
 answers *Dará's* letter, vi, 50
 marches from *Istakhr*, vi, 51
 hears of *Dará's* murder, vi, 52
 arrests *Dará's* murderers, vi, 53
 finds *Dará* still living, vi, 53
 promises to avenge *Dará*, vi, 53
 promises to carry out *Dará's* last wishes, vi, 54
Dará bestows *Rúshanak* upon, vi, 55, 86
 laments for, and buries, *Dará*, vi, 55, 56
 executes *Dará's* murderers, vi, 59
 hailed as ruler by the *Íránians*, vi, 56
- Sikandar, sends envoys to *Ispahán* and to the family of *Dará*, and letters to the provinces, to announce his accession, vi, 57
 crowned *Sháh* at *Istakhr*, vi, 59
 Reign of, 158, vi, 60 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 60 *seq.*
 diagram to illustrate *Persian Romance* of, vi, 84
 inaugural address of, vi, 85
 correspondence of, with the wife and daughter of *Dará*, vi, 33 86, *seq.*
 marries *Rúshanak*, vi, 90
 invades *Hind*, vi, 98
Kaid and, vi, 61, 98
 approaches *Milád*, vi, 61, 98
 inquires about the *Four Wonders* of *Kaid*, vi, 100
Four Wonders and other gifts sent by *Kaid* to, vi, 103
 marries daughter of *Kaid*, vi, 104
 sage of *Kaid* and, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*
 principle of the cup explained to, vi, 109
 conceals his treasures, vi, 110 and *note*
 advances to *Kannúj*, vi, 110
 troops of, protest, vi, 113
 remonstrates with his troops, vi, 113
 troops of, ask pardon, vi, 114
 war of, with *Fúr* (*Porus*), vi, 67, 110 *seq.*
 hears of *Fúr's* elephants, vi, 115
 his device to overcome, vi, 115
 challenges *Fúr* to single combat, vi, 116
 slays *Fúr*, vi, 117
Fúr's troops submit to, vi, 118
 becomes king of *Hind*, vi, 118

- Sikandar, bestows Hind on Sawurg, vi, 118
 visit of, to Mecca and the Kaaba, vi, 64, 67, 119 *seq.*
 ends the rule of the Khuzá' in Arabia, vi, 120
 sets up Nasr instead of the Khuzá', vi, 120,
 goes to Judda, vi, 121
 marches to Misr, vi, 121
 welcomed by king of, vi, 121
 stays for a year in, vi, 121
 Kaidáfa (Candace) and, vi, vi, 65, 121 *seq.*
 portrait of, obtained by Kaidáfa, vi, 122
 Kaidáfa praised by Kabtún to, vi, 122
 writes to Kaidáfa, vi, 123
 Kaidáfa's answer to, vi, 123
 assumes the name of Naitkún (Antigonus), vi, 66, 125 *seq.*
 pleads (as Naitkún) for Kaidrúsh and his wife, vi, 126
 goes (as Naitkún) to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
 graciously received by Kaidáfa, vi, 128
 audiences of, with Kaidáfa, vi, 128 *seq.*
 recognised by Kaidáfa, vi, 129 *seq.*
 delivers his message, as envoy, to Kaidáfa, vi, 129, 134
 covenant of, with Kaidáfa, vi, 132, 138
 warned by Kaidáfa against Tainúsh, vi, 133
 insulted by Tainúsh, vi, 134
 counsels Kaidáfa about Tainúsh, vi, 135
 covenant of, with Tainúsh, vi, 136
 Kaidáfa's gifts to, vi, 140
 returns with Tainúsh, vi, 141
 welcomed by his troops, vi, 141
- Sikandar, reveals himself to Tainúsh, vi, 142
 entertains at a banquet, gives gifts to, and dismisses, Tainúsh, vi, 143
 final message of, to Kaidáfa, vi, 143
 Brahmans hear of the coming of, and write to, vi, 143
 interview of, with the Brahmans, vi, 67, 144 *seq.*
 quits the Brahmans, vi, 147
 Fish-eaters (Ichthyophagi, *q.v.*) and, vi, 69, *seq.*, 147, 177
 adventure of, with a whale, vi, 71, 147
 sees gigantic reeds (bamboos), vi, 71, 148
 attacked by snakes, scorpions, and boars, vi, 148
 the people of Habash, vi, 149
 the Narmpái, vi, 150
 adventure of, with a dragon, vi, 71, 151
 visits the temple of Dionysus, vi, 71, 152, 166
 warned of his death, vi, 152, 161, 166
 marches toward Harúm, the City of Women (Amazons *q.v.*), vi, 153 *seq.*
 encounters snow and frost, vi, 156
 encounters great heat, vi, 157
 encounters the negroes, vi, 157
 reaches and inspects Harúm, vi, 157
 marches westward and finds a fair-haired race, vi, 73, 158
 hears of the Gloom, *q.v.*, and of the Fount of Life, *q.v.*, and prepares to visit them vi, 158
 sets forth with Khizr as guide, vi, 159

- Sikandar, Khizr and, part com-
pany, vi, 160
leads to find the Fountain of
Life, vi, 160
interview of, with birds, vi,
160
interview of, with Isráfíl, vi,
78, 161
emerges from the Gloom, vi,
162
marches eastward, vi, 163
hears of Yájúj and Májúj,
vi, 163
barrier of, 160, i, 16; vi, 78,
164, 219
Speaking Tree visited by, vi,
167 *seq.* See Tree.
reaches "The World's
End," vi, 168
receives gifts, vi, 169
expedition of, to Chín, vi,
80, 169 *seq.*
goes as his own ambassador
to the Faghfúr, vi,
170
describes himself, vi, 171
Faghfúr's gifts to, vi, 173
departs with Faghfúr's en-
voy, vi, 173
identity of, discovered by
the envoy, vi, 173
dismisses the envoy with
gifts and a message to
Faghfúr, vi, 174
arrives at Chaghwán, vi,
174
marches to Sind, vi, 175
defeats Bandáwa, chief of
the Sindians, vi, 175
marches to Nímruz, vi,
175
receives gifts from the king
of Yaman, vi, 175
meets Gúsh-bistar, vi, 177
carries off the treasures of
Kai Khusrau, vi, 178
policy of, for safeguarding
Rúm after his decease, vi,
81, 178, 197
adopts the advice of Aras-
tális, vi, 180
- Sikandar, arrives at Bábil, vi,
180
prodigious birth at, vi, 81,
180
consults the astrologers
on, vi, 180
warned of his end, vi, 180
sickens, vi, 181
Will of, vi, 81, 181
grief of the troops for, vi,
183, 184
dies, vi, 183
dispute as to burial of, vi,
184
body of, taken to Iskanda-
riya, vi, 185
sentences of sages over, vi,
82, 83, 185
cities of, vi, 83, 189
Zoroastrian and Sásanian
view of, i, 59 and *note*, 61
seq.; vi, 15 and *note*, 224,
240; vii, 79 and *note*
- Silk, account of, vi, 204
introduction of, into the
West, vi, 204
Silk-worm. See Silk.
- Silvia, vestal, v, 293
- Simáh Barzín, scribe, Hurmuzd
plots against, 170, viii, 85,
seq.
- Simmas, chief herdsman of
Ninus, v, 292
- Símurgh, mythical bird, 156, 157,
i, 51; iii, 158, 313, 330;
v, 117, 132 *seq.*, 166, 246,
248, 255
described, i, 235 and *note*,
253, 270, 302, 329; v, 132
nest of, on Mount Alburz, i,
241, 244, 250
young of, i, 242, 250, v, 132,
133
finds and brings up the in-
fant Zál, i, 242
informs Zál of his parentage,
i, 245
gives Zál one of her feathers,
i, 246, 321
their efficacy, i, 246, 320
restores Zál to Sám, i, 247

- Símurgh, referred to, i, 251
 succours Rúdába, i, 320 *seq.*
 foretells Rustam's future
 greatness, i, 321
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 133
 summoned to Rustam's aid
 by Zál, v, 235 *seq.*
 heals Rustam and Rakhsh,
 v, 237
 instructs Rustam how to
 overcome Asfandiyár, v,
 237
- Sind, the river Indus and the
 parts adjacent, i, 113; ii,
 285; iii, 10 *note*, 117, 185,
 216, 238 iv, 65, 71; v,
 75, 180, 203, 277; vi, 113;
 vii, 110, 112, 390
 king of, iii, 185; vi, 113,
 entertained by Bahrám
 Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
 kings of, send tribute to
 Gushtásp, v, 75
 chiefs of, vi, 123
 warriors of, vi, 132, 137
 Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
- Sindbad, the sailor, vi, 71
 lands on a whale, vi, 71
- Sinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*
- Sindian, Sindians, 160, vii, 126
 defeated by Sikandar, vi,
 175
- Síndukht, wife of Mihráb and
 mother of Rúdába, 141, i,
 259, 299
 Mihráb praises Zál to, i, 260
 discovers the loves of Zál
 and Rúdába, i, 281
 reproaches Rúdába, i, 282
 informs Mihráb about Zál
 and Rúdába, i, 284
 goes with gifts to Sám, i,
 300 *seq.*
 well received by Sám, i, 302
 invites Sám to visit Kábul,
 i, 305
 returns to Kábul, i, 306
 hears of Zál's success with
 Minúchihr, i, 315
 felicitates Rúdába, i, 315
- Síndukht, Mihráb and, prepare
 to welcome Sám and Zál,
 i, 315, 317
 entertain Sám and Zál, i,
 317 *seq.*
 visit Sám in Sístán, i, 319
- Sinjibú, first historical Khán of
 the Turks, vii, 317
 relations of, with Núshír-
 wán, vii, 317
 Haitálians and, vii, 317
- Sipahram, Túránian hero, 151;
 ii, 228, 229, 388; iv, 26,
 103
 chosen to fight with Hajír,
 iv, 97
 slain by Hajír, iv, 104
- Sipand (Spentó-dáta, *q.v.*, Spen-
 dyad, Sapad, White
 Castle), mountain north-
 west of Nishápúr, 142, i,
 377; ii, 118; v, 30, 116,
 117
 Malcolm's identification and
 description of, i, 236
 Zál bids Rustam take, i, 329
 described, i, 329
 taken by Rustam, i, 331
 treasures of, i, 331, 332
 hold of, destroyed by Zál's
 orders, i, 333
- Sipandármad, ameshaspenta,
q.v., iii, 287, 328; v, 18
 month, i, 89; iv, 252; ix,
 70, 122
 day, i, 88, 89, viii, 331
- Sipanjáb (Farghána?), region, i,
 375; ii, 241, 342, 344, 345
 358; iii, 151
- Sipansár, Íránian warrior, viii, 293
- Sístán = Nímruz = Zábulistán,²
 144, 149, 155; i, 319;
 ii, 80, 335, 365; iii, 165,
 166, 191, 207, 321, 356;
 iv, 14, 278; v, 13, 17, 29,
 85, 86, 89, 94, 173, 174,
 201, 220, 248, 261, 264,
 267; vi, 32, 198; vii, 214
 former capital of, i, 4
 lake of, i, 4; v, 239 *note*

¹ Cf. Vol. v., p. 30.² See p. 333 *note*.

- Sístán, origin of name, i, 19
 invaded by Shamās and Khazarwán, i, 338
 mourning in, for Rustam, v, 278
 invaded by Bahman, v, 284
seq.
- Sitr, Persian measure of weight, iii, 184
- Sitúh, Túránian hero, v, 86, 87
 goes as a spy to Írán and reports to Arjásp, v, 86, 87
- Siyah Chasm, slave of Farrukhzád, ix, 62
 handmaid of Farrukhzád and, ix, 62
 imprisoned, ix, 62
 released, ix, 62
 poisons Farrukhzád, ix, 63
- Siyámak, son of Gaiúmart, 139, i, 117, 119
 slain by the Black Dív, i, 120
 lamentations over, i, 120
- Siyámak, Túránian hero, 151, iv, 97
 chosen to fight with Guráza, iv, 97
 slain by Guráza, iv, 100
- Siyávakhsh. *See* Siyáwush.
- Siyávashána. *See* Siyáwush.
- Siyáwush, son of Kai Káuś, and father of Farúd and Kai Khusrau, 144-148, ; i, 55, 92 ; ii, 3, 25, 82, 104 *note* 187 *seq.*, 335, 338 *seq.*, 346 *seq.*, 363, 371, 372, 374 *seq.*, 383, 386, 388, 396, 403, 411 ; iii, 8, 13, 18, 19, 21, 22, 29, 39, 42, 43, 51, 52, 57, 66, 67, 71, 72, 87, 93, 99, 112, 117, 118, 137, 146, 148, 149, 156, 163, 183, 197, 199, 200, 201, 203 *seq.*, 211, 214, 226, 237, 238, 256, 283, 289, 297, 307, 315, 324, 347 ; iv, 7, 17, 18, 34, 50, 51, 70 *seq.*, 89, 90, 95, 96, 102, 109, 120, 127, 129, 130, 137, 152, 159, 162, 167, 168, Siyáwush *mt.*
 172, 201, 202, 204, 205, 214, 215, 221, 223, 231, 235, 249, 250, 252, 257, 267, 270, 271, 283, 285, 289, 299, 305, 307, 310 ; v, 174, 176, 192, 208, 272 ; viii, 104, 349, 395 *note* ; ix, 25 and *note*, 26 *note*, 103
 mother of, 144, ii, 3
 Story of, 144, ii, 188 *seq.*
 Note on, ii, 188 *seq.*
 good example of Fir-dausi's method, ii, 188
 Prelude to, ii, 191
 identical with Cambyses, the father of Cyrus the Great, in legend, ii, 191
 adventure of the mother of, ii, 193
 destined to misfortune from birth, ii, 196
 brought up by Rustam, ii, 196
 horoscope of, ii, 196, 205, 234
 returns to court, ii, 197
 made ruler of Kuhistán, ii, 199
 mourns for his mother's death, ii, 199
 temptation of, by Súdába, ii, 200 *seq.*
 marches against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225 *seq.*
 demands hostages of Afrásiyáb, ii, 239 *seq.*
 goes over to Afrásiyáb, ii, 258 *seq.*
 plays at polo with Afrásiyáb, ii, 264
 archery of, ii, 266, 293
 marriage of, with Jaríra, ii, 268 *seq.*
 marriage of, with Farangís, ii, 270 *seq.*
 entertained by Pírán, ii, 278
 builds cities, ii, 278 *seq.*
 consults the astrologers, ii, 282

- Siyáwush, foretells the future to
 Pirán, ii, 282 *seq.*
 entertains Pirán, ii, 287
 entertains Garsíwaz, ii, 290
seq.
 plays at polo with Garsíwaz,
 ii, 292
 challenged by Garsíwaz, ii,
 294
 overthrows Gurwí and Dámúr,
 ii, 295
 slandered by Garsíwaz to
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 296 *seq.*
 summoned to court by
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 300 *seq.*
 betrayed by Garsíwaz, ii,
 301 *seq.*
 excuses himself from going
 to court, ii, 306
 passion of, ii, 307 *seq.*
 foretells the future to Farangís,
 ii, 310 *seq.*
 charges and turns loose
 Bihzád, ii, 312
 attacked and taken by
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 314
 execution of, ii, 320
 referred to, iv, 268
 Blood of (plant), ii, 321
 birth-mark of, iii, 49
 mail of, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81,
 iv, 40 *seq.*, 51
 murderer of=Afrásiyáb, iv,
 198
 garth of=Siyáwushgird, iv,
 238
 goods of, viii, 148, 151
 Siyáwush, Íránian chief, 172;
 viii, 128, 163, 187, 233
 son of=Bahrám, viii, 247
 Siyáwush, wild duck, ii, 104
note
 Siyáwushgird, city built by Siyá-
 wush, 145, 146, 153; ii,
 301, 314, 373; iv, 250,
 252
 building and description of,
 ii, 285 *seq.*
 becomes the home of Kai
 Khusrau, ii, 333
 referred to, iv, 238
- Skirts, binding together of, in
 battle, iv, 85 and *note*, 177
 and *note*, 209
- Slavs, viii, 194
- Smerdis, the false, v, 11; vi, 207
- Snakes=Arabs, ix, 91
- Snowstorm, iii, 108
- Íránian host distressed by,
 iii, 71, 128; v, 137; vi, 156
 paladins of Kai Khusrau
 lost in, iv, 308 *seq.*
- Sohrab and Rustam, Matthew
 Arnold's, ii, 118
- Sol, planet, viii, 395
- Soma. *See* Homa.
- Son of Firdausí, death of, viii,
 190
- Song, of a dív, ii, 31
 of Rustam, ii, 51
 of Asfandiyár, v, 129
 of the daughter of Barzín,
 vii, 52
 of the daughter of Máhiyár,
 vii, 60, 61, 66
- Sophia, Empress, her treatment
 of Narses, viii, 76
- Sorcerer, a Jewish, brings about
 the death of Núshirwán's
 minister, Mahbúd, vii, 320
seq.
- Sorceress, Rustam and a, 143, ii,
 50 *seq.*
 Súdába and a, 144, ii, 214
 seq.
 Asfandiyár and a, 156, v, 128
 seq.
- Sóshyans, the Zoroastrian Mes-
 siah, i, 131
- Souterrain, ii, 137 iv, 212
- Spain (Andalús), vi, 66
- Spand-dát (Spento-dáta, Asfan-
 diyár), v, 24 *seq.*
- Span-dát-náma (Asfandiyár—
 náma), v, 26, 27
- Speaking Tree, the, 160. *See*
 Tree.
- Speech, modes of, viii, 30
- Spendyád, mountain. *See*
 Spento-dáta.
- Spento-dáta (Spand-dát, As-
 fandiyár *q.v.*), v, 12

- Spentô-dâta (*Spendyad*, *Sapad*, *Sipand q.c.*), mountain north-west of Nishâpûr, ii, 118; v, 30, 110, 117
- Sphinés. *See* Calanus.
- Spica, star, i, 245, 271; viii, 379
- Spitama, clan name of Zarduhsht (*Zoroaster*), i, 236; iv, 15
- Spityura, brother of Yima (*Jamshîd*), i, 130
- Spring, a, 143
of Sav, *q.v.*, 163
- Srôvbar, mythical serpent, i, 172
- Stages, the Seven, 156. *See* Asfandiyâr.
- Stateira. *See* Barsine.
- Steed, piece in chess. *See* Horse.
- Steeds, iron, Sikandar's, 159, vi, 115
filled with naphtha, vi, 115
Fûr's elephants and troops routed by, vi, 116
- Stone, the Black. *See* Black.
- Strabo, Greek geographer (born c. 63 B.C.), vi, 68, 81
- Strength, handgrip as test of. *See* Handgrip.
- Subuktigîn, father of Sultân Mahmûd, account of, i, 20
— title of, i, 21
referred to by, i, 100, 114
- Súdâba, daughter of the king of Hâmâvarân and wife of Kai Kâús, 143-146, ii, 3, 79, 188, 189, 200, *seq.* 225, 249, 257, 335, 339
description of, ii, 86
marries Kai Kâús, ii, 88
imprisoned with Kai Kâús by her father, ii, 91
released by Rustam, ii, 97
temptation of Siyâwush by, ii, 200 *seq.*
slain by Rustam, ii, 340
referred to, v, 174
- Súfarai (Sarkhân, Sukhrâ, Seoses?), 166, vii, 170 and *note*, 171, 173 *seq.*; viii, 72, 75, 168, 285
appointed minister to the regent Balâsh, vii, 164
- Súfarai, glorification of, in Íránian tradition, vii, 170
account of, vii, 173, 184, 185
resolves to avenge Pîrûz, vii, 173
writes to Balâsh, vii, 173
marches on Marv, vii, 174
correspondence of, with Khúshnawâz, vii, 174
defeats Khúshnawâz, vii, 177
gives the spoil to the troops, vii, 177
Khúshnawâz sues for peace to, vii, 178
consults his troops, vii, 178
resolves to make peace, vii, 179
replies to Khúshnawâz, vii, 179
returns to Írán in triumph, vii, 180
welcomed by Balâsh and the chiefs, vii, 181
greatness of, vii, 181, 190
dethrones Balâsh and makes Kubâd Shâh, vii, 182
proverb concerning, vii, 185
identical with Rizmihr, vii, 185
fall of, vii, 190 *seq.*
Kubâd's letter to, vii, 193
arrest of, vii, 193
property of, confiscated, vii, 194
conveyed to Shâh Kubâd, vii, 194
executed, vii, 195
son of, (Rizmihr), vii, 196
- Súfis, vi, 59 and *note*
- Sughd (Sughdiana, Samarkand), district and city in Turkistán between the Oxus and Jaxartes, i, 19; ii, 230, 232, 237, 241, 249, 358; iii, 244; iv, 65, 188, 189, 255; vii, 331, 337, 358, 359
Sughdiana, vi, 72. *See* Sughd.

- Sulhráb, son of Rustam and Tahmína daughter of the king of Samangán, 144, ii, 4, 25; iv, 296; v, 204; vi, 325
 Story of, 144, ii, 118 *seq.*
 Note on, ii, 118
 purely episodic, ii, 118
 Sir John Malcolm's version of, ii, 118
 Matthew Arnold's version of, ii, 118
 Prelude to, ii, 119
 lament of, for the loss of Gurdáfríd, ii, 119, *note*
 questions his mother as to his father, ii, 126
 charge of, sired by Rakhsh, ii, 128
 Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129
 gifts to, ii, 130
 invades Írán, ii, 130
 takes Hajír prisoner, ii, 131
 beguiled by Gurdáfríd, ii, 133
 described by Gazdaham, ii, 136
 sees from White Castle the Íránian host advancing, ii, 148
 seen while feasting by Rustam, ii, 150
 hears of the death of Zhanda Razm, ii, 151
 misled by Hajír, ii, 152 *seq.*
 overthrows the camp-en closure of Káuś, ii, 160
 challenged by Rustam, ii, 161
 Rustam described by, ii, 154, 169
 advances of, to Rustam, ii, 169
 spares Rustam's life, ii, 170
 again encounters Rustam, ii, 172
 makes himself known to Rustam, ii, 173
 last requests of, to Rustam, ii, 175
 mourning for, ii, 182 *seq.*
- Súkhrá. *See* Súfarai.
 Súkhta, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
 Sultán. *See* Mahmúd.
 Sumai, viii, 195
 Sun, on the Nature of the, 139, i, 105
 one of the seven planets, i, 72
 in astrology, i, 188, 310 and *note*
 total eclipse of, vii, 159
 Sunday, viii, 378, 380
 Sunnites, orthodox Muhammadans, i, 13
 origin of, i, 13
 Súr, city near Ispahán, 176, iv, 146, 180; ix, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
 Sura. *See* Shúráb.
 Surkha, son of Afrásiyáb, 146, i, 92; ii, 344 *seq.*
 taken prisoner by Farámarz, ii, 345
 death of, ii, 347
 Súrśán (Zib-i-Khusrau, Rúmiya *q.v.*) city built by Núshirwán, 168, vii, 317, 327, 328
 Surúsh, angel, the messenger of Urmuzd, 153, 172, i, 51, 175, 182; ii, 288, 289, 364, 408; iii, 277; iv, 139, 203, 265, 285, 307; v, 170, 253; vi, 199 *note*, 372; vii, 38; viii, 173
 warns Gaiúmart against the Black Dív, i, 119
 bids Gaiúmart avenge Siyámak, i, 120
 visits and instructs Farídún, i, 159
 counsels Farídún about Zahhák, i, 169
 appears to Gúdarz in a dream, ii, 363
 referred to, iv, 273
 informs Kai Khusrau that, his prayer is granted, iv, 281

- Surúsh, angel, bids Kai Khusrau
appoint Lohrásp as his
successor, iv, 281
may be assumed to have
accompanied Kai Khus-
rau on his pilgrimage, iv,
139, 303, 308
saves Khusrau Parwíz from
Bahrám Chúbína, viii,
189, 299
- Surúsh, day, i, 88; vi, 411
- Surúsh, astrologer, vi, 372
takes Bahrám Gúr's horo-
scope, vi, 376
- Súsanak, a miller's daughter,
vii, 32 and *note*
taken to wife by Bahrám
Gúr, vii, 33
- Susiana (Khúzistán *q.v.*), vi, 295,
321; vii, 184
- Sviatoi, island lying off western
shore of the Caspian, i, 58
note
- Swat, river in Northern India,
vi, 65
- Swyamvara, Indian form of
marriage, iv, 316
- Syávarshána (Siyáwush - *q.v.*),
ii, 189; iv, 137
- Syria (Shám), country, ii, 80;
vi, 30; viii, 193
raided by Persians, viii, 41
- Syriac, version of the Pseudo-
Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 18,
30, 31 *seq.*, 61, 63, 65, 66,
68, 71, 72, 74, 78 *seq.*
- Christian Legend of Alex-
ander, vi, 14, 15, 74, 78, 84
quoted, vi, 15
metrical version of, vi
15, 78, 84
- Syrian, ix, 66
- T
- TABÁK, Íránian chief, 161, vi, 202,
225
suspected by Ardshír Pápa-
kán, vi, 225
- Tabák, justifies himself, vi 226
Ardshír Pápakán and, de-
feat Bahman, vi, 226
buries Ardawán, vi, 229
advises Ardshír Pápakán to
marry the daughter of
Ardawán, vi, 229
- Tabarí, Arabic historian (A.D.
838-923), iii, 108; vi, 14
note, 16, 19, 30, 198, 200,
291 *note*, 310, 313, 315,
321, 326; vii, 3 *seq.*, 156,
159, 160, 170, 171, 185
186, 217; viii, 73, 75 *seq.*,
188; ix, 4, 59, 61, 64,
69
account of death of Rustam
by, v, 261
etymology of Dáráb, v,
297 *note*
- Sásánians, vi, 14 *note*
Alexander's battles with
Darius, vi, 30
Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 78
rise of Sásánian dynasty,
vi, 198
Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198,
203
genealogies of Pápak, vi,
200
Worm, vi, 205, 206
Haftwád, vi, 205, 206
length of Ardshír Pápa-
kán's reign, vi, 254
Ardawán's daughter, vi,
255
Shápúr, son of Ardshír
Pápakán, vi, 255, 257
death of Shápúr, son of
Shápúr, vi, 365
Bahrám, son of Shápúr,
vi, 368
Yazdagird, son of Shápúr,
vi, 371 *seq.*
Kubád and Núshírwán's
reform of taxation, vii,
183 *note*, 215
Turks, vii, 317
Persian, vii, 5; viii, 42, 73
seq., 187 *seq.*; ix, 4, 5, 43,
70

- Tabarí, Persian, story from, concerning Kubád, vii, 183
note
Arabic, viii, 42, 73, 187, 190
195; ix, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
- Tabaristán (Mázandarán, *q.v.*),
i, 39, 40; ix, 74
Firdausí's stay in, i, 39
chief of, i, 39, 40
patron of Firdausí, i, 39
- Table of Contents, General, ix, 139
- Tables, Genealogical. *See* Genealogical.
- Tacitus, Roman historian (A.D. 55-120), iii, 10 and *note*, 15; vi, 73
- Tahmásp, father of Zav, i, 90, 369, 370; ii, 11; iv, 283
- Tahmína, daughter of the king of Samangán and mother of Suhráb, 144; ii, 4, 118
precautions of, for her son's safety, ii, 127, 140, 149
mourning of, for Suhráb, ii, 184 *seq.*
death of, ii, 186
- Tahmúras, Sháh, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 214; ii, 168; iii, 293; iv, 133; vii, 9 and *note*, 273; viii, 277, 332, 376; ix, 25
Reign of, 140, i, 125 *seq.*
Note on, i, 125
Binder of the Dív (Áhriman), i, 125, 127, 214
Áhriman and, legend of, i, 125
culture hero, i, 125, 126
dívs rebel against, i, 127
conquers and enslaves the dívs, i, 127
taught writing by the dívs, i, 127
dies, i, 128
Firdausí's reflections on, i, 128
horn of, iii, 335
- Tainúsh (Charogos, Kerátór, Kanír), son of Kaidáfa, 159; vi, 66, 67, 134 *seq.*
Kaidáfa warns Sikandar against, vi, 133
- Tainúsh, Fúr's son in law, vi, 133
insults Sikandar, vi, 134
Kaidáfa chides, vi, 135
Kaidáfa and Sikandar consult about, vi, 135
makes a covenant with Sikandar, vi, 136
accompanies Sikandar on his return, vi, 141
Sikandar discovers himself to, vi, 142
asks grace of Sikandar, vi, 142
pardoned by Sikandar, vi, 142
entertained at a banquet, presented with gifts, and dismissed, by Sikandar, vi, 143
- Tainúsh (Theodosius), 163, vi, 372, 389, 404
goes to Yazdagird as amlasador, vi, 389
asked by Bahrám Gúr to intercede with Yazdagird for him, vi, 389
obtains Bahrám Gúr's release, vi, 390, 404
- Táir (Daizan, *q.v.*), Arab chief, 162; vi, 3, 322, 324, 330 *seq.*
- Taisafún (Ctesiphon, *q.v.*), 168, 174; vi, 397; vii, 188, 194, 361, 363; viii, 53, 90, 109 *note*, 118, 173, 175, 180, 182, 229, 241; ix, 9, 10, 90
Ardshír Pápakán goes to, vi, 245
Shápúr's bridge at, vi, 321, 329
sacked by Táir, vi, 330
Shápúr sends spies to, vi, 346
Cæsar defeated and taken prisoner by Shápúr at, vi, 347
Núshírwán returns to, viii, 53
Bahrám Chúbína marches from province of, viii, 106

- Taisabún, Khusrau Parwíz imprisoned at viii, 421 ; ix, 9
 Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwíz at, ix, 29
- Táj, viii, 71
- Tákdís, Throne of, 174, viii, 391
 account of, viii, 391
 added to by Jámásp, viii, 392
- Takht (*or* Táki)-i-Bústán, place some four miles north-east of Kirmánsháh in the Persian province of Arde-lan and famous for its Sásanian bas-reliefs, vi, 257 ; viii, 192
 inscription at, vi, 257
- Takht-i-Khusrau. *See* Madá'in.
- Takht-i-Sulaimán (Sbíz, *q.v.*), viii, 189
- Talhand, Indian prince, 169, vii, 394, 396 *seq.*
 Story of Gav and, 169, vii, 394, *seq.*
 mother of. *See* Gav.
 birth of, vii, 396
 tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 408, 410, 414
 rivalry between Gav and, vii, 397 *seq.*
 war between Gav and, vii, 404 *seq.*
 rejects Gav's offer of accommodation, vii, 406, 409
 death of, foretold, vii, 408, 413, 418
 defeated by Gav, vii, 412
 accepts Gav's proposal for a decisive battle, vii, 415
 defeat and death of, vii, 416
- Tálíkan, city and stronghold east of Marv, ii, 228 ; iv, 65, 255
 ceded by Pírúz to the Haitá-lians, vii, 156, 160
 importance of, vii, 156
- Talimán, Iránian hero, i, 211, 217, 252
 meets Kai Khusrau in Sughd vi, 255
- Talisman, Cæsar's, 172
 described, viii, 271, 275
 deceives Persian envoys, viii, 272
 mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274
- Tamarisk, plant, i, 4 ; v, 240, 243, 246, 247, 256
 branch of, fatal to Asfandi-yár, v, 239 and *note*
- Tammísha (Kús), town in Eastern Máandarán, formerly a seat of Farídún's, between Sáriyah and Astarábád, i, 177, 216, 230
- Tamúz, viii, 77 *note*
- Tanais, river, iv, 315 and *note*
- Tarak, river (the Atrak, the boundary between Gurgán and Dahistán, or the Turk flowing into the Jaxartes west of Tashkand ?), vii, 164, 165, 359
- Taráz, city now in ruins, north-east of Tashkand near the present town of Aulieh-Ata, i, 257, 266 ; v, 157 ; vi, 268 ; viii, 370 ; ix, 41
 Cypress of=Rúdába, i, 269
 Idols of, ii, 123, 206 ; iii, 248 ; iv, 218 ; viii, 370
- Tartary, iv, 156
- Taurus, constellation, iii, 168 ; iv, 177 ; vi, 151 ; vii, 282
- Tausar, high priest under Ard-shir Pápakán, i, 62
 letter of, i, 63
- Tawába, Iránian hero, iii, 25
- Tawurg, Túránian hero, iv, 188
 sent on an expedition by Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
 defeated by Rustam, iv, 193
- Taxation, 167, vii, 224
 Firdausí's exemption from, i, 35, 30 ; ix, 121
 reform of, by Kubád, vii, 183
note, 215, 225
 Nushírwán, vii, 215, 225
seq.
- Taxila, Indian city, vi, 63
 situation of, vi, 62

- Tazháv, an Íránian deserter to,
and son-in-law of, Afrási-
yáb, 148; iii, 27, 28
sends Kabúda to spy out the
Íránian host, iii, 73
parleys with Gív, iii, 75
defeated, iii, 77
flees with Ispanwí, iii, 77
pursued by Bízhan, iii, 77
escapes to Afrásiyáb, iii, 78
attacks Bahrám, iii, 100
taken prisoner by Gív, iii,
102
- Temperaments, the four, vii, 381
symbolised in the game of
nard, vii, 381
- Tennyson, quoted, v, 281
- Tharthar, river in northern
Mesopotamia, vi, 322
- Theodore, brother of Heraclius,
viii, 194
- Theodosiopolis, city in Armenia,
vii, 187
- Theodosius II. (Tainúsh, *q.v.*),
Eastern Roman Em-
peror (A.D. 401-450), vi,
372; vii, 187
- Theodosius (Niyátús, *q.v.*), viii,
189
- Theophanes, Greek Chronicler,
account of last days of
Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 6
- Thermodon, river on the south-
ern shores of the Euxine,
vi, 72
- Thornbrake town, the world, i,
310
- Thraétaona, i, 171 *seq.*; ii, 81
- Thrita, i, 171 *seq.*
- Tiber, river, v, 294
- Tiberius II., Eastern Roman
Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 42
- Tigris (Arwand), river, vi, 294
322; viii, 193, 194; ix,
67
small, the, vi, 199 and *note*
lower, vi, 291 *note*
bridge over, vi, 321
- Tihrán, city, ii, 28; iii, 109; v,
14, 18
edition of Sháhnáma, i, 76
- Tír, genius, iii, 287, 328
month and day, i, 88, viii,
394
- Tírí, eunuch of Gúzihr, vi, 198
- Tirmid, city and fortress north
of the Oxus (Jíhún) where
the route from Balkh to
Samarkand crosses that
river, ii, 229, 258; iv, 65;
vii, 156, 157, 331
- Tírúdi, village in the neighbour-
hood of Istakhr (Perse-
polis), and the birth-place
of Ardashír Pápakán, vi, 198
- Tishtar, Sirius, i, 235
- Tobit, Book of, iii, 272
- Toll-house and ford of Zark, ix,
100 and *note*, 116
- Tollman, Gív and the, 146; ii,
390
Gushtásp and the, iv, 324,
332 and *note*, 334 *seq.*, 344
seq., 351
- Trade-routes, ancient, i, 11, 57
- Traitana, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*
- Trajan, Roman Emperor (A.D.
98-117), vi, 322
siege of Hatra by, vi, 322
- Translation, the principles adop-
ted in the present, i, 76 *seq.*
- Translators of the Sháhnáma,
list of previous, i, 87
- Treasure, of Jamshíd, 164, vii, 36
Kai Kháisrau, 160, iv, 295;
vi, 178
Sikandar, vi, 110 and *note*
Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 406
- Tree, the Speaking, 160, vi, 79
described, vi, 167 *seq.*
Sikandar visits, vi, 167, *seq.*
warns Sikandar of his death,
vi, 168, 169
- Triad of evil, Zoroastrian, i, 59
and *note*
- Tribal, or Part, Kings, the, 160,
vi, 180, 203, 204, 225, 252,
253
origin of, vi, 179, 181, 210
character of their rule vi,
197, 198
number of, vi, 198

- Tribal, or Part Kings, Ardawán, the chief of, vi, 201
 Firdausí on, vi, 210
- Tribute, Rûm's to Írán, vi, 24; vii, 214, 215, 248, 262, 333, 338, 362; viii, 52, 53
- Trita, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*
- Tshatrang-Námak, Pahlaví text, vii, 380, 381
- Tughrál, a species of falcon, vii, 49
 described, vii, 48
 Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 48 *seq.*
- Tukhár, Farúd's counsellor, 147, iii, 43 *seq.*
 tells Farúd the blazons of the Íránian chiefs, iii, 44
 counsels Farúd, iii, 47, 52 *seq.*
- Tukhár, king of Dahistán, iv, 148
 commands with Fariburz the troops from Kháwar, iv, 148
 slays a scout from Makrán, iv, 242
- Tukhár, Íránian chief, viii, 228
 takes letter to Cæsar, viii, 263
- Tukhár, Íránian general, conspires against Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 414
 releases Shírwí, viii, 415
 refuses to help Pírúz against Guráz, ix, 48
- Tukhára, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
 son of, viii, 314
- Túmáspa (Tahmásp, *q.v.*), i, 369
- Túr, second son of Faridún and ruler of Túrán, 140, 141, i, 42, 90 *seq.*, 335, 337, 342, 344, 302; ii, 5, 17, 19, 99, 237, 262, 297, 302, 303, 318, 327, 363, 390; iii, 7, 30, 37, 115, 197, 245, 246; iv, 11, 34, 66, 69, 70, 78, 166, 167, 188, 201, 203, 206, 269, 272, 290; v, 42, 206, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 300, 376 *note*, 378; ix, 103
 racial significance of, i, 54
- Túr, etymology of, i, 174
 naming of, i, 187
 horoscope of, i, 188
 made ruler over the Turkmans and Chín, i, 189
 plots with Salm, i, 190
 Salm and, demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
 Íraj visits, i, 198
 reception of Íraj by, i, 198, *seq.*
 slay Íraj, i, 201
 send Íraj's head to Faridún, i, 202
 hear of Minúchihr, i, 208
 send an embassy to Faridún, i, 208
 receive Faridún's reply, i, 213 *seq.*
 prepare for war, i, 215
 parley of, with Kubád, i, 217
 Salm and, worsted by Minúchihr, i, 220
 plan a night-surprise, i, 220
 worsted, i, 221
 slain by Minúchihr, i, 221
 head of, sent to Faridún, i, 222
- Fire-temple at Bukhára
 built by, iv, 255
 daughter of, iv, 304
 =Túrán, iv, 51, 164
 chief of =Húmán, iv, 51
 prince of =Shída, iv, 164
- Túrán (Turkistán), the legendary patrimony of Túr, *q.v.* and a general name for the non-Íránian regions north of the Oxus (Jíhún), 142, 146, 148, 152, 153, 165-167; i, 189, 229, 351, 371, ii, 9, 18, 25, 79, 82, 101, 112 and *passim*; iii, 8, 11, 15, 25, 29 and *passim*; iv, 10, 15, 17, 19, 20, and *passim*; v, 12, 20 *seq.*, 25, 32, 41, 43, 45, 53, 61, and *passim*; vi, 43, 182, 398; vii, 43, 92, 136, 156, 178; viii, 118, 123, 130, 242,

Túrán—*cont.*

329, 331, 349, 350, 376,
405, 407; ix, 11, 89, 99
monarch of Chín and = Afrá-
siyáb, ii, 99
host of, ii, 110
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142

Túránians (Turkmans), 143, 148,
149, 151-153, 155, 165;
i, 9, 10, 54; ii, 11, 81, 265;
iii, 30, 115, 320, 322; iv,
7, 81, 129, 223, 227; v,
13, 20, 116; vii, 90; viii,
123, 320

historical relations of, with
the Íránians, i, 16

Turk, Turks, i, 10, 20; viii, 95,
103, 121, 135, 136, 138
seq., 142, 164, 169, 170,
189, 316, 320, 349, 352;
ix, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114,
117, 120

confused with the Haitá-
lians, vii, 4

historical appearance of, vii,
317

Tabarí on, vii, 317

defeat the Haitálians, vii,
332

described, vii, 332

War of, with Persians, viii,
72

prophesied, viii, 98

= Sáwa, viii, 98

defeated, viii, 126

find Sáwa's corpse, viii, 127

sorcerer, sends ill dream to
Bahrám Chúbína, viii,
121, 128

put to death, viii, 129

heads of chiefs of, sent to
Hurmuzd, viii, 130

retreat to Túrán, viii, 131

three, the, viii, 187, 204

one of, attacks Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 220

reproved by Bahrám
Chúbína, viii, 221

lead night-attack on Khus-
rau Parwíz, viii, 227

= Makátúra, viii, 319

Turk, Turks = Kulún, viii, 345
defeated by Yalán-sina, viii,
353

Turkhán, Túránian hero, v, 151
sent with troops to recon-
noitre outside the Brazen
Hold, v, 151

Turkish, ix, 87

Turkistán (Túrán), 147, ii, 19;
iii, 109, 228; iv, 233; v,
55; vi, 179, 278, 280, 397;
vii, 84, 92, 118, 334, 365;
viii, 324, 336, 363, 376,
377, 407

Turkman, Turkmans (Túrán-
ians), 148, 155, i, 20, 189,
263, 343, 352, 357; ii,
12, 14, 15, 92, 100 and
passim; iii, 30, 63, 81, 93,
and *passim*; iv, 10, 13,
15, 19, 20, 22, 29 and
passim; v, 22, 25, 36, 39,
40, 44, 47, 51, 52, 61, 72,
90 *seq.*, 98 *seq.*, 104 *seq.*,
108, 110, 113, 114, 116,
135, 152, 157, 158, 171,
173, 206, 254; vii, 48, 88,
92, 97, 177, 179, 239, 344,
364; viii, 377; ix, 25, 76,
94

slave-boy of Zál meets the
damsels of Rúdába, i, 263
seq.

make peace with Zav, i, 371
army of, surrenders to As-
fandiyár, v, 72, 113

monarch of = Arjásp, v, 74
led by Kuhram, storm

Balkh, burn the Fire-
temple, and slay Zar-
duhsht and the priests, v,
92, 93

take Gushtásp's daughters
captive, v, 93

kingdom of, offered by
Asfandiyár to Gurgsár in
return for faithful service,
v, 120

ordered by Arjásp to march
out from the Brazen Hold
in force to attack the in-

- Turkman, Turkmens
 vassals under Eshútán, v,
 132
 hear the cries of the Írán-
 ian watch in the Brazen
 Hold, v, 155
 refused quarter by Asfandi-
 yár, v, 158
 language, vi, 147
 defeated by Bahrám Gúr,
 vii, 90, 91
 sue for peace, vii, 91
 war of Pírúz with, vii, 164
seq.
 inroads of, through the
 Caucasus, vii, 238
 make submission to Núshír-
 wán, vii, 360
 Turk, viii, 87, 89, 94,
 217
 king=Afrásiyáb, ix, 25
- Tús, son of Naudar, Íránian hero,
 146-149, 154, 176; i, 60
 353, 370; ii, 33, 35, 38,
 58, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 91,
 127, 138, 142, 148, 177,
 188, 193, 197, 199, 226,
 257, 310, 319, 335, 338,
 340, 349, 353 *seq.*, 371,
 383, 394; iii, 11, 18, 19,
 24, 25, 37 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*, 60,
 62, 64, 66 *seq.*, 76, 78, 80,
 82 *seq.*, 108, III *seq.*, 132
seq., 136 *seq.*, 145, 149
seq., 154, 155, 159, 161,
 163, 166, 167, 169, 170,
 172, 174, 177 *seq.*, 182,
 183, 187, 206, 211, 213
seq., 225, 228, 230, 232,
 234, 235, 238, 246, 248,
 253, 254, 255, 257, 259,
 268, 273, 277, 289, 294,
 307, 322, 327, 329; iv, 13,
 15, 62, 70, 91, 157, 180,
 191, 224, 226, 227, 242,
 292, 296, 306 *seq.*; v,
 57, 116, 207, 208; viii,
 168
- Gustaham and, sent by Nau-
 dar to conduct the Íránian
 women to Alburz, i, 351
- Tús, Gustaham and, hear of
 Naudar's death, i, 364
 passed over in the succession
 i, 364, 370
 character of, i, 369
 appointed captain of the
 host, ii, 78
 taken prisoner in Hámá-
 varán, ii, 90
 released by Rustam, ii, 97
 goes in search of Kai Káu's,
 ii, 104
 engaged in the Fight of the
 Seven Warriors, ii, 107
seq.
 commanded by Kai Káu's to
 hang Rustam and Gív,
 ii, 143
 encampment of, described,
 ii, 153
 summons Rustam to fight
 Suhráb and helps to
 saddle Rakhsh, ii, 160
 quarrels with Gív over the
 future mother of Siyá-
 wush, ii, 194
 supersedes Siyáwush, ii, 246
seq.
 leads the host home, ii, 258
 intercedes for Surkha, ii,
 347
 worsted in fight by Afrási-
 yáb, ii, 353
 appointed ruler of Chách, ii,
 358
 returns to Írán, ii, 362
 dispute of, with Gúdarz over
 Kai Khusrau, ii, 400 *seq.*
 advocates the claims of Farí-
 burz, ii, 401
 asks pardon of Khusrau, ii,
 410
 hostility of, to Farúd, iii, 13,
 51, 62
 marches on Kalát, iii, 40
 sends chiefs to attack Farúd,
 iii, 47 *seq.*
 Bahrám's remonstrance
 with, iii, 51
 horse of, slain by Farúd, iii,
 59

- Tús, resolves to attack Kalát, iii, 62
 remorse of, for the death of Farúd, iii, 67
 builds a charnel for Farúd, Rívníz, and Zarásp, iii, 68
 marches from Kalát, iii, 68
 defeats Tazháv, iii, 77
 occupies Giravgard, iii, 78
 defeated by the Turkmans, iii, 82
 deprived of his command, iii, 83
 Kai Khusrau's wrath with, iii, 84, 111, 112
 superseded, iii, 86
 returns to Kai Khusrau, iii, 86
 disgraced, iii, 86
 imprisoned, iii, 87
 pardoned, iii, 114
 challenges Pírán to battle, iii, 117
 joins battle with Pírán, iii, 118, 126
 parleys with Húmán, iii, 121
 prays to be delivered from the snowstorm, iii, 128
 retreats to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 132
 makes a night-attack upon Pírán, iii, 139
 harangues the host, iii, 141
 hears of the approach of succours, iii, 159
 takes counsel with the host, iii, 167
 arrays the host, iii, 169
 chiefs and, take counsel with Rustam, iii, 172
 Rustam's wrath with, iii, 234
 collects the spoil, iii, 235
 worsted by Púládwand, iii, 257
 leads a host to Khárazm, iv, 61
 son of = Zarásp, iv, 135
 made overseer of the host, iv, 149
- Tús, posted on Khusrau's right, iv, 146
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrá-siyáb, iv, 224
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Gúdarz, and other nobles take counsel, iv, 277
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295, 300
 asks for further recognition from Kai Khusrau, iv, 299
 retains the charge of Káwa's flag and receives Khurásán, iv, 300
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
- Tús, city, now in ruins, north of Mashad in Khurásán, i, 39; v, 28; vi, 393; ix, 90, 95
 birthplace of Firdausí, i, 38, 41, 45
 governor of, i, 39
 prince of, i, 100, 114
 legendary origin of, iii, 14
 legend concerning Firdausí's burial at, iii, 191

- Tús, city, treasure of Kat Kâús called "The Bride" stored at, iv, 295
 Sâm and the dragon of, v, 202
 local legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*
 governor of, ix, 92
 Tuwurg, Túránian hero, ii, 253
 Tuwurg, brother of Khán, 173, viii, 364
 reports flight of Gurdyá, viii, 351
 sent in pursuit, viii, 351
 parleys with Gurdyá, viii, 352
 Twelve Rukhs (Champions), Battle of the. *See* Rukhs.
 Signs (Zodiac), vii, 408
 Tyre, city, vi, 30
 siege of, vi, 30

U

- Úlád, a dîv, 143, ii, 28, 59, 61; iv, 296 *note*; v, 204 *note*
 Rustam and, ii, 52 *seq.*
 made king of Mázararán, ii, 76
 'Umar, Khalífa (A.D. 634-643), i, 11 *seq.*, 67; ix, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121
 founds Basra, ix, 69
 sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68
 Sa'ad to invade Írán, ix, 72
 'Umar Khayyám, Persian poet and scientist (died A.D. 1123), v, 30
 Ummayyads, Muhammadan dynasty, i, 12, 13
 Uné, daughter of Alexander the Great in the Pseudo-Calisthenes, vi, 77
 Ural Mountains, iii, 192
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, i, 5, 50, 116 *seq.*, 236, ii, 82, iii, 271, 286, 317, 327; iv, 139, 185; v, 15 *seq.*; vi, 55, 302, 372, 387; vii, 228, 406 and *note*; viii, 285; ix, 24
 Unity of, symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
 day, i, 88; iii, 323; vi, 302 and *note*, 306, 375
 Urmuzd, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210
 Urmuzd, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Hormisdas I), 161, 162, vi, 3, 257, 273, 280, 313, 327
 discovery of, by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 257, 271
 birth of, vi, 271
 counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 280
 Shápúr, vi, 299
 Reign of, 162, vi, 301 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 301
 title of, vi, 301
 story about, vi, 301
 Urmuzd, son of Narsí, Sháh (Hormisdas II), 162, vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 315, 316, 325; vii, 359; viii, 41
 Reign of, vi, 318 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 318
 sons of, vi, 318
 inaugural address of, vi, 318
 pregnant wife of, enthroned, vi, 320
 Urmuzd (Hormisdas), son of Urmuzd, Persian Prince, vi, 318, 325
 referred to (?), vi, 337
 Urmuzd Ardshír (Ahwáz), city in Khúzistán, vi, 290 and *note*
 Urmuzd, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
 Uroscopy, vi, 101, 107, 108
 Urumiah (Khanjast or Chíjast), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136; viii, 195
 Afrásiyáb escapes from Húm into, iv, 262 and *note*

- Ustád, Íránian general, vii, 251
 commands Núshírwán's
 right wing, vii, 251
- Ustád, Íránian warrior, viii, 296
- Ustukílá, Túránian hero, iv, 182
 fights with Kai Khusráw, iv,
 182
- 'Utbí, Al, secretary to Sultán
 Mahmúd, i, 32
- 'Uthmán, Khalífa, i, 12
- Utterakuri, a legendary people,
 vi, 74
- Uzava (Zav), Sháh, i, 369
- V
- VALE of heroes, vii, 6
- Valerian (Bazánúsh), Roman
 Emperor (A.D. 253-260),
 vi, 323 *seq.*
 defeat and capture of, by
 Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi,
 294, 295
 memorials of, vi, 295
 confused with Odenathus,
 Julian, and Jovian, vi,
 324 *seq.*
 death of, in captivity, vi,
 326
- Valkash (Vologeses I), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king, i, 62, 63
- Vandaremaini (Andarímán),
 brother of Arjásp, v, 13
- Varahran I (Bahrám son of
 Urmuzd), Sásánian king,
 vi, 307
- Varahran II (Bahrám son of
 Bahrám), Sásánian king,
 vi, 310
- Varahran III (Bahrám Bahrámi-
 yán), Sásánian king, vi,
 313, 368
- Varahran IV (Bahrám son of
 Shápúr), Sásánian king,
 vi, 313, 368
- Varahran V (Bahrám Gúr),
 Sásánian king, vii, 3
- Vardanes (Bahrám), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king, iii, 9
seq., 109
- Vardanes, wars of, with Gotarzes,
 iii, 10, 11
 assassination of, iii, 10, 11
 character of, iii, 15
- Varengana, the raven, i, 235, 236
- Vedas, i, 129, 144, 171, 234, 337,
 ii, 8, 11, 25
- Vega, star, vii, 245
- Vendídád, Nask, vii, 188
 reference to Mazdak in, vii,
 188
- Venus, planet, i, 72, 100, 194,
 276, 303, 322, 332, 339; ii,
 115, 275, 345; iii, 143,
 159, 254, 318, 332; v,
 159; vi, 98, 102, 171, 190,
 212, 224, 332; vii, 53,
 151, 263; viii, 152, 359,
 394, 395; ix, 26, 73
- Verethraghna, the raven, ii, 25
- Victory of Victories, The, ix, 69
- Vídrafsh (Bídirafsh), v, 24, 26
- Village-chief, 154
- Vineyards, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
- Virgo, constellation, iii, 24; viii,
 359; ix, 71
- Vishtásp (Vistaspa, Gushtásp,
q.v.), v, 24
- Vistáspa (Vishtásp, Gushtásp,
q.v.), iv, 316; v, 11
- Vistásp-sást, v, 11
- Vitrified fortifications, vi, 79, 165
- Vívanghat, i, 129
- Vohúman. *See* Vohu Manau.
- Vohu Manau (Vohúman, Bah-
 man), ameshaspenta, iii,
 271; v, 16, 17
- Volga, river of European Russia,
 falling into the Caspian,
 iv, 316
- Vologeses I (Valkash), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king (A.D. 51
 -77), i, 62, 63
- Vologeses II, Parthian (Ashká-
 nian king), i, 19
- Vologeses (Balásh), king of Kir-
 mán, *temp.* Ardshír Pápa-
 kán, vi, 205
- Vologeses (Balásh), Sháh, vii, 170
- Vonones I, Parthian (Ashkánian)
 king (A.D. 8-12)

Vouru Kasha, sea, iv, 137

Vritra, demon, ii, 25

Indra and, vi, 203

Vulbers Landauer edition of the
Shāhnamā, i, 77; vi, 60

W

WAHR, region, iii, 177, 228, 235

Wakkās, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*,
176; ix, 72, 78, 82, 90

Wálid, Khalifa, vi, 325

Walnuts, taxes on, vii, 225

War of the Religion, v, 19, 26, 29
two campaigns of, v, 29

Warázád, king of Sipanjáb, 146,
ii, 341 *seq.*, 346

Warigh (Callinicus, Kālīniyūs,
q.v., Nicephorium, Rakka)
city, viii, 188, 253, 257,
280

Khusrau Parwíz takes up his
abode at, viii, 257

Warriors, the Seven, Story of the
Fight of, 143, ii, 25, 82,
107 *seq.*

Warstead = Bidád, iii, 245

Wash, city, viii, 24 and *note*

Water, scarcity of, i, 3

—courses, underground, i, 3

—horse, 163, vi, 373, 392

referred to, vi, 373

legend of Yazdagird and
the, vi, 392

—stealing demons, i, 7, 338

of Life, 160, v, 30; vi, 159,
160

Wazír (minister), piece in chess,
vii, 385, 423

position of, vii, 388, 422

move of, vii, 422

West, Dr. E. W., referred to, v,
11

West, the, Salm's portion of the
world, i, 189

gateway of, viii, 369 and
note

Western sea, the, 160, vi, 158

Whale, mistaken for an island,
vi, 71, 147

Whale, Sikandar's adventure
with a, vi, 71, 147

Wheeler, James Talboys, quoted,
vi, 81

Whip, Bahrá'm Gúr's, vii, 47, 54,
63, 64

object of reverence, vii, 47,
54, 63

White Castle (Mount Sipand,
q.v.), stronghold north-
west of Nishápúr, 144, i,
369; ii, 118, 131, 138

Malcolm's identification
and description of, i,
236; v, 30

besieged by Bármán, i,
354

evacuated by Gazhdaham
ii, 137

Dív, 143. *See* Dív.

Elephant, 141. *See* Elephant.

Huns (Haitálians, *q.v.*), i, 20

Will, of Alexander the Great, vi,
81

provisions of, vi, 81, 181

Kubád, son of Píruz, vii, 210

Wine-drinking, forbidden by
Bahrá'm Gúr, vii, 23

again permitted, vii, 25

Firdausí's love of. *See* Fir-
dausí.

Wísa, Túránian hero, uncle of
Afrásiyáb, 142, i, 92, 337,
342, 353, 361, 362; ii, 112,
354; iii, 79, 102, 105, 121,
197, 202, 206; iv, 32, 39,
50, 54, 55, 74, 84, 95, 99,
103, 113, 115, 122

pursues Káran, i, 355

finds Bármán dead, i, 356

defeated by Káran, i, 357

returns to Afrásiyáb, i, 357

sayings of, iv, 32

Wísagird, city in Túrán, 151, iv,
10, 20, 95; vii, 157, 331.

Wisdom, praise of, vii, 103

Firdausí's, 139

referred to, vii, 278

—literature, Persian, vii, 278

seq., viii, 3

Mohl on, vii, 280

- Wisdom, literature, Nöldeke on, vii, 281
 apportionment of, viii, 202
 Witch, 143, 156. *See* Sorceress.
 Wizard-land, vii, 120 and *note*
 Wolf, 154, 156, 165, vii, 121 *seq.*
 and *note*
 slain by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 123
 of Fáskún. *See* Fáskún.
 Women, City of, 160 *See* Harúm.
 Wonders, 160, iv, 245
 the Four, of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.
 World, on the making of the, 139
 Worm, the, 161, vi, 195, 206, 238 *seq.*
 Story of, 161; vi, 196, 203 *seq.*, 232 *seq.*
 Mohl, Nöldeke, and Darmesteter on, vi, 203 *seq.*
 cult of, vi, 235
 Ardshír Pápakán's strata-
 gem against, vi, 242
 servants of, vi, 242 *seq.*
 Writing, art of, taught by the
 dívs to Tahmúras, i, 127

X

- XERXES, Persian king (B.C. 485-465), v, 282
 Asfandiyár and, v, 282
 effigy of, falls, vi, 30

Y

- YÁJÚJ and MÁJÚJ (Gog and Magog, *q.v.*), 160, vi, 79, 163 *seq.*, 211 *note*
 legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78
 Tabarí on, vi, 78
 described, vi, 163
 Ya'kúb bin Laís, Persian chieftain
 and founder of the Saffárid
 dynasty, i, 67, 68
 Ya'kúbí, Arabic historian (died
 A.D. 891)

- Yalán-sína (Mardánsháh), brother of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 74, 102, 122, 135, 138, 157, 163, 169, 204, 288, 291, 296 *seq.*, 303, 316, 356, 357; ix, 6
 goes hunting with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 156
 pursues and brings back archscribe viii, 159
 speech of, viii, 165, 170
 worsted by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 229
 commands the centre, viii, 289
 Bahrám Chúbína makes, his mandatory, viii, 342
 defeats the Turks, viii, 353
 negotiates marriage between Gurdy and Gustaham, viii, 357
 Yama. *See* Yima.
 Yaman (Hámávarán), southwestern Arabia, 140, 160, 162, i, 181 *seq.*, 266, 286; ii, 80; iv, 146; v, 260; vi, 73, 120, 121, 324, 331, 385, 386, 396, 401; vii, 262; viii, 98
 king of = Sarv, 140, i, 178, 179, 182
 Yaman, carnelians of, ii, 123; iii, 289
 Canopus of, ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382
 onyx of, vi, 128
 striped stuff of, vi, 175
 monarch of, vi, 175; viii, 16
 gives gifts to Sikandar, vi, 175
 = Munzir, vi, 378, 387, 390
 Bahrám Gúr goes to, vi, 378, 390
 conquered by Persians, viii, 24 *note*
 curtains of, viii, 148, 151
 Yánús (Julian), brother of Cæsar, 162, vi, 324, 326

- Yánuš, leads a host against Shá-púr, vi, 351
defeated, vi, 352
- Yasht XXII, metrical para-phrase of, vii, 318
- Yátkár-i-Zarírán, Pahlaví text, v, 13, 24, 27 and *note*; vii, 380
compared with Dakíkí's work, v, 24 *seq.*
resembles Kárnámak, vi, 105, 106
- Yazates (Izads), the, iii, 286
- Yazd, city in central Persia, vi, 368
- Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Isdigerd I), 163, 164, vi, 3; vii, 4, 10, 109, 119, 171, 185, 359
referred to, vi, 369; vii, 74
Reign of, 163, vi, 371 *seq.*
Note on, vi, 371 *seq.*
parentage of, uncertain, vi, 371
lover of peace like Aknaton of Egypt, vi, 371
titles of, vi, 371, 372
Tabarí on, vi, 372, 373
coins of, vi, 373
evil administration of, vi, 374, 404
makes search for a governor for his son Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376 *seq.*
Nu'mán and Munzir visit, vi, 377
puts Bahrám Gúr in Munzir's charge, vi, 378
receives from Munzir a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting, vi, 385
Bahrám Gúr returns to, vi, 386
gives presents to, and sends a letter by, Nu'mán to Munzir, vi, 387
disgraces Bahrám Gúr, vi, 389
sends Bahrám Gúr back to Munzir, vi, 390
- Yazdagird, consults the astrologers, vi, 390
death of foretold, vi, 391
attacked by bleeding of the nose, vi, 390
death of, vi, 373, 393
Nöldeke on, vi, 373
corpse of embalmed and taken to Párs, vi, 393
- Yazdagird, son of Bahrám Gúr (Isdigerd II), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 152, 156, 160, 187
welcomes his father on his return from Hind, vii, 137
appointed by Bahrám Gúr to succeed him, vii, 150
Reign of, 166, vii, 153 *seq.*
Note on, vii, 153
a blank in Sháhnáma, vii, 153
historically important, vii, 153
wars of, vii, 153
fortifies passes in the Caucasus, vii, 153, 187
title of, vii, 153
sons of, vii, 153
appoints Hurmuz to succeed him, vii, 155
dies, vii, 155
- Yazdagird (Isdigerd III), Sháh, 176, v, 294; vi, 3; viii, 55, 73; ix, 5, 61, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 100, 113, 115, 116, 122
Reign and Era of, 176, ix, 64
Note on, ix, 64
taken for safety to Istakhr, ix, 64
age of, at accession, ix, 65
difficult position of, ix, 65
- Yazdagird, historical importance of reign of, ix, 65
flight of, from Ctesiphon, ix, 67
Hulwán, ix, 68
last attempt of, to recover his empire, ix, 68

- Yazdagird, concentrates his forces at Nahāvand, ix, 68
defeated and a fugitive, ix, 69
death of, referred to, ix, 69
host returns to, after Kádi-siya, ix, 85
hears of Rustam's death, ix, 85
quits Baghdád, ix, 88
makes for Marv, ix, 89
entrusted to Máhwí by Farrukhzád, ix, 95, 96
at Marv, ix, 97, 116
hears of the coming of the Turks, ix, 97
betrayed by Máhwí, ix, 98
defeated, ix, 98, 116
miller and, ix, 99 *seq.*
described, ix, 99, 101
Máhwí bids miller slay, ix, 107, 116
slain, stripped and flung into stream, ix, 108, 109 and *note*
corpse of, recovered, lamented over and entombed, ix, 109 *seq.*
Firdausí on, ix, 111
Yazdagird, chief scribe, *temp.*
Núshírwán, vii, 304, 307, 312, 333, 337, 339, 394
discourse of, vii, 305
questions Búzurjmíhr, vii, 308
Yazdán, viii, 75
Yazdánbakhsh (Áyín Gashasp *q.v.*), viii, 75, 76
Yazdín, viii, 195, 196
Year, New, festival at, i, 104
Yima (Yama, Jamshíd), i, 7, 130, 374
legend of, i, 129
Yokel, a, 164
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 43 *seq.*
wife of, her converse with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 45
presage of, vii, 46
rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 48
Youths, two, bid Ardshír Pápakán not to tarry in his flight from Ardawán, vi, 201, 222
Youths, two¹, entertain and counsel Ardshír Pápakán in the matter of the Worm, vi, 207, 239 *seq.*
help Ardshír Pápakán to slay the Worm, vi, 242, 244
Yudhishtira, eldest of the five Pándavas, iv, 138
renunciation of the world, and pilgrimage to heaven of, compared with that of Kai Khusrau, iv, 138
Yúnán, vi, 95 and *note*, viii, 258
Faith of, vi, 95
- Z
- ZÁB, lesser, tributary of Tigris, viii, 189
Zábul, Zábulistán = Nímruz = Sistán,² 141, 142, 144, 156 ; i, 248, 252, 254, 264, 282, 324, 332, 357, 361, 364, 366, 367, 371, 375, 381 ; ii, 21, 28, 42, 61, 83, 92, 126, 138, 141, 142, 156, 168, 227, 228, 245, 260, 338, 362, 363, ; iii, 14, 134, 141, 145, 153, 165, 171, 174, 175, 186, 190, 199, 200, 202, 206 *seq.*, 217, 246, 250, 269, 274, 321, 326, 342, 347, 354, 356 ; iv, 147, 279, 283, 296, 311 ; v, 85, 86, 167, 169 *seq.*, 173, 175 *seq.*, 181 *seq.*, 193, 194, 212, 215, 219, 223, 224, 235, 248, 251, 252, 255, 256, 258, 265, 266, 273, 275 *seq.*, 281, 283, 285 *seq.* ; vi, 207 ; vii, 173, 174, 193 ; viii, 369 ; ix, 75
invaded by Shamásás and Khazarwán, i, 345, 358

¹ Not the same apparently as those above,² See p. 333 *note*.

- Zābul, vintage of, ii, 110
 occupied by the Turkmans,
 i, 191, iii, 14, 30
 Gushtāsp goes to, v, 85
 Moon of Rudāba, v, 190
 and *note*
 called "Babbilestead" by
 Asfandiyār, v, 216
 Bahman's sojourn in, v, 252,
 256
 pillaged by Bahman, v, 287
 Bahman quits, v, 290
- Zābulī, a native of Zābul, iii,
 188, 201, 257, 329; v, 212
 a, made king of Kābul, v,
 277
- Zāl Farrukh, suggests Bahrām
 Chūšīna to Hurmuzd,
 viii, 99
 speech of, viii, 241
- Zādsham, king of Tūrān and
 grandfather of Afrāsiyāb, i,
 92, 342 *seq.*, 376; iv, 149,
 163, 166, 203
 offspring of = Afrāsiyāb, iv,
 178
- Zagros, mountain-range in wes-
 tern Irān, viii, 189
- Zahhāk (Azhi Dahāka), son of
 Mardās, Arab king and
 Shāh, 140, 141; i, 42, 90,
 91; ii, 33, 81, 318; iii,
 257; iv, 89, 206, 272, 274,
 290; v, 12, 180, 203, 204,
 284; vi, 15, 45, 172, 209,
 240 and *note*; vii, 185,
 199; viii, 218, 239, 241,
 327, 391; ix, 25, 95,
 193
 protagonist of idolatry and
 of the Semitic race, i, 54,
 143, 226, 256
 one of the Zoroastrian triad
 of evil, i, 59 and *note*
 referred to by Moses of Cho-
 rene, i, 72, 144
 Story of, 140, i, 135 *seq.*
 tempted by Iblīs, i, 136 *seq.*
 father of, 140
 murdered by, i, 137
 referred to, viii, 387
- Zahhāk, becomes king of the
 Arabs, i, 137
 serpents grow out of the
 shoulders of, i, 139
 Iblīs' advice to, i, 139
 invades Irān, i, 139
 captures and slays Jamshīd,
 i, 140
 Reign of, 140, i, 141, *seq.*
 Note on, i, 141, *seq.*
 not destroyed, i, 143
 feast in celebration of over-
 throw of, i, 143
 dream of, i, 147
 Arnawāz' advice to, con-
 cerning, i, 148
 takes counsel with the archi-
 mages, i, 149
 warned by Zirak, i, 149
 seeks for Farīdūn, i, 150
 slays Abtīn, i, 151, 153
 Birmāya, i, 152
 burns Farīdūn's palace, i,
 152, 158
 Kāwa and, Story of, 140, i,
 154 *seq.*
 Kāwa revolts against, i, 156
 Farīdūn resolves to war
 with, i, 157
 marches against, i, 159
 capital of, i, 161
 entered by Farīdūn, i, 161
 talisman of, overthrown by
 Farīdūn, i, 161
 sought for in vain by Farī-
 dūn, i, 162
 minister of, 140, i, 164 *seq.*
 hears from Kundrav of Farī-
 dūn's doings, i, 165
 goes to fight with Farīdūn,
 i, 166
 enters his palace, i, 167
 overthrown by Farīdūn, i,
 168
 Surūsh's counsel to Farīdūn
 concerning, i, 168, 169
 fettered to Mount Damā-
 wand, i, 169
 future final destruction of,
 i, 173
 saying of, ii, 171 and *note*

- Zahhák, an Aryan myth, ix, 65
king of Babylon, ix, 65
an Arab, ix, 65
- Zahír, Iránian hero, iv, 148
commands the Bedouins in
Kai Khusrau's army, iv,
148
- Zainigru, Záinígáv, ii, 81
- Zairi-vairi (Zariadres, Zarír, *q.v.*),
iv, 316; v, 12
- Zál (Dástán, Dástán-i-Sám, Dás-
tán-i-Zand, Zál-i-zai), son
of Sám and father of
Rustam, 141, 142, 153,
154, 156, 157; i, 145, 235,
384, 387; ii, 4, 11 *seq.*,
18, 19, 21, 33 *seq.*, 49, 58,
61, 62, 69, 77, 140, 168,
169, 180, 182, 227, 228,
271, 286, 290, 318, 319,
338, 362, 371; iii, 8, 17,
18, 21, 22, 35, 121, 132,
138, 141, 147, 190, 202,
221, 245, 269, 274, 279,
283, 307, 321, 322, 325,
328, 331, 347, 351, 354,
355; iv, 13, 147, 222, 251,
277, 319; v, 11, 14, 15,
58, 86, 169, 173 *seq.*, 197,
200, 204, 210, 212, 219
seq., 231, 240 *seq.*, 246,
255, 256, 261, 277 *seq.*,
281, 283, 290; vi, 79;
viii, 223; ix, 25
various names of, i, 84, 245
and *note*, 248 and *note*
born with white hair, i,
240
cast away by Sám, i, 241
found and brought up by
the Simurgh, i, 242
seen by a caravan, i,
242
informed of his parentage by
the Simurgh, i, 245
given a feather by the
Simurgh, i, 246
restored to Sám by the
Simurgh, i, 247
goes with Sám to court, i,
249
- Zál, horoscope of, taken, i, 251
made regent of Zábúl by
Sám, i, 253
progress of, in the arts, i, 255
makes a progress through
his realm, i, 256
Rúdába and, story of, i, 257
seq.
referred to, iii, 285
hears of, and falls in love
with Mihráb's daughter,
i, 257 *seq.*
described, i, 260, 268
sees Rúdába's handmaids,
i, 263
interview of, with Rúdába's
handmaids, i, 266
invited to visit Rúdába, i,
267, 269
goes to Rúdába, i, 270 *seq.*
plights his troth to Rúdába,
i, 272
consults the archimages on
the matter of Rúdába, i,
273
writes to Sám, i, 275
go-between of, with Rúdába,
i, 280
sends Sám's letter to Rú-
dába, i, 280
goes to plead his cause with
Sám, i, 292
bears a letter of appeal from
Sám to Minúchihr, i, 295
well received by Minú-
chihr, i, 306
astrologer's presage con-
cerning, i, 307
questioned by the arch-
images, i, 308
answers the archimages, i,
309
displays his accomplishment
before Minúchihr, i, 311
returns to Sám, i, 316
goes with Sám to Kábul, i,
317
felicitated by Sám, i, 318
married to Rúdába, i, 318
and Rúdába go to Sístán, i,
319

Zāl, left regent of Sístán by Sám -
 i, 319
 summons the Simurgh to
 succour Rúdába, i, 320
 goes with Rustam and Mihráb
 to meet Sám, i, 324
 bids Rustam take Mount
 Sipand, i, 329
 hears of Rustam's success,
 i, 332
 bids Rustam destroy the
 hold of Mount Sipand, i,
 333
 informs Sám of Rustam's
 exploit, i, 334
 buries Sám, i, 358
 hears from Mihráb that
 Shamásás and Khazarwán
 are invading Zábulistán, i, 359
 goes to the help of Mihráb,
 i, 359
 shoots arrows into the ene-
 mies' camp, i, 359
 slays Khazarwán, i, 360
 wounds Kulbád, i, 361
 puts Shamásás to flight, i,
 361
 hears of the death of
 Naudar, i, 364
 fights with Afrásiyáb, i,
 368
 proposes the election of a
 new Sháh, i, 370
 reproached by the Írán-
 ians, i, 375
 reply of, i, 375
 bids Rustam prepare for
 war, i, 376
 gives Sám's mace to Rus-
 tam, i, 378
 collects horses for Rustam,
 i, 378
 marches against Afrásiyáb,
 i, 381
 urges the Íránians to choose
 a Sháh, i, 381
 sends Rustam to summon
 Kai Kubád, i, 382
 goes to do homage to Kai
 Khusráu, iii, 17

Zāl, witnesses Kai Khusráu's
 oath to avenge Siyáwush,
 iii, 22
 son of — Rustam, iii, 132
 meets Gív, iii, 321
 sayings of, iii, 316, 351
 summoned by the Íránians
 to remonstrate with Kai
 Khusráu, iv, 278
 sets out for Írán with Rus-
 tam and sages, iv, 279
 met on arrival by Gúdarz
 and other chiefs, iv, 282
 holds converse with the
 Íránians, iv, 282
 audience of, with Kai Khusráu,
 iv, 283 *seq.*
 asks pardon of Kai Khusráu,
 iv, 290
 holds, with other chiefs, at
 the bidding of Kai Khusráu,
 an assembly on the
 plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusráu's gift to, iv,
 295
 companions of, rewarded by
 Kai Khusráu, iv, 297
 returns thanks, iv, 298
 protests against Luhrásp's
 succession, iv, 301
 acknowledges Luhrásp as
 Sháh, iv, 302
 sets out with Kai Khusráu
 on his pilgrimage, iv,
 306
 turns back at the bidding of
 Kai Khusráu, iv, 307
 laments the loss of the pala-
 dins and returns to Írán,
 iv, 310
 promises fealty to Luhrásp,
 iv, 311
 Rustam and, welcome Gush-
 tásp to Sístán, v, 85
 hears of Bahman's ap-
 proach, v, 182
 interview of, with Bahman,
 v, 183
 give Bahman a guide to
 conduct him to Rustam,
 v, 184

- Zál, Rúdába and, bidden by Rustam to prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 Rustam recounts his interview with Asfandiyár to, v, 196
 Rustam and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201
 receives a message from Rustam by Zawára, v, 230
 grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234
 summons the Símurgh to Rustam's aid, v, 235
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247
 forebodes Rustam's future, v, 247
 father of Shaghád, v, 260, 263
 sends Shaghád to be brought up at Kábul, v, 264
 laments for Rustam, v, 273
 sends Farámarz against Kábul, v, 274
 bids Rúdába to cease to mourn for Rustam, v, 278
 receives and replies to Bahman's hostile message, v, 285
 goes to meet Bahman, v, 286
 palace of, sacked, v, 286
 Bishútan intercedes for, v, 288
 released and returns to his palace, v, 289
 Zál-i-zar (Zál, *q.v.*), i, 84, 248 and *note*
 Zam (now Karkhí), town on the left bank of the Oxus between Ámwí (Charjuí) and Tirmid, where, there was a crossing-place, ii, 394, 395; iv, 65, 157; vii, 359
 =Oxus, ii, 97
 Zamyád, Yasht, i, 338
 Zamzam, iv, 258 *note*
 Zand, comment, i, 65
 Zandavasta, i, 116, 129, 144, 171 *seq.*, 234, 337, 338, 369; ii, 8, 25 *seq.*, 81, 118, 189, 190; iii, 8; iv, 151, 228, 253, 259, 308; v, 11 *seq.*, 30, 36, 41, 43, 51, 82, 85, 100, 173, 176, 216, 241, 294, 299, 309; vi, 17, 55, 226, 252, 343, 356; vii, 200, 207, 283, 302; viii, 96, 246, 283, 312
 traditional origin of, i, 61
 discussed, i, 62
 language of, i, 63 *seq.*
 meaning of, i, 65
 origin of chief characters in, i, 65
 diffusion of traditions in, i, 65
 extant portions of, i, 70 *note*
 quoted, i, 99, 130, 141, 142, 172, 235, 369; viii, 218, 240
 sent by Gushtásp to every clime, v, 77
 burnt by the Turkmans at Balkh, v, 92
 passage from, metrically paraphrased, vii, 318
 Zanga, Íránian hero, 145, 151, ii, 73, 90, 228, 249, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34, 43, 45, 48, 67, 92, 115, 350; iv, 13, 15, 24, 105, 147
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 accompanies Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226
 sent on an embassy to Afrásiyáb, ii, 250 *seq.*
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 opposes Farshídwad, iv, 83
 chosen to fight Akhást, iv, 97
 slays Akhást, iv, 106

- Zanga, Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
- Zangula or Zangula, Túránian hero, 151, iv, 26
- chosen to fight with Furúhil, iv, 97
- slain by Furúhil, iv, 101
- Zarang, former capital of Sistán, situated some twenty miles from the north-eastern shores of Lake Zirih, i, 4
- Zarár, vi, 200
- Zarasp, son of Minúchihr, i, 248 ; iv, 147 (?)¹
- kindred of¹, go to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270
- go to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282
- go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
- Zarásp or Zarasp, son of Tús, 147, iii, 24, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67, 72, 113, 114 ; iv, 135
- goes against Farúd, iii, 53
- referred to, iii, 55 ; iv, 149
- burial of, iii, 68
- Zarasp, treasurer of Kai Khusrau, iv, 269
- makes gifts to Ázargashasp, iv, 269
- Zarasp, Íranian hero, iv, 180, 301
- Zarathustra, Zarathushtra. *See* Zarduhsht.
- Zarduhsht (Zarathushtra, Zoroaster), prophet, law-giver, and evangelist of ancient Írán, 155, i, 53, 116, 235, 239 ; ii, 8, 6 ; iv, 272 ; v, 9 *seq.*, 23 *seq.*, 27, 28, 42, 51, 77, 173, 206, 216, 217, 241, 255 ; vi, 55, 252, 328 ; vii, 9, 207, 264, 318 ; viii, 67, 213, 308
- Zandavasta revealed to, i, 61
- title of a line of priest-princes, i, 61
- Zarduhsht, account of, i, 62
- meaning of, v, 13
- legend of, v, 14 *seq.*
- converts Gushtásp, v, 18, 33
- success of evangel of, v, 34
- plants the Cypress of Kishmar, v, 27, 34
- advises Gushtásp not to pay tribute to Arjásp, v, 35
- referred to, v, 36, 38, 41
- slain at Balkh, v, 92, 93
- amulet given to Asfandiyár by, v, 130
- religion of, under the Sásánian empire, vi, 251
- girdle of, v, 16 ; vi, 332 *note*.
- Fire-fane of, vii, 139
- high priest of, converts Sapínúd, vii, 139
- saying of, viii, 218, 240
- Zarduhsht, high priest, 170, viii, 81
- visits Ízid Gashasp in prison, viii, 82
- visit of, reported to Hurmuzd, viii, 83
- poisoned by Hurmuzd, viii, 83 *seq.*
- Zariadres (Zairi-vairi, Zarír, *q.v.*), v, 29
- legend of, iv, 314 *seq.*
- Zarír (Zariadres, Zairi-vairi), brother of Sháh Gushtásp, 154, 155, i, 42 ; ii, 3 ; iv, 315, 316, 318, 347 ; v, 12, 13, 24 *seq.*, 37, 41 *seq.*, 49 *seq.*, 60 *seq.*, 73, 94, 109, 169, 181, 193, 251, 261
- sent by Luhrásp in pursuit of Gushtásp, iv, 320
- charger of, iv, 321
- returns with Gushtásp, iv, 322
- consulted by Luhrásp, iv, 323, 358
- advises Luhrásp, iv, 358
- goes with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359
- reaches Halab, iv, 360

¹ It is not clear which Zarasp is intended,

- Zarír entrusts the host to Bahráṃ, iv, 360
 goes to Cæsar's court, iv, 360
 audience with Cæsar of, and recognition of Gushtâsp by, iv, 360
 gives Luhrâsp's answer to Cæsar, iv, 361
 visited in his camp by Gush-tâsp, iv, 361
 informs Gushtâsp of Luhrâsp's abdication in his favour, iv, 362
 Love-story of, v, 26, 27
 Death-story of, v, 26, 27
 converted by Zarduhsht, v, 33
 answers, in conjunction with Asfandiyâr and Jâmâsp, Arjâsp's letter, v, 42
 death of, foretold by Jâmâsp, v, 51
 receives the standard and the command of the centre from Gushtâsp, v, 55
 prowess of, v, 61 *seq.*
 slain by Bidirafsh, v, 63
- Zarír-nâma, v, 26, 27
- Zark, town south-east of Marv, ix, 98
 canal of, ix, 98
 corpse of Yazdagird flung into, ix, 109
 recovered from, ix, 109
 ford and toll-house of, ix, 100 and *note*
 chief of, ix, 100
 hears from miller about Yazdagird, ix, 109
- Zarmihr. *See* Rizmihr.
- Zarnûsh, city in Khûzistân, vi, 35
- Zartusht Bahráṃ Pazdhû, author of the Zartusht-nâma, v, 18
- Zartusht-nâma, poem, v, 18
- Zav, Shâh, 142, 143, i, 90, 91, 381; ii, 11, 36; iv, 283
 Reign of, 142, i, 369 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 369
 mentioned in the Zandavâsta, i, 369
- Zav, accession of, i, 370
 drought and famine in the time of, i, 371
 concludes peace with the Turkmans, i, 371
 dies, i, 372
- Zawâra, brother of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 96, 228, 347, 349; iii, 30, 202, 325, 328; iv, 24, 34; v, 173, 174, 182 *seq.*, 187, 191, 231, 260, 261
 engaged in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 110 *seq.*
 worsted by Alkûs, ii, 115
 rescued by Rustam, ii, 115
 made leader of Rustam's host, ii, 142
 left in charge of Rustam's host, ii, 161
 goes on embassy to Hûmán, ii, 176
 safe-conducts Hûmán from Írán, ii, 176, 181, 182
 incites Rustam to avenge Siyâwush, ii, 360
 given a command, iv, 149
 goes with Rustam to the right wing, iv, 180
 referred to, v, 186, 228, 261
- Farâmarz and, sent by Rustam to bid Zâl and Rûdâba prepare to receive Asfandiyâr, v, 190
 brings Rustam's armour, v, 218
 put in charge of the troops, v, 222
 goes with Rustam to the Hîrmund, v, 222
 Rustam's instructions to, v, 222
 provokes the Íránians to combat, v, 225
 slays Nûsh Âzar, v, 227
 goes in quest of Rustam, v, 230
 takes from Rustam a message for Zâl, v, 230

- Zawāra, grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyār, v, 247
 warns Rustam against Bahman, v, 250
 Rustam and, with small escort, go to Kābul, v, 268
 goes hunting with Rustam, v, 270
 falls a victim to treachery, v, 270, 273
 death of, v, 273
 body of, taken from the pit by Farāmārz, and buried v, 275
- Zend, language, i, 64
 improper use of term, i, 64
- Zeus, Babylonian, vi, 22
 oracle of, consulted, vi, 22
- Zhanda Razm, maternal uncle of Suhrāb, 144, ii, 149, 151
 accompanies Suhrāb to Írán, ii, 150
 death of, ii, 150
 referred to, ii, 160
- Zhangwī, Turkman noble, viii, 331
- Zib-i-Khusrau (Rúmiya, *q.v.*), city, 167, vii, 259
- Zijának, daughter of Ardawán, *q.v.*, 161, vi, 255
 Story of, in Kárnámak, vi, 255
 Tabarí, vi, 255
 Sháhnáma, vi, 259 *seq.*
- Zínigáv, ii, 81
- Zira, father of Gurwī, 152, ii, 295, 314; iii, 120, 197, 199; iv, 97, 99, 127, 210; v, 272
- Zirak, an archimage, i, 150
 warns Zahhák, i, 149
- Zirih, sea or lake, i, 4; ii, 80; iv, 130
 the Lake of Sístán, i, iv; ii, 80
- Zirih, son of Sháh Pírúz, vii, 170
- Zodiac, viii, 394
- Zoroaster. *See* Zarduhsht.
- Zoroastrian, Zoroastrians, v, 17; vi, 206, 251, 328
- Zoroastrian, cosmogony, i, 5
 view of Buddhism as idolatrous, i, 16
 conception of destiny, i, 52
 propaganda, i, 58 *seq.*
 triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
 scriptures. *See* Zandavasta.
 calendar, i, 88
 adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59
- Zoroastrianism, i, 49; vi, 15, 196, 251, 252, 327, 328; vii, 188, 317
 conceptions of, i, 5, 51, 52
 original seat of, i, 56 *seq.*, 62
 becomes the state religion, i, 59
 declines after Alexander's conquest, i, 60
 scriptures of, *See* Zandavasta.
 under the Parthians, i, 60, 63
 revival of, i, 63
 based on nature-worship, i, 110
 existed before Zoroaster, i, 110
 under the Sásánian empire, vi, 251
 millenia of, vi, 252
- Zú'l Aktáf, title of Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 323
 meaning of, vi, 323
- Zú'l-fakar, ii, 337 and *note*
- Zú'l-karnain (Sikandar, Alexander the Great), vi, 51
 legend of, in Kurán, vi, 78, 84
 barrier of, vi, 78
 site of, vi, 79
- Zúr. *See* Gúr.
- Zúrán, Núshírwán's chamberlain, 168
 envies Mahbúd, vii, 319
 plots with a Jew against Mahbúd, vii, 320 *seq.*
 makes confession to Núshírwán, vii, 324

**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
